

"Following in the footsteps of the Fathers."

THE HISTORY OF AMERICAN EXPANSION

AND

THE STORY OF OUR NEW POSSESSIONS.
THE SPANISH-AMERICAN WAR AND THE HEROES OF '98.
OUR GLORIOUS FIGHTS FOR HUMAN LIBERTY.
BUILDING THE GREAT REPUBLIC.
INTERNATIONAL TREATIES AND COMPLICATIONS.
OUR CONQUEST OF THE PACIFIC.
THE NICARAGUA CANAL.

Seven Great Books in One Superb Volume.

Being the Political, Commercial, Physical, and Geographical History of Hawaii, Porto Rico, Cuba, the Philippines and the other Islands now Under our Control, and a Complete and Authoritative Account of the Progress of the Spanish-American War—With Dewey at Manila—With Miles in Porto Rico—Sampson, Schley, and Shafter in Cuba—With the Red Cross on the Battlefield—With the Peace Commissioners in Paris—Our Command of the Pacific and the Nicaragua Canal, Showing our Brilliant Advance to a Commanding Position Among the World's Great Nations.

BY
MURAT HALSTEAD.

*Beautifully Illustrated with Sketches and Photographs,
and Containing a Profusion of Maps.*

THE UNITED SUBSCRIPTION BOOK PUBLISHERS
OF AMERICA.

E 179
.3
.H19

26769

COPYRIGHTED, 1898, BY F. OLDACH, SR.

TWO DEPICTS CONTAINED.



1493.
11.23.99.

Inscribed

TO THE IMMORTAL MEMORY OF
THE AMERICAN HEROES AND STATESMEN
WHO AUGMENTED
THE AREA OF THE ORIGINAL COLONIES,
MULTIPLIED THE UNITED STATES UPON TERRITORY
THAT BELONGED TO
THE THREE GREAT NATIONS OF THE EARTH
IN THE CENTURY
WHEN OUR BROAD FOUNDATIONS WERE LAID,
ENGLAND, FRANCE, AND SPAIN,
EXTENDING OUR BOUNDARIES FROM THE GREAT LAKES OF
THE NORTH TO THE GREAT GULF OF THE SOUTH AND
FROM THE ATLANTIC OCEAN TO THE PACIFIC.
IT IS THE LOGIC OF THEIR GLORY THAT WE SHOULD ENLARGE
THE SCOPE OF THEIR AMBITION,
EXTEND THE APPLICATION OF THEIR PRINCIPLES,
ADVANCE THE FLAG THEY RAISED,
EXPAND THE WINGS OF THE EAGLE OF THE REPUBLIC,
INCLUDING
WITHIN OUR IMPERIAL DOMINION
THE FAIREST OF THE ISLANDS
OF THE SEAS.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

ON the front of the palace at Versailles, is in golden letters the famous inscription, "To All the Glories of France," and the splendor of the sentiment has preserved from the ruthless hands of revolution, and from defacement by enemies in temporary triumph, the marbles of the magnificent edifice and the proud letters of gold. The memories of nations have many forms of expression, and it is not those distinguished by pomp that seem to have been the most certainly preserved and to possess the greater assurance of perpetuity. In the mounds of the ancient cities on the Euphrates, in the hills of desolation that mark the sites of mighty capitals, are found cylinders of burnt clay on which are the records of the dynasties that have otherwise perished, of peoples among whose memorials no tower stands to tell the tale of the race, no arch abides to speak of the vanished ages or locate in the abyss beyond the era of history, the Empires that are lost. It is the cylinder of clay that has the quality of immortality. Still more in the printed leaves of our time will be found the pages that minister to the pride of people, and on which are inscribed the lessons of the rise and fall of nations that shall enshrine the lives of great men and apply the excellence of good deeds.

It is hoped in this volume to assemble the glories of our country, not alone those of war, but of peace, and especially to celebrate the policies that are executed for the general welfare, and the things that are done with public purpose for the common good. This is to array the events that are luminous on the paths of Progress we have

passed. Our country is in evidence before the world. Its foundations spanning a continent, its States an arch between the two greater oceans of the globe, its position is a commanding one. To us is committed the leadership of the Freemen of a Hemisphere. We emerged from a colonial State ruled by remote masters, through war to independence, and we have been consolidated and at the same time extended and self-educated through war. The same general outlines of advancement are marked in the other American Republics that have advanced and arisen from the condition of European dependencies to be sovereign States.

In our hundred days of war with Spain we settled questions that had been gathering intensity for a hundred years. We freed peoples—the original purpose of challenging the barbarous misgovernment of Spanish colonies. We conquered the richest islands of the Indies, East and West, and hold them as our possessions by the same title that Texas and California are States of the Union. Where the flag of the nation flies, the grievances identified with Spain's colonial system, whether peopled by her children or not, vanish, and the oppressed, made free, seek the safeguards of our institutions, believing, according to their enlightenment, in our faith, freedom, and honor. They will not be despised and rejected, but received and protected; not in States but in Territories, under the laws of Congress and the commands of the Chief Executive of the Nation. The irresistible tendency of this emancipation and education is to Americanism—and in every clime and all races, to American citizenship, as the sovereign people of the United States may, in their wisdom, determine.

MURAT HALSTEAD.

INTRODUCTION.

THE national policy of the people of the United States was simplified by the war of states and sections into which we were drifting forty years ago. War educates and legislates. As we emerged from the conflict of states and nations one and indestructible, many and indivisible, it was into a consciousness that we had underestimated our strength in our Fourth of July literature. We had so adorned ourselves with complacency, were so pleased with compliments, that we had omitted to give our capacity due estimation. We were most appreciative of our splendor, but had an inadequate estimation of the substance that sustained the glittering show. The North and South had confronted each other as great nations, and there was a kindling, on both sides, of pride in the One Nation whose majestic outlines were soon sharply defined, while the combined energies of the people, developed for destruction, were devoted to the works of the soil and shops; and the marvelous land we have inherited prospered beyond example. There has been much more than our material progress. We have lifted ourselves among the group of the nations of the earth, and are shoulder to shoulder with the loftiest of them. We have a giant's strength, and have not ill-used it. All-absorbing Russia consented to sell us the huge territory of Alaska, and its archipelago that extends across the North Pacific. There were those who shrank from more territory, were feeble-minded about

the natives, and worked up for misuse the phrase "entangling alliances." That sort of conservatism has been, as always, discredited with results. Russia has not enough money to buy the land that she sold us for seven millions—and yet she has not lost as we have gained. Our enrichment has not been her impoverishment. It is the mighty magic of our fortune that transforms all that becomes ours. It was so with Louisiana, California and the rest. It will be so with Cuba and Hawaii. Mexico never had what we gained, and the land, and the rivers, and the sky she keeps, have a natural opulence that needs many generations of labor for full revelation.

In *Our Relations With All Other Nations*, we have, since the stalwart unity that the war made, in making us acquainted, more and more manifested ourselves. The empire established by the French in Mexico was offensive to us and disappeared at our command. We called upon England to accept, in the interest of peace, the responsibility for the privateering which she provided in the "Alabama." She comprehended the obligation and had the statesmanship to pay the bill. The world seemed to find out our rank among the great peoples and powers before we did. We are the Dominant Power of the Western Hemisphere—so called because the American continents were found, by those who knew the art of navigation, when voyaging westward. This dominance is not necessarily to be used for our own selfish purposes of increase, but for the good of the American countries that defer to us on account of the seniority of our Republic—and that we insist that European colonies or colonization systems are out of date here. We are not interfering in the Old World, but America must be let alone for Americans. That is the brevity and beauty of the Monroe Doctrine. Spain is losing the last of her American

islands as she lost all her American continental empires. Look at the map and see whether we are not concerned. We are more interested than either Spain or Cuba in "The Pearl of the Antilles," and we are in such relations with Spain that she is appealing to Europe against us. The effect of this cannot be other than to press us to the front of the nations—to augment our sense of power and the sensibilities of others of it.

The world is a neighborhood. We are one of the big neighbors and our vast possessions have not caused to pale the original spirit of liberty—but heightened that patriotism that was aflame in our country before the forms of political expression were organized. Our country will no longer play a role of meekness because we may or may not have enemies beyond the seas. We shall make our potentiality felt in other lands—not as Jingo or Fillibuster—but as an armed nation that will stand with head among the stars where the red, white and blue are, sword in hand! We have a glorious record of wars, and this book shall tell of them—and of other wars in the Americas that have broken foreign bonds and helped to Americanize America. We shall celebrate the freedom from the despotism that once kindled baleful fires within sight of our shores, from the misgovernment that compelled Cubans to fight to the death—for the battle of American freedom against Spanish despotism has been won all the way from our own Carolinas to Cape Horn. The manifest destiny of the islands of the American seas is that of the disenthralled continents—with a higher and, we trust, broader and brighter enlightenment of those who have studied the Schools of Sorrow from which come the Teachings of Wisdom.

Wm. H. Hall

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
CHAPTER I.	
How we Grew to be One of the Great Powers	21
CHAPTER II.	
Our Early Territorial Prospects	31
CHAPTER III.	
The French as our Allies in the Revolution	49
CHAPTER IV.	
Our First Appearance as a Sea Power	60
CHAPTER V.	
Conquest of the Northwest Territory	67
CHAPTER VI.	
Jefferson's Territorial Enterprise	93
CHAPTER VII.	
Tecumseh Plans to Halt Expansion	108
CHAPTER VIII.	
The Race for Oregon	119

	PAGE
CHAPTER IX.	
Jackson and the Spaniards in Florida	130
CHAPTER X.	
The Annexation of Texas	151
CHAPTER XI.	
Our War with Mexico	159
CHAPTER XII.	
The Battle of Cerro Gordo	179
CHAPTER XIII.	
The Battles Before the City of Mexico	202
CHAPTER XIV.	
The Acquisition of Alaska	220
CHAPTER XV.	
Hawaii, our First Pacific Colony	227
CHAPTER XVI.	
Our Relations with Other Nations	237
CHAPTER XVII.	
When our Navy Won Great Glory	252
CHAPTER XVIII.	
War with the Pirates of the Mediterranean	286
CHAPTER XIX.	
Our Relations with China	298

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

15

CHAPTER XX.

PAGE

The Beginning of Spanish Decadence 304

CHAPTER XXI.

History Repeats Itself in Cuba 319

CHAPTER XXII.

Mexico's Wars of Independence 333

CHAPTER XXIII.

Spanish Despotism in Cuba 346

CHAPTER XXIV.

Our Country, Spain and the Future 356

CHAPTER XXV.

The Crisis in Cuban Affairs 371

CHAPTER XXVI.

The Battle of Manila 394

CHAPTER XXVII.

The Santiago Campaign 419

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Our National Defence and Heroism 461

CHAPTER XXIX.

The Porto Rican Campaign 482

CHAPTER XXX.

The Fall of Manila 501

	PAGE
CHAPTER XXXI.	
Peace Negotiations	511
CHAPTER XXXII.	
The Red Cross in our War with Spain	521
CHAPTER XXXIII.	
Our West Indies	531
CHAPTER XXXIV.	
The Story of the Philippine Islands	538
CHAPTER XXXV.	
The Remaining Spanish Possessions	564
CHAPTER XXXVI.	
The Conquest of the Pacific	583
CHAPTER XXXVII.	
American Expansion	603
CHAPTER XXXVIII.	
Our International Policy	612
CHAPTER XXXIX.	
The Paris Peace Conference and the Treaty of Peace	639
CHAPTER XL.	
The Treaty of Peace Ratified	659
CHAPTER XLI.	
The Filipino Rebellion	681



AMERICAN EXPANSION.

CHAPTER I.

HOW WE GREW TO BE ONE OF THE GREAT POWERS.

Our Thirteen Original States the Bulwark of American Independence—The Great West gave us Our Imperial Standing—Our Vast Dominion is an Impregnable Fortress, yet We Must be Prepared for the Greater Wars that are to Come.

FROM the birth of our great republic it was destined that we should become one of the ruling nations. The centre of civilization, and consequently that of the ruling power, was across the Atlantic from us when we began our existence, and our Thirteen Original States formed the breast-work that defended the great West, soon to be a part of the coming republic of republics, the forerunner of the establishment of freedom throughout the Americas—the great champion of human liberty. In our vast dominion, when we had reached the Pacific, there was established an impenetrable stronghold for the people, safe against the attacks of all the world, and thus we grew to be a great power, not by militarism, like the great powers of Europe, but by our geographically commanding position in the Western Hemisphere and our liberal institutions. Separated, as we were, by oceans and by ages from war as the natural occupation of a people, the elements of strife were lacking in our land of plenty and of liberty. All this led to a belief among us that war was a thing of the past.

What should or could we fear? Oregon at the mouth of

the Columbia was ours. The mouth of the Mississippi was ours also ; and orators were accustomed to say, as a climax, that our possessions extended from Maine to Florida. We were isolated in our own grandeur ; and our free, popular government guaranteed us against the contention of communities. If we wanted anything settled, we had only to take a vote on it,—and there was the infallible Constitution of the United States. As for differences among sections, Andrew Jackson had threatened Calhoun with condign punishment if he crossed the line of national prerogative with the doctrine of nullification. Concerning slavery, Washington owned many slaves ; and the Bible commanded servants to obey their masters. And as for cranks, they should be judged and dealt with according to law. We had liberty that would solve all troubles, though it had not been precisely proclaimed “throughout the land and to all the inhabitants thereof,” according to the inscription on the Declaration of Independence Bell.

It is but half a century since we found ourselves at war with Mexico. Texas and California were added by the sword to our sisterhood of states, and it is one of the happy facts of history that our gains did not turn out to be Mexico's losses. There was a profound disturbance in Europe that sent Continental monarchs flying. After all, the volcanoes were not extinct. The great wars since those days have been that of the Crimea, in which England, France, Turkey, and Sardinia fought the statesmanship of Russia, and Turkey was preserved as a living Asiatic menace in Europe ; then the war of France against Austria, culminating at Solferino ; the war of our States that closed at Appomattox ; the French invasion of Mexico ; the war in which Prussia beat down Austria at Sadowa ; the Franco-German war, in which Paris fell and France lost Alsace and Lorraine ; and

the war of Russia against Turkey, that roared around Plevna. There were the wars of the Mutiny in India, of the occupation of Egypt, of the fall of Khartoum, the wars to open the ports of China, the war in which Chili struck down Peru, the civil war in Brazil, the war in which Japan put China to the sword, the wars in Cuba, and the Turco-Grecian war.

No continent has been exempt; and the latest of this series of combats is not the least, so far as we are concerned. The increase of military and naval armaments within this generation has been beyond example. The armed nations, in their equipments for asserting themselves, have consumed the products of industry, and mortgaged the future for money to cover extraordinary expenditures for the machinery of destruction,—expenditures amounting to more than the cost of armies, fleets, fortifications, and the ravages of campaigning, from Bunker Hill to Waterloo. The world is learning war more than ever; and the arbitrament of arms was never so costly as now.

The Turks, Austrians, French, Chinese, Peruvians, and Mexicans lost territory in the wars of the later half of the century. The Turkish losses became small kingdoms; the Austrians gaining two provinces and the Greeks one. The greater importance of the acquisition of Alsace and Lorraine by the Germans, has been the unquenchable enmity of France; and the symbol of it is the old statue of Marshal Ney in the park at Metz, musket in hand, as he faced the Russians on the retreat from Moscow. The statue of Strasbourg crowned with mourning wreaths, in the Place de la Concorde at Paris, has not such sinister significance as the defiant figure of Ney on German territory. At night, in the electric light that glows near the French field-marshal, he seems to listen and almost to speak.

The greatest gain of land by the sword in modern times was that which we acquired from Mexico. We were particularly fortunate in earlier and later days, in buying Louisiana from the French, and Alaska from the Russians.

In the same period England and Russia have obtained vast landed possessions, Germany has unified German States, and the Italian peninsula has crystallized into one kingdom.

Naturally the tendency of the times has been to the expansion of sovereignties, partly for the same reason that there has been an unexampled growth of cities and augmentation of popular demonstrations. These things result from the extension and perfection of railway systems; from telegraphy and cheap papers; from the manufacture of high-grade steel at low rates, permitting the erection of bridges and buildings otherwise impracticable; and from the improvement of the condition of the hosts of labor. The victories in peaceful conventions, not less than those on the fields of combat, make for the aggrandizement of empires and the concentration of peoples. Our Confederates fought against the stars when they took up arms against that consolidation which we call nationality, and which, with guarantees of popular liberty in republicanism and democracy, has in it the enduring and dominating substance of imperialism, that overcomes and expands and constructs and goes on to greater destinies. It is the rule of the many, not of the few, that is the stronger government. It is not the Czars and Kaisers, the Sultans, the Emperor-Kings, and the Empress-Queens, who are to be magnified in the future by our higher civilization; but the millions themselves shall be great, by reason of the conditions of equal opportunity and the discipline of common and inviolable order.

The world is no longer inaccessible and unknown to its

inhabitants. It is explored, measured, traversed, until there is instantaneous communication between the old mysteries of the atlas. Some of our States, in cost of time and movement, are farther away from our commercial and political capitals and the clusters of our manufacturing industries than are England and France; but the States fronting the two great oceans are better acquainted with each other, and have a closer sense of companionship, than the counties of the older States—Virginia and New York, for example—had, before the steamboat, the railroad, the telegraph, and the telephone came to intensify the application of the ancient and honored motto, “*E pluribus unum.*” If we are of New York, the nations of Europe are now more distinctly our neighbors than were the New-England States when the girl-queen, Victoria, was crowned.

Whether or not it was the pro-slavery ambition that caused the war with Mexico and the magnificent country we appropriated, it was a wise and masterly stroke. Those who delivered it may have builded more wisely than they knew; but no blame attaches to workmen who do that. The opposition to the annexation of Texas was narrow, even if there was a little speculation in the Texas debt; and when we accepted as a State Texas, the France of America, the Americanization of the people was justification. New Mexico has not changed, and developed American characteristics so rapidly as we could desire; but the example that, above all, vindicates the policy of annexation—not excepting Louisiana, Florida, or Texas—is California. We have nothing more priceless than the Golden Gate; but some of our statesmen shuddered when we got it.

There were many criticisms when William H. Seward and Charles Sumner accepted the friendly offer of Russia to sell us Alaska. If they had not improved the happy moment,

it never would have come again. Now the American people would not tolerate the idea of selling that vast Northern resource for our people in the future, with its forests, its fisheries, and mines, for one hundred times the sum we paid for it—we indeed for any sum at all. We never have intended a bit of land we would care or dare to part with, and we never shall.

The Mexican land we won by the sword was beyond valuation measured in precious metals. We had manifold good because of that. Our great civil war taught the people of the antagonistic sections to respect each other, and when the Union was reestablished, our gigantic resources were revealed to the whole nation. The retirement of the French from Mexico and the payment of the Alabama owed by England, as well as our resumption of specie payments and the elevation of national credit assumed with glorious achievements, conferred, besides commanding nations, our standing as one of the great Powers.

In the three latest wars, two of which have staked commitments disastrously other than ourselves, we are deeply concerned. We name first, as it was the most hard to our distress, the war in Cuba. It was one of the Spaniards to say that they never were interested in and responsible for that island. We have no interest and responsibility in it because it guards the Mediterranean of America, and the waters of more than half our States flow by the shores of Cuba, whether they reach the Atlantic by the Gulf Stream or by the Caribbean Sea. We had the right to stop at our doors, strangers in warfare, and to protect the lives and property of American citizens; and we overstepped all this, and for more, with the right of the Democratic Power of this hemisphere.

The war between Turkey and Greece has made changes

in Europe that may effect us more seriously than any other event abroad in the closing decade of the century. It is not improbable that the Emperor of Germany—the most restless and enterprising of modern monarchs—was the manager of that war; that he prepared the theatre, and supplied the actors. He visited Vienna at a critical time in the relations of the Powers; and then the Emperor of Austria made haste to visit the Czar of Russia. From that time there was concert between the Kaiser, the Czar, the Sultan, and the Emperor-King of Austria and Hungary,—the masters of the armed nations in which there is the least public opinion, indeed so little of it, that imperial affairs are decided without reference to the sentiments of the people. The Austrian sovereign does not assert himself absolutely as the others do in their respective dominions. But he has two Turkish provinces; and, as he wanted more, he maintained the concert. The German Emperor has the greatest military machine the world has ever seen. Next to him in that respect is the Czar,—a young man in the iron grip of a system, with a million thoughtless bayonets. The Sultan has been rehabilitated. It is seen that he has an immense army, and that there is no better fighting material in Europe than that which composes it.

It is well worth while for us to consider that the combination of emperors growing out of the Greco-Turkish war is the most formidable alliance of military Powers ever formed. There are four great armies in it,—the Turkish, with half a million men, being the smallest,—and three considerable navies. The Kaiser and the Czar are young in experience, and not limited within defined responsibilities. Germany is the leader, and has the colonizing passion. This country is the one that would naturally

be looked upon and watched with jealous eye as the next great nation to take up the idea of national expansion, owing to our great commercial enterprise.

We may be sure there will be more friction than there has been between us and other nations, because each year brings us closer together. We can send orders for goods to Germany by cable, and have them landed here within ten days of the date of the message. One hundred of the ships of war reviewed at Portsmouth in the course of Queen Victoria's Jubilee could be off our coast in a fortnight. There is ready at Bermuda and Halifax an abundance of docks, stores, provisions, and ammunition, as well as all the machinery for handling and fitting out ships of war; and away down in the Carribbean Sea the English have another vast station of like character. We should not count England as an enemy; but she is our only rival on this continent. She holds more continental land and more islands in the American hemisphere than we do. She is prepared for war both in the Atlantic and the Pacific.

The imperialism of England is to-day a considerable fact, and means more to us than to any other people except the English. We say English rather than British; for the evolution is of England. Already the English colonies are in sharp competition with us in producing food for the metropolitan centres of congested civilization. Australians have broken the markets of New York more than once. A cablegram to Melbourne brings butter by the thousand tons from the other side of our planet, where the grass is green all the year. Australia is not as far away in time and charges as Europe was in the middle of the nineteenth century. The English invested a great deal of capital in Argentina, and seemed to have lost it; but the railroads they

built and the ships they subsidized opened immense wheat-lands. Besides, the oceans are easy roads.

We have rights as a humane Power, with faith in self-government, and a consciousness of manifest destiny, to do the things counting for freedom and peace and the extension of our just influence in Cuba. Shall we take steps looking to retirement, or must we walk in the ways made familiar by those who established the zone of our national predominance across the continent, took Florida, and, touching the tropical climate of the Southern Seas, moved north and west into the Arctic regions, so that from the eastern border of Maine to the western islands of the Aleutian group, we have in the summer days eighteen hours of sunshine on the land covered by our flag? Shall we not go on where the honors and the glories await us as the Power that is competent, if we will, to speak for half the globe? Once the Alleghenies were our western horizon; but we have crossed the space that divided the discoveries of Columbus from the lands of his dreams, where the east and the west are blended, like sea and sky, in the boundless blue of the waters and the air.

The objection is made that we neither have nor can have, under our system of States, anything but States and Territories. We, the people of the United States, however, ordained a Constitution to establish "a more perfect Union"; and that very Union was triumphant, through the conquest of States whose statesmen largely made the Union greater than the States. And the continuance of the policy of annexation only invites us to be masterful in peace. We need to formulate a colonial system, and then the precedents should be everlasting examples. Thomas Jefferson saw that if the Constitution was not equal to the occasion of the absorption of the Louisiana purchase, there

was a higher and a more fundamental law, that of our inheritance, written over the continent, in rivers and ranges of mountains, in plains and valleys, and that, therefore, the Constitution would have to be accommodating. No parchment can forbid the march of mankind. Our territorial system has served us well. It has yielded thirty-two States, each as sovereign and inviolable as the others; and there is no primacy by reason of seniority.

We ought to be armed as becomes a great Power; not for military aggression, as our volunteers have always been and will prove to be sufficient for that. But, whether we include the American islands in the scope of our sovereignty or not, we need to equip ourselves for international eventualities.

We have become one of the great powers. The ruling nations will henceforth consult with us in deciding the destiny of empires. We have entered the arena as one of the combatants, and must be reckoned with. Heretofore we had little concern how Africa, Asia, or Oceania were cut up. Our increased commerce, however, demands that we take an interest in the world at large and compete in every market. Already our trade extends to every corner of the globe. Our exports will soon exceed those of England and Germany, and it is our duty that we let the Stars and Stripes follow for the protection of American industry.

To protect our enormous trade will demand of us a powerful navy, and it will be the policy of wisdom that we lose no time in establishing such.

For it is the logic and lesson of current history that the greatest of wars are to come; for the nations are spending money, time, and toil in learning war, with an extravagance incessantly increasing as the later years of the century are numbered.

CHAPTER II.

OUR EARLY TERRITORIAL PROSPECTS.

George Washington in his Boyhood Put Our Country in the Saddle—In International Matters Conservative, he was, in his Youth, the Foremost of the Adventurers of the Gentlemen of his State Invading the Great West—He Knew More of That which is now the Heart of the Country than any other Man of his Generation, and More Wisely Appreciated the Value of the Ohio and the Mississippi Valleys—He was the Chosen Leader when but Twenty two Years of Age, of the First Band of Colonists who took the Field against the French Aggression in the Ohio Country. It was at his Personal Command that the First Guns were Fired and the First Blood Shed in the Great War for the Domination in North America Between England and France, terminating in the Possession, by the People of the United States, of the Soil they now Occupy—He First Assisted the English to Put Out the French, and then the French Assisted Him in Putting Out the English.

THERE is hardly to be found in the records of mankind an occasion more grateful and opportune to sweep away a work of historic injustice than that afforded in writing a history of Our War with Spain and Our Territorial Expansion, by declaring, at the outset, the splendor of the youthful heroism and achievements of George Washington in laying broader and deeper the foundations of the government by the people, of which he stands in the august and universally ascribed relation as the Father. For more than a century the name of Washington has been used by those who have been opposed to the expansion of our country. No man ever had a more direct hand than himself in expanding it. He was too early to see beyond the Mississippi, for it had not then entered the imagination of man that this Republic was to be bounded only by the Atlantic and the Pacific Oceans, and the Great Lakes and the Great

Gulf. So far-seeing, however, was Washington, that it is easy to conjecture that he must have had some glimpses of the glory to come. His personal part, in extreme youth, as the representative of Virginia and the colonies associated with her in resisting the French system of grasping all the lands watered by the tributaries of the Mississippi, is most interesting, little understood, and rarely realized in its full proportions.

About one hundred and fifty years ago the French, under the patronage of their King and court and army, were busily establishing themselves along the waters of the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi, and by several routes connecting the enormous basins of the greater North American rivers. They first crossed to the Lakes high up the Mississippi, and later discovered the advantages of the Ohio and the Wabash, which they thought would serve their purpose. Therefore they ascended the Ohio, and reaching the shores of Lake Erie, found their true line of communication between the imperial masses of their possessions along the Allegheny River, which was then regarded as the Ohio, the Monongahela, having consideration only as the most important branch of the "beautiful river." The Indian tribes were stirred up from forts of the French who fortified positions in close relations along Lake Ontario and Lake Erie, and advancing constructed an important fortification in what is now Erie county, Pa. They also had another place at Venango, where the Allegheny received a considerable affluent, and at this stage of the proceedings, Major Washington, a member of the staff of Governor Dinwiddie, was sent with a letter challenging the French commandant in the Ohio country, on the subject of his aggressions upon the land belonging to the King of England. On the way Washington passed the

Forks of the Ohio, before there had been a stick cut on the site of the city of Pittsburg, and when he returned one of the points of his report to the Governor was the extreme importance of that position. Governor Dinwiddie immediately began to organize to head off the French at that point, and Washington was the man selected to take command of the forces. There were great deficiencies, however, in the organization of the colonies, and when in the following spring he set forth, it was with insufficient forces; and the French were ahead of him, as he had reported they probably would be, unless the utmost speed of enterprise was reached in taking armed possession of the land. There followed the familiar story of Fort Duquesne and Braddock's defeat; but more interesting is the fact that, with his little band, Washington moved resolutely into the wilderness, encountered the French, and regarding them as trespassers, ordered them fired upon, resulting in the death of a French officer, De Joinville. Thereupon Washington was forced to fortify himself, but was assailed by overwhelming numbers, and on the night before the fourth of July, 1753, he signed articles of capitulation as a prisoner of war. He it was who started the fight, and he it was who saw the French off, when the forces of England at last vindicated her reputation, the French abandoned the Forks of the Ohio, and the Indians sailed away in their canoes down the beautiful river, leaving the colonies north of the posts on the lower Mississippi to the English-speaking people forever. Thus it was, in the days of his youth, that George Washington put the American people in the saddle; and the result was our national independence.

We refer to the war that was opened between the French and the Virginians in 1754, as the Opening War of our Country. In a great historic sense it was so. The colo-

nists had participated with the British in fighting the French and Indians at an earlier period, but the affairs did not affect Continental relations. The colonists who took the field were not contending for dominion, only to maintain their frontiers, to beat the French and help the King of England; but from 1754 they were in the war and fought for land to belong to themselves and their children and for Liberty.

George Washington was, in 1751, appointed one of the four adjutant-generals of Virginia. Each was assigned to a military district of the colony, with the duty of organizing troops. The age of Washington was nineteen, his rank major, and he was attached to the staff of Governor Dinwiddie, who, in October, 1753, commissioned him to find the commandant of the French forces on the Ohio, and deliver a letter to him demanding his retirement from the territories of the crown of Great Britain. Major Washington, representing the Governor of Virginia and the King of England, set out from Williamsburg on the last day of the month, crossed the mountains, the headwaters of the Potomac and the Ohio, into the land where the rivers ran west and south. The French had invaded and were fortifying this country. The Virginian major bore the challenge of England to France, and was destined to begin in person, within eight months, the impending war. The prize contended for by the two most enlightened and powerful nations of the world was the valley of the Mississippi. It was the fortune of young Washington to be the foremost representative of the English race, in the irrepressible conflict for the richest regions of the North Temperate Zone.

On the 14th of November he reached the house of Christopher Gist, on Will's Creek—the present site of the City of Cumberland. Christopher Gist was a frontier man of

intelligence and experience in the wilderness, and to him Washington delivered a letter from the Council of Virginia, requesting his attendance in the journey to the Post on the Ohio, where the French Commander-in-Chief could be located.

In 1743 there had been published in Paris "The History of New France," by Charlevoix. This work was reviewed in the "London Magazine," in 1747, under the head of "The French Settlements in North America." The reviewer declared that in wars with France "the conquest or destruction of the French settlements in America ought to be our principal view." It appeared from the French history and map that they, "by means of their settlements in Canada and on the River Mississippi, have entirely surrounded our settlements upon the continent of North America, and thereby absolutely cut us off from all communication with the natives of that vast continent, except the few that inhabit the country eastward of the Mississippi and the lakes of Canada; and from this history it appears that they have now opened a communication, mostly by water-carriage, from the mouth of the river St. Lawrence, to the mouth of the Mississippi, and have, in a manner, taken possession of every one of the great lakes in North America, which are the largest in the known world."

The author of "New France" had made a voyage by the lakes and rivers from Quebec to New Orleans, and it appeared to the reviewer, "that the French were much more artful and diligent than the English in making settlements among, and in gaining the affections of the Indians;" and that one of their favorite methods was to push forward their priests, who made themselves agreeable and useful to the savages, and prepared the way with missions for forts.

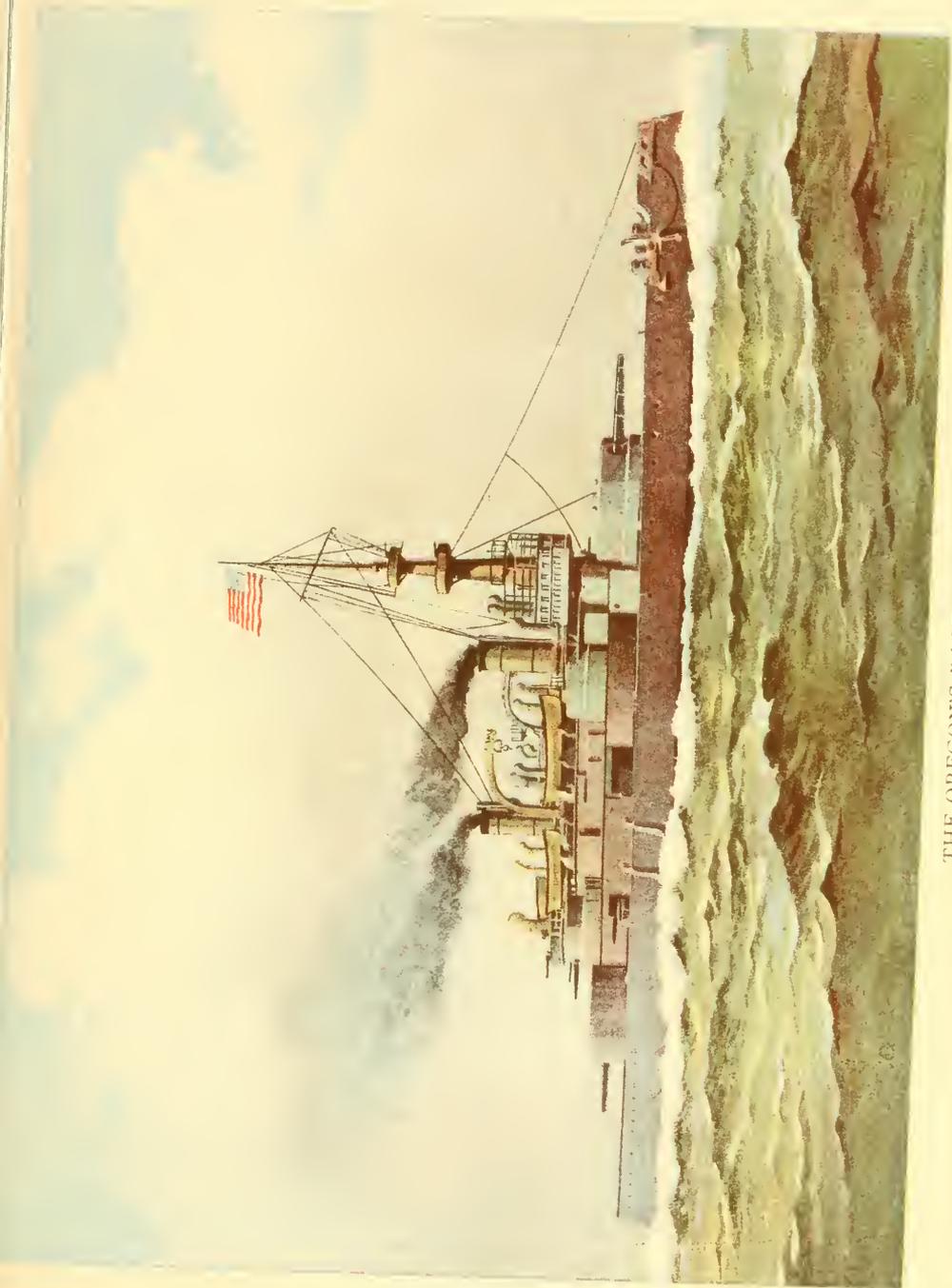
The French strength, in their struggle for the greater

and better part of the continent, was in their ability to cajole and employ the red men, and share with them the wilderness as a mysterious fortification. It was the English fashion at the time to complain of the superiority of the French as colonists. A letter from Virginia published in the "London Magazine" of 1747, declares: "With regard to the churchmen to be employed in America, the French infinitely excel us; and even with regard to laymen, they are at more pains to find out such men as are proper for the business in which they are to be employed."

The English and French were contesting the rich lands in North America a century and a half ago, as they are now assisting the expansive efforts of their colonists in Africa. To-day it is the vast regions between the Nile and the Niger and along their tributaries, instead of between the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi as in our ancient history.

The surrounding of the English settlements by the French was what Englishmen most complained of, but their concern was rather for the good land of the future. The continent was not crowded with people. The population of the English colonies at this time was reported, partly by count, partly by estimate, at 1,428,000. The States north of the Potomac had 882,000 white inhabitants and 85,000 blacks; south of the Potomac, 283,000 whites and 178,000 blacks. The Canadian French numbered less than 12,000. In 1688 the French census for North America showed only 11,249. They, possessing the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi, sought to connect those enormous continental channels by way of the Ohio and Lake Erie, and with the Indians on the great lakes and rivers, made wonderful voyages with canoes.

M. du Quesne, Governor of Canada, early in 1753, detached M. Sieur de St. Pierre with a sufficient force to



THE OREGON'S RACE FOR CUBA.

make a lodgement and to maintain his ground on the River Boeuf, or Beef River, till re-enforced, which St. Pierre performed; and he built a fort upon the spot in honor of M. du Quesne." This fort was called "Le Boeuf" and was in Erie County, Pennsylvania, now Waterford, thirteen miles from the town of Erie, near Le Boeuf Lake; and the famous French Creek of the same name has its head near Lake Chautauqua.

There had been received in the colonies from the "back settlements" information of the aggression of the French, in building three forts on the Ohio.

The Governor of Virginia wrote to the Governor of Pennsylvania, January 29, 1754, of "the return of the gent whom I sent by express to the French commandant, to know what steps the French were taking on the Ohio;" and the Governor added that he "wrote to the colonies to the northward of this for their aid and assistance" in the emergency, and at once made preparations to prevent the French from fortifying the fork of the Ohio, the real importance of which was first made known by Major Washington in recording the result of his expedition.

The letter the youthful Major bore to the French commandant was dated Williamsburg, October 31, 1753, and was a very explicit document, saying: "The lands upon the River Ohio, in the western part of the Colony of Virginia, are so notoriously known to be the property of the Crown of Great Britain, that it is a matter of equal concern and surprise to me, to hear that a body of French forces are erecting fortresses, and making settlements upon that river within His Majesty's Dominions."

Major Washington's report of his first journey to the Ohio country, is a document remarkable for the literary faculty it declares, and no one can read it without a sense

of the manliness and modesty of "the gent, sent" by Governor Dinwiddie. Such was the interest in Major Washington's report that he was allowed but one day after his return to Williamsburg and the time for the Council's meeting, to "prepare and transcribe from the rough minutes" taken in his travels, the whole paper, and he apologized for inability to correct the "diction." He did an extraordinarily good day's work as a reporter; and did not know his report would be published, until it had been printed. He concluded his exemplary explanation of his hasty work, saying the only thing that could commend it to the public was: "Those things which came under the notice of my own observation, I have been explicit and just in a recital of. Those which I have gathered from report, I have been particularly cautious not to augment, but collected the opinions of the several intelligencers, and selected from the whole the most probable and consistent account." There is in this a striking suggestion of the style of precision, of the one man named with Washington as his rival in reputation—Abraham Lincoln.

The journey of Major Washington, of which this record was made, began October 31, 1753. He arrived at Fredericksburg next day, and at Cumberland two weeks out.

Excessive rain and vast quantities of snow caused delays, preventing their arrival at the place of Mr. Frazier, an Indian trader, at the mouth of Turtle Creek, on the Monongahela, and it was proposed to cross the Ohio (the Allegheny) at the fork. Here, in the original London pamphlet, a note says, "The Ohio and the Allegheny are the same river." The loan of a canoe to reach "the fork" was obtained, but Washington spent some time on the way, in the saddle, closely examining the rivers passing over the scene of the defeat of Braddock in 1755—a year and a half

later—and he studied with the eye of a surveyor and military man by nature, the “Land in the Fork,” of which he said: “I think it extremely well situated for a fort, as it has the absolute command of both rivers.”

A race soon took place between the French and the English to occupy and fortify the fork of the Ohio—the English got the start, but were driven out, and the French enjoyed a brief triumphal occupation. It was Major Washington who, when the land in the fork was wholly unoccupied, saw its advantages and urged it as above all others, the spot to fortify.

No newspaper correspondent ever did more faithful work than George Washington did in reporting in his tent. November 25th, in the afternoon between three o'clock and dark, fifteen miles from the fork of the great river the French called the “Fair,” and the group consisted of Washington, his interpreter Davidson, and the “Half King.”

There is the flavor of the individuals and races of the red men and the Frenchmen, in the speeches reported. We have the dignity of the Indian Chief, the vivacity of the French officer; the aggression, the defiance, all this duly noted, and there is intelligence, particularly acceptable to military men. The Major also jotted down his conversation with the “Half King” the matter concerned him thus:

“He informed me that they, the French, had built two forts—one on Lake Erie and another on French Creek, near a small lake about fifteen miles yonder, and a large wagon road between; they are both built after the same model, but different in size, that on the lake the largest. He gave me a plan of them, of his own drawing.”

The “Half King” desired to hold the country against the whites. He had already told the English of his intention,

and claimed that "the Great Being above allowed the land to be a place of residence for the Indians. Our brethren, the English, have heard this, and I come now to tell it to you, for I am not afraid to discharge you off this land."

The reply on behalf of France was severe. "My child," said the Frenchman, "you need not put yourself to the trouble of speaking, for I will not hear you," and "I am not afraid of flies, or mosquitoes, for Indians are such as those. I tell you, down the river I will go, and will build upon it according to my command. If the river is blocked up, I have forces sufficient to burst it open, and tread under my feet all who stand in opposition, together with their alliances; for my force is as the sand upon the seashore. Therefore, here is your wampum. I fling it at you. Child, you talk foolish; you say this land belongs to you, but there is not the black of my nails of it yours."

When Washington waited upon the commander, a knight of the military order of St. Louis, Legardeur de St. Pierre, an elderly gentleman, with much the air of a soldier, and who had commanded the fort only a week. The arrival of a Captain Reparti, "who understood a little English," was daily awaited, and Governor Dinwiddie's letter was read. Washington was asked to walk in with his interpreter to hear and correct the construction of the Governor's paper. The French held a council of war after mastering the Governor's letter, and while this was going on, the ever-watchful Major was studying the fort, "taking the dimensions," and "making what observations I could." The fort was on the south or west bank of French Creek, and nearly surrounded by it. There were eight six-pound cannon in each bastion, and one piece of four-pound before the gate, and "there are several barracks without the fort for the soldiers' dwelling; covered some with bark, and some

with boards, made chiefly with logs. There are also several other houses, such as stables, smiths' shops, etc."

The indefatigable nature of the Major's labors is seen in the pains he took to find how many men there were in the garrison, and he made them about one hundred, exclusive of the officers, "of whom there are many." The canoes were counted, and there were fifty of birch bark, and one hundred and seventy of pine, and "many others blocked out." This told the strength of the expedition to descend the river in the spring. The canoes were numbered by Washington's people acting under his orders, and the capacity and purpose of the canoe fleet were verified the next spring.

The most specific statement Washington could gain of the strength of the French invading the Ohio country was that they had been 1,500 strong, but had been recalled, except the garrisons of four forts, about 150 to each, and he reported:

"The first of these is at French Creek near a small lake, about sixty miles from Venango, near N. N. W.; the next lies on Lake Erie where the greater part of their stores is kept, about fifteen miles from the other. From this it is 120 miles to the carrying place, at the falls of Lake Erie, where there is a small fort which they lodge their goods at, in bringing them from Montreal, the place from whence all their stores come. The next fort lies about twenty miles from this on Ontario Lake."

The trip from the fort on Lake Erie to Montreal, the French officers said, could be made in four weeks by large boats, and six weeks by canoes. The larger boats were used to cross Lake Erie, and their existence shows the skill and energy of the French in navigation.

The reply of the French commander to the communica-

tion from Governor Dinwiddie was received on the evening of the 16th, and next day the journal says, "the commandant ordered a plentiful store of liquor, provisions, etc., to be put on board our canoe, and appeared to be extremely complaisant, though he was exerting every artifice he could invent to set our Indians at variance with us, to prevent their going till after our departure. Presents, rewards, and everything which could be suggested by him or his fellow-officers—I can't say that ever in my life I suffered so much anxiety as I did in this affair. I saw that every stratagem which the most fruitful brain could invent was practiced to win the 'Half King' to their interest, and that leaving him here was giving them the opportunity they aimed at."

Washington was long detained by drunken Indians and his return was through terrible hardships. There was an attempt to assassinate him, and he was flung from a raft into the Allegheny when the river was flooded and loaded with ice.

The Major was "in an Indian walking dress"—a "hunting shirt" and leggings—and continued with the party for three days—but had to hasten forward "the nearest way through the woods on foot." It was a dreary time. The cold "increased" very fast; the woods were becoming much worse with a deep snow, continually freezing. This was Christmas Day. The simplicity of the journal is very striking, and it is the more to be regarded, for it is one of the rare occasions in which Washington spoke of himself. He says: "I took my necessary papers; pulled off my clothes, and tied myself up in a watch coat. Then with gun in hand and pack at back, in which were my papers and provisions, I set out with Dr. Gist, fitted in the same manner."

Major Washington was for a time utterly alone, in a forest where his life had been attempted. He was dressed almost like an Indian, carrying pack and gun, resolutely walking all night and then all day, though footsore and exceedingly fatigued, finding his way in the pathless and frozen woods by the compass, discovering a trail of probably hostile Indians—parting with his one companion that they might evade their enemies if pursued, meeting again and keeping up their desperate pace, until they came to a place where they thought they were safe enough to sleep, and encamped. They were not disturbed through the long night and “set out early.”

On the first of January, 1754, two months after setting out from Williamsburg, Washington says: “Tuesday, January 1, we left Mr. Frazier’s house, and arrived at Mr. Gist’s, at Monongahela, the 2d, where I bought a horse, saddle, etc. The 6th we met seventeen horses loaded with materials and stores for a fort at the forks of the Ohio, and the day after, some families going out to settle.” They were the advance guard of an ill-fated expedition. This day Will’s Creek (Cumberland on the Potomac) was reached, and on the 11th Belvoir, the seat of the Fairfax family, where there occurs this line in the journal: “I stopped one day to take necessary rest.”

The arrival at Williamsburg was on the 16th, and Major Washington “waited upon His Honor the Governor, with the letter I had brought from the French commandant; and to give an account of the success of my proceedings.” The report was at once written up and submitted, and hoping the Governor was satisfied with his conduct, the Major subscribed himself “With infinite pleasure, George Washington,” and in the phrase “infinite pleasure” is the only touch of the extravagance of youth in the wonderfully clear

and forcible account of a journey that was of extreme hardship and various imminent dangers, of great public utility, and finally of international influence.

The Governor, after reading the French commandant's letter, at once began preparing for a military expedition, in the spring, to capture the fork of the Ohio. It was the eye of Washington that had found the commanding military and commercial importance of the site of Pittsburg.

The journal of his first Western travel is by far the most important of Washington's early writings. It is crowded with business intelligence, not a point missed, and is the indubitable evidence of the uncommon manner in which, through the most trying experiences, he won in his youth an exceptional and glorious reputation, spreading his name through the colonies as one in whom absolute confidence could be reposed, becoming, through devoted bravery and good conduct, the most distinguished and promising young man in Virginia. Under the hardest tests, his extraordinary excellence was thus early made manifest. No men could have been better qualified than the Virginians of that day to understand his admirable merit, his courage indomitable, and judgment unfailing; and he had by his fearless and intelligent devotion, deeply impressed the leading men of the commonwealth, and took his place then and forever as a leader and a hero.

His keen eyes had searched, and his hand recorded the secrets of the enemies of Virginia and England. His sagacity guided him through the most desperate hazards, followed, without faltering, the line of duty, and had saved his life for the coming time. His return to the seat of government of the colony, having placed him by the surprisingly thorough accomplishment of his mission, among the first citizens who had served the State, was a month

before his twenty-second birthday. The letter he bore to the Governor of Virginia was in stately form and high spirit justifying the description Washington gives of the soldierly bearing of the writer, who clearly had an adequate sense of the importance of his position—that of commanding the advanced guard of his nation—in asserting authority over the richest land of the continent; and the paper was one which it was fitting should be in charge of the messenger, whose fortune it was to be first to inform the English and their colonies, from personal observation, of the exact state of French aggression, pushing to completion their chain of fortresses, to draw a boundary that British enterprise could never pass on the ridges of the Alleghenies.

The prize for the victor was the possession of a region exceeding Europe in resources, and it was Major Washington who led, in the year following, the first military expedition against the centre of the French line, extending from Quebec to New Orleans; and under the orders of this young gentleman, the first blood was shed in the war that, after many vicissitudes, ended the ambitious scheme of French dominion, and confirmed to Virginia her imperial territory, yet leaving Louisiana with a more magnificent inheritance even than that Virginia held and gave away.

Napoleon, the master of France, sold this truly imperial possession to the country of Washington, because the French were unequal to the defence of New Orleans against the sea power of the English. The task and triumph won the empire beyond the Mississippi, and the defence of Louisiana against Great Britain was transmitted to another generation and race, and accomplished by another hero, Andrew Jackson.

The French commandant at Fort Le Boeuf comes down to us a not unpleasing personage—a knightly figure, court-

cous and haughty, and his romantic name will be known through the centuries, because he met in his wooden fort, in a wintry wilderness, on a little river, alternately flooded and frozen, the young Virginian, whom he received with a distinction suitable, as he said, to the dignity of the Governor of Virginia and the "quality and great merit" of the young man himself.

It would have seemed a fantastic dream to the old officer, exiled in duty so far from Paris, and from all it seemed possible could become memorable, if he had beheld in a vision that immortality had been conferred upon him, not by his King, or any honors France could bestow, or glory he should gain in toilsome services, but through the presence of an enemy's emissary whose appointed destiny it was to lead the advanced guard of the colonists in finally conquering for the English race "the fair River Ohio." and the fruitful lands it watered.

Still more strange it would have seemed, to have revealed in the mist of fancy a glimpse of the fated field on the Monongahela, where George Washington was the hero of the fight, relieving, by his valor, the gloom of a day of disaster; and how impossible it would have been to imagine that after the French lost the key to the country, and floated in their barges discomfited down the river whose beauty they had celebrated, that glittering regiments from France should, in alliance with the picturesque Continentals, under George Washington, march from the Hudson to the capes of Virginia, to force the surrender of his Britannic Majesty's army at Yorktown,—the war that deprived England of her original American colonies, and the greatest of her conquests from the French—the Mississippi Valley.

CHAPTER III.

THE FRENCH AS OUR ALLIES IN THE REVOLUTION.

The French as Our Allies Beat the British at the Capes of Virginia, and were Beaten on the way to Attack Jamaica—The French Gift of Money to our Fathers—The French from Dobb's Ferry to Yorktown—The Count De Grasse who Beat the British at the Capes of Virginia was Beaten and Captured by Admiral Lord Rodney, April 8, 1781.

OUR fathers were seeing very hard times when the French concluded to help us, thinking they ought to regain their North American Colonies which they had lost when we assisted the British. Washington had helped drive the French down the Ohio, and now they were rendering Washington assistance to drive the British from the South Atlantic slope. Worst of all, our Revolutionary sires needed money, and Franklin wrote to the Count de Vergennes, asking a loan of 25,000,000 francs. He made a personal appeal, and added, "I am grown old and feel myself much enfeebled by my late long illness, and it is probable I shall not long have any more concern in these affairs. I therefore take this occasion to express my opinion to your Excellency, that the present conjuncture is critical; that there is some danger lest the Congress should lose its influence over the people, if it is found unable to procure the aids that are wanted, and that the whole system of the new government in America may thereby be shaken; that, if the English are suffered once to recover that country, such an opportunity of effectual separation as the present may not occur again in the course of ages; and that the possession of those fertile and extensive regions, and that vast seacoast, will

afford them so broad a basis for future greatness, by rapid growth of their commerce, and the breed of seamen and soldiers, as will enable them to become the *terror of Europe*, and to exercise with impunity that insolence which is so natural to their nation, and which will increase enormously with the increase of their power."

While Franklin waited, Col. John Laurens was commissioned by Congress to promote the loan desired, and Franklin again became urgent, and the Count de Vergennes sent for him at length. "He assured me," Franklin wrote, "of the king's good will to the United States; remarking, however, that, being on the spot, I must be sensible of the great expense France was actually engaged in, and the difficulty of providing for it, which rendered the lending us twenty-five millions at present impracticable. But that to give the States a signal proof of his friendship, his Majesty had resolved to grant them the sum of six millions, not as a loan, but as a free gift. This sum, the minister informed me, was exclusive of the three millions which he had before obtained for me, to pay the Congress drafts for interest, expected in the current year. He added, that, as it was understood, the clothing with which our army had been heretofore supplied from France, was often of bad quality, and dear, the ministers would themselves take care of the purchase of such articles as should be immediately wanted, and send them over; and it was desired of me to look over the great invoice that had been sent hither last year, and mark out those articles."

This gift gave the revolted colonies a credit, and as Parton says contributed essentially to the success of the campaign which ended in the surrender of Lord Cornwallis at Yorktown. The sum total of money obtained from France at the solicitation of Franklin was twenty-six millions of francs;

in 1777 two millions; in 1778, three millions; in 1779, one million; in 1780, four millions; in 1781, ten millions; in 1782, six millions. These aids were given at a time when France herself was at war, and while the minister of finance, M. Necker, constantly opposed the grants.

On the 6th of July, 1781, General Rochambeau, with his army, formed a junction with General Washington, near "Dobbs' Ferry," on the Hudson. The Americans encamped in two lines, with their right resting on that river. The French occupied the left, in a single line extending to the river Bronx. The united forces meditated an attack upon New York and were for six weeks uncertain when to strike. General Rochambeau had corresponded with Count de Grasse in reference to operating upon the southern coast, presenting "a picture of the distresses of the southern States, and, above all, of Virginia, which had nothing to oppose the inroads of Lord Cornwallis, but a small body of troops under Lafayette." While hesitating to make the general attack above mentioned, there was received at Newport, from Count de Grasse, a letter, stating that he should soon sail from St. Domingo with his entire fleet, having on board three thousand two hundred land troops, to be employed in the Chesapeake. This letter was forwarded to General Washington. The time that the Count had prescribed for this operation was between the middle of August and the middle of October. Such intelligence led at once to a change in the plan of operation. Further immediate attempt upon New York was abandoned, and the two generals decided upon a campaign in Virginia, to act against Cornwallis. Yorktown, therefore, became the second objective point.

On the 31st day of August, Count de Grasse arrived in the Chesapeake with a squadron of twenty-eight ships of the line,

and six frigates, having on board three thousand three hundred land troops, commanded by the Marquis de Saint Simón. With the aid of boats, manned by fifteen hundred sailors from the squadron of De Grasse, they were landed at Jamestown on the 2d of September. On the 5th, Admiral Graves appeared off Chesapeake Bay. The Count de Grasse immediately cut his cables, went out to meet him, gave battle and gained a victory, presaging a greater soon to be obtained.* In this engagement the British ship "Terrible" was severely damaged, and, unable to be kept afloat, was set on fire and destroyed.

The French fleet lost in this affair the Sieurs de Boacles, captain of a man-of-war, commanding the "Réfléchi," Dapé d'Orvault, lieutenant of a man-of-war, and major of the blue squadron; Rhaab, ensign of a man-of-war, a Swede, on the "Caton;" de la Villeon, an auxiliary officer on the "Diademe"; eighteen officers were wounded, and about two hundred men killed and wounded. Washington called on the victorious De Grasse, and on the American chief's reaching the quarter deck, the admiral flew to embrace him, imprinting the French salute upon each cheek. Hugging him in his arms, he exclaimed, "*My dear little General!*" De Grasse was of lofty stature; but the term *petit* or small, when applied to the majestic and commanding person of Washington, produced an effect upon the risible qualities of all present not to be described. The Frenchmen, governed by the rigid etiquette of the *ancient regime*, controlled their mirth as best they could; but our own jolly Knox, regardless of all rules, laughed, and that aloud, till his fat sides shook again.*

The fleet of Count de Grasse comprised the following vessels:

* Custis's Recollections, p. 236.

VESSELS.	NO. GUNS.	CAPTAINS.
Ville de Paris	104	{ De Grasse, Lieutenant-General. De Vaugirault, Major de l'Armée.
Auguste	85	{ De Bougainville, Chef d'Escadre. Castellan.
Languedoc	80	{ De Monteil, Chef d'Escadre. Duplessis Parscau.
Sceptre	80	De Vaudreuil.
Saint Esprit	80	De Chabert.
César	74	Coriolis d'Espinouse.
Destin	74	Dumaitz de Goimpy.
Victoire	74	D'Albert Saint-Hyppolite.
Northumberland	74	De Briqueville.
Palmier	74	D'Arros d'Argelos.
Pluton	74	D'Albert de Rions.
Marseillais	74	De Castellane de Masjastre.
Bourgogne	74	De Charitte
Réfléchi	74	Cillart de Suville.
Diadème	74	De Monteclerc.
Caton	74	De Framond.
Citoyen	74	D'Ethy.
Scipion	74	De Clavel.
Magnanime	74	Le Bègue.
Hercule	74	De Turpin de Breuil.
Zélé	74	De Gras Préville.
Hector	74	Renaud d'Aleins.
Souverain	74	De Glanedeves.
Glorieux	74	D'Escars.
Vaillant	70	Chevalier Bernard de Marigny.
Solitaire	64	De Cicé Champion.
Triton	64	Brun de Boades.
Experiment	50	—————

The fleet of Admiral de Grasse numbered fourteen vessels, with a few exceptions the same that M. Destouches had commanded and turned over to him.

The French fleet, with ability to beat off that of the British from the Chesapeake, was an essential factor in the capture of Cornwallis. At this time the question whether the British or French were the greater sea power was unsettled, and it was Rodney's famous victory over the Comte de Grasse

in the West Indies in April, 1781, that has been held by British writers to have "avenged Yorktown."

Writing on his flagship "Formidable," April 14, 1781, Admiral Lord Rodney said :

"It has pleased God, out of his Divine Providence, to grant his Majesty's arms a most complete victory over the fleet of his enemy, commanded by Comte de Grasse, who is himself captured, with the 'Ville de Paris' and four other ships of his fleet, besides one sunk in the action.

"This important victory was obtained on the 12th instant, after a battle which lasted, with unremitting fury, from seven in the morning till half past six in the evening, when the setting sun put an end to the contest.

"Both fleets have greatly suffered, but it is with the highest satisfaction I can assure their Lordships, that though the masts, sails, rigging and hulls of the British fleet are damaged, yet the loss of men has been but small, considering the length of the battle, and the close action they so long sustained."

The British loss was, killed, 240 ; wounded, 797. It had seemed to be the French Admiral's intention to reach the harbor of Cape François without hazarding an action with a superior fleet. For this purpose, after leaving Martinique he kept to windward, steering close to the island of Dominique ; and it appeared that he intended to continue his course near the islands, keeping his convoy between the ships and the shore. He might be encouraged to hope that he would be successful in avoiding an action, as he had on a former occasion completed the conquest of Tobago, notwithstanding the presence of the British naval force, and as he well knew the difficulty of bringing on a battle with a great fleet, inclined to avoid it.

But the prospect of advantage which presented itself to the French Admiral on the 9th was the occasion of his defeat on the 12th. It was the apparent opportunity of disabling the van of the British fleet, whilst the centre and rear were becalmed, which the Comte de Grasse had not sufficient prudence to resist, and this fixed his fate and that of the expedition.



PRESIDENT MCKINLEY PREPARING HIS MESSAGE TO CONGRESS.



WASHINGTON AS AN EXPANSIONIST

The French flagship, the "Ville de Paris," had on board a great quantity of specie, and was considered the finest ship afloat. She was presented by the city of Paris to Louis XV. at the close of the preceding war, and no pains or expense had been spared upon her; she measured 2,300 tons. It is said that she cost, in building and fitting her for sea, no less than £156,000. The "Cæsar" was also a very fine ship, but was burnt on the night after her capture, by which accident 400 of her crew, as well as a lieutenant and 50 British seamen, perished. It is singular that not one of the French ships captured on this day ever reached England, the "Ville de Paris," "Hector" and "Glorieux" foundering on their passage home.

Unaccustomed as England had been to a decisive victory, this affair caused unbounded satisfaction, and Sir George Rodney and Sir Samuel Hood were both elevated to the peerage, and Rear-Admiral Drake and Commodore Affleck created baronets. Public monuments in Westminster Abbey were also ordered to be erected to the memory of the three captains who fell in the action.

The circumstances of the battle were most interesting:

"On the morning of the 8th of April a signal was made through a chain of frigates stationed between St. Lucie and Martinique, that the enemy's fleet had unmoored and were proceeding to sea. Upon this the British fleet, at that moment in complete readiness, took up their anchors, and in little more than two hours were all under weigh, standing towards the enemy with all the sail they could crowd. It was the decided policy of the French commander not on any account to hazard a battle, the sole object of the expedition being that of joining a large sea and land force of the Spaniards then waiting at Cape François in order to proceed against Jamaica with their joint armament, amounting to the overwhelming force of near fifty ships of the line, and twenty thousand land troops."

When the account of the preliminaries of peace arrived in the West Indies, the Marquis de Bouillé, the Governor of Martinique, heretofore our determined enemy, and whose

name is so well known in the history of the French revolution, dined with Admiral Pigot one day in Gros Islet Bay, and in the frankness of conversation told us what their plan was had the war continued. The whole naval force of our allied enemies were to have rendezvoused in Constant Bay, Tobago, to the amount of fifty or sixty sail of the line, and a proportionate land force, sufficient for a sweeping conquest of the whole of our sugar colonies, from Barbadoes to Jamaica. So confident were the Spaniards of their success in this expedition, that Don Galvez, the officer who was to command it, before he sailed from the "Havana," was addressed in council as *Governor of Jamaica*.

The French made an effort to keep out of the way, for they were on a great enterprise, but the wind did not favor them, and the final movement of Rodney was much like that a quarter of a century back, of Nelson at Trafalgar. The comparative force of the fleet was thus figured out :

The sum total of the weight of a broadside of the French fleet exceeded that of the British fleet by four thousand three hundred and ninety-six pounds; and although the number of our guns exceeded that of theirs by one hundred and fifty-six, their lower-deck batteries, in ships of seventy-four guns and upwards, consist of thirty-six pounders, which, according to the difference of the pound of the two nations, are equal to our forty-two pounders, and gave the enemy the above-mentioned preponderance of metal on the whole amount. The difference in the number of men was still more considerable; for besides that the French have a much greater complement of men to the same tonnage, they had the assistance of a large body of land forces.

"After the surrender of the 'Ville de Paris' the Admiral sent Lord Cranstoun, one of the Captains of the 'Formidable,' on board of that ship to beg the Comte de Grasse to remain there at his ease if he chose. He came voluntarily on board the 'Formidable' next morning and remained there for two days, during which time I had a great deal of conversation with him and his officers.

"He bears his reverse of fortune with equanimity, conscious, as he says, that he has done his duty, and I found him very affable and communicative. I told him that the people of England had begun to despair of the safety of Jamaica, fearing that he was to complete his career of success by taking it. He said that he would have done so had his court kept their word by sending him twelve ships of the line in November, as they promised.

“The fate of the ‘*Cæsar*,’ one of the French ships captured, has been truly pitiable. The night of the action, soon after dark, she took fire by an English marine carrying a candle below in search of liquor, and a cask of spirits catching fire, the flames spread so fast that they could not be extinguished. After burning for some time till the fire reached the powder magazine, the ship blew up—the second horrid spectacle of this kind to which I have been witness, having also seen the explosion of the ‘*St. Domingo*,’ a Spanish ship of the line, in the action off Cape St. Vincent, two years before. The French captain, who had been severely wounded, the English officer who boarded her, together with the greater part of the men on board, both British and French, perished. Some saved themselves before the explosion; others, who survived it, and clung to parts of the wreck, were most of them either overwhelmed in the waves, or miserably scorched with the flames; and those who attempted to save them relate, that they saw a spectacle too horrible to describe—the men who clung to the wreck torn off by the voracious sharks which always swarm in these seas after an engagement, and were not yet glutted with the carnage of the preceding day.”

In one of Admiral Lord Rodney’s letters he says :

“Comte de Grasse, who is at this moment sitting in my stern gallery, tells me that he thought his fleet superior to mine, and does so still, though I had two more in number; and I am of his opinion, as his was composed all of large ships, and ten of mine only sixty-fours.

“I am of opinion that the French will not face us again this war, for the ships which have escaped are so shattered and their loss of men so great, that I am sure they will not be able to repair or replace either in the West Indies. Had it not been for this fortunate event, Jamaica had been gone.

“The unwelcome news of the defeat of De Grasse was received by the French king with great firmness and magnanimity. Assembling his council, ‘We must not suffer ourselves,’ said the monarch, ‘to be cast down by this first reverse. We ought, on the contrary, to redouble our zeal, and repair the consequences of it. Monsieur de Castries, give orders for the speedy construction of twelve more ships. I shall take care that the brave men who fell in the battle shall be replaced. I do not intend, however, that the surplus of the expense of this augmentation shall fall upon my people; I will sooner pledge my jewels to supply it. Let them go to work immediately in the dockyards; I will take care that money shall not be wanting. My enemies are mistaken if they rely on this success to rise in their demands. Monsieur de Vergennes, you know that I will make no alteration in the conditions on which I have resolved to establish peace. I will have the honor of my arms repaired.’”

But he had lost the great game played for, the mastery of the sea.

CHAPTER IV.

OUR FIRST APPEARANCE AS A SEA POWER.

The *Ranger*, Eighteen Guns, was the First American Vessel to Sail Under the Stars and Stripes—"Old Glory" First Saluted by a French Admiral in 1778—The First Battle Fought Under the American Flag at Sea—The Capture of the *Drake*—Paul Jones' Attack on Whitehaven—The Attempt to Capture the Earl of Selkirk—The Fight of the *Bon Homme Richard* and the *Serapis*—Sketch of the Life of Paul Jones—His Service in the Russian Navy, and His Death in Paris.

THE first United States man-of-war flying the flag of thirteen stripes and thirteen stars was the eighteen-gun ship *Ranger*, under command of Captain John Paul Jones. The flag was hoisted by him on June 14, 1777, the date of Congress' resolution adopting the present national emblem, and the first nation to salute "Old Glory" was France, when an Admiral in the French Navy returned the salute from the *Ranger* in Quiberon Bay. The amount of damage done by the *Ranger* in destroying British shipping, in attacking not only her vessels, but making assaults upon the English coast, was tremendous.

The *Ranger's* first battle of any consequence was with the *Drake*. This occurred on, April 24, 1778, off the coast of Ireland. The two ships were so close together that the commands on either vessel were audible to the other. Captain Jones opened the engagement with a broadside, which was instantly replied to by the enemy.

In an account of this battle, by John R. Spears, the following is given :

"After a little, the four topsail yards of the *Drake* were cut in two at the masts, and hung useless. The mizzen-

gaff was shot away, and dropped. The rigging and sails were in tatters, worse yet, blood was trickling from her scuppers because of the dead and wounded on her deck. Her commander, Captain Burdon, was killed by a musket ball through his brain. Among the wounded was the first lieutenant, who was mortally hurt. The flag first spread on the *Drake* was shot away, but they raised another. This, too, was shot away, and, falling overboard, it dragged in the water. A little later, and just as the sun was going down behind the Irish hills, the cry for quarter was raised on the *Drake*, and the battle came to an end.

The *Ranger* in this fight had eighteen guns, the *Drake* carried twenty. The *Ranger's* crew numbered one hundred and twenty-three, the *Drake* had one hundred and fifty-one on her books, and, in addition to these, had taken on a number of volunteers from the shore, who had been anxious to help whip the Yankees. These raised the number of her crew to one hundred and sixty by the lowest account, and one hundred and ninety by the highest. The *Ranger* lost two killed, including Lieutenant Wallingsford, and six wounded. The *Drake* lost forty-two killed and wounded. The odds had been against him, but the honors remained with John Paul Jones.

There has been a romantic splendor always in the name of John Paul Jones. There is not a school boy in America who does not hold him as one of the few first favorites among our heroes, and all can tell as a familiar story his tremendous battle with the old and shattered French ship under him, against the solid, hard-fighting Englishman; how there was fire and water in contention for the mastery and no surrender on either side until the last call had been made for the utmost endurance. How Paul Jones hurled his pistol at the head of the panicky subordinate who ran

to strike the flag, and the indomitable captain, after the marvelously protracted combat, was asked, as his standard was shot away, whether he surrendered, and answered that he was only beginning to fight, and came out conqueror. It is remembered that all this was in English waters, held in the greatest estimation as glorious, because it was a challenge to England on her own wide dominion, in sight of her dominating shores,—the whole enterprise and combat guided by an intelligence as luminous as the inspiration of the adventure was daring.

The daring character of Jones is shown in the story of his attack on Whitehaven, on the coast of England, a seaport of considerable prominence. Two boats were lowered from the *Ranger* each manned by fifteen men, armed with cutlasses and pistols; Jones commanding the one and his lieutenant, Wallingford, the other boat. It was their intention to destroy the two hundred and twenty vessels lying there. Wallingford was ordered to take possession of the north side of the harbor, while Jones landed at the town. Whitehaven was guarded, at that time, by two forts commanding thirty-eight guns. Both of these forts Jones captured, spiking the guns and locking up the guards. Wallingford, for some unknown reason, returned to the ship without accomplishing anything, but Jones, with his fourteen men held the town and fired the shipping in the face of thousands of the inhabitants, among which were no less than twelve hundred sailors. Single handed, Jones held off this crowd with an old flint lock pistol, finally entering his boat after giving the fire an opportunity to make good headway. Before Jones was well out in the Bay the townspeople found a few cannon which had been overlooked by him. These they brought to bear upon him in such an unsteady manner as to produce no other

result than to receive in return, sarcastically, a single shot from the pistol of Jones.

While cruising off the east coast of Scotland between the Solway and the Clyde, Jones tried to capture the Earl of Selkirk in order to secure a noted prisoner for exchange. The earl had been an old friend of Jones' father. His seat was at the mouth of the Dee, and there, in his boyhood, our hero had gamboled under the shadow of its majestic oaks. He anchored his vessel in the Solway at noon, and with a few men in a single boat, he landed at a wooded promontory on which the earl's fine estate lay. He learned that his lordship was not at home. Greatly disappointed, he ordered his men back to the boat intending to call again later. His lieutenant, however, a large and fiery seaman, proposed to go to the mansion and plunder it of the family plate. Jones would not listen to this proposition, for the memory of old associations softened his heart toward the old Lady Selkirk, who had been very kind to him in his youth. His lieutenant insisted, however, on carrying out his plans and was seconded by the crew who were eager for prize money, and in defiance of his expostulations they went to the house and demanded the plate. The frightened Lady Selkirk surrendered it with her own hands. Later Jones bought these treasures and sent them back to Lady Selkirk with a letter of regret, apologizing for the annoyance she had been subjected to.

During the early part of 1779 Jones, with a fleet of five vessels, left the French port of the L'Orient in the middle of August, to cruise off the coast of England and Scotland. His flagship was the *Bon Homme Richard*. While making an attack on several armed British vessels in the harbor of Leith, a storm arose driving him into the North Sea, thus preventing him from attacking several English war

ships. He created great excitement and alarm along the Scottish coast, capturing many prizes. On the 23d of September, while off the mouth of the Humber, he discovered a fleet of British merchantmen convoyed by the *Serapis* and *Countess of Scarborough*. Jones at once signaled to crowd on all sail and give chase. All of the vessels of his squadron immediately answered his signals and got under way, excepting the *Alliance*, commanded by Captain Landais. Before the American ships got within gunshot of the enemy, darkness had set in. The fight began, however, in the gloom of night, and was one of the most desperate sea fights on record. The *Bon Homme Richard* and *Serapis*, came so close to each other that their spars and rigging became entangled. Jones, taking advantage of the opportunity, made a rush for the deck of the British ship, but after a short contest with pike, pistol and cutlass, was repulsed. The vessels, in the meantime, separated and there began a fearful broadside fire with the guns muzzle to muzzle. Both vessels were dreadfully shattered, and at one time the *Serapis* was ablaze in a dozen places. Just as the moon rose at half past nine o'clock, the *Richard* took fire and began to sink. Jones seeing that his ship could not last much longer, again began to board the British vessel and a terrific hand to hand fight ensued. The light of the flames of the burning ships revealed to Jones that the main mast of his antagonist was almost in two. He quickly ordered it shot away and within an instant the British ship was made helpless.

The marines fought with the fury of madmen until the *Serapis* struck her colors. Jones hastily transferred his men to the conquered ship and the *Poor Richard* went down. So desperate was the engagement that of the three hundred and seventy-five men on board

the fleet of Jones, three hundred were either killed or wounded.

As Pearson handed his sword to Jones he said, in a surly tone, "It is very painful to deliver up my sword to a man who has fought with a rope around his neck." Jones had been declared a pirate by the British government and he would have been hung had he been captured. Pearson, for his plucky attempt to capture Jones was knighted by the King. Jones on hearing of this said, "Well, he deserves it, and if I fall on him again I will make a lord of him." The battle lasted three hours, and in that time Jones had lost the *Bon Homme Richard* and had taken the *Serapis*. For this victory Congress gave Jones the thanks of the Nation and a gold medal.

The news of this wonderful victory excited the world and respect for American bravery increased. The battle was bloody and unprecedented in naval warfare. For an hour and a half the *Serapis*, a large British frigate, engaged the *Poor Richard* within musket shot. Then the vessels, both in a sinking condition, were run alongside and lashed together. During the battle, the *Alliance*, one of Jones' vessels under Captain Landais, came up and fired a broadside into the stern of the *Bon Homme Richard*, thereby intending, it is thought, to kill Jones and take the *Serapis* in her disabled condition in order to gain the glory. The *Scarborough* was captured after an hour's battle by the *Pallas* under Captain Cottineau.

John Paul Jones was born July 6, 1747, in Scotland. His father, John Paul, was a gardener. When only eighteen our hero commanded a vessel trading with the West Indies. In 1773 he came to Virginia to take charge of the estate of his brother who died there. When war broke out in the colonies he offered his services to Congress, and was made

first lieutenant in the navy in December, 1775. Out of gratitude to General Jones, of North Carolina, he assumed his name; before that he was John Paul. He was a bold commander and gathered up many valuable prizes. He was made captain in the fall of 1776, and given command of the *Alfred*. One of his first acts was to destroy the fisheries at Port Royal, Nova Scotia, capturing a great number of vessels and freight. In 1777 he sailed to Europe in the *Ranger*, the first American ship that sailed under the stars and stripes, and in 1778 received from a French commander the first salute ever given to the American flag by a foreign man-of-war.

Congress gave him a gold medal and a commission as commander of the *America*, which was soon after presented to France. Jones entered the service of Russia as rear admiral in 1787, and in consequence of a victory over the Turks he was made vice admiral and knighted. On his death in Paris the National Assembly decreed him a public funeral. It is, however, not known where he is buried.

This chapter could not be more fitly closed than by recurring to the first time our flag floated over a ship of war, the first battle fought at sea under the flag, and the glorious engagement of everlasting fame between the *Bon Homme Richard* and the *Serapis*, written not only in fiery characters and made resplendent in letters of gold in the triumphs of the brave, but so truly recorded in pages that shall outlast tablets of brass and marble, carved deep with familiar tributes, and above all shining in letters of light in the halls of memory, haunted with the glories that will be cherished through all time, through the decorations that rise in lustre and fade into the shadows, that all but the immortals are and pursue.

CHAPTER V.

CONQUEST OF THE NORTH-WEST TERRITORY.

George Rogers Clark the Winner of the Title for the United States of the North Western Territory, Preparing the Way for the Louisiana Purchase—His Slender Means and Vast Achievements—He Captures Kaskaskia and Vincennes—His Wonderful Wading March in the Wabash Flood—He Died a Poor Man, but one of the Immortals.

THE name of George Rogers Clark should always be remembered as of one who contributed, by acts of almost incredible bravery and hardihood, to broadening the foundations of this Great Republic. His fame should be associated with that of George Washington, as one who was engaged in heroic enterprise to secure good land for the people of the States destined to expand as the course of empire took its way westward, even to the shores of the Pacific. Washington was the foremost man in fighting the French from their Ohio lines, and Clark was the leader who, as our Revolutionary war drew to a close, secured, by capturing British posts, a title that finally could not be ignored in the treaty with England, and at last defined the territory of the United States, to extend beyond the Alleghenies. The Northwest was conquered from the British by Clark. That was the deed of empire.

George Rogers Clark was a native of the prolific county of Albemarle, Virginia, a neighbor and friend of Thomas Jefferson. He emigrated to Kentucky, when that great State was a county of the State of Virginia. The treaty that closed the war of the Revolution was made in 1783, but the final adjustments were not fixed for several years. Mary Cone, in the "Magazine of Western History," cites a

remarkable chapter of our history, in which we came near giving up the Northwest and the Mississippi Valley to the British, in these terms :

“When France entered into an alliance with the United States, one of the conditions of the treaty was that peace with England should not be made by that government until the independence of the United States, in all its entirety, should be acknowledged by Great Britain. By this compact the nation was bound, so that the question as to what territory was actually in possession of the United States when hostilities ceased was one of prime importance, and the answer to it must determine the line of action, at least, for France.

“The territory beyond the disputed line was readily disposed of. England gave up the Floridas to Spain. France relinquished all claim to its once splendid domain, and accepted, instead thereof, the Bermudas. England retained the extended territory in the north. But neither of the three great powers, that had taken the adjustment of matters into their hands, showed much generosity toward the United States. Differing in many things, they agreed in wishing to prevent the expansion of the new country toward the west. There was at first an attempt to make the Alleghenies a cordon to bind them in, and prevent growth in that direction. The utmost liberality of the triple governments sufficed only to grant the Ohio river for the western boundary. Neither of the nations cared very much who should have the vast territory lying to the westward, so that the United States did not have it. If it could be saved from the grasp of the young nation, that had already given proof of will to purpose, and energy to perform, after-consideration might determine what disposition should be made of it.

“The commissioners from the United States were Benjamin Franklin, John Adams and John Jay. Monsieur Vergennes, the able minister of Louis XIV., so argued the case with Dr. Franklin, and so presented the difficulty, if not impossibility, of securing peace on any better terms than making the Ohio river the boundary, that, fearing to lose the whole by trying to grasp too much, he was finally induced to agree to accept that condition, rather than run the risk of renewing the war by demanding more territory. John Jay also was persuaded to consent to the same, though he yielded with much reluctance. There remained only John Adams to be won over to that view of the case. But he, with far-seeing eye, saw that a great nation could not be built up on the Atlantic coast, if severed from the Mississippi and the west. To him it seemed the manifest purpose and intent of Providence that, in the lap of this continent, there should be a mighty nation between the eastern and western extremities, of which the Mississippi should be the bond of union. There could be no great compact and powerful government that did not own and control the great Father of Rivers, which, taking up the waters shed by the Alleghenies on the east, and holding them in his hands, while he gathers together the drainage of the Rocky Mountains on the west, goes on his way with the commingled flood, till he pours the whole into the great ocean; and to the prophetic eye there could be seen to go on the surface of the flood the commerce of a great nation, that owned and governed the whole—the offering of a free people to the welfare and business of the world. It was plain to see that a nation that would be great must hold the Mississippi and its tributaries in its possession. When, therefore, the proposition was made to him to fall short of this goal, and take the Ohio river for his country’s bound-

ary, and thereby relinquish all right to the magnificent domain lying to the westward, sturdy John Adams said: 'No! never!' and he declared that, sooner than agree to such terms, he would go home and exhort his countrymen to buckle on their swords again and load their guns anew, and fight till there was no more blood to be poured out, or until their just demands were agreed to.

"Yet his remonstrance and opposition would not have availed had not the claim to territory west of the Ohio, on the part of the United States, been based upon a show of right. The guarantee of France enabled the commissioners to claim from Great Britain not only all the territory possessed by right of purchase or treaty before the war, but also all that had been conquered during the war. That, at the commencement of hostilities, the colonies did not possess a rood of land, not an outpost or a fort west of the Ohio, was admitted by all the parties concerned; and, but for the courage and enterprise of a brave and able man, with a mere handful of men as brave as himself, there would not have been the shadow of a foundation upon which to base a claim of conquest during the war."

This brave and able man was Geo. Rogers Clark. Bancroft said, as he proposed to record the enterprise of Clark, that "the valor of its actors, their fidelity to one another, and the seeming feebleness of their means and the great results of their hardihood, remain forever memorable in the history of the world." During the Revolutionary war, the west was much neglected, and there was a great deal of opinion to the effect that the country would be better off without the west—more homogeneous and easily self-governed.

George Rogers Clark loved land as Washington did, and marked it not for himself, though all the pay he got was

land and much depreciated paper money, as for the people. He was in his youth, as Washington was, a surveyor, and was thus educated for dominion in the wilderness. He distinguished himself in war against French and Indians, and was offered a commission in the British army. He appeared in Kentucky in 1774, twenty-two years of age, and became a permanent resident two years later. The gifted historical writer Mary Cone says of him :

“He was a born leader, and could not anywhere, and under any circumstances, have been kept in the background. Of fine appearance and commanding presence, he so impressed those with whom he came in contact with his superiority, that its recognition was prompt and sincere. Yet he was genial and heartsome to such an extent that it was a willing obeisance he gained from the hearts of his fellow-men. The first office of trust to which he was chosen was that of representative of the county of Kentucky in the House of Burgesses in Virginia. It was the first time the district had been represented in the body by which it was governed. He and one Gabriel Jones, the other representative, set out together for the capital of Virginia, but their progress was so slow, and their journey so long, that the legislature had adjourned before they reached Williamsburg, the seat of government. Determined to be of use to the county he had been chosen to represent, Clark waited upon the governor, the celebrated Patrick Henry, and after stating the necessities and exposed condition of the people of Kentucky, asked for a supply of gunpowder to help them in defending their homes against the attack of the Indians. It was not until after much entreaty and skillful manœuvring that he succeeded in obtaining from the council an order for the needed supply. The trouble was not over then. He incurred great risk and encountered

numerous difficulties in getting the gunpowder to Kentucky."

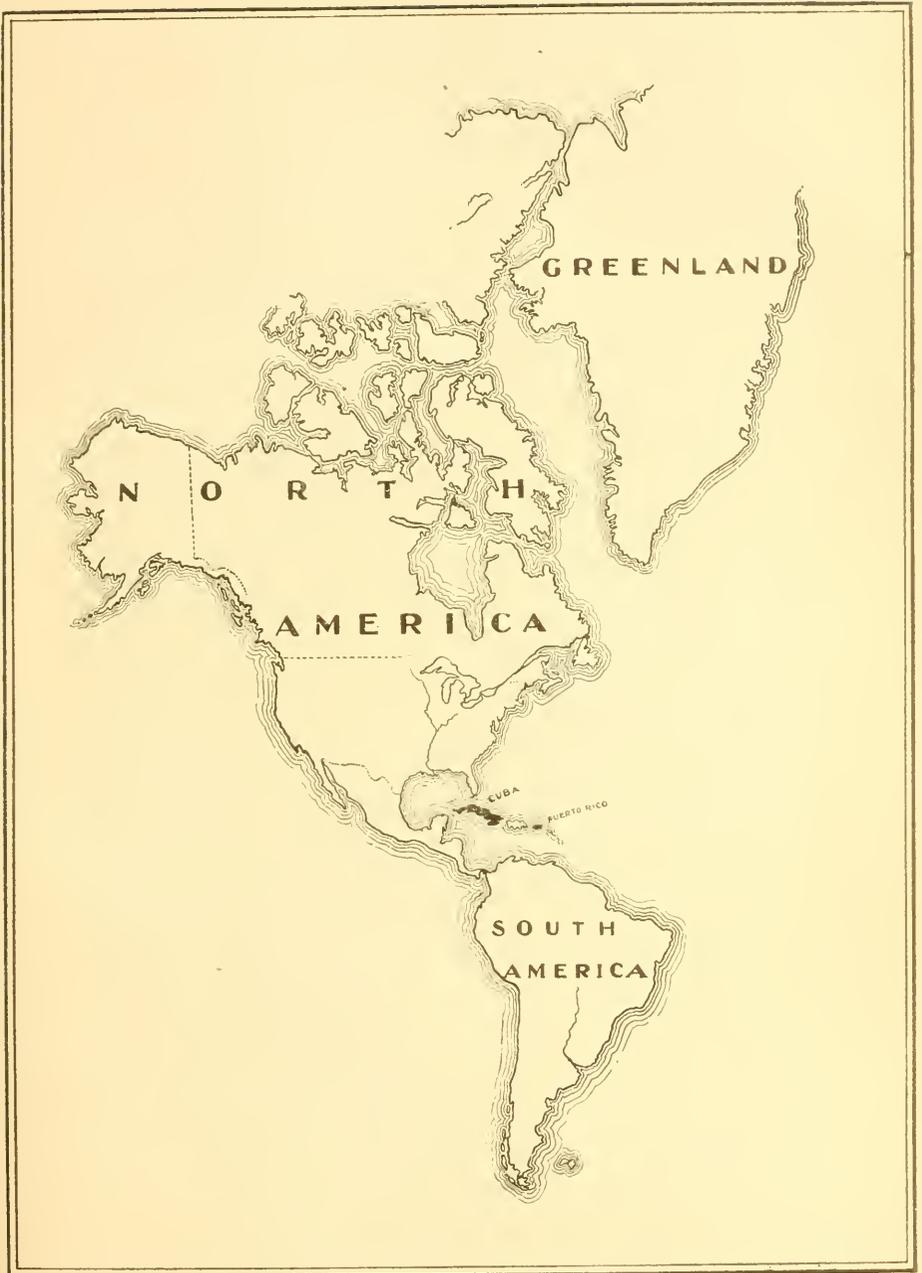
This was the beginning of Clark's great achievements. The British were in possession, at this time, of important posts ceded to them by France in 1765. Kaskaskia, Vincennes, called St. Vincents, and Detroit, were held by British garrisons. Kaskaskia was the capital of Illinois, called by the French Upper Louisiana, and was settled in 1683. In 1777 Kaskaskia had two hundred and fifty houses, and the inhabitants were French. Vincennes, one hundred and fifty miles above the mouth of the Wabash, was called by the English, Sackville. The place was named by the French for Francois Morgan de Vincenne, who commanded the post in 1733. Detroit was an old French town that had fallen into the hands of the English along with the rest of the spoil of France. These places were depots for arming the savages, and there was a trade in scalps. The policy of the English was to confederate the Indian tribes, and use them to strike the revolted colonies along the Atlantic, in the rear. It was the great merit of Clark to understand the situation, both as soldier and statesman. He saw all the circumstances, generalized facts, and studied out conclusions. He made particular note of the fact that the military posts of the British were in French towns, and that the French might render him assistance as against the British. There was some Indian dissatisfaction with the British, especially in the Delaware and Shawnee tribes. Clark kept his plans secret and sent two young men in the summer of 1777 to examine the British posts. Their report was so encouraging that he set out at once for Williamsburg to get aid from Virginia. The surrender of Burgoyne, while he was making the journey, caused him to be listened to. In November Clark stated his plans to



THE LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION IN THE YELLOWSTONE REGION.



MARCUS WHITMAN AND DANIEL WEBSTER.



SPAIN CEDES HER LAST FOOHOLD IN AMERICA TO REPUBLICANISM.



SPANISH-AMERICA ONE HUNDRED YEARS AGO.

Governor Henry. As secrecy had to be observed, the legislature could not be taken into confidence. Clark wanted five hundred men. Among those trusted with the secret were Thomas Jefferson, George Mason and George Wythe. Clark believed in himself so much that they believed in him. The governor promoted Clark to a colonelcy, and he received January 2, 1778, two sets of instructions, the one for show, the other for use, twelve hundred pounds in degenerate currency and the privilege of enlisting his men anywhere west of the Alleghenies. He also received a guarantee that these men would use their best endeavors to secure a grant of three hundred acres of land to every man who enlisted in the undertaking. The governor addressed orders to a Virginia officer at Fort Pitt, desiring him to furnish ammunition, boats and all necessary equipments. The secret orders which Colonel Clark received from Governor Henry closed with these words :

“The corps you are to command are to receive the pay and allowance of militia. . . . It is in contemplation to establish a fort near the mouth of Ohio. Cannon will be wanted to fortify it. Part of those at Kaskaskia will be easily brought thither or otherwise secured as circumstances will make necessary. You are to apply to General Hand, at Pittsburg, for powder and lead necessary for this expedition. If he can't supply it, the person who has that which Captain Lynn brought from New Orleans can. Lead was sent to Hampshire by my orders that it may be delivered to you. Wishing you success,

“I am, sir, your humble servant,

“P. HENRY.”

As Clark could not make public explanation of his pur-

poses, and was supposed to be raising troops to protect Kentucky; recruiting was slow. He had expected to find all the men wanted at Fort Pitt, but got only one hundred. He sent agents to Kentucky, got a few additional adventurers on the way, and while descending the Ohio heard of the French alliance. He knew as Cone, the historian, says :

“As the forts he intended to attack and take, if possible, were in a territory occupied mainly by French inhabitants, it would go far toward securing their good will, and ultimately their assistance, to be able to assure them that the King of France and the government of France were friends to his cause and enemies to the alien garrison to which they were already none too friendly. The voyage down the river was successfully accomplished and the falls of the Ohio reached in safety. The troops were landed on Corn Island, opposite Louisville, and Colonel Clark proceeded to fortify the island that he might, with the hope of safety, leave there the families that had come with him from Pennsylvania.

“The time had at last come when he might and ought to reveal to his men the important secret that concerned them so nearly. Colonel Clark assembled his troops, and in a few stirring words made known to them the real object of the expedition. It was not to defend Kentucky that they had been mustered in, but to take the offensive and dislodge the British from the forts which they were making the centres of supplies for the Indians, and from whence these savages were sent out to murder defenceless women and helpless children, and burn and torment every living thing that fell into their hands. The announcement was received with shouts of applause.”

One company fell out of line, however. Some Tennesseans failed to appear, and on the 24th of June Clark

started with four small companies, all told one hundred and fifty men. Each man carried his own baggage. The first thing was to take Kaskaskia. The boats were rushed down the Ohio, and in four days were at the mouth of the Tennessee. A boat with hunters eight days out from Kaskaskia was captured, and the news was encouraging. The distance overland was about 100 miles. Of Colonel Clark it is said: "He fared no better in any way than his men; carried his own knapsack and gun, bore his full share in every hardship, and with story and song tried to interest and amuse his men."

There were fifty miles of rough country and fifty of prairies, very swampy. July 4th Kaskaskia was in sight. Boats were found a mile from the fort, the men crossed, and Clark's journal says: "I immediately divided my little army into two divisions, ordered one to surround the town and with the other broke into the fort and secured the governor, M. Rocheblame. In fifteen minutes we had every street secured and the garrison, with their commandant, prisoners. . . . I sent runners through the town ordering the people on pain of death to keep close in their houses. . . . Before daylight we had the whole town disarmed."

The English were in superior force. Colonel Clark's success was due to the secrecy of his expedition. He began to work at once upon the fears and jealousies of the French. He had the chief men of the town collected, and, after explaining to them the causes of the war between Great Britain and her colonies, told them that though the fate of war had placed them in his hands, it was the custom of the Americans to make those whom they captured free. If they were already wearing shackles they were knocked off. They had been reduced to subjection by the English. The king of France, their king, was the friend of the Americans.

He had promised to help them in their fight with the British. Therefore Frenchmen everywhere were regarded as brothers by the Americans. They were now free to choose. If they preferred to join the British, the enemy of France as well as America, they could do so. But if they chose to take the oath of allegiance and become American citizens, they might do that, and they should be entitled to all the rights of citizenship. The reply was that they would be the happiest people in the world if they might be allowed to unite with the Americans. Their priest, Pierre Gibault, had recently come from Canada, where he had heard the causes of the war discussed, and knew the merits of the case. He was already in favor of the American cause, and worked zealously to bring his people over to his views. They wanted permission to meet in their church, and were told to do so as often as they pleased, and they became devoted to Clark and his cause. Many of the Indians became converted to the American cause. His next objective point was Fort St. Vincent; but his force was so small it was necessary to keep it concealed except to the guards. Re-enforcements were promised, but they came not. The Kaskaskia priest visited Vincennes and reported favorably of the disposition of the people. Clark sent a proclamation to the people about the fort. Captain Helm accompanied the priest. The commandant of the fort was absent at Detroit, feeling perfectly secure. The people transferred their allegiance, and Captain Helm took possession. Suddenly the British came down the Wabash eight hundred strong under General Hamilton and retook Vincennes. There were two men in the garrison when it surrendered; Captain Helm and one private.

“When the attack began Captain Helm placed a cannon in the open gate of the fort, which was charged by the

soldier, a man named Henry, while Captain Helm stood by with a lighted torch ready to touch it off. When Governor Hamilton and his troops were within hailing distance, Captain Helm cried 'Halt!' The governor demanded the surrender of the garrison. Captain Helm declared with an oath that no man should enter until he knew the terms demanded. The answer was, 'You shall have the honors of war.' The conditions were accepted, and the garrison surrendered with its entire force,—one officer and one private." Hamilton was reported on the march to retake Kaskaskia, but he did not come. There was a story that an expedition had started from Pittsburg to capture Detroit, and Clark was elated, but his information was untrue. He concluded that his safe course was to take the offensive, because if he could not take Hamilton, Hamilton would take him. It was midwinter and Hamilton proposed an early spring campaign. Col. Clark says:

"I collected the officers and told them the possibility I thought there was of turning the scale in our favor. They were all eager for the undertaking and all hands set about getting ready for an enterprise that to the eye of cool, calculating persons would have appeared not only hazardous, but foolhardy."

As many recruits as possible were gathered from among the French. The women took a warm interest in the movement and presented standards to the different companies and cheered and encouraged the men. A large boat was prepared which mounted two four-pounders and four large swivels; an abundant supply of provisions was put on board. The boat was called "The Willing" and Lieutenant Rogers in command. He had on board only forty-six men; but few as there were of them, there was

enough courage and energy among them to have supplied a ship of war. This boat was to follow the Kaskaskia river into the Mississippi, go down that to the Ohio, and up the Ohio till the mouth of the Wabash was reached. The Wabash would bring it to St. Vincent's, it was hoped, in time to meet the force that was to go across the country, and co-operate with them in taking the fort.

Colonel Clark started on the 5th of February, 1778, He says :

"I cannot account for it, but I still had an inward assurance of success, and never could, when weighing everything, doubt it. But I had some inward check."

The distance to be traversed was 250 miles. The force numbered 170. The enemy had about 680. Major Bowman, with Clark, kept a journal :

"February 7.—Began our march early ; made a good march for about nine hours ; the roads very bad with mud and water.

"8th.—March early through the waters, which we now begin to meet in these large and level plains, where, from the flatness of the country, the water rests for a considerable time before it drains off. Notwithstanding which, our men were in great spirits, though much fatigued.

"13th.—Arrived at the two Wabashes. Although a league asunder, they now make but one. We set to making a canoe.

"14th.—Finished the canoe and put it into the river about four in the afternoon.

"15th.—Ferried across the Wabashes (now known as the Little Wabash and Muddy rivers), it being then five miles in water to the opposite hills, where we encamped. Still raining. Orders not to fire any guns in future but in case of necessity.

“16th.—Marched all day through mud and water; our provisions begin to be short.

“17th.—Marched very early; crossed several runs very deep. Sent Mr. Kennedy, our commissary, with three men to cross the river Embarrass, if possible, and proceed to a plantation opposite Post St. Vincent’s, in order to steal boats or canoes to ferry us across the Wabash. Found the country all overflowed with water. We strove to find the Wabash. Traveled till eight o’clock in mud and water, but could find no place to encamp upon. Still kept marching on, but after some time Mr. Kennedy and his party returned—found it impossible to cross the river Embarrass. We found the water falling from a small spot of ground. Stayed there the remainder of the night. Drizzly and dark weather.

“18th.—At break of day heard Governor Hamilton’s morning gun. Set off and marched down the river. Saw some fine land. About two o’clock came to the bank of the Wabash; made rafts for four men to cross and go up town and steal boats. But they spent all day and night in the water to no purpose, for there was not one foot of dry land to be found.” In the closing paragraph of his journal, on the eighteenth, Major Bowman says: “No provisions now for two days. Hard fortune.”

“20th.—Camp very quiet but hungry. Some almost in despair.

“22d.—Colonel Clark encourages his men, which gives them great spirits. Marched on in the waters. Those that were weak and famished with so much fatigue, went in the canoes. . . . No provisions yet. Lord help us!

“23d.—Set off to cross the plain called Horseshoe plain, about four miles long, all covered with water breast high. Here we expected some of our brave men must certainly perish, having froze in the night and so long fasting.”

Colonel Clark writes of this dreadful time :

"This last day's march through the water was superior to anything the Frenchmen had any idea of. . . . A canoe was sent off and returned without finding that we could pass. I went in her myself and sounded the water, and found it deep as to my neck. I returned with the design to have the men transported on board the canoes to the sugar camp, which I knew would spend the whole day and ensuing night, as the vessels would pass slowly through the bushes. The loss of so much time to men half-starved was a matter of consequence. I would have given a great deal now for a day's provisions or for one of our horses. I returned but slowly to the troops, giving myself time to think. On our arrival all ran to hear our report. Every eye was fixed on me. I unfortunately spoke in a serious manner to one of the officers. The whole were alarmed without knowing what I said. I viewed their confusion for about one minute, whispered to those near me to do as I did, immediately put some water in my hand, poured in powder, blackened my face, gave the war-whoop, marched into the water without saying a word. The party gazed, fell in one after another without saying a word, like a flock of sheep. I ordered the men near me to give a favorite song of theirs. It soon passed through the line and the whole went on cheerfully. . . . They reached a sugar camp in which there was about half an acre of dry ground. Hungry and weary, the men lay down there and slept till morning. The most of the weather we had on our march was moist and warm for the season. This was the coldest night we had. The ice in the morning was from one-half to three-quarters of an inch thick near the shores and in still water. A little after sunrise I lectured the whole. I concluded by informing them that passing the plain that was

in full view, and reaching the opposite woods, would put an end to their fatigue, and immediately stepped into the water. A huzza took place. As we generally marched through the water in a line, before the third entered I halted and called to Major Bowman, ordering him to put to death any man who refused to march, as we wished to have no such person among us. The whole gave a cry of approbation and on we went. This was the most trying of all the difficulties we had experienced.

“I generally kept fifteen or twenty of the strongest men near myself, and judged from my own feelings what must be those of the others. Getting about the middle of the plain, the water about mid-deep, I found myself sensibly failing, and as there were no trees or bushes for the men to support themselves, I feared that many of the most weak would be drowned. I ordered the canoes to make the land, discharge their loading, and ply backward and forward with all diligence and pick up the men, and to encourage the party, sent some of the men forward, with orders, when they got to a certain distance, to pass the word back that the water was getting shallower, and when getting near the woods to cry out ‘land.’ This stratagem had the desired effect. The men, encouraged by it, exerted themselves almost beyond their abilities—the weak holding by the stronger. Getting to the woods, where the men expected land, the water was up to my shoulders, but gaining the woods was of great consequence. All the low men and weakly hung to the trees and floated on all old logs until they were taken off by the canoes. The tall and strong got ashore and built fires. Many would reach the shore and fall with their bodies half in the water, not being able to support themselves without it.”

Colonel Clark's expedition was in a forlorn state when

Vincennes was approached. The armed boat with fifty men and provisions did not come. There was no food, and the march had been exhausting and distressing. A young Frenchman out shooting ducks was taken prisoner, and stated the fort was finished, and there were six hundred men to defend it. There was one gleam of encouragement, the fact that the French were the friends of the Americans, and there was no thought that Clark would venture on a winter campaign. The case was desperate. An Indian canoe loaded with supplies was captured and starvation averted. Clark wrote a letter to the inhabitants of the town saying that he would take it, and they should remain in their houses. He then moved in full sight of the fort, over uneven ground, and took advantage of the hills to deceive the enemy as to his strength. The history of the manœuver is given by Cone as follows :

“When Clark was enlisting his men in Illinois, flags had been given generally by ladies to each of the small bodies of troops gathered in the towns and villages. These were hung out to the wind on this occasion, and were enough for a thousand men. By marching and counter-marching through the ravine and over the elevations in the view of the garrison, these men seemed to be tenfold more in number than they really were.”

After three days' skirmishing Clark demanded the surrender of the fort, and being refused, made so vigorous an attack that Governor Hamilton asked for an interview. Clark was so resolute and exacting that he imposed upon Hamilton, who, intimidated, agreed to surrender on these terms.

1st.—Lieutenant-Colonel Hamilton engages to deliver up to Colonel Clark Fort Sackville as it is at present, with all its stockade, etc.

2d.—The garrison are to deliver themselves as prisoners of war, and march out with their arms and accoutrements, etc.

At ten o'clock on the 25th of February Colonel Hamilton surrendered the fort, the sentries were relieved, the tri-colored flag soon waved from the tower of the garrison and thirteen guns were fired to celebrate the victory. Two days after the surrender the armed batteau arrived. It was estimated that the stores surrendered were worth \$50,000. Hamilton was sent to Virginia, imprisoned and treated as a felon, for he had been engaged in "buying hair," that is, scalps taken by the Indians. Washington at last decided to have Hamilton treated as a prisoner of war. Colonel Clark's personal ascendancy alone seems to account for the surrender of six hundred men in a well-furnished fort to less than two hundred. He was ambitious to take Detroit, but the paper money given him to defray expenses depreciated so that he had to use his personal credit, and was disabled and impoverished. He was, after two years, made a brigadier-general and ordered to raise men to capture Detroit, but failed, for he had to fight Indians with the troops he succeeded in raising. This was in 1781. Misfortunes crowded upon him, and it seemed that having, with slender forces, done wonderful things, establishing the title of his country to an empire, his personal force declined, and, that made manifest, he became a dreamer of vague triumphs rather than an actor who realized ambitious hopes. Virginia granted, in 1781, "one hundred and fifty thousand acres of land to the officers and soldiers who aided General Clark in his enterprise, the land to be located between the Scioto and Little Miami rivers, which tract was reserved for that purpose when Virginia relinquished to the general government her claims to territory west of the Ohio."

Robert E. Coleman, writing in "Harper's Magazine," in 1861, quotes Governor Harrison writing to Colonel Clark July 3d, 1783 :

"The conclusion of the war and the distressed condition of the finances of the State call on us to adopt the most prudent economy. It is for this reason alone that I have come to the determination to give over, for the present, all thought of carrying on offensive war with the Indians, which, you will easily perceive, will render necessary the employment of a general officer in that quarter, and will therefore consider yourself out of command. But before I take leave I feel called upon, in the most forcible manner, to return you my thanks, and those of my council, for the very great and singular services you have rendered to your country by wresting so great and extensive a country out of the hands of the British enemy, repelling the attacks of their savage allies, and carrying on a successful war in the very heart of their country. This tribute of thanks and praise, so justly your due, I am happy to communicate to you as the united voice of the Executive," etc.

Colonel Clark was given a tract of land in Indiana, opposite Louisville. Coleman says of the close of Clark's career : "His day of glory was over, and his career finished at an age when that of many has but just begun, and at thirty-one he was laid aside like a superannuated veteran. The very prime of that powerful and active genius was lost to his country, as well as to his own fame, and left to rust away in obscurity ; or, sadder still, to destroy itself by seeking a forbidden relief from vain longing and repinings, while war was raging along the whole frontier, from Lake Huron to the confines of Florida ; and when at times it appeared as if the misdirected power of the whole continent combined would fail to hold that country which he,

with a mere handful of men, had wrested from the hands of the English.

“At last, so inefficient was the protection afforded by the regular army, and so audacious had the attacks of the savages on the Ohio become, that the Kentuckians thought it once more necessary to take their defence into their own hands. After three years of retirement Clark was again called to take command of an expedition against the tribes in Indiana. But he was no longer the leader who had waded the flooded Wabash to recapture Vincennes, and whose swift blows had so promptly avenged the fall of Ruddell’s Station, or the defeat of the Blue Licks. The army, numbering about twelve hundred men, marched from the falls in the summer of 1786 toward Vincennes, expecting to meet at that point their provisions, which had been placed on keel-boats to be transported up the Wabash. But it soon became evident that the General no longer possessed that absolute ascendancy over his soldiers which had rendered his former operations so marvellously rapid and energetic. A spirit of defiance among the superior officers, and of disaffection and insubordination among the men, quickly began to manifest itself. This was increased to absolute mutiny when it was discovered that the commander had sent a flag of truce to the enemy for the purpose of demanding whether they would have peace or war. This act, which at once destroyed all chance of effecting a surprise, would appear, at first sight, to indicate a state of mind bordering on fatuity. But it is all explained when we learn that the whole enterprise was unlawful, as Kentucky had no right to send, without the authority of the Federal Government, such an expedition against tribes living beyond her own borders; tribes, too, with whom Clark himself had, as United States Commissioner, negotiated a

treaty of peace only one year before, and he was naturally unwilling to make an unannounced attack upon people who had never been proved to have violated that treaty. His error was in accepting the command at all under these circumstances."

The expedition ended in the mutiny and dispersion of the force. Coleman says :

"This failure gave a blow to the reputation of Clark from which it never recovered. Yet no vital error can be discovered in his conduct, and had his advice been followed success would have been certain. In vigor or generalship we can see no diminution ; it was his ability to command obedience that was gone."

Colonel Clark had a fault to commit. He was one of those captivated by the French Minister Genet, and undertook to raise troops in Kentucky to go against the Spaniards in Louisiana, and accepted a position as Major-General in the French army. This proved fictitious. Genet lost his head and left the country under a cloud. Wilkinson intrigued against Clark and wrote (Coleman's account) "exultingly, to a friend in Lexington, 'The sun of General Clark's military glory has set never more to rise !' 'There was,' says a contemporary historian, 'a meaning in this sentence which those who had fathomed Wilkinson knew how to interpret and appreciate.' But the malignant prophecy was fulfilled to the letter. Clark's military reputation suffered an eclipse from which it never emerged ; nor did he ever recover the personal popularity he had lost by this miserable affair, and henceforth lived neglected, not only by the nation to which he had rendered such inestimable services, but also by the State which may be said to have owed its very existence to him. For six years his acts had constituted almost the whole history of Kentucky

and the West. At the age of thirty-four he disappears so completely from that history that, during the thirty-two succeeding years of his life, his name is to be found only upon one obscure page thereof."

Theodore Roosevelt writes in his "The Winning of the West" of the collapse of the Kentucky movement against the Spaniards in Louisiana: "The whole movement collapsed when Genet was recalled early in 1794, Clark being forced at once to abandon his expedition. Clark found himself out of pocket as the result of what he had done; and as there was no hope of reimbursing himself by Spanish plunder, he sought to obtain from the French Government reimbursement for the expenses, forwarding to the French Assembly, through an agent in France, his bill for the 'Expenses of the Expedition ordered by Citizen Genet.' The agent answered that he would try to secure the payment; and after he got to Paris he first announced himself as hopeful; but later he wrote that he had discovered that the French agents were really engaged in a dangerous conspiracy against the Western country, and finally had to admit that the claim was disallowed."

Afflictions of rheumatism and paralysis closed Colonel Clark's life in 1818, and he was buried at Locust Grove, near Louisville. The territory that Colonel Clark won by the capture of the British posts of Kaskaskia and Vincennes was organized by Virginia as the county of Illinois, and the historian Cone justly observes:

"Had not this conquest of General Clark been made, the Alleghenies, or at best the Ohio river, would have been the western boundary of the United States, and there would then have been no inducement to effect the magnificent purchase made by President Jefferson of the French government, in 1802, nor should we have secured the sub-

sequent addition of the grand stretch of country which ends only where the Pacific washes its border."

Though the life of Colonel George Rogers Clark closed in poverty, and he was held to have been unsuccessful by the common-place estimates, he had served his country beyond all calculation, and will be more and more remembered and honored. He had done enough for immortality. His mistakes were for a day; his glory will endure forever.

CHAPTER VI.

JEFFERSON'S TERRITORIAL ENTERPRISE.

Meriwether Lewis and William Clark carry Westward the Course of Empire—
Their Journey up the Missouri River—Their Passage through the Yellow-
stone Region—On the Great Divide—Down the Columbia—Shooting the
Rapids through the Dalles on to the Pacific.

VERY largely it was the conquest of the northwest by George Rogers Clark of Virginia and Kentucky that made the purchase of Louisiana so commanding a policy and magnificent a bargain; and Clark saved the bulk of the continent by the capture of two petty military posts, thus gaining title to the vast territories north of the Ohio and east of the Mississippi, when even Franklin was ready to surrender it, as Canada was given up. President Jefferson, after the purchase of Louisiana and when Napoleon had spent the money to manufacture the superior muskets with which he equipped his army at Boulogne and won the victories of Austerlitz and Jena, devised and instructed the Lewis and Clark expedition, conferring the high historical distinction of leadership upon his friend and secretary, Meriwether Lewis. The object was to explore the Missouri river and find its sources in the Rocky Mountains, and beyond that to trace the grand river that flowed to the Pacific through the land of which Bryant wrote the famous line:

“Where rolls the Oregon and hears no sound.”

This exploration was an enterprise that flashed from the brain of the far-sighted Jefferson, and served to guide and spread the Americanism of our nation to the summit of the Rockies and carry the march westward of our course of

empire to the Pacific. The voyages of Columbus, and the navigators Magellan and Captain Cook were hardly more adventurous, crossing the unknown Atlantic and circumnavigating the globe, in search of new worlds and remote archipelagoes, than the exploration of the Missouri and the Oregon by Lewis and Clark, through the trackless wilderness, swarming with savages, and stored with the riches of virgin soil and forest and mountain mines, the inheritance of the children of the Republic. We quote and summarize the features of the official report. The narrative is one of the indispensable threads that are the clues we must follow, to find the sources of our grandeur; and the secrets of our destiny were revealed, as Lewis and Clark ascended the river of North America that rivals the Nile in length and converted mystery into history.

On the acquisition of Louisiana, in the year 1803, the attention of the government of the United States was early directed towards exploring and improving the new territory. Accordingly, in the summer of the same year, an expedition was planned by President Jefferson, for the purpose of discovering the course and sources of the Missouri, and the most convenient water communication thence to the Pacific ocean. His private secretary, Captain Meriwether Lewis, and Captain William Clark, both officers of the army of the United States, were associated in the command of this enterprise. After receiving the requisite instructions, Captain Lewis left the seat of government, and, being joined by Captain Clark at Louisville, in Kentucky, proceeded to St. Louis, where they arrived in the month of December. Their original intention was to pass the winter at La Charette, the highest settlement on the Missouri. But the Spanish commandant of the province, not having received an official account of its transfer to the

United States, was obliged, by the general policy of his government, to prevent strangers from passing through the Spanish territory. They, therefore, encamped at the mouth of the Wood river, on the eastern side of the Mississippi, out of his jurisdiction, where they passed the winter in disciplining the men, and making the necessary preparations for setting out early in the spring, before which the cession was officially announced. The party consisted of nine young men from Kentucky, fourteen soldiers of the United States army who volunteered their services, two French watermen, an interpreter and hunter, and a black servant belonging to Captain Clark—all these, except the last, were enlisted to serve as privates during the expedition, and three sergeants were appointed from amongst them by the captains. In addition to these were engaged a corporal and six soldiers, and nine watermen to accompany the expedition as far as the Mandan nation, in order to assist in carrying the stores, or repelling an attack, which was most to be apprehended between Wood river and that tribe. The necessary stores were subdivided into seven bales, and one box, containing a small portion of each article in case of accident. They consisted of a great variety of clothing, working utensils, locks, flints, powder, ball, and articles of the greatest use. To these were added fourteen bales and one box of Indian presents, distributed in the same manner, and composed of richly laced coats and other articles of dress, medals, flags, knives and tomahawks for the chiefs—ornaments of different kinds, particularly beads, looking-glasses, handkerchiefs, paints, and generally such articles as were deemed best calculated for the taste of the Indians. The party was to embark on board of three boats; the first was a keel boat fifty-five feet long, drawing three feet of water, carry-

ing one large square sail and twenty-two oars, a deck of ten feet in the bow and stern formed a forecastle and cabin, while the middle was covered by lockers, which might be raised so as to form a breastwork in case of attack. This was accompanied by two perioques or open boats, one of six, and the other of seven oars. Two horses were at the same time to be led along the banks of the river for the purpose of bringing home game, or hunting in case of scarcity.

The report reads: "All the preparations being completed, we left our encampment on Monday, May 14th, 1804. This spot is at the mouth of the Wood river, a small stream which empties into the Mississippi, opposite to the entrance of the Missouri. It is situated in latitude $38^{\circ}, 55', 19''$ north, and longitude from Greenwich $89^{\circ}, 57', 45''$. On both sides of the Mississippi the land for two or three miles is rich and level, but gradually swells into a high, pleasant country, with less timber on the western than on the eastern side, but all susceptible of cultivation. The point which separates the two rivers on the north, extends for fifteen or twenty miles, the greater part of which is an open and level plain, in which the people of the neighborhood cultivate what little grain they raise. Not being able to set sail before four o'clock, P.M., we did not make more than four miles, and encamped on the first island opposite a small creek, called Cold Water.

"The next morning we set sail at five o'clock. At the distance of a few miles, we passed a remarkable large coal hill on the north side, called by the French, La Charbonniere, and remained at the town of St. Charles.

"On the 22d we made about eighteen miles, passing several small farms on the bank of the river, a number of islands and a large creek on the south side, called Bon-

homme, or Goodman's river. A small number of emigrants from the United States have settled on the sides of this creek, which are very fertile. We also passed some high lands, and encamped, on the north side, near a small creek. Here we met with a camp of Kickapoo Indians who had left us at St. Charles, with a promise of procuring us some provisions by the time we overtook them. They now made us a present of four deer, and we gave them in return two quarts of whiskey.

"This tribe resides on the heads of the Kaskaskia and Illinois rivers, on the other side of the Mississippi, but occasionally hunt on the Missouri.

"June 7th, we passed at four and a half miles Big Manitou creek, near which is a limestone rock inlaid with flint of various colors, and embellished, or at least covered, with uncouth paintings of animals and inscriptions. We landed to examine it, but found the place occupied by a nest of rattlesnakes, of which we killed three. We also examined some licks and springs of salt water, two or three miles up this creek. We then proceeded by some willow islands and encamped at the mouth of Good Woman river on the north. It is about thirty-five yards wide and said to be navigable for boats for several leagues. The hunters, who had hitherto given us only deer, brought in this evening three bears, and had seen some indication of buffalo.

"On the morning of the 12th, we passed through difficult places in the river, and reached Plum Creek on the south side. At one o'clock we met two rafts loaded, one with furs, the other with the tallow of buffalo; they were from the Sioux nation, and on their way to St. Louis; but we were fortunate enough to engage one of the party, a Mr. Durion, who had lived with that nation more than twenty years, and was high in their confidence, to accom-

pany us thither. On the 13th, we passed at between four and five miles, a bend of the river, and two creeks on the north, called Round Bend creeks. Between these two creeks is the prairie, in which once stood the ancient village of the Missouri. Of this village there remains no vestige, nor is there anything to recall this great and numerous nation, except a feeble remnant of about thirty families. They were driven from their original seats by the invasion of the Sauks and other Indians from the Mississippi, who destroyed, at this village, two hundred of them in one contest; the rest sought refuge near the Little Osage, on the other side of the river. The encroachment of the same enemies forced, about thirty years since, both these nations from the banks of the Missouri. A few retired with the Osage, and the remainder found an asylum on the river Platte, among the Ottoes, who are themselves declining. Opposite the plain there was an island and a French fort, but there is now no appearance of either, the successive inundations having washed them away, as the willow island which is in the situation described by Du Pratz, and is small and of recent formation. Five miles from this place is the mouth of the Grand River, where we encamped. This river follows a course nearly south or southeast, and is between eighty and a hundred yards wide where it enters the Missouri, near a delightful and rich plain. A raccoon, a bear and some deer were obtained to-day."

There is an enormous amount of detail in the report, for President Jefferson was a very determined man in his anxiety for exact and voluminous information. Reaching the Platte country, there was a halt to send a report to the President, and there is complaint of the scarcity of game, but "the hunters saw deer, turkeys and grouse; we have also an abundance of ripe grapes; and one of our men

caught a white catfish, the eyes of which were small, and its tail resembling that of a dolphin. The present season is that in which the Indians go out into the prairies to hunt the buffalo; but as we discovered some hunters' tracks, and observed the plains on fire in the direction of their villages, we hoped that they might have returned to gather the green corn, and therefore despatched two men to the Ottoes or Pawnee villages with a present of tobacco and an invitation to the chiefs to visit us."

Then follows an account of the Indian villages and tribes, closing with this remark: "All these tribes live in villages and raise corn, but during the intervals of culture rove in the plains in quest of buffalo." As for the river, it was "much more crooked since we passed the River Platte, though generally speaking, not so rapid; more of prairie, with less timber, and cottonwood in the low grounds, and oak, black walnut, hickory and elm." Some Ottoe and Missouri Indians came in with a Frenchman who "resided among them, and interpreted for us. Captain Lewis and Clark went out to meet them, and told them that we would hold a council in the morning. In the meantime we sent them some roasted meat, pork, flour and meal; in return for which they made us a present of watermelons. We learned that our man Liberte had set out from their camp a day before them; we were in hopes that he had fatigued his horse or lost himself in the woods, and would soon return, but we never saw him again."

A great deal of space is given the Indians, and in one case the red men were presented with "paint, garters, and cloth ornaments of dress; and to this we added a canister of powder, a bottle of whiskey, and a few presents to the whole, which appeared to make them perfectly satisfied. The air-gun, too, was fired, and astonished them greatly,

The absent chief was an Ottoo, named Weahrushhah, which in English degenerates into Little Thief." At a Sioux village the interpreter and a few others were met by a "committee" "with a buffalo robe, on which they desired to carry their visitors, an honor which they declined, informing the Indians that they were not the commanders of the boats. As a great mark of respect, they were then presented with a fat dog, already cooked, of which they partook heartily, and found it well flavored." At one of the Indian villages there was a dance, "and in the course of their amusement we threw among them some knives, tobacco, bells, tape, and binding, with which they were much pleased. Their musical instruments were the drum, and a sort of little bag made of buffalo hide, dressed white, with small shot or pebbles in it, and a bunch of hair tied to it."

The speeches of Indians at the councils are reported, and are of the usual Indian quality. In the tribe of the Yanktons what struck the explorers most was "an institution peculiar to them, and to the Kite Indians, further to the westward, from whom it is said to have been copied. It is an association of the most active and brave young men, who are bound to each other by attachment, secured by a vow never to retreat before any danger, or give way to their enemies. In war they go forward without sheltering themselves behind trees, or aiding their natural valor by any artifice. This punctilious determination, not to be turned from their course, became heroic or ridiculous a short time since, when the Yanktons were crossing the Missouri on the ice. A hole lay immediately in their course, which might easily have been avoided by going round. This the foremost of the band disdained to do, but went straight forward and was lost. The others would have followed his example, but were forcibly prevented."

The Missouri river is the constant theme of elaborate observation and description. This is a touch: "As in every bend of the river, we again observe the red berries resembling currants."

There was discovered a tribe of Indians called Ricaras, and "we were gratified at discovering that these Ricaras made no use of spirituous liquors of any kind, the example of the traders who bring it to them, so far from tempting, has in fact disgusted them. Supposing that it was as agreeable to them as to other Indians, we at first offered them whiskey; but they refused it with this sensible remark, that they were surprised that their father should present to them a liquor which would make them fools. On another occasion they observed that no man could be their friend who tried to lead them into such follies."

Passing Mandan villages, "the Indians flocked to the bank to see us as we passed, and they visited in great numbers the camp, where some of them remained all night," and the expedition received "several presents from the women, consisting of corn, boiled hominy, and garden stuffs: in our turn we gratified the wife of the great chief with a gift of a glazed earthen jar. Our hunter brought us two beaver."

"November 5th. The Indians are all out on their hunting parties: a camp of Mandans caught within two days one hundred goats a short distance below us; their mode of hunting them is to form a large strong pen or fold, from which a fence made of bushes gradually widens on each side; the animals are surrounded by the hunters and gently driven toward this pen, in which they imperceptibly find themselves enclosed, and are then at the mercy of the hunters.

"Thursday, 27th. Almost the whole of that vast tract of

country comprised between the Mississippi, the Red river of Lake Winnipeg, the Saskaskawan, and the Missouri, is loosely occupied by a great nation whose primitive name is Darcota, but who are called Sioux by the French, Sues by the English.

“Tuesday, January 1, 1805. The new year was welcomed by two shots from the swivel and a round of small arms. The party now consisted of thirty-two persons. Besides ourselves were Sergeants John Ordway, Nathaniel Pryor, and Patrick Gass; the privates were William Bratton, John Colter, John Collins, Peter Cruzatte, Robert Frazier, Reuben Fields, Joseph Fields, George Gibson, Silas Goodrich, Hugh Hall, Thomas P. Howard, Baptiste Lapage, Francis Labiche, Hugh McNeal, John Potts, John Shields, George Shannon, John B. Thompson, William Werner, Alexander Willard, Richard Windsor, Joseph Whitehouse, Peter Wiser, and Captain Clark's black servant, York. The two interpreters were George Drewyer and Tousaint Chaboneau. All this party with the baggage was stowed in six small canoes and two large perioques. At the same time that we took our departure, our barge, manned with seven soldiers, two Frenchmen, and Mr. Gravelines as pilot, sailed for the United States loaded with our presents and dispatches.

“Friday, April 26. We continued our voyage in the morning, and by twelve o'clock encamped at eight miles distance, at the junction of the Missouri and Yellowstone rivers; where we were soon joined by Captain Lewis.

“On leaving us yesterday he pursued his route along the foot of the hills, which he ascended at the distance of eight miles; from these wide plains, watered by the Missouri and the Yellowstone, spread themselves before the eye, occasionally varied with the wood of the banks, enlivened

by the irregular windings of the two rivers, and animated by vast herds of buffalo, deer, elk and antelope. Along the margin of the river grows the small-leaved willow; in the low grounds adjoining are scattered rosebushes three or four feet high, the redberry, serviceberry, and redwood. The higher plains are either immediately on the river, in which case they are generally timbered, and have an undergrowth like that of the low grounds, with the addition of the broad-leaved willow, gooseberry, chokecherry, purple currant, and honeysuckle."

There is a charming description of the Yellowstone country; but of it there is complaint of the lack of timber.

"The wild licorice is found in great abundance on these hills, as is also the white apple. As usual we are surrounded by buffalo, elk, common and black-tailed deer, beaver, antelopes, and wolves."

A tributary stream is thus noted: "The water has a peculiar whiteness, such as might be produced by a table-spoonful of milk in a cup of tea, and this circumstance induced us to call it Milk river.

"June 13, 1805. They left their encampment at sun-rise, and ascending the river hills, went for six miles in a course generally southwest, over a country which, though more waving than that of yesterday, may still be considered level. At the extremity of this course they overlooked a most beautiful plain, where were infinitely more buffaloes than we had ever before seen at a single view. To the southwest arose from the plain two mountains of appearance like ramparts of high fortifications. They are square figures with sides rising perpendicularly to the height of two hundred and fifty feet, formed of yellow clay."

The great falls of the Missouri are described in a few sentences: "For ninety or a hundred yards from the left

cliff, the water falls in one smooth even sheet, over a precipice of at least eighty feet. The remaining part of the river precipitates itself with a more rapid current, but being received as it falls by the irregular and somewhat projecting rocks below, forms a splendid prospect of perfectly white foam two hundred yards in length, and eighty in perpendicular elevation.

"July 28, 1805. On examining the two streams it became difficult to decide which was the larger or real Missouri; they are each ninety yards wide, and so perfectly similar in character and appearance that they seem to have been formed in the same mould. We were therefore induced to discontinue the name of Missouri, and gave to the southwest branch the name of Jefferson, in honor of the President of the United States, and the projector of the enterprise, and called the middle branch Madison, after James Madison, secretary of state."

The climax of the expedition was the discovery of the source of the Missouri and passing the dividing ridge, from which the water ran east and west, to the two oceans.

"August 12, 1805. Captain Lewis wound along the foot of the mountains to the southwest, approaching obliquely the main stream he had left yesterday. Down this trail he now went towards the southwest; at the distance of five miles it crossed a large run or creek, which is a principal branch of the main stream into which it falls, just above the high cliffs or gates observed yesterday, and which they now saw below them; here they halted and breakfasted on the last of the deer, keeping a small piece of pork in reserve against accident; they then crossed through the low bottom along the main stream near the foot of the mountains on their right. For the first five miles the valley continues toward the southwest from two to three miles in width;

then the main stream, which has received two small branches from the left to the valley, turns abruptly to the west through a narrow bottom between the mountains. The trail was still plain, and as it led them directly on towards the mountain, the stream gradually became smaller, till after going two miles it had so greatly diminished in width that one of the men in a fit of enthusiasm, with one foot on each side of the river, thanked God that he had lived to bestride the Missouri. As they went along their hopes of seeing the waters of the Columbia arose almost to painful anxiety, when after four miles from the last abrupt turn of the river, they reached a small gap formed by the high mountains which recede on each side, leaving room for the Indian road.

“From the foot of one of the lowest of these mountains, which rises with a gentle ascent of about half a mile, issues the remotest water of the Missouri. They had now reached the hidden source of that river, which had never yet been seen by civilized man; and as they quenched their thirst at the chaste and icy fountain—as they sat down by the brink of that little rivulet, which yielded its distant and modest tribute to the parent ocean, they felt themselves rewarded for all their labors and all their difficulties. They left reluctantly this interesting spot, and pursuing the Indian road through the interval of the hills, arrived at the top of a ridge from which they saw high mountains, partially covered with snow, still to the west of them. The ridge on which they stood formed the dividing line between the waters of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. They followed a descent much steeper than that on the eastern side, and at the distance of three-quarters of a mile, reached a handsome bold creek of cold clear water running to the westward. They stopped to taste for the first time the waters of the Columbia; and after

a few minutes, followed the road across steep hills and low hollows, till they reached a spring on the side of the mountain; here they found a sufficient quantity of dry willow brush for fuel, and therefore halted for the night; and having killed nothing in the course of the day, supped on their last piece of pork, and trusted to fortune for some other food to mix with a little flour and parched meal, which was all that now remained of their provisions."

On the Columbia, the report says: "We proceeded on in the boats, but as the river was very shallow and rapid, the navigation is extremely difficult, and the men who are almost constantly in the water, are getting feeble and sore, and so much worn down by fatigue, that they are very anxious to commence traveling by land."

"Saturday, November 2, 1805. We now examined the rapids below more particularly, and the danger appearing to be too great for the loaded canoes, all those who could not swim were sent with the baggage by land. The canoes then passed safely, and were reloaded; at the foot of the rapid we took a meridian altitude of $59^{\circ} 45' 45''$. Just as we were setting out seven squaws arrived across the portage loaded with dried fish and bear grease, neatly packed in bundles, and soon after four Indians came down the rapid in a large canoe. The rapid which we have just passed is the last of all the descents of the Columbia. At this place the first tide-water commences, and the river in consequence widened. The hunters brought in two deer, a crane, some geese and ducks, and several brant, three of which were white, except a black part of the wing, and much larger than the grey brant, which is itself a size beyond the duck.

"Saturday, November 16th. The morning was clear and beautiful. We, therefore, put all our baggage to dry and

sent several of the party to hunt. Our camp is in full view of the ocean."

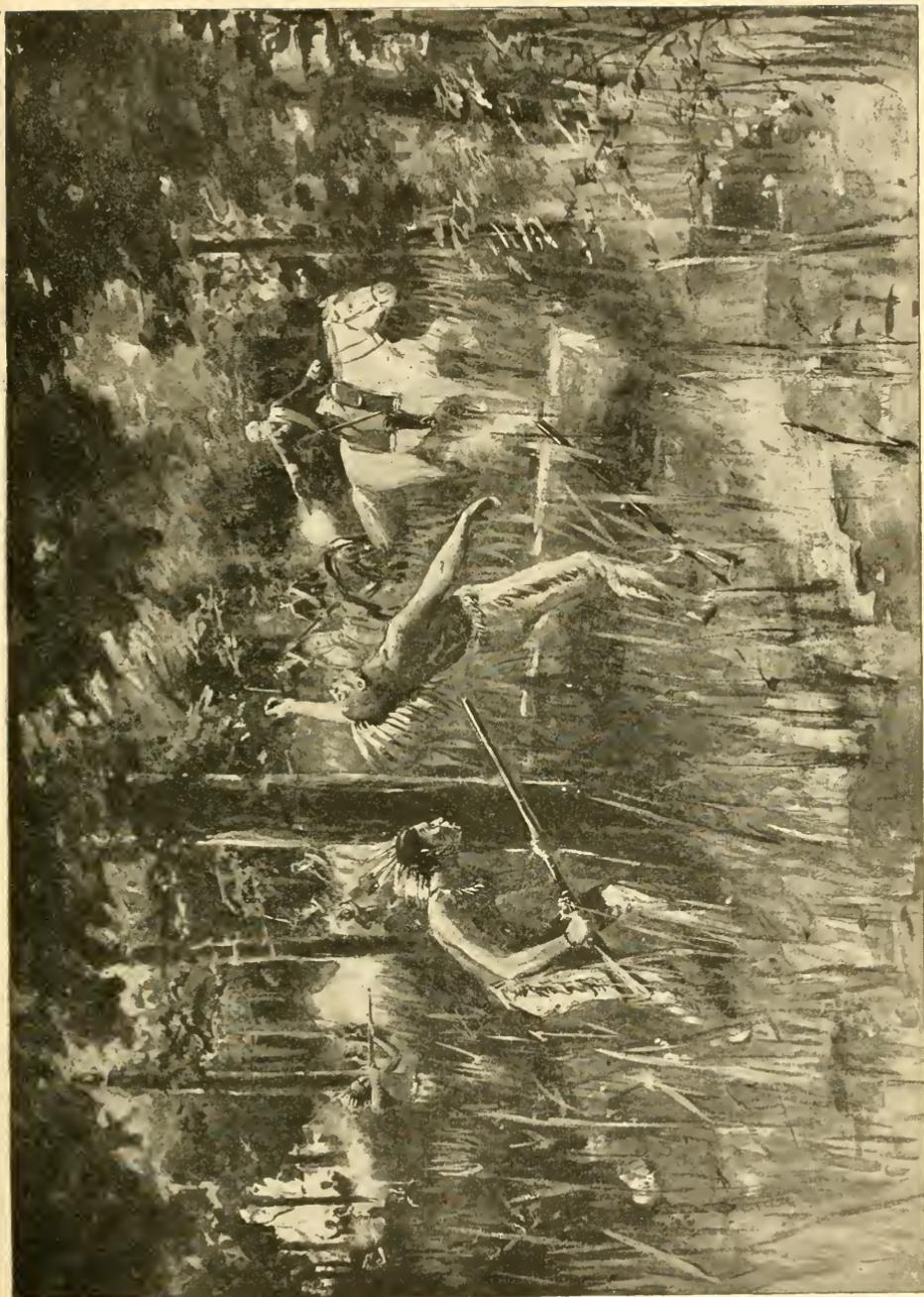
"Saturday, November 17th. A fair cool morning and easterly wind. The tide rises at this place eight feet six inches in height, and rolls over the beach in great waves.

CHAPTER VII.

TECUMSEH PLANS TO HALT EXPANSION.

The Projected Confederacy of the Red Nations—The Measures adopted by Tecumseh's Brother, the Artful "Prophet," to Induce the Savages to Join the Confederacy—Tecumseh and the Prophet make Strategic Use of the Superstitious Trait in the Indian Character—The Death of Tecumseh as Related by Black Hawk.

THE most famous and respected of Indian chieftains in North America, if perhaps we except the heroic Mexican kings who were worthy the steel of Cortez, is Tecumseh. He was born in an Indian village in Ohio between the present cities of Dayton and Springfield, in the heart of the pleasant country between the head-waters of the Mad river and the little Miami. It is remarkable that a man of the dignified and charming character and grave profession of Judge Sherman, the father of the distinguished brothers, the General and the Statesman, should have named a son for an Indian, even if the red man was one of the foremost of the long list of Ohio men conspicuously placed in history. Tecumseh began his career that is recorded in American annals, as an organizer of tribes of his race to make a stand against the overwhelming advance of the white men, and he was aided by a brother almost as illustrious as himself, the Prophet, who inspired the attack upon General William Henry Harrison, known as the battle of Tippecanoe. It shows the scope of the conceptions of the brothers who were, in war and religion, the leaders of their people, that while the Prophet was fighting Harrison on the Wabash, Tecumseh was on a journey to the South, doing missionary work for war with the Creeks and



THE DEATH OF TECUMSEH.



other powerful tribes. It is tradition that Tecumseh blamed the Prophet for a premature outbreak which he believed caused the eventual failure of his thoughtfully projected and carefully prepared confederacy of the Red Nations.

"Tecumseh's plan," Tuttle tells us in his "Border Wars of Two Nations," was to surprise and capture forts Detroit, Wayne, Chicago, St. Louis, Vincennes and the adjacent American posts and unite all the tribes east of the Mississippi. As early as 1807 the Shawnee chieftain and his brother were actively engaged in sending their deputies, with large presents and bloody war belts, to the most distant nations, to persuade them to come into the league, "and when the comet appeared in 1811 the Prophet artfully turned it to account by practicing upon the superstitions of the savages." Early in May a special emissary was sent to the distant tribes of Lake Superior, and a grand council being there assembled by the deputy, "he told the Indians that he had been sent by the messenger and representative of the Great Spirit, and that he was commissioned to deliver to them a speech from the first man whom God had created, said to be in the Shawnees' country." He delivered the speech with which he was charged in these words: "I am the father of the English, and of the French, and of the Spaniards, and of the Indians. I created the first man who was the common father of all these people, as well as of ourselves, and it was through him, whom I have awakened from his long sleep, that I now address you. But the Americans I did not make. They are not my children, but the children of the evil spirit. They grew from the scum of the great water when it was troubled by the evil spirit and the froth was driven into the woods by a strong east wind. But I hate them. My children, you must not speak of this talk to the whites; it must be hid-

den from them. I am now on the earth sent by the Great Spirit to instruct you that you may be taught. The bearer of this must point out to you the way to my wigwam. I could not come myself, L'Arbre Croche, because this world is changed from what it was. It is broken and leans down, and as it declines the Chippewas and all beyond will fall off and die. Therefore, you must come to me and be instructed. Those villages which do not listen to this talk will be cut off from the face of the earth."

Such were the measures adopted by the artful Prophet to induce the savages to fall into the ranks of Tecumseh's army, and they were in every respect successful. Thus did the cunning Shawnee chief carry his work forward. Before the month of June, 1806, they had removed from Greenville to the banks of the Tippecanoe, a tributary of the Upper Wabash, where a tract of land had been granted them by the Pottawatomies and Kickapoos. In the following July, the Prophet sent a messenger to General Harrison, begging him not to believe the tale told by his enemies, and promising to visit him soon. In August he repaired to Post Vincennes, and by his fine talk convinced the governor that he had no evil designs.

Mr. Brown, in speaking of Chief Tecumseh and his brother, the Prophet, in his "History of Illinois," says: "Tecumseh entered upon the great work he contemplated in the year 1805 or 1806. He was then thirty-eight years of age. To unite the several Indian tribes, many of which were hostile to, and had often been at war with each other, in this great and important undertaking, prejudices were to be overcome, their original manners and customs to be re-established, the use of ardent spirits to be abandoned, and all intercourse with the whites to be suspended. The task was herculean in its character, and beset with difficulties on

every side. Here was a field for the display of the highest moral and intellectual powers. He had already gained the reputation of a brave and sagacious warrior, and a cool-headed, upright, wise, and efficient counsellor. He was neither a war nor a peace chief, and yet he wielded the power and influence of both. The time having now arrived for action, and knowing full well that to win savage attention some bold and striking movement was necessary, he imparted his plan to his brother, the Prophet, who adroitly and without a moment's delay, prepared himself for the part he was appointed to play in this great drama of savage life. Tecumseh well knew that excessive superstition was everywhere a prominent trait in the Indian character, and, therefore, with the skill of another Cromwell, brought superstition to his aid. Suddenly his brother began to dream dreams, and see visions; he became afterward an inspired prophet, favored with a divine commission from the Great Spirit—the power of life and death was placed in his hands—he was appointed agent for preserving the property and lands of the Indians, and of restoring them to their original happy condition. He thereupon commenced his sacred work. The public mind was aroused, unbelief gradually gave way, credulity and wild fanaticism began to spread its circles, widening and deepening, until the fame of the Prophet, and the divine character of his mission, had reached the frozen shores of the lakes and overran the broad plains which stretched far beyond 'the great Father of Waters.' Pilgrims from remote tribes sought with fear and trembling, the headquarters of the prophet and the sage. Proselytes were multiplied, and his followers increased beyond all former example. Even Tecumseh became a believer, and, seizing upon the golden opportunity, he mixed with the pilgrims, won them by his

address, and, on their return, sent a knowledge of his plan of concert and union to the most distant tribes. The bodily and mental labors of Tecumseh next commenced. His life became one of ceaseless activity. He traveled, he argued, he commanded. His persuasive voice was one day listened to by the Wyandots, on the plains of Sandusky; on the next his commands were issued on the banks of the Wabash. He was anon seen paddling his canoe across the Mississippi, then boldly confronting the Governor of Indiana in the council houses at Vincennes. Now carrying his banner of union among the Creeks and Cherokees of the south, and from thence to the cold, inhospitable regions of the north, neither intoxicated by success nor discouraged by failure."

The following article appeared in the *Baltimore American*, soon after Black Hawk's death. The article was written by one acquainted with the circumstance. It gives an account of the death of Tecumseh and many interesting points in the life of the Sac chief.

"During a residence of several years in what is now the territory of Iowa, I had many opportunities of seeing and conversing with this noted warrior, and often look back with feelings of great pleasure to the many tokens of goodwill and friendship that he has frequently bestowed upon men. His lodge was always open to a stranger, and he was ever ready to share that with him which he might most want, either his furs and blankets for a couch, or his corn and venison for a repast. He always spoke in terms of high regard of the whites, saying that in war he fought like a brave man, but in peace he wished to forget that his hand had ever been raised against them. His career as a warrior commenced at a very early age; when he was but fourteen years old his father, Pawheese, led a war party

against the Osages, in which expedition he accompanied him. They succeeded in reaching the village of Osages, which they attacked, and after a very severe encounter, they routed their enemies and burned their town. In this battle Black Hawk's father was killed, but he revenged his death by killing and scalping the Osage who had slain him. He was fond of recounting his earlier exploits, and often boasted of his being at the right hand of Tecumseh, when the latter was killed at the battle of the Thames. His account of the death of this distinguished warrior, was related to me by himself, during an evening that I spent in his lodge some winters ago. In the course of our talk, I asked him if he was with Tecumseh when he was killed. He replied :

“ ‘I was, and I will now tell you all about it. Tecumseh, Shaubinne and Caldwell, two Pottawatomie chiefs, and myself, were seated on a log near our camp-fire, filling our pipes for a smoke on the morning of the battle, when word came from the British general, that he wished to speak with Tecumseh. He went immediately, and after staying some time rejoined us, taking his seat without saying a word, when Caldwell, who was one of his favorites, observed to him, ‘My father, what are we to do? Shall we fight the Americans?’ ‘Yes, my son,’ replied Tecumseh, ‘*we shall go into their very smoke*—but you are now wanted by the general. Go, my son, I never expect to see you again.’ Shortly after this (continued Black Hawk), the Indian spies came in and gave word of the near approach of the Americans. Tecumseh immediately posted his men on the edge of a swamp, which flanked the British line, placing himself at their head. I was a little to his right, with a small party of Sacs. It was not long before the Americans made their appearance; they did not perceive us at first, hid as we were by the undergrowth, but we soon let them know

where we were by pouring in one or two volleys, as they were forming into line to oppose the British. They faltered a little, but very soon we perceived a large body of horse (Colonel Johnson's regiment of mounted Kentuckians), preparing to charge upon us in the swamp. They came bravely on, yet we never stirred until they were so close that we could see the flints of their guns, when Tecumseh, springing to his feet, gave the Shawnee war cry, and discharged his rifle. This was the signal for us to commence the fight; but it did not last long; the Americans answered the shout, returning our fire, and at the first discharge of their guns, I saw Tecumseh stagger forward over a fallen tree near which he was standing, letting his rifle drop to his feet. As soon as the Indians discovered he was killed, a sudden fear came over them, and thinking that the Great Spirit was displeased, they fought no longer, and were quickly put to flight. That night we returned to bury our dead and search for the body of Tecumseh. He was found near where he had first fallen; a bullet had struck him above the hip, and his skull had been broken by the butt end of the gun of some soldier, who had found him, perhaps, when life was not yet quite gone. With the exception of these wounds his body was untouched; lying near him, however, was a large, fine-looking Pottawatomie, who had been killed, decked off in his plumes and war paint, whom the Americans no doubt had taken for Tecumseh; for he was scalped, and every particle of skin flayed from his body. Tecumseh himself had no ornaments about his person save a British medal. During the night we buried our dead, and brought off the body of Tecumseh, although we were in sight of the fires of the American camp.'

"This is somewhat different from the account which is commonly given of Tecumseh's death, yet I believe it to be

true; for after hearing Black Hawk relate it, I heard it corroborated by one of the Pottawatomie chiefs, mentioned by him. I asked him if he had ever fought against the whites after the death of Tecumseh. He said not, that he returned home to his village on the Mississippi, at the mouth of Rock River, and there he remained until driven away by the whites in the year 1832. The wish to hold possession of this village was the cause of the war which he waged against the whites during that year. He told me that he never wished to fight; that he was made to do so; that the whites killed his warriors when they went with a white flag to beg a parley, and that after this was done he thought they intended to kill him at all events, and therefore he would die like a warrior.

“In speaking of his defeat, he said it was what he expected; that he did not mind it; but what hurt him more than anything else was our Government degrading him in the eyes of his own people, and setting another chief (Keokuk) over him. This degradation he appeared to feel very sensibly. Still he continued to possess all his native pride. One instance that came under my observation, I recollect well, in which it was strongly displayed. He happened to be in a small town in Iowa on the same day in which a party of dragoons, under Capt. —, arrived, and in paying a visit to a friend with whom he always partook of a meal whenever he stopped at the village, he met with the captain, who had been invited to dine. Black Hawk remained, also expecting the usual invitation to stay and eat with them; but when the dinner was ready the host took him aside and told him the captain, or rather the white man's chief, was to dine with him that day and he must wait until they had finished. The old chief's eye glistened with anger as he answered him, raising the forefinger of one

hand to his breast, to represent the officer, 'I know the white man is a chief, but I,' elevating the finger of the other hand far above his head, 'was a chief and led my warriors to the fight long before his mother knew him. *Your meat—my dogs should not eat it!*' Saying this, he gathered the folds of his blanket about him and stalked off as proudly as if he still walked over ground that he could call '*my own.*'"

The testimony of Black Hawk as to the death of Tecumseh is of the highest value, and his memory will be perpetuated by the fact that it was in an expedition to curb his ambition that Abraham Lincoln served as a volunteer soldier in the Black Hawk war.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE RACE FOR OREGON.

Marcus Whitman Determines the Future Ownership of Oregon and Washington—England Through the Hudson Bay Company was His Keen Competitor—His Heroic Ride to the National Capitol to Save the Territory—His Manly Appeal to President Tyler and Secretary of State Daniel Webster—The Return with One Thousand Settlers, One Year After His Departure—Devastation During His Absence and His Massacre with His Wife and Many Others Four Years Later.

ALMOST as strange a story as the conquest of Upper Louisiana by George Rogers Clark, is that of the saving of Oregon by Marcus Whitman, a missionary among the Indians. The ownership of Oregon was long unsettled between Great Britain and the United States, the former depending upon the Hudson Bay Company to secure the country, and the latter careless and unappreciative, largely indifferent because poorly informed. It was the current opinion that the fate of Oregon would be settled by what Stephen A. Douglas afterward called squatter sovereignty. That was the preponderance of the first settlers. In all probability, if it had not been for the intelligence, energy, hardihood and devotion of one man, Dr. Marcus Whitman, the land that is the foundation of the states of Oregon and Washington would have been a British possession, and the western growth of the United States halted on the Rocky Mountains. The history of the saving of Oregon has been written in clear and happy style by Dr. Oliver W. Nixon, of Chicago, whose labors have been so thorough and their result so positive, that Whitman's place among the heroes and martyrs will never be contested. He was martyr as

well as hero, for after he had accomplished his ambition of Americanizing Oregon, he perished in a massacre by Indians. Dr. Nixon is the authority from which we quote the grand outlines of Whitman's career with the certainty of his accuracy:

"Dr. Whitman was born at Rushville, New York, September 4, 1804, and was thirty-three years old when he entered upon his work in Oregon. When first converted he resolved to study for the ministry, but a chain of circumstances changed his plans, and he studied medicine. The early hardships and privations educated him into an admirable fitness for the chosen work of his life.

"Picture that little missionary band as they stood together at Fort Walla Walla in September, 1836, and consulted about the great problems to solve. It was all new. There were no precedents to guide them. They easily understood that the first thing to do was to consult the ruling powers of Oregon—the Hudson Bay Company officials at Fort Vancouver. This would require another journey of three hundred miles, but, as it could be made in boats, and the Indians were capital oarsmen, they resolved to take their wives with them, and thus complete the wedding journey.

"The gallant Dr. McLoughlin, chief factor of the Hudson Bay Company, was a keen judge of human nature, and read men and women as scholars read books, and he was captivated with the open, manly ways of Dr. Whitman, and the womanly accomplishments of the fair young wife, who had braved the perils of an overland journey with wholly unselfish purposes. Whitman soon developed to Dr. McLoughlin all his plans and hopes. Perhaps there was a professional free masonry among the men that brought them closer together, but, by nature, they were both men endowed richly with the best manly characteristics.

“Dr. McLoughlin resolved to do the best thing possible for them, while he still protected the interests of his great monopoly. Dr. Whitman’s idea was to build one mission at the Dalles, so as to be convenient to shipping; McLoughlin at once saw that it would not do. He had already pushed the Methodist mission far up the Willamette, out of the way of the fort and its work, and argued with Whitman that it would be best for him to go to the Walla Walla country, three hundred miles away, and Spalding, one hundred and twenty-five miles farther on.”

The world loves a hero, and the pioneer history of our several States furnishes as interesting characters as are anywhere recorded. In view of the facts and conditions already recited, the old missionaries were anxious and restless, and yet felt in a measure powerless to avert the danger threatened. They believed that under the terms of the treaty of 1818, reaffirmed in 1828, whichever nationality settled and organized the territory, that nation would hold it.

This was not directly affirmed in the terms of that treaty, but was so interpreted by the Americans and English in Oregon, and was greatly strengthened by the fact that leading statesmen in Congress had for nearly half a century wholly neglected Oregon, and time and again gone upon record as declaring it worthless and undesirable. In their conferences the missionaries from time to time had gone over the whole question, and did everything in their power to encourage immigration.

Their glowing accounts of the fertility of the soil, the balmy climate, the towering forests, the indications of richness in minerals, had each year induced a limited number of more daring Americans to immigrate.

In this work of the missionaries, Jason Lee, the chief of the Methodist missions, was, up to the date of the incident we

are about to narrate, the most successful of all. He was a man of great strength of character. Like Whitman, he was also a man of great physical strength, fearless, and, with it all, wise and brainy. No other man among the pioneers, for his untiring energy in courting immigration, can be so nearly classed with Whitman.

They were all men who, though in Oregon to convert savages to Christianity, yet were intensely American. They thought it no abuse of their Christianity to carry the banner of the cross in one hand and the banner of their country in the other. Missionaries as they were, thousands of miles from home, neglected by the Government, yet the love of country seemed to shine with constantly-increasing lustre.

In addition to the missionaries, at the time of which we write, there was quite a population of agriculturists and traders in the near vicinity of each mission. These heartily co-operated with the missionaries and shared their anxieties. In 1840-'41 many of them met and canvassed the subject whether they should make an attempt to organize a government under the Stars and Stripes, but they easily saw that they were outnumbered by the English, who were already organized, and were the real autocrats of the country.

So the time passed until the fall of 1842, when Elijah White, an Indian agent for the Government in the Northwest, brought a party of Americans, men, women and children, numbering one hundred and twenty, safely through to Waiilatpui. In this company was a more than usually intelligent, well-informed Christian gentleman, destined to fill an important place in our story, General Amos L. Lovejoy. He was thoroughly posted in national affairs, and gave Dr. Whitman his first intimation of the probability that the Ashburton treaty would likely come to a crisis

before Congress adjourned in March, 1843. This related, as it was supposed, to the entire boundary between the United States and the English possessions.

Whitman at once explained the situation to his wife and said that he felt impelled to go to Washington. She, as a missionary's wife, a courageous, true-hearted, patriotic woman, who loved and believed in her husband, at once consented. Under the rule the local members of the mission had to be consulted, and runners were at once despatched to the several stations, and all responded promptly, as the demand was for their immediate presence.

Dr. Eells, one of the noblest of the old missionaries, writes an account of that conference, and it is all the more valuable from the fact that he was opposed to the enterprise.

Dr. Eells says: "The purpose of Dr. Whitman was fixed. In his estimation the saving of Oregon to the United States was of paramount importance, and he would make the attempt to do so, even if he had to withdraw from the mission in order to accomplish his purpose. In reply to considerations intended to hold Dr. Whitman to his assigned work, he said, 'I am not expatriated by becoming a missionary.'"

Dr. Spalding says: "Dr. Whitman's last remarks were, as he mounted his horse for the long journey: 'If the Board dismisses me, I will do what I can to save Oregon to the country. My life is of but little worth if I cannot save this country to the American people.'"

The doctor set about his active preparations, arranging his outfit and seeing that everything was in order. The next day he had a call to see a sick man at old Fort Walla Walla, and as he needed many articles for his journey that could be had there, he went with this double purpose. He found at the fort a score or more of traders, clerks and the leading men of the Hudson Bay Company, assembled there.

They were nearly all Englishmen, and the discussion soon turned upon the treaty, and the outlook, and, as might be inferred, was not cheering to Whitman. But his object was to gain information and not to argue.

The dinner was soon announced, and the doctor sat down to a royal banquet with his jovial English friends. For no man was more highly esteemed by all, than was Whitman. The chief factor at Vancouver, McLoughlin, from the very outset of their acquaintance, took a liking to Doctor Whitman and his wife and in hundreds of cases showed them marked and fatherly kindnesses.

But while the company were enjoying their repast, an express messenger of the company arrived from Fort Colville, three hundred and fifty miles up the Columbia, and electrified his audience by the announcement that a colony of one hundred and forty Englishmen and Canadians were on the road.

In such a company it is easy to see such an announcement was exciting news. One young man threw his cap in the air and shouted, "Hurrah for Oregon—America is too late, we have got the country."

On the morning of October 3, 1842, three days after the conference when the spirit was upon him, Whitman took such messages as were ready, and bidding a long good-bye to his wife and home, in company with a guide and three pack mules began that ever memorable journey—escorted for a long distance by many Cayuse braves.

Dr. Barrows, in his volume "Oregon—the Struggle for Possession," says: "Upon the arrival of Dr. Whitman in St. Louis it was my good fortune that he should be quartered as a guest under the same roof and at the same table with me." Those interested in the news from the plains, the trappers and traders in furs and Indian goods, gathered

about him and beset him with a multitude of questions. Answering them courteously he in turn asked about Congress. Whether the Ashburton treaty had been concluded, and whether it covered the northwest territory? The treaty he learned had been signed August 9th, long before he left Oregon, and had been confirmed by the Senate and signed by the President on November 10th, while he was floundering in the snow upon the mountains.

But the Oregon question was still open, and the question he was eager to have answered was "Is the Oregon question still pending, and can I get there before Congress adjourns?" The river was frozen, and he had to depend upon the stage, and even from St. Louis a journey to Washington in mid-winter at that time, was no small matter. But to a man like Whitman with muscles trained, and a brain which never seemed to tire, it was counted as nothing.

It will require no stretch of imagination in any intelligent reader to suppose, that a man who had undergone the hardships and perils he had, would be at a loss how to present his case in the most forcible and best possible method. He was an educated man, a profound thinker; and he knew every phase of the question he had to present, and no man of discernment could look into his honest eyes and upon his manly bearing, without acknowledging that they were in the presence of the very best specimen of American Christian manhood.

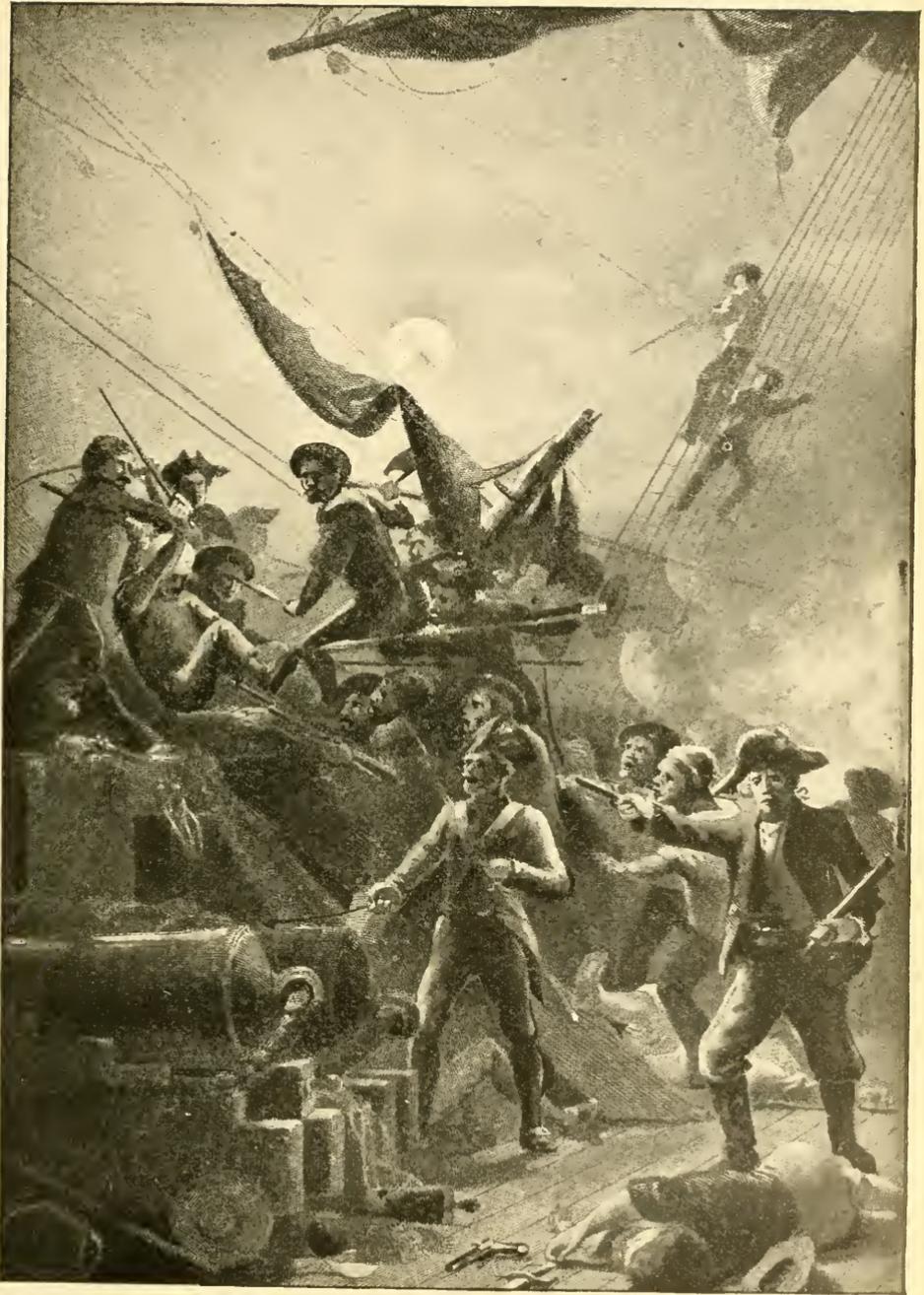
Both President Tyler and Secretary of State, Daniel Webster speedily granted him an audience. Some time in the future some great artist will paint a picture of this historic event. The old pioneer, in his leather breeches and worn and torn fur garments, and with frozen limbs, just in from a thousand-mile ride, is a picture by himself, but standing in the presence of the President and his great

secretary, to plead for Oregon and the old flag, the subject for a painter is second to none in American history.

From the outset, and at every audience granted, President Tyler treated Dr. Whitman with the greatest deference. He was a new character in the experience of both these polished and experienced politicians. Never before had they listened to a man who so eloquently pleaded for the cause of his country, with no selfish aim in sight. He asked for no money, or bonds, or land, or office, or anything, except that which would add to the nation's wealth, the glory and honor of the flag, and the benefit of the hardy pioneer of that far-off land, that the nation had, for more than a third of a century, wholly neglected. It was a powerful appeal to the manly heart of President Tyler, and, as the facts show, was not lost on Secretary Webster.

All Dr. Whitman demanded was that if it were true, as asserted by Mr. Webster himself, in his instructions to Edward Everett in 1840, then minister to England, that "The ownership of Oregon is very likely to follow the greater settlement and the larger amount of population;" then "All I ask is that you won't barter away Oregon, or allow English interference until I can land a band of stalwart American settlers across the plains, for this I will try to do."

President Tyler promptly and positively stated, "Dr. Whitman, your long ride and frozen limbs speak for your courage and patriotism, your missionary credentials are good vouchers for your character." And he promptly granted his request. Such promise was all that Whitman required. He firmly believed, as all the pioneers of Oregon at that time believed, that the treaty of 1818, while not saying anything in direct terms, that the nationality settling the country should hold it, yet that was the real meaning. Both countries claimed the territory, and England with the smallest right-



PAUL JONES, OUR FIRST NAVAL HERO.



HEROES IN OUR NAVY OF THE PAST.

ful claim had, through the Hudson Bay Company, been the supreme autocratic ruler for a full third of a century.

He left Independence, Missouri, in the month of May, 1843, with an emigrant train of about one thousand souls for Oregon. With his energy and knowledge of the country, he rendered them great assistance in fording the many and rapid streams they had to cross, and finding a wagon road through many of the narrow and rugged passes of the mountains. He arrived at Waiilatpui about one year from the time he left, to find his home sadly dilapidated and his flouring mill burned. The Indians were very hostile to the Doctor for leaving them, and without doubt, owing to his absence the seeds of assassination were sown by those haughty Cayuse Indians which resulted in his and Mrs. Whitman's death, with many others, although it did not take place until four years later.

The expedition of Lewis and Clark supplemented the achievement of George Rogers Clark, the friend of Jefferson, who had the expedition up the Missouri and down the Oregon organized by his private secretary; and the journey of Whitman from Oregon to Washington was the continuation by a missionary of the military exploration undertaken under the auspices of Jefferson, the purchaser of the wonderful annex to the nation, Louisiana, that seemed boundless and unsearchable, as an ocean unmeasured. The British policy was at first to limit our America to the strip between the Atlantic and the Alleghenies, and they had drawn that mountain line on us, but were baffled by the hero Clark, and half a century later they attempted to bar, with the Rocky Mountain range, our march to the Pacific, and were discomfited by two journeys across the continent, one from the Potomac to the Columbia rivers, and the other from the Columbia to the Potomac.

CHAPTER IX.

JACKSON AND THE SPANIARDS IN FLORIDA.

The British and Spanish at Pensacola—The Advance of the Great New Orleans Expedition—An Appeal to the People of Louisiana and Kentucky to Accept Spanish Liberty—The Story of Lafitte and his Refusal of British Gold—The Overture of the Battle of New Orleans and Jackson's Dealings with the Spaniards in Florida.

IN 1814, in the latter days of August, the old Spanish town of Pensacola became lively. There was a British fleet in the harbor, and Parton says: "Arms and ammunition in great quantities were landed and being conveyed to the forts." A body of negro soldiers from the West Indies, in the British uniform, had come on shore, along with several companies of English troops. The forts were in course of repair; from one of them floated the English flag in friendly conjunction with the standard of Spain. The commander of the English forces had taken up his residence with the Spanish governor. There was a swarm of Indians. The forces were the advance of the great expedition that was to capture and hold New Orleans, and if the English did not want it for themselves, to restore it to the Spanish, who claimed Napoleon had no title to the Jefferson purchase. Lieut.-Col. Edward Nichols was the commander, and on his way from the Bahamas to Pensacola, he had touched at Havana, where the secret of his destination escaped, and was promptly conveyed to New Orleans. No sooner had he reached Pensacola than he published to his troops an Order of the Day, which in a few days appeared in the newspapers of New Orleans. The colonel had about 300

men, and addressed them as his majesty's forces at Pensacola. He said to his soldiers :

"The people whom you are now to aid and assist have suffered robberies and murders committed on them by Americans.

"The noble Spanish nation has grieved to see her territories insulted ; having been robbed and despoiled of a portion of them while she was overwhelmed with distress, and held down by the chains which a tyrant had imposed on her, gloriously struggling for the greatest of all possible blessings (true liberty). The treacherous Americans, who call themselves free, have attacked her, like assassins, while she was falling. But the day of retribution is fast approaching. These atrocities will excite horror in the heart of a British soldier, they will stimulate you to avenge them, and you will avenge them like British soldiers. Valor, then, and humanity !"

"Natives of Louisiana! On you the first call is made to assist in liberating from a faithless, imbecile government, your paternal soil! Spaniards, Frenchmen, Italians and British, whether settled or residing for a time in Louisiana, on you, also, I call to aid me in this just cause! The American usurpation of this country must be abolished, and the lawful owners of the soil put in possession. I am at the head of a large body of Indians, well armed, disciplined, and commanded by British officers—a good train of artillery with every requisite, seconded by the powerful aid of a numerous British and Spanish squadron of ships and vessels of war. Be not alarmed, inhabitants of the country, at our approach; the same good faith and disinterestedness which have distinguished the conduct of Britons in Europe, accompanies them here; you will have no fear of litigious taxes imposed on you for the purpose of carrying on an unnatural and unjust war; your property, your laws, the peace and tranquility of your country, will be guaranteed to you by men who will suffer no infringement of theirs; rest assured that these brave red men only burn with an ardent desire of satisfaction, for the wrongs they have suffered from the Americans, to join you in liberating these southern provinces from their yoke, and driving them into those limits formerly prescribed by my sovereign.

"Inhabitants of Kentucky, you have too long borne with grievous impositions. The whole brunt of the war has fallen on your brave sons; be imposed on no longer, but either range yourselves under the standard of your forefathers, or observe a strict neutrality; if you comply with either of these offers, whatever provisions you send down, will be paid for in dollars, and the safety of the persons bringing them, as well as the free navigation of the Mississippi, guaranteed to you.

"Men of Kentucky, let me call to your view (and I trust to your abhorrence) the conduct of those factions which hurried you into this civil, unjust, and unnatural war, at a time when Great Britain was straining every nerve in defence of her own and the liberties of the world—when the bravest of her sons were fighting and bleeding in so sacred a cause—when she was spending

millions of her treasure in endeavoring to pull down one of the most formidable and dangerous tyrants that ever disgraced the form of man—when groaning Europe was almost in her last gasp—when Britons alone showed an undaunted front—basely did those assassins endeavor to stab her from the rear; she has turned on them, renovated from the bloody but successful struggle. Europe is happy and free, and she now hastens justly to avenge the unprovoked insult. Show them that you are not collectively unjust; leave that contemptible few to shift for themselves, let those slaves of the tyrant send an embassy to Elba, and implore his aid; but let every honest, upright American spurn them with united contempt. After the experience of twenty-one years, can you any longer support those brawlers for liberty, who call it freedom when they themselves are free? Be no longer their dupes—accept of my offers—everything I have promised in this paper I guarantee to you, on the sacred honor of a British officer.”

A body of seven hundred Indians was raised to aid in restoring Spanish liberty to the people of Louisiana, and to give the Kentuckians a chance to redeem themselves from the offence of being friends of Bonaparte. The real effect of the expedition was to obtain knowledge of the gulf ports, and they made the discovery of Baratavia, a rendezvous not of pirates but of privateers, with Jean Lafitte, blacksmith, as chief. The British armed ship *Sophia* found the little harbor, and Lafitte, according to Parton's lively description:

“Ordered out his boat and proceeded, rowed by four men, to the shallow strait that formed the entrance to the harbor; where he saw, not without astonishment, an armed vessel showing British colors. At the same moment, a boat, with a white signal flying from the bow, and the British flag from the stern, darted from the vessel's side and rapidly approached him. It contained three officers in British uniform, who proved to be Captain Lockyer, a lieutenant of the *Sophia* and a captain of the army. Upon coming up, Captain Lockyer called out his name and rank, and inquired if Mr. Lafitte was at home. Lafitte, puzzled at these proceedings, replied that that individual could be seen on shore at the settlement, and invited the officers to accompany him to Mr. Lafitte's quarters. On the way across the harbor, however, he announced himself as Jean Lafitte; whereupon Captain Lockyer handed him a package, directed to ‘Mr. Lafitte,’ which Captain Lockyer stated was an important communication from the British government. Lafitte cautioned them to conceal their object from the men on shore. These lawless buccaneers, it may be remarked, besides being, *in their way*, loyal to the United States, had a lively recollection of a dash made upon their settlement by British ships at the beginning of the war,

when some of their vessels had been captured, and some of their plunder carried off. When, therefore, the uniform of the officers was recognized by the crowd on the beach, a tumult arose, and they clamored loudly for their seizure.

“Lafitte contrived to pacify them for the moment, and conducted the officers to his quarters. Before proceeding to business, Lafitte, who was a man of superior address, and exceedingly polite, ordered a repast to be prepared for his guests. The costliest wines of Spain, the daintiest fruits of the West Indies, the fish and game of the neighborhood, were served to the astonished officers on the finest carved silver plate; and the urbane Lafitte presided at the feast with the courtly grace that belonged to the Frenchman of that day, whether peasant, privateersman, or noble. The banquet over, cigars were handed round, of a flavor which seldom regales the senses of people who obtain their cigars by the vulgar process of purchase. While these were discussed, the polite and reticent Mr. Lafitte proceeded to open and examine the package addressed to him.”

Colonel Nichols called upon Lafitte and his “brave followers to enter the service of Great Britain and offered him the rank of a captain; with lands to all of his people in proportion to their respective ranks.” The first point the British hoped to make was the capture of Mobile.

Captain Lockyer, the British officer in authority, offered Lafitte besides a captaincy in the British army, thirty thousand dollars in cash, payable at New Orleans or Pensacola. The war, said Lockyer, was about to be prosecuted with unusual vigor. The great expedition against New Orleans was already on its way. There could be no doubt of its success. Indeed, they expected to meet with scarcely any opposition in Louisiana, the people of which, being of different manners and temper from the Americans, would receive the expedition, he thought, with joy. As soon as the English were in possession of New Orleans, they intended to effect a junction with the forces in Canada, when the United States would be at their mercy. From being proscribed and persecuted, his brother in prison and his establishment in danger, he had only to join the English, and give them the benefit of his intimate knowledge of the Gulf, and rank, fame and fortune were his own.

Lafitte asked for a fortnight's time, and immediately communicated with the authorities of Louisiana, saying: "This point of Louisiana which I occupy is of great importance in the present crisis. I tender my services to defend it; and the only reward I ask is that a stop be put to the proscription against me and my adherents, by an act of oblivion for all that has been done hitherto. I am the stray sheep wishing to return to the fold." Lafitte's story was not believed and his establishment was soon broken up by those he sought to serve, but when the people got hold of the facts they believed him, and he was one of the factors in saving New Orleans from the overwhelming invasion of Wellington's veterans who were beaten on Jackson's Day, January 8, 1815.

It was as the conqueror of the Creeks, the avenger of the Fort Mimms massacre, that Andrew Jackson first gained notoriety as a military chieftain, became "Old Hickory" and was prepared to become the hero of New Orleans. The British did not retire gracefully from the gulf coast after their failure with a great fleet and army to occupy and possess Louisiana with the mouths of the Mississippi, and those who lingered, found themselves in queer associations in Florida, mingling with Spaniards, Seminoles and negroes, very few and independent, armed and organized as marauders, with a fort containing a great deal of gunpowder and arms. The British, in the treaty of Ghent, sought to protect their Indian allies, and the provisions of the treaty were stretched to include officers, and that remarkable literary and military man, Col. Edward Nichols, who issued a proclamation to Kentuckians, reappeared. The Seminoles were his pets, and, as Parton describes him: "He went through the preposterous ceremony, in the spring of 1815, of forming an alliance offensive and defensive between the

Seminoles and Great Britain. He repaired and strengthened a fort on the Appalachicola river, sixty miles below the junction of the Chattahoochie and Flint, which he styled the 'British Post on the Appalachicola,' and which afterwards acquired a sad celebrity as the 'Negro Fort.' These things he did entirely, it seems, on his own responsibility, and without condescending to pay the slightest regard to the authority of the Spanish governor."

The Spanish and Seminoles and the negro bandits took kindly to Nichols, who thus addressed Col. Benjamin Hawkins :

" BRITISH POST, APPALACHICOLA RIVER, May 12, 1815.

" In my letter to you of the 28th ult., I requested you would be so good as to make inquiry into the murder and robberies committed on the Seminoles belonging to the chief called Bowlegs, at the same time declaring my determination of punishing with the utmost rigor of the law any one of our side who broke it."

Nichols was for peace in his proclamations, but he continued the letter to Colonel Hawkins :

" Since the last complaint from Bowlegs, I have had another from him to say, your citizens have again attacked and murdered two of his people; that they had stolen a gang of his cattle, but that he had succeeded in regaining them.

" I asked him what proof he had of their being killed. He said they had found their bloody clothes in the American camp, which was hastily evacuated on their approach. Now, sir, if these enormities are suffered to be carried on in a Christian country, what are you to expect by showing such an example to the uncultivated native of the woods (for savage I will not call them, their conduct entitles them to a better epithet)? I have, however, *ordered them to stand on the defensive, and have sent them a large supply of arms and ammunition, and told them to put to death, without mercy, any one molesting them*; but at all times to be careful and not to put a foot over the American line. In the meantime that I should complain to you; that I was convinced you would do your best to curb such infamous conduct. Also that those people who have done such deeds would, I was convinced, be disavowed by the government of the United States and severely punished. They have given their consent to await your answer before they take revenge; but, sir, *they are impatient for it, and well armed as the nation now is, and stored with ammunition and provisions, having a stronghold to retire upon in case of a superior force appearing,*

picture to yourself, sir, the miseries that may be suffered by good and innocent citizens on your frontiers, and I am sure that you will lend me your best aid in keeping the bad spirits in subjection.

"Yesterday, in a full assembly of chiefs, I got them to pass a law for four resolute chiefs to be appointed in different parts of the nation, something in the character of our sheriffs, for the purpose of inflicting condign punishment on such people as broke the law, and I will say this much for them, that I never saw men execute laws better than they do.

"I am also desired to say to you by the chiefs, that they do not find that your citizens are evacuating their lands, according to the ninth article of the treaty of peace, but that they were fresh provisioning the forts. This point, sir, I beg of you to look into. They also request me to inform you that they have signed a treaty of offensive and defensive allegiance with Great Britain, as well as one of commerce and navigation, which, as soon as it is ratified at home, you shall be made more fully acquainted with.

"I am, sir, your very humble servant,

EDWARD NICHOLS,

Commanding his Britannic Majesty's forces in the Creek Nation.

'Addressed 'On his Britannic Majesty's service, to Col. Benjamin Hawkins, commanding at Fort Hawkins.'"

Colonel Nichols sailed for England after doing all the mischief he could, and proving that he knew as little of Indians as he did of Kentuckians, but he did not succeed in getting the recognition he wanted. One of the savages with Nichols, was a red prophet named Francis, and he was presented, in consideration of his past services, with the commission and uniform of a brigadier general, a gold-mounted tomahawk, a diamond snuff-box, and a sum of money. He was also admitted to an interview with the Prince Regent, who received him with an imposing show of ceremony. "A double flourish of trumpets," says a journal of the time, "announced the approach to the presence of the Regent of 'the patriot Francis, who fought so gloriously in our cause in America. He was dressed in a most splendid suit of red and gold, and by his side he wore the tomahawk mounted in gold.'"

The swamps of Florida afforded refuge for many negro

slaves, and their numbers were, in 1816, estimated at 800. They had a chief, Garcon, and the fort erected by Colonel Nichols, on the Appalachicola, was their stronghold. Nichols thought he left the fort to the Seminoles, but they preferred the woods. The fort was strong, mounted twelve cannon, and Nichols had been good enough to leave the Indians 2500 muskets, the same number of sets of accoutrements, five hundred carbines, five hundred steel-scabbarded swords, four hundred pistols, three hundred quarter-casks of rifle powder, and seven hundred and sixty-three barrels of common powder. The arms were new and of excellent quality, and the greater part of them were still in the boxes and packing-cases in which they had been brought from England.

The negroes thought their fort a secure refuge. It placed them on a pedestal. About this fort Andrew Jackson wrote a letter to the Spanish governor at Pensacola, who was supposed to control the territory where the fort was located. Jackson said he could not permit himself to indulge the belief, that "the governor of Pensacola, or the military commander at that place, will hesitate a moment in giving orders for this banditti to be dispersed, and the property of the citizens of the United States forthwith restored to them, and our friendly Indians particularly, when I reflect that the conduct of this banditti is such as will not be tolerated by our government, and if not put down by Spanish authority, will compel us, in self-defence, to destroy them. This communication is entrusted to Captain Amelung, of the first regiment of United States Infantry, who is charged to bring back such answer as you will be pleased to make to this letter. In your answer you will be pleased to state whether that fort has been built by the government of Spain, and whether those negroes who

garrison it are considered as subjects of his Catholic Majesty, and if not by his Catholic Majesty, by whom, and under whose orders it has been erected."

The Spanish governor hoped in many words General Jackson would not consider himself bound to do anything in violation of the sovereignty of the king, his royal master. Having spread these sentiments over ten pages of foolscap, the sublime governor concluded by observing that he held the virtues and military talents of General Jackson in the highest possible esteem, and that he prayed God to preserve his excellency many years.

The Spanish had not the force at Pensacola to fight the negroes with, and Jackson ascertaining that, wrote to the War Department that the Spanish authorities would not take it seriously amiss if the negro fort were destroyed by the forces under his own command, and he requested the orders of the President with regard to it.

General Gaines, in the spring of 1816, having Fort Scott to build at the junction of the Chattahoochie and Flint, attempted to navigate the Appalachicola. The negroes resisted the freedom and fired on a boat sent to ask information. The men were savagely massacred. Colonel Clinch, with two companies, dropped down the river and was joined by a party of Seminoles who had a way of seizing and selling fugitive slaves. There was at the same time an expedition ascending the river. During the first day of the investment, the Indians, during an interval of silence, demanded the surrender of *their* fort. The negroes hooted derisively in reply, hoisted a red flag, and over it on the same staff the British union jack, and sent a thirty-two pound shot crashing into the forest again. On the approach of Colonel Clinch, all the negroes in the vicinity had hurried into the fort for safety. The place contained, when

it was invested, one hundred men and two hundred and thirty-four women and children. There were two magazines within the fortification, one containing six hundred barrels of powder, and the other one hundred and sixty-three. The negroes fired artillery with great enthusiasm, but without effect except in smashing trees and scaring the Indians. No impression was made on the fort until a heated cannon ball was fired with steady, accurate aim. It penetrated the magazine, and the great store of powder exploded.

Of the three hundred and thirty-four inmates of the fort two hundred and seventy were killed instantly! The greater part of those who were taken out alive died soon after. Three men only crawled from the ruins uninjured, one of whom was Garcon, the commandant.

The Indians, with that mingled meanness and ferocity which marks their conduct on such occasions, raised the untimely yell of triumph, and clambered up the bluff. The troops and the crews of the gun-boats, stunned and appalled for some moments by the explosion, soon followed. The gun-boat-men were concerned for the fate of the sailor Daniels, who had been taken prisoner by Garcon at the mouth of the river and conducted to the fort. Upon inquiring of the survivors what had become of him, they ascertained that he had been tarred and burned alive. As a punishment for this savage act, Garcon and a Choctaw chief were delivered over to the Seminoles, who also carried off a large supply of British muskets, and other weapons, becoming very dangerous.

The immense store of powder bestowed with diplomatic indirection by the British upon the free and independent negroes, who had a grand fort meant for Seminoles, who preferred larger liberties than those enjoyed in fortifications,

proved the destruction of the civilized community, and Andrew Jackson, general commanding, was relieved of all responsibility for the escaped property in mass of the Southern farmers, and deprived of a promising opening for war with the Spaniards. The explosion of six hundred barrels of powder erased the black blot from the landscape, but the Seminoles carried off all the English muskets they wanted, and themselves became the disturbers of the peace, and the first of the several Seminole wars was soon under way and lingered like the hostilities of later days in Cuba.

“On the 16th of January, 1818 [we quote from the ‘Life of Andrew Jackson,’ by John Frost, 1847], the Secretary of War wrote General Gaines, informing him that the honor of the United States required that the war with the Seminoles should be terminated speedily, and with exemplary punishment for hostilities so unprovoked; and that orders were issued directing the war to be carried on within the limits of Florida, should it be necessary to its speedy and effectual termination. These orders, it was presumed, he had received. That as soon as it was known that he had repaired to Amelia island, in obedience to them, and it being uncertain how long he might be detained there, the state of things at Fort Scott made it necessary to order General Jackson to take command there. From his known promptitude, it was presumable that his arrival might soon be expected.

“A letter from the Secretary of War to General Jackson, dated January 29, 1818, acknowledged the receipt of letters from him of the 12th and 13th of that month; and states that the measures he had taken to bring an efficient force into the field were approved; and it concluded by expressing a confident hope that a speedy and successful termination of the Indian war would follow his exertions.

“He crossed the Flint river on the 10th of March and advanced with his army toward the mouth of the Appalachicola. On the 16th he arrived at Prospect Bluff, the site of the Indian and negro fort which had been blown up by the fire of the American gunboats, in the month of July, 1817. This Jackson ordered to be rebuilt, designing to use it as a depot for the provisions expected from New Orleans. He called it Fort Gadsden, in honor of one of his aids. General Gaines joined him in his march to the fort.

“Having completed the necessary arrangements at Fort Gadsden, General Jackson started from that point on the 26th of March, for the purpose of driving the enemy from the Mickasuky villages. When he had nearly reached these villages, on the 1st of April, he was joined by the main body of the Tennessee volunteers, who, having heard of the starving condition of the garrisons stationed at Forts Gaines and Scott, had taken a circuitous route through Georgia, to obtain subsistence. As he approached the principal village his advanced guard had a smart conflict with a party of Indians, who fled as soon as the main body came up. When the army entered the towns they were found deserted by their inhabitants. The wigwams were burned, the adjacent country reconnoitred, and an abundant supply of corn and cattle obtained. In the council-house of the principal village, Jackson found more than fifty fresh scalps, and in the centre of the town, the old Red-stick standard stood crowned with the scalps, recognized by the hair as those torn from the heads of the unfortunate companions of Lieutenant Scott.

“Hearing that a body of five hundred negroes and Indians had approached St. Mark's, and having been refused admittance, had demanded its surrender, and

knowing the duplicity of Luengo, the governor, who now pretended friendship for the Americans, while a short time before he had, to the best of his ability, aided and protected their enemies,—knowing these things, General Jackson left McIntosh with his warriors to scour the country in the neighborhood of Mickasuky village, and hastened to prevent the surrender of the strong post of St. Mark's to the enemies of the United States. From the moment that the Negro-Indian fort was destroyed, St. Mark's had become the depot and storehouse of the savages.

“This post was now threatened by the hostile Indians and negroes, and the Spanish garrison was unable to defend it against them. It was, therefore, necessary to occupy it with an American garrison, to prevent it from falling into the hands of the Seminoles, who, uncontrolled by Spain, might issue forth at any time, murder the citizens of the United States, and, when closely pursued, fall back upon St. Mark's, their stronghold. Accordingly, General Jackson marched to that fort, took possession of it without the least resistance, and shipped the Spanish authorities and garrison to Pensacola. It was near St. Mark's that Alexander Arbuthnot was captured.

“Arbuthnot's schooner was taken at the mouth of the Suwanee river and employed in transporting the sick and baggage of the army to St. Mark's. On the 18th, Robert C. Ambrister, late a lieutenant of marines in the British service under Nichols, was captured in the neighborhood of the villages. Ambrister was accused of leading and inciting the Indians to make war on the Americans, and was detained a close prisoner until the general found an opportunity to examine the evidence on which the accusation rested.

“On the next day (22d) he convened a special court for

the purpose of investigating the charges exhibited against Alexander Arbuthnot and Robert C. Ambrister; with instructions to record all the documents and testimony of the several cases, and give their opinion as to the guilt or innocence of the prisoners, and what punishment (if any) should be inflicted. This court of inquiry was composed of Major-General Gaines, president, three colonels, three lieutenant-colonels, four majors, two captains and a lieutenant.

“The court of inquiry found Arbuthnot guilty of exciting and stirring up the Creek Indians to war against the United States and her citizens, he being a subject of Great Britain, with whom the United States were at peace; and of aiding, abetting and comforting the enemy, and supplying them with the means of war. They accordingly sentenced him to be suspended by the neck until he was dead.

“They also found Ambrister guilty of aiding, abetting, and comforting the enemy, and supplying them with the means of war, he being a subject of Great Britain, who were at peace with the United States, and late an officer in the British colonial marines, and also of leading and commanding the lower Creek Indians, in carrying on a war against the United States. They, therefore, sentenced him to suffer death by being shot. The members of the court requested a reconsideration of the vote on this sentence; and, it being had, they sentenced him to receive fifty stripes on the bare back, and to be confined with a ball and chain, at hard labor, for twelve months.”

This, not being a *court martial*, had no authority to pronounce sentence upon the prisoners; but as a *special court*, or a *court of inquiry* into the circumstance of the case, to advise the commanding-general, in such cases as he might require their opinion. Accordingly, General Jackson ap-

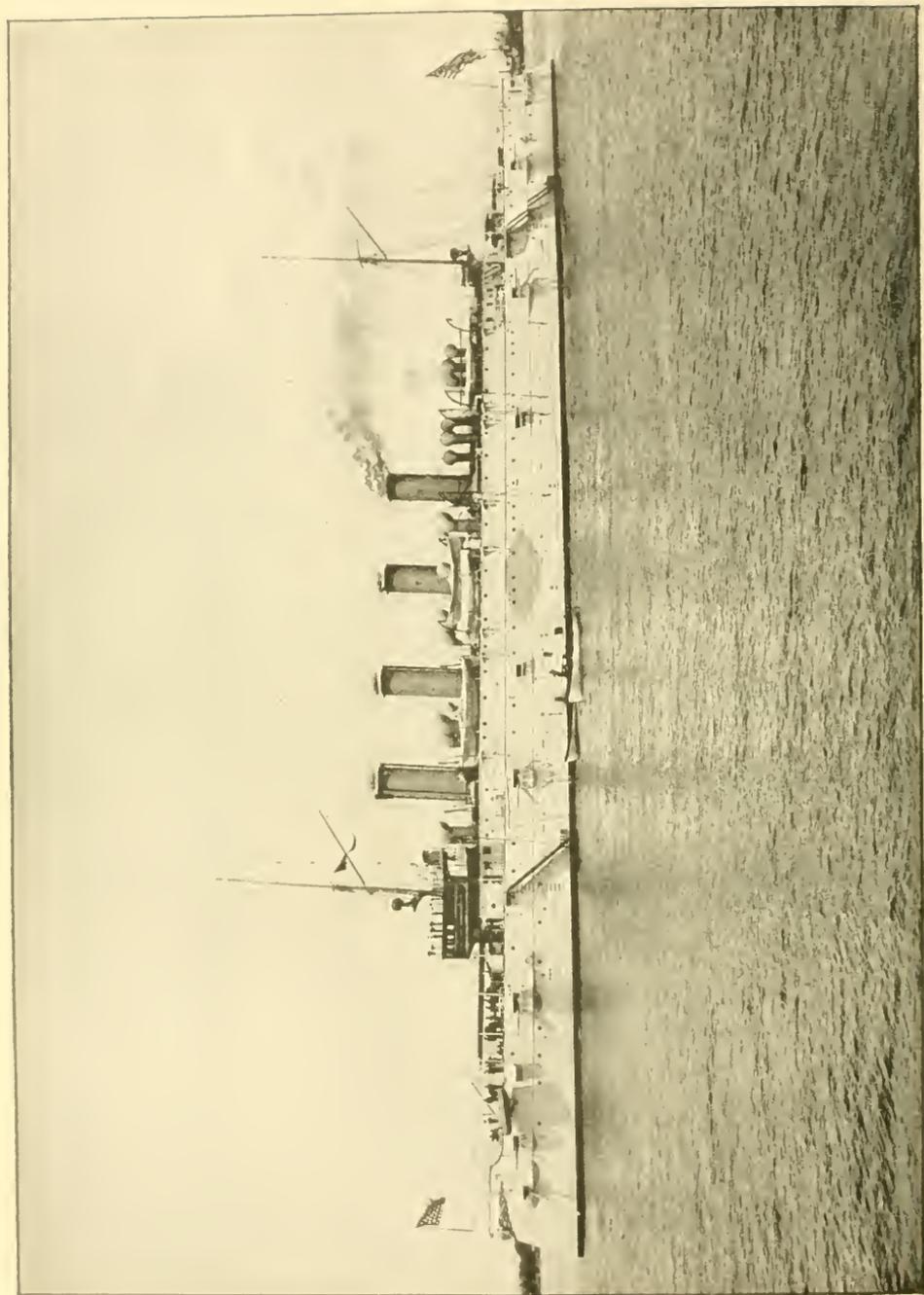
proved the sentence of the court with regard to Alexander Arbuthnot, and he was hung on the 29th of April. He also approved the first sentence of the court in the case of Robert C. Ambrister, and disapproved its reconsideration. In passing final sentence upon Ambrister, the general remarked: "It appears from the evidence and pleading of the prisoner, that he, being a subject of Great Britain, did lead and command, within the territory of Spain, the Indians in a war against the United States, those nations being at peace. It is an established principle of the law of nations, that any individual of a nation making war against the citizens of any other nation, they being at peace, forfeits his allegiance, and becomes an outlaw and pirate. This is the case of Robert C. Ambrister, clearly shown by the evidence adduced." He was accordingly shot on the same day that Arbuthnot was executed.

On the 5th day of May he wrote to the Secretary of War from Fort Gadsden, and gave him a detailed account of his operations in the war, and also informed him of the execution of Arbuthnot and Ambrister. In this dispatch he says: "I hope the execution of these two unprincipled villains will prove an awful example to the world, and convince the government of Great Britain, as well as her subjects, that certain, if slow, retribution awaits those unchristian wretches, who, by false promises, delude and excite an Indian tribe to all the horrid deeds of savage war."

It was in this campaign, "away down on the Suwanee river," that the ill-fated Arbuthnot had a trading post, and a letter of his to his son warned the Indians Jackson was after, to get across "The River of the Song." Mr. Graham Sumner says in his "American Statesmen:" "Their escape enraged Jackson. He had already regarded Arbuthnot as



THE "CONSTITUTION" AND "GUERRIERE."



one of the British emissaries. He now considered Arbuthnot's letter an overt act of interference in the war. The town was burned by Jackson."

Mr. Graham Sumner evidently regards General Jackson as having been an arbitrary "American statesman." He says with great simplicity of the General, "It was as a mere incident of his homeward march that Jackson turned aside and captured Pensacola, May 24, 1818, because he was told that some Indians had taken refuge there. He deposed the Spanish government, set up a new one, and established a garrison. He then continued his march homewards." But the close of this record is, "General Jackson had, in five months, broken the Indian power, established peace on the border, and substantially conquered Florida."

Frost says: "Robert C. Ambrister had formerly borne a lieutenant's commission in the British service, under Nichols and Woodbine, and had remained in the Floridas as a kind of successor and agent to them. He had resided a considerable time at Suwanee, and pursued the same general system of measures in relation to the negroes and Indians as Arbuthnot had done; though not to the same extent, or in concert with him. When the alarm was given of the approach of the American troops, he put himself at the head of what Indians and negroes he could rally, broke open Arbuthnot's store, and distributed its contents, among which were some powder and ball, to his followers, and attempted to organize a party to go out and fight the Americans."

It was on the 10th of May, that General Jackson, having smitten the Seminoles, hanged Arbuthnot, shot Ambrister, and restored tranquillity, except where the Spaniards were in authority, arrived at Escambia, near Pensacola, with twelve hundred men. He notified the governor of his

approach, who, in answer, ordered him to retire from Florida; and if he did not, that he would use force to repel him. Frost says, "The governor of Pensacola did not apply force to prevent Nichols from occupying his town; he did not use force to prevent Indians and negroes, hostile to the United States, from entering Pensacola. The General, hearing that some hostile Indians had received provisions in Pensacola, and had escaped across the bay, disregarded the remonstrance of the Spanish governor, and determined to take the town. His obligations to the United States compelled him to do so. Spain was expressly obliged, by treaty, to restrain, by force, the Indians within her territory from committing hostilities against the United States. The Spanish officers commanding in Florida did not restrain the Indians from war, but aided and abetted them in it; it then became the duty of Spain to have displaced and superseded those officers, and to have confided to others the command of Florida, who would have preserved the neutral character of that territory. Spain did not displace or supersede them. In order, therefore, to prevent the perpetration of future atrocities by Indians, negroes, and foreign emissaries and impostors, it became necessary to occupy St. Mark's, Pensacola and the Barrancas, with detachments of troops from the United States, who would defend these fortresses, not from the lawful authority of Spain, but from unlawful seizure and occupation by enemies of the United States, consisting of Indians, negroes, and the villains from other countries, who were stimulating these savages to every species of barbarous warfare on our exposed frontier."

On the 24th, General Jackson, at the head of twelve hundred men, in the language of President McKinley, in his first annual message, regarding Spanish insults in Cuba,

“intervened with force” to remove the Spaniards from Florida. Jackson advanced against Pensacola, captured the town, besieged and took the fortress of Barrancas, at the entrance, to the bay, sent the Spanish authorities to Havana, and the government of the United States extended her authority over the captured posts, until they should be restored by proper representation to Spain.

General Jackson then scoured the whole territory in search of the fugitives, and having made every necessary arrangement for the security of the settlers, discharged his Tennessee volunteers, left General Gaines in command, and returned to the Hermitage near Nashville. Three months afterwards, St. Augustine, the only remaining Spanish fortress in Florida, was captured by General Gaines, in obedience to General Jackson's orders, and the whole province was thus brought into the military possession of the United States.

It was decided that the Spanish posts taken by Jackson should be restored and Jackson was threatened mildly with a court martial, for his impetuous executive ability. In a letter to the Secretary of War, June 2, 1818, Jackson said: “The Seminole war may now be considered at a close; tranquillity is again restored to the southern frontier of the United States, and as long as a cordon of military posts is maintained along the Gulf of Mexico, America has nothing to apprehend from either foreign or Indian hostilities. The immutable principles of self-defence justified the occupancy of the Floridas, and the same principles will warrant the American government in holding it, until such time as Spain can guaranty, by an adequate military force, the maintaining of her authority within the colony.”

Jackson returned to Nashville and resigned his commission in the army. The Spaniards in Florida never re-

covered from the shock he gave them, and they did not feel that the honor of their arms demanded they should expend their resources in men and money to retain that peninsula. It would have been well if their practical wisdom had asserted itself in the case of Cuba. The Seminole and Spanish campaign of Jackson, three years after his victory at New Orleans, was a fitting appendix to the triumphant defence of the mouth of the Mississippi river.

The war, though not one of the big wars that make ambition virtue, is worthy to be celebrated as one of the strokes of enterprising daring and good fortune, that have rounded out our country, tracing her boundaries by the great lakes and the Gulf that is the American Mediterranean, and along the surf of the two great oceans of the Globe pulsating on our shores.

CHAPTER X.

THE ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.

Texas Early Known as the "New Philippines"—The Revolutionary Movement of Aaron Burr—Establishing Boundary Lines—American Emigration into Texas the Cause of her Independence—Hatred Between the Americans and Mexicans Leads to Continued Bloodshed and Massacre—General Samuel Houston the Liberator of Texas—The American Battle-cry, "Remember the Alamo"—Texas Becomes a State of the Union.

THE early history of Texas furnishes an interesting coincidence in connection with our present occupation of the Philippine Islands, as the early Spanish settlers of the Dominion of Texas originally called that country "The New Philippines." That was in 1715. After the cession of the Province of Louisiana to the United States by France, in 1803, a controversy arose about its western boundary, which was temporarily settled, in 1806, by General Wilkinson and the Spanish Governor establishing a territory between the Sabine River and Arroya Honda as neutral ground.

Aaron Burr, whose term of office as Vice-President of the United States had expired in March, 1805, inaugurated a movement which seemed to have a twofold character: the conquest of Mexico from the Spaniards and the establishment of an independent monarchy, revolutionizing the Mississippi Valley, separating that region from the rest of the United States, and forming an independent republic, with its seat of government at New Orleans. If the first-mentioned scheme should be carried out, Burr aspired to be king; if the latter, he was to be president of his new republic.

While engaged in this mysterious conspiracy he tried to enlist the sympathies and co-operation of all the leading malcontents in the country. Among these was General William Eaton, who had returned from the Barbary States, angry with his Government for having been recalled while at the height of a successful expedition against the Mediterranean pirates which he had inaugurated.

Burr informed General Eaton of his expedition against Mexico, and, under the impression that it was secretly countenanced by the National Government, Eaton agreed to join him. Thinking to have gained the complete confidence of Eaton, Burr told him of his true project, assuring him that Wilkinson, commander-in-chief of the United States army, was engaged in the enterprise, and would doubtless be able to carry with him the regular troops in the Mississippi Valley; and, further, that if he could secure the marine corps, the only troops stationed at Washington, and gain over the naval commanders, Truxton, Preamble, Decatur, and others, he would turn Congress out of doors, assassinate the President, seize the Treasury, and declare himself the Protector of his newly established empire.

Eaton, satisfied that Burr was a dangerous man, waited on the President and informed him of the conspiracy. Thomas Jefferson, knowing that he could count on the loyalty of the western settlers, did not take the matter seriously.

Burr had secured the promise of the co-operation of the English forces in the West Indies. He succeeded in creating the impression, among the people throughout the country, that he was engaged in a scheme for revolutionizing Mexico, an idea that was agreeable to the western people on account of the existing difficulties with Spain. It was also made to appear that the scheme was secretly

favored by the Government. Under this impression Burr's project received the countenance of several leading men in the western country. Volunteers were rapidly enlisting, gunboats were being built, and other preparations were being speedily completed.

Meanwhile Wilkinson was on the frontier of Louisiana guarding the country against the Spanish marauders, and while in camp there a young man arrived with a letter of introduction from Jonathan Dayton, of New Jersey, to Col. Cushing, the senior officer next to Wilkinson. He also conveyed a secret message to Wilkinson from Burr, which was a formal letter of introduction and contained a letter from Burr written in cipher. Circumstances seemed to show, at that time, that Wilkinson was engaged with Burr in the conspiracy.

The cipher letter informed Wilkinson that Burr had arranged for troops under different pretexts at different points. He would rendezvous on the Ohio by the first of November and that the protection of England had been secured; that Truxton had gone to Jamaica to arrange with the English admiral; that the English fleet would meet on the Mississippi; that the navy of the United States was ready to join; that final orders had been given to his friends and followers, and that Wilkinson would be second to Burr only. The people of the country to which they were going were ready to receive them, and that their agent with Burr had stated that if protected in their religion, and not subjected to foreign government, all would be settled in three weeks. Enclosed in the same packet was also a letter in cipher from Jonathan Dayton, telling Wilkinson he would surely be displaced by the next Congress, and adding:

“You are not a man to despise, or even despond, es-

pecially when such prospects offer in another quarter. Are you ready? Are your numerous associates ready? Wealth and glory! Louisiana and Mexico! DAYTON."

The correspondence in cipher and otherwise between Wilkinson and Burr led to the conclusion that the former was, at that time, engaged in the conspiracy, and that Burr relied upon him.

Intimations of a design to seize the newly acquired territory startled Wilkinson and he resolved to defend the country against any schemes of conquest which Burr might attempt.

Wilkinson, like Eaton, had supposed that the movement was against Mexico and not against the United States. He was, however, suspected of complicity by his Government, and when Aaron Burr was arrested for high-treason, Wilkinson was court-martialed but honorably acquitted.

General Jackson, who had favored Burr's schemes so long as they looked only toward a seizure of Spanish provinces, alarmed by evidence that he had wicked designs against the Union, wrote to Governor Claiborne warning him of the designs of Burr, and also cautioning him to keep an eye on Wilkinson, under the impression that he, too, was associated with Burr. He wrote, under date of November 12, 1806: "I hate the Dons. I would delight to see Mexico reduced, but I would die in the lowest ditch before I would see the Union disunited."

Burr was being watched and was finally arrested, but no evidence could be found against him, yet his scheming continued. His influence, however, began to diminish among the western people, after his schemes were laid bare, and soon a reward was offered for his capture. He was arrested February 19, 1807, and an indictment for high-treason was found against him by a grand jury for the District of Vir-

ginia. He was also charged with conspiring to overthrow the National authority in the Western States and Territories. Again the evidence was such that a conviction was impossible and he was acquitted.

Soon after, according to the historian Lossing, through the invasion of Texas by the Americans, trouble began in Louisiana and Texas, and many skirmishes and battles occurred. This state of affairs continued for years, and in 1813 the Spanish lost, in one of these conflicts, over 1,000 men. In the same year a force of 2,500 Americans and revolted Mexicans were almost totally destroyed, and over seven hundred of the inhabitants of San Antonio were massacred.

After the war of 1812-15, Captain La Fitte, the pirate, made the present site of Galveston his headquarters, remaining there until 1821, when his outlaw settlement was broken up by the United States authorities. The whole territory was in a state of lawlessness and a menace to the Union, requiring continual watching.

In 1819 the Sabine River was established as the eastern boundary of Texas, but dissatisfaction caused disturbances to continue and the territory of Texas was almost deserted.

In 1820, Moses Austin, an American citizen from Missouri, received, from the Spanish authorities of Mexico, a grant of land in Texas. This was transferred to his son, Stephen F. Austin, in 1823 at the death of his father. He induced emigrants from the United States to settle in Texas and soon more than a thousand families had made that country their home. These early colonists were severely oppressed by the Spanish authorities, and in 1830 the government forbade any more Americans coming into the territory. In 1833, when they numbered more than 20,000 settlers, a convention was held and measures taken

to obtain the independence of Texas. On the 12th of November, 1835, Texas organized a provisional government and chose Henry Smith Provisional Governor. A committee of safety was established, and armed resistance against the government of Mexico commenced. San Antonio de Bexar was taken by the insurgents, under Samuel Houston, who was commander-in-chief.

By the victory of San Antonio, the Mexican forces were driven out of Texas, and on the 20th of December, 1835, a Declaration of Independence was issued. Soon after Santa Anna with 7,500 men, provided with artillery, ammunition, and stores, set out for Texas, and in February, 1836, invested the Alamo, a strong fortress near San Antonio. This was carried by storm, after eleven days' bombardment, and the entire garrison was butchered. The brave and daring David Crockett, of Tennessee, was one of the victims of this massacre.

The United States offered, repeatedly, to purchase the territory, but Mexico refused to sell, and Santa Anna was sent to bring the Texans to obedience.

From that time the war-cry of the Texans was "Remember the Alamo."

A convention assembled in March, 1836, and issued another Declaration of Independence, adopted a constitution, and made David G. Burnet Provisional President of the declared Republic of Texas. The constitution was signed March 17th.

Hostilities continued, and on the 27th Col. Fanning's command was captured at Goliad, and, in violation of the terms of surrender, was massacred.

Houston fell back before the advance of the Mexican troops in order to scatter them, and on the San Jacinto he gave battle, completely routing them and capturing Santa

Anna, who commanded in person. This ended the war and established the independence of Texas.

General Houston was elected President, September, 1836, and the first Congress assembled in October. The independence of Texas was acknowledged by the United States in March, 1837.

The people of the Southern States were all decidedly in favor of the annexation of Texas, and the same feeling also prevailed throughout that sovereign State. The proposition was, however, opposed by the people of the North, because annexation would increase the area of the slave-power and lead to a war with Mexico.

President Tyler, however, made propositions to the President of Texas for its annexation to the United States, and a treaty to that effect was signed at Washington, April 12, 1844, by Mr. Calhoun, Secretary of State, and Messrs. Van Zandt and Henderson on the part of Texas.

This measure was rejected by the Senate in June following. The project was, however, again presented at the next session of Congress, in the form of a joint resolution. It had been made a leading political issue in the presidential campaign of 1844. James K. Polk had been nominated over Mr. Van Buren, because he was in favor of annexation. The joint resolution was adopted March 1, 1845, and received the assent of President Tyler the next day. On the last day of his term of office he sent a message to the Government of Texas, with a copy of the joint resolutions of Congress in favor of annexation. These were laid before a convention assembled in Texas for the purpose of forming a State constitution. That body approved the measure July 4, 1845, and Texas joined the Union.

Knowing the war-like determination of Mexico, the authorities of Texas sent an urgent request to the President

of the United States to dispatch an army for their protection. Accordingly General Zachary Taylor was ordered to march from Camp Jessup, in Western Louisiana, and occupy Texas.

The bill for the annexation of Texas to the United States was signed by the President, March 1, 1845, and a few days later, General Almonte, Mexican Minister to the United States, closed his diplomatic relations with our Government and left the city of Washington. The Mexican Government was vexed because of the proposed annexation.

Texas at that time embraced an area of 376,133 square miles, and in 1850 the State ceded to the United States its claim to all territory beyond its present limits, in consideration of \$10,000,000 in bonds, with the proceeds of which the old State debt was paid.

The principal cause of the difficulty between Texas and Mexico originated from the time of the Mexican Revolution in 1821. Mexico, after achieving her independence, rearranged her civil administration and united the territories of Coahuila and Texas, the two frontier States east of the Rio Grande, under one provincial government. Such was the condition of affairs when Texas succeeded in establishing her independence, and the Texans naturally claimed the independence of the whole province. Mexico, however, insisted that Texas only, and not Coahuila, had revolted against her authority, and that therefore the latter province was still rightfully a part of the Mexican dominions. Thus it came to pass that Texas claimed the Rio Grande as her western limit, while Mexico was determined to have the Nueces River as the separating line. The territory between the two rivers was in dispute and the government of the United States proposed arbitration, but the authorities of Mexico scornfully refused.

The annexation led to a war with Mexico.

CHAPTER XI.

OUR WAR WITH MEXICO.

The Honor of the Arms of Mexico.—Mexican Account of Buena Vista.—A Splendidly Told Story That Gives the American Troops Full Credit.—Santa Anna's Terrible Retreat.

IN no war, not even in the great war of the Sections and States of the United States, did American valor shine more brilliantly, and was the capacity of our commanders more in evidence, than in the war with Mexico, which began on the Rio Grande and was ended at the City of Mexico. The habit of our historians of disparaging the Mexican soldiery and discrediting the capacity of Santa Anna, because he was made a prisoner of war in Texas, has diminished unfairly and most unwisely the credit due our small armies and their great leaders, for their splendid and surprising achievements.

The Mexican armies did not lose honor, though they suffered defeat at Buena Vista and Cerro Gordo, to say nothing of Cherubusco, Contreras and Chapultepec. The glory won by American soldiers is only enhanced by the concession, according to the truth of history, of the manly qualities of the enemy they overcame, and those enemies are now our friends and co-operate with us in good works and compete with us in progressive civilization. It is not only due to historical truth, but it is consonant with American statesmanship of Continental bearing, to give the Mexicans due consideration for the vigor and fortitude with which they resisted us at Monterey and Vera Cruz, in the midst of the mountains and at the gates of the City of Mexico.

General Scott, charged with a direct movement upon the Mexican capital, drew from General Taylor, whose base was on the Rio Grande; and Santa Anna advanced, expecting to crush Taylor, hoping to beat him conclusively and, returning, to check Scott. His movement was excellently planned, but failed of execution, largely owing to the hardships of the Mexican army in its arduous advance that was halted at Buena Vista. In a Mexican account of this movement there is this striking picture, worthy of memory.

"The night was passed in the gate of Carnero. There were the light corps, the Hussars, and the other troops in the midst of a plantation of palm trees. 'In the night,' relates an eye-witness in a periodical of the capital, 'the cold was intense, beyond description, and the army shivering, by an instinct almost of desperation set fire to different points in the groves of palms. The flame increased its volume, and an ocean of fire suddenly sprang up with its awful waves in the midst of the heavens. The spectacle was imposing and sublime. By the light the soldiers were seen half dead with cold, looking like an army of lifeless bodies.'

"On the 22d the march was resumed. General Santa Anna on horseback presented himself to the troops and aroused their spirits. He proceeded to the advance guard, whose enthusiasm was at the highest pitch. Information was soon received that the Americans, who it was believed would defend the post of Aguanueva, had abandoned that hacienda, after having given it to the flames.

"As soon as Santa Anna had become certain of this fact, he rode hastily to Aguanueva with his staff and the Hussars. Having come there, he resolved at once to follow up the enemy, and ordered the cavalry to the front. They immediately obeyed, and while the divisions of the infantry halted

to provide themselves with water, the cavalry passed without one man stopping to drink a drop, although all were fatigued, without food and burning with thirst. In passing the hacienda they turned their wistful looks to the well which reanimated, with its crystal waters; but submissive to the voice of duty, they went on together without leaving the ranks."

This showed devotion and discipline, but was not a good preparation for battle. The fortunes of the day might have been changed if the cavalry rushing to combat, with the hardest work before them, had paused to partake of the "Crystal Waters."

"A little further on they came up with the enemy on the field of battle, known by the name of the Angostura.* The ground which had to be passed over was formed of extensive and broad plains, in which it would not have been possible to resist the vigorous attack of our troops, especially of our invincible cavalry. But where the enemy had halted to give battle, two successive series of hills and barrancas began, which formed a position truly formidable. Each hill was fortified with a battery, and ready to deal its murderous fire upon any attempting to take it. The position presenting serious obstacles to an attack manifested very plainly that for the Mexicans to gain a victory they would have to sustain a heavy loss in men.

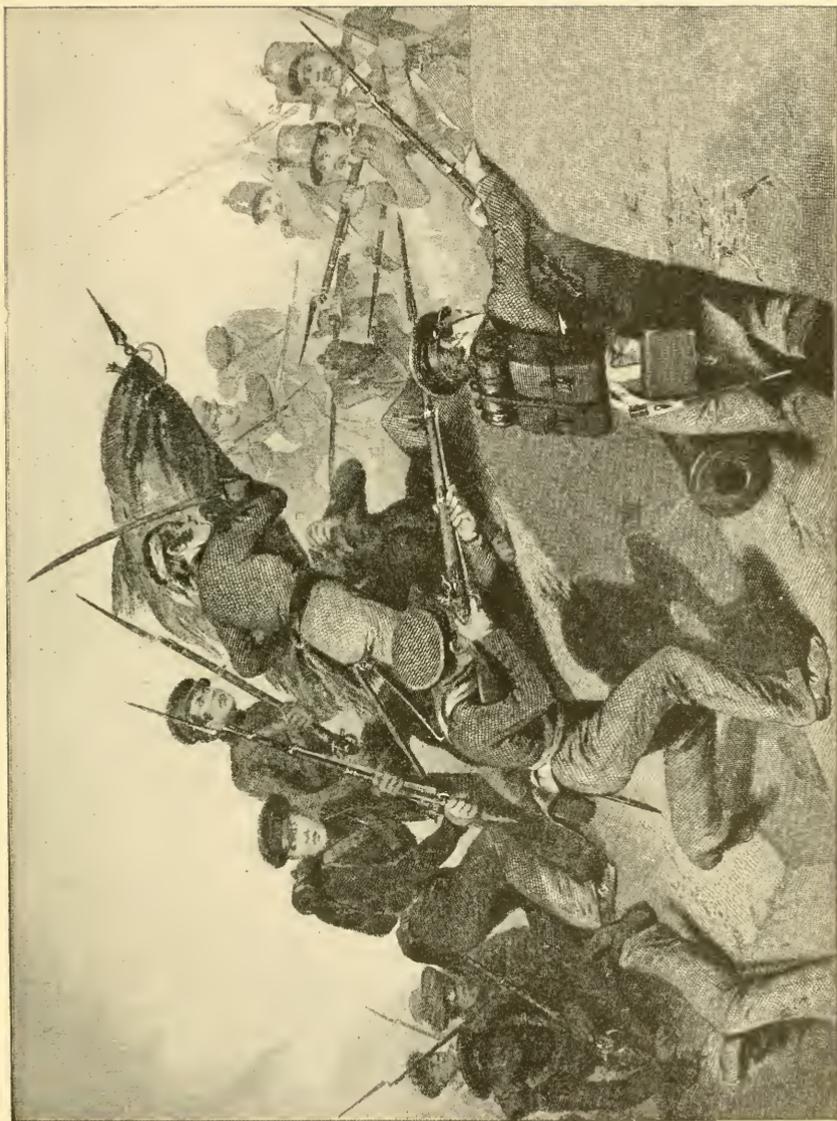
As soon as the cavalry arrived at Encantada, where they came in contact with the enemy, the firing of light arms commenced. The general-in-chief immediately ordered the infantry to accelerate their speed by marching in double-quick time. When this was effected, notwithstanding the troops being exhausted, they were pushed forward to the Angostura, which thus made the day's tramp in all some

*The Mexican name for Buena Vista.

twelve leagues. The fatigue alone killed several soldiers, who remained stretched upon the road. When the infantry came up, the brigade of General Mejia took a position to the left in the cornfields, and was supported by a corps of cavalry. The remainder of the infantry being placed upon the right, formed in two lines, with sufficient reserves and batteries. The brigade of cavalry were halted in the rear.

“The General-in-chief directed Ampudia to occupy, with the light corps, a mountain that had remained abandoned on our right, and which was extremely important to deciding the action. These troops moved toward the position, and General Taylor at the same time perceived the mistake he had made. In order to retrieve his error, he sent a respectable force in the same direction in hopes to anticipate our reaching the point. The two divisions approached each other, and knowing that the occupation of the mountain would not now be an easy undertaking, and that it would belong to the victor, they opened their fire and joined in a fierce struggle. Besides the opposition of the enemy, this eminence in itself presented weighty obstacles. The ascent was almost perpendicular, and consequently to take the position presented painful difficulties, making it necessary to adopt a thousand expedients to overcome them.”

The action was prolonged with animation, and when the night had completely closed in, the result was still very doubtful. The light corps fought courageously, and the other part of the army, simply spectators of the battle, followed with their eyes, the direction of the fires, anxious between doubt and hope. “As soon as it was dark,” continues the account before quoted, “the scene was magnificent. A cloud of fire was seen, in fact, floating in the skies, which increased or diminished as the enemy gained or lost ground.” At last the Americans gave way, their soldiers



THE BOYS OF '46.



THE METHODS OF SPANISH CONQUEST.

retreated, and ours scaled a summit as desperately defended as intrepidly won.

“For the balance of the night they bivouacked in front of the enemy. It had rained, the cold was intense, and to make fires was not proper, as all lights had been prohibited in the camp. The greater portion of the army awaited the action, indifferent and tranquil, as if death were not ringing in sounds about their heads. Meanwhile some officers watched, oppressed with reflections which prevail on the eve of a great battle.

“The 23d commenced, and the first dawn of that ever memorable day was saluted by martial strains from all the corps. General Santa Anna was now on his horse giving directions. The fire of the cannon opened and the troops took their positions, and the brigade of General Mejia passed from the left to the right of the road. The battle soon after became general, and as there was no time to prepare food, the soldiers fought all day without eating.

“The action began at the mountain gained in the evening, where the enemy now contended with our light corps without success. Between seven and eight in the morning the General-in-chief gave the order to charge. All the troops now advanced, moving in a parallel line of battle. Along the road moved forward, a column under the orders of General Blanco (D. Santiago), composed of the battalions of sappers, the mixed troops of Tampico, and the Fijo de Mexico, their left being supported by the Hussars. To the right of this column was the division of Lombardini, forming the centre, and at his side was that of Pacheco. A little further back still to the right, serving as a reserve, followed that of General Ortega. General Ampudia, with the light corps, reinforced by the Fourth of the line, continued fighting with the American force at the foot of the mountain.

“ The line of the enemy was oblique, therefore, when our army marched in line parallel, as we have said, the column on the road received a destructive fire from cannon, while the other divisions were yet distant from the Americans. However, it was not disconcerted, and the soldiers fearlessly rushed forward, closing up the gaps which the balls opened in their ranks, with musket to the shoulder, and desiring to come to the bayonet to avenge their slain comrades, sacrificed with impunity. But General Santa Anna perceiving the slaughter ordered a halt, sheltering them behind a slight undulation which shut out the enemy’s fire.

“ In the meanwhile the divisions of Lombardini and Pacheco had debouched and were at the points contested. When the action began Lombardini received a dangerous wound which caused him to retire, and the command devolved upon General Perez. The troops of General Pacheco, almost entirely raw recruits, were shaken and soon drew back, pressed by the unerring fire which they received in the front, and a fierce attack in their flank which effectually threw them into disorder. The dispersion was general. In vain Pacheco, with a valor worthy of eulogy, endeavored to hold his men, who never halted until they reached the last ranks. The enemy, desirous of improving their advantage, hastened to complete the victory and advanced with intrepidity. But the division of General Perez calmly and steadily made a change of front to the right, and obliged them to retire. This skillful movement was seconded by a battery of eight, of which Captain Ballarta had charge, and which Santa Anna had placed under the orders of the serene General Michaeltoarena. The fire from these pieces occasioned a considerable loss to the Americans. Each discharge was effective from the short distance at which they fought, being only that of a small hill. The

enemy who had dreamed for a moment of victory retired routed, leaving the field covered with bodies, the brave mixed up on both sides who had fallen in this bloody conflict.

“The ardor had been great with all who had been engaged. Now our soldiers, ascending the hill, charged with the bayonet, now descending the barranca closed with the enemy, and again climbing up without ceasing to fight, and again turned like an avalanche from above headlong to the bottom. Thus they gained and lost ground, and thus at last they remained masters of the place, achieved by such heroic efforts. The triumph would at that instant have been complete if the cavalry had been at hand to dash upon the broken remains of the conquered forces. Unfortunately, this was at a distance, and when it came up it met them already re-formed. But it charged with boldness under the direction of the valiant General Juvera. All did their duty, and General D. Angel Guzman, colonel of the regiment of Morelia, distinguished himself in a special manner, pursuing the enemy to the hacienda of Buena Vista. Part of the cavalry followed so far in the chase that to return to our camp they had to take the rear of Taylor's troops and pass out by the left of the position.

“In the first battle, to which we have referred, the Mexicans had conquered. But the advantages which the ground afforded to the enemy required continued efforts, and not one victory, but many. Rallying the troops upon the top of a hill, they at once re-formed them, and it was necessary to proceed by taking hill after hill. The column which we had left upon the road, sheltered by the unevenness of the ground, came now to form the reserve of the line. Our troops advanced in good order; the battery of General Michael-torena alone, which played upon our side, destroyed the

enemy, and it came to the bayonet, with the soldiers fighting hand-to-hand. For the second time our brave men conquered. The Americans rallied on the next hill-top, leaving for a trophy one piece of cannon and three flags.

"At this time some persons, for a parley, presented themselves to the General-in-chief, intimating for him to surrender. Santa Anna answered with dignity, and refused to accede to so original a request. We should have passed over this incident in silence, as unimportant, if it were not for the fact that the envoy of this parley communicated that General Taylor was under the impression that Santa Anna had sent another to him, and that officer has so certified in his official report. To clear up the affair, we will explain in what this mistake consisted.

"At the second charge of our troops, a lieutenant, D. Jose Maria Montoya, who was in the front rank, became mixed up with the Americans. Seeing himself alone, and not desiring to be killed or taken prisoner, he availed himself of a stratagem to feign a parley, whereby he was carried into the presence of General Taylor. This was followed by his returning to our camp accompanied by two officers of their army, to have an interview with General Santa Anna. But Montoya, who had his reasons for not presenting himself, separated from the commissioners, who fulfilled their instructions." *

* This personal anecdote does not embellish the text, nor does it seem to have been introduced for that purpose, but only to create the impression that Santa Anna had not summoned Taylor to surrender, but that Taylor had, on the contrary, summoned him. On the 22d at 11 o'clock in the morning the American General received a *written* communication from Santa Anna informing him that he was surrounded by 20,000 Mexican troops, and demanding him to surrender. This note was soon after answered in another declining to do so, and which was carried to the Mexican headquarters. The correspondence is still preserved among the official papers of the American staff.

The story of Jose Montoya may be true in substance, for Taylor on the 23d

“After the second combat, which was in the morning between ten and eleven, a light drizzling rain fell. Our troops now took some rest and at twelve returned to march again upon the positions of the enemy. The sappers and other corps who were in reserve having, at this time, already turned to engage in the battle, General Taylor believed our left was weak. He therefore advanced some forces in that direction, who met with an unconquerable resistance. The brigade of Torrejon charged upon them, and they lost many officers and soldiers. The action became general; our line advanced; the light corps, who in the course of the battle had made the troops which they met give way, were now at the very extreme end of the brow of a hill, closed with the enemy. Again the affray became desperate, the dead and wounded increased on both sides; the one attacked gallantly, the other defended bravely; none yielded; the combat was prolonged for whole hours, and at the end, only after unheard-of efforts, did they succeed in forcing the enemy to their last position. Two more of their pieces and a field forge fell into our hands.

did receive a verbal message from the Mexicans, purporting to come from their headquarters. He, therefore, sent General Wool to learn what was wanted, and stopped firing, but that officer, as General Taylor says, “upon reaching the Mexican lines could not cause the enemy to cease their fire, and accordingly returned without having an interview.”

Montoya is a young man of excellent manners, of some scientific acquirements, of good character, and conversant with the French, but not the English language. He is now employed in the office of topography and statistics in the war department of Mexico. There are many reasons for believing his statement to be veracious. Yet no one will imagine that a summons for a surrender to General Taylor was absurdly answered by the same demand in return being made of Santa Anna. The whole subject of the text is to insinuate the belief that the respective forces were so nearly equal in numbers, that the American General entered the action flushed with the most sanguine anticipations.

General Taylor had no more thought of summoning Santa Anna to surrender than he had of sending him a challenge to single combat.

“At this time there came on a heavy shower of rain, and the troops, dead with fatigue, halted. Taylor, having tenaciously receded from hill to hill and losing each, after an obstinate resistance, prepared to make his final stand before yielding the palm of victory. But the battle had ceased; the charge feebly made was the last stroke of our forces. The enemy did not believe themselves routed, for so well had they lost their positions, except one, which was sufficient still to present a hostile attitude, that they feigned the glory of having conquered. On our part the army was proclaimed victorious, alleging in proof the trophies captured, the positions taken, and the divisions vanquished. The truth is, our arms routed the Americans in all the encounters, and so far the issue of the battle was favorable to us. There had been three partial triumphs, but not a complete victory.

“We have done no more than to explain the movements of the army as a whole, omitting strokes of valor and patriotism, which could not be inserted in this narrative. Upon the whole, however, we must say in general, that to the many persons whose conduct has been eulogized with justice, there are more who merit equally the estimation of their fellow-citizens. It was seen that various chiefs of corps took their flags in hand, led on their soldiers to action, and occupied the posts of the greatest danger. The officers behaved with dignity and proper deportment. The valor of the troops has extorted praise, even from the very enemy, who have only spoken ill of some generals, alleging that if all had imitated the example of the subordinates, the issue of the battle would have been decided in our favor.

“General Santa Anna has not been embraced in this accusation. Friends and enemies have recognized the valor

with which he constantly braved the fire. It is to be regretted his combinations did not correspond with his gallantry, that his errors dim the splendor of his merits, and that while it is painful to blame his conduct as a general, it is also pleasing to praise his courage as a soldier.

“The battle of Angostura had ended. The columns, masters of the field of action, received the unexpected order to stop fighting and retire at sundown to Aguanueva. There they met with provisions and supplies so much needed, and which were wanting in the place where they had fought. The drawing off commenced with the artillery, trains and wagons followed by the different brigades and corps. General Torrejon, with the third brigade, composed of the 3d, 7th, and 8th regiments, and the active of Guanajuato, remained, charged with the duty of passing the night on the field and of making fires over the whole extent to deceive the enemy.

“Our soldiers had displayed a valor worthy of a better fate; they had rushed boldly upon the enemy, crossing barrancas, ascending hills, and throwing themselves on the American batteries, which swept their ranks. They had fallen killed, or wounded, and with their last breath had shouted ‘Viva Republica.’ Thus fighting in a cause less just, were those men endeared to the grand army, which the captain of the age commanded, who, falling in battle, sent forth in their agony no other cries than ‘Vive la France,’ ‘Vive l’Empereur.’

“Those whose wounds were slight were carried half a league from the battlefield, and there, with the pure atmosphere, with some few appliances, and with limited and insufficient medical supplies, cures were effected. Such was the surgical hospital, in which might be seen the chiefs of the highest distinction and rank down to the most

miserable soldiers. These unfortunates had not learned even the fate reserved for them; they did not know that death would have been for many a less mournful evil and an enviable destiny.

“In taking the road for Aguanueva a scene of horror was presented which moved the hearts of those who had braved danger with serenity during the most critical moments of the combat. The wounded were upwards of 800 in number, and the means of transportation at their disposal were too few to permit all being removed. It was imperative, therefore, to leave a portion to their unhappy fate. These men, abandoned on a desert, steeped in their blood, shivering with cold, parched with thirst, without medical stores, without shelter, without food, saw their companions disappear, bearing with them all life and hope; and then was depicted on their livid countenances the appalling calmness of despair. In sight, already, might be viewed the jackals and dogs, who waited for the moment when they might begin their frightful banquet. Those who, more fortunate, could escape the horror of that night, had, in the future, one less cruel. They counted upon the sympathy of the enemy, and it is due to justice to say that they complied with the laws of war and the dictates of humanity.

“On our side, they who had retired could not but feel a vivid grief for the wounded who had been abandoned. Many saw among them relations and friends from whom they were separating forever, and without the power moreover of paying them the last tribute of affection, leaving the buzzards to gorge upon their dead bodies. To complete the catalogue of misfortunes, this was not the last pain suffered on the night of the 25th, and which will fill a page of woe in our military festivals.

“The retreat had begun at sundown, but the army, which now formed a confused mass, marched slowly, the brigades embarrassing each other, and advancing with difficulty. Although the battle ground was not more than four leagues distant from Aguanueva, the advance only reached there at ten o'clock at night. This hacienda which the Americans, on retiring, had fired, even now was burning when our troops returned. On one side of the road was a slimy, stagnant pond, into which the soldiers plunged, dying with thirst. But the water, instead of refreshing, only served to open the grave; since scarcely had they tasted it, when they expired in frightful convulsions. The few wounded who had got back to this place, and many who came worn out, but not hurt, died in this manner, and their blood, mixing with the scum upon the pool made the drinking intolerable. Yet there was no water to appease the burning thirst of the troops, and there were not wanting, some, who touched their lips with this unclean, disgusting, and baneful liquid.

“Soon the sight of the dead bodies, the death rattle of the dying, the moaning of the wounded, and the cursing of all, added new griefs to the spirits already sad with so many sufferings. The spectacle presented to view infused the most painful misery; the walking over the dead, and the trampling upon those who had not yet breathed their last.”

This is a most interesting account of the famous battle. Few Americans have seen a Mexican account of the combat. The testimony of the historian we quote is as flattering to the quality of our soldiers, as we could wish, and the fact that the Mexicans fought well was long since conceded, but rarely, if ever, related so effectively as here. The *Story of the Retreat* shows the extent of the American victory and the Mexican misfortune.

The retreat of the Mexican army is told with picturesque effect by Albert Ramsey, from Mexican accounts.

“The wagons and trains blocked up the road, the pack animals stumbled at every step. The saddle horses and draught mules, fatigued, and without anything to eat, could scarcely move. All was confusion, all wretched, and all enduring privations. At least, on the field of battle, the night, with its protecting shades, covered half the disasters; but in Aguanueva the picture of horror of the retreat was revealed in all its deformity, illuminated by the reddish glare of the burning pile, which mingled with the pale rays of the yellow and cheerless moon. At dawn of day on the 24th the call beat; that warlike sound reanimated the troops, dissipating the depression on their minds in seeing how few had survived their toils and labors. The review which was ordered exhibited the immense loss of the army, caused not so much by those who fell in action, as by the dispersion of the night; a dispersion which continued on the subsequent days.”

Presently there was reorganization, and while this was being done, three American officers arrived, in the character of commissioners. Conducted into the presence of the General-in-chief, they explained that our wounded had been collected and sent to Saltillo, where they would receive careful attention. They made, in the name of General Taylor, a high-flown eulogium upon the valor displayed by our troops in battle, and offered refreshments and provisions, which we knew were scarce in camp. They proposed ultimately an agreement for the suspension of arms and for terminating the differences existing between the two nations. General Santa Anna answered, and thanked them for what was due, such as the meritorious deportment observed to the wounded, as well as for the generous offer

they had made ; but he could not entertain the proposition, let alone enter into a convention, not being authorized by the Government, and, moreover, it was impossible while the territory was not free and occupied by the American forces.

In the course of the interview the General himself directed that, instead of the commissioners leaving the camp with their eyes bandaged, in conformity with established usages in such cases, they might pass before the army, observe its condition, and even review it if they wished. His object was to convince them with their own eyes that the falling back to Angostura had not originated in terror of the American arms.

In effect, the commissioners, accompanied by two adjutants of Santa Anna, passed in review the forces who remained even under arms. Their martial aspect, their fine deportment, their discipline and valor, which were appreciated at Buena Vista, attracted the attention of the Americans, who expressed themselves in words of praise.

But the retreat continued, and the demoralization that had been partially overcome increased, and the privations and panic of the troops augmented. Most of the wounded went in thirty carts, drawn by oxen, who had been selected there in preference to those having less hope of recovery. Various officers were also borne forward, carried by their soldiers, among whom there were many who watched with the greatest attention. Others, on the contrary, availed themselves of the occasion to commit crimes. They dispersed, and they deserted, not without first robbing their unfortunate officers and carrying their cruelty to the extreme of killing them for the greater security to their wickedness.

The same disorder facilitating the soldiers in separating

from the ranks, caused a large dispersion. Those who, endowed with more constancy, followed their banners, anticipated being victims of new sufferings. The day's journey from Aguanueva to the Encarnacion was fourteen leagues. To this large space was added the want of wholesome sustenance; of the most serious, even that of water, they had not one drop; and the painful sensation of awful cold penetrated to the marrow of the bones. On the brigades arriving at the Encarnacion, a general dismay was noticed, and which every moment was augmented. All classes were equally disgusted, for their hardships were in common, and none had a better lot than others.

On the 27th they marched to the Salado, walking this day eleven leagues. There was unfolded a new misfortune, which was the most serious that they had yet encountered. The food in the days before had been reduced to detestable and putrid meat, and the water which they drank was brackish. Those who had taken these unhealthy aliments were attacked with a violent dysentery, which spread with a gloomy prevalence until very few were free from it. The ravages of the infirmity became extremely deplorable; death devoured the unfortunate troops, so that every day a considerable number died. The army seemed made up of dead men; the miserable condition to which the sick were reduced, caused the skin of many to stick to their bones, and its shrinking exposed their teeth, giving to the countenance the expression of a forced laugh, which filled one with horror.

On the way there was bad news from Mexico. A pronunciamento had succeeded against the Administration, and the Mexican writer says:

"Great was the despondency which this disconsolate information produced. The brave men, who had gone to

contend with a foreign enemy, saw, with a heavy heart, that our internal dissensions were not forgotten, when the menaced invasion destroyed all things, like a fire which spreads rapidly in a thick wood full of combustible materials. The proximity of danger, which Vera Cruz felt, gave a new throb to their sad forebodings. The nation—attacked first in the north, next in the east, points of fatal augury—presented a spectacle to the world, by her fratricidal strife in the beautiful city, at whose gates the Americans were now rapping in their irruption.

“In Matehuala the arrest of General Minon was an event that caused a deep sensation. It was published that to him, in the battle of Angostura, the mistake was attributed for his not attacking the enemy, as had been agreed upon, and thus accusing him for our not having obtained a complete triumph. This antecedent and various remarks which, in the course of the campaign, Minon had made on Santa Anna, upon his operations, irritated the latter to such a degree that he resolved to submit to a court the conduct of the censorious general. The order was to seize him and place him in rigorous and close confinement.

“On the 1st of March they marched from Matehuala, and, without any incident occurring of importance, they arrived at Peñasco on the 8th. In the haciendas of the Presa and Solis the first symptoms of gratitude were manifested. Their proprietor aided the army with a generous hospitality, distributing also proper nourishment among the sick and wounded. On the way to the Venado new supplies were given with liberality and the greatest goodwill.

“The troops made their entrance into San Luis Potosi on the 9th, where they were received with unequivocal testimonies of the public gratitude. This city, as well as the

whole State of which it is the capital, gave repeated proofs of the patriotism of its inhabitants. Its excellent conduct, imitated by very few states, should put to the blush those who had not done their duty. This city gave the army a triumphal reception. The citizens endeavored in their courtesy, without sparing any efforts, to serve as far as they could, the soldiers of the Angostura.

“The remains of that army which had been seen to sally forth enthusiastic and respectable, returned dispirited and reduced to a small number. The perplexities of the road had infused a new disorganization into the brigades. The corps came with a force greatly diminished, order lost, and discipline relaxed. The condition, which these unfortunate troops now showed, made only too plain the almost incredible disasters of the army. The loss sustained from the Angostura to San Luis exceeded 10,500 men.”

That the fortunes of war wavered from side to side in the Battle of Buena Vista is a fact always recognized by the people of the United States, and there was much dispute as to the incidents of the combat. The Mexican account gives a stranger impression of the disastrous extent of the defeat of Santa Anna, than the reports and reflections of our own writers.

CHAPTER XII.

THE BATTLE OF CERRO GORDO.

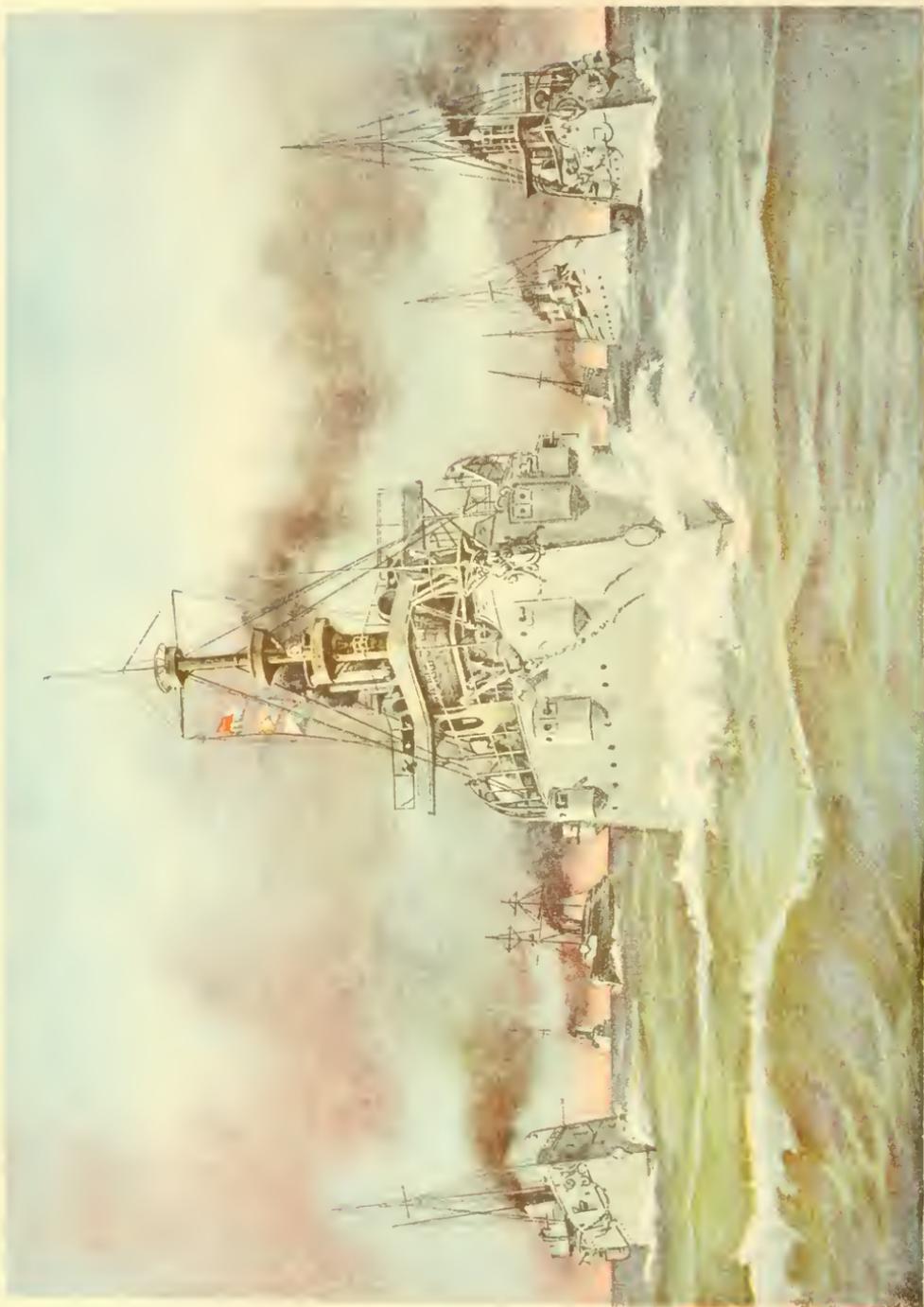
The Policy which Mexico should have Pursued—The Demoralizing Effect of Defeat on Nations of Spanish Descent—The Boastful Vanity of the Spanish-American Compared with the Active Energy of our Troops—The Story of the Battle of Cerro Gordo and a Vivid Description of the Terrible and Demoralizing Retreat.

RIPLEY says of the Mexican policy when the American invasion was on two lines: "Mexico's first want was a victory. Every thing might be hoped from such an event on the part of Mexico, and all which could be feared was to have been anticipated on the part of the United States. Had the Mexican army once beaten an American army, the result would have been such as followed the battle of Baylen; the only important one where Spaniards were successful in the war with the French in their peninsula, and then only through the surprising errors of the French general. But from that time Spanish energy was aroused. Spaniards had conquered at Baylen, and that one victory flattered their obstinate pride and induced them to continue the struggle. Their country, mountain and valley, swarmed with guerrillas; armies were raised with the most surprising rapidity; and, though beaten again and again, were only dispersed to reappear in stronger force. Baylen was and still is the cry of the Spaniards in their remembrance of former, and hope of future success.

"Such might have been the anticipated effect of a victory of the Mexican general over either Taylor, who had been thus far the terror of Mexico, or Scott, the general-in-chief

of the American army. When the immense importance of the victory is considered, it cannot be doubted that, when it had once been gained, and the nation fairly aroused by the cheering news, then, and not till then, would geographical points of defence have formed principal topics for the consideration of Santa Anna. Had these been remembered by the American commanders, there would have been no difficulty in deciding whether the Mexican president would have marched to Vera Cruz to oppose the landing of a large force, composed in great part of the veterans of the line of the American army, or moved in the direction which he had long observed, especially when the American troops were reduced to one third of their former strength, and the regular force of all arms, to less than a thousand men. So long as the prospect of success was brighter in the north than in the south, so long as it was certain that Santa Anna (unless his genius was underrated) would attack there; and the diversion which General Scott considered of so much importance, was made on General Taylor's part the moment his position offered more probabilities of successful attack than that which Scott was about to take; it was believed that the Mexican general would refrain from attacking either, in which case it made small difference about the strength of either division.

“Santa Anna's movements had given up the whole country north and east of the Sierra Madre without a struggle. But he had put three hundred miles of comparatively desert country, on the direct route from Saltillo to San Luis, between himself and General Taylor, of which the water tanks could be destroyed to impede the advance of his enemy, and which, for that purpose as well as to secure his own movement, should he choose to make one, were guarded by strong corps of his cavalry. It was in cross-



THE FLYING SQUADRON.

ing this desert to attack Taylor that the Mexican army was forced to enter the Buena Vista fight in a state of fatigue most distressing. Santa Anna overcame the discouraging condition at the capital, and reviving his army, met Scott at Cerro Gordo." The Mexican account of this distinguished battle is most interesting. We quote from Albert Ramsey's "Other Side," which gives the Mexicans, fighting on their own soil, due credit, and the American troops the greater glory.

"The American army had encamped on the road, in front of our positions on the right, at a distance of about three-quarters of a league. On the 11th, one of their guerrillas, which came out to reconnoitre, had an encounter with our advance, in which we lost three soldiers, and the Americans, as we afterwards learned, had an officer wounded. On the following days an attack was plainly expected. General Santa Anna mounted his horse at daybreak and, escorted by his staff, reviewed the line, paying particular attention to the dismounted men, and the construction of barracks for the troops, and returned about noon to headquarters. In the evening he was mounted again till sun-down, when he retired, accompanied by some of his adjutants, and the principal chiefs of the army, to dine, while at intervals a military band, stationed outside, performed choice pieces of music.

"With vanity then, he supposed that he had stopped the triumphal march of the enemy. Flattered by his fortune, which had abandoned him for an instant in 1844, he believed it had returned to smile on his arrival in the republic in 1846; and he cherished fatal illusions, perhaps produced by want of foresight. Under a complete fascination, and despising even the voice of science, he required the humiliation of those who surrounded him and was inaccessible to

reason and truth. Some of our chiefs, also, destitute of interest in the cause, confined themselves to blaming his conduct in private circles, without having the energy necessary to dissuade him from his errors. We have heard some one boast, after passing along our line for the first time, of having observed important defects in the general plan of defence, which he communicated only to his friends, presaging an inevitable misfortune.

“The enemy remained in camp opposite our positions, without undertaking the attack so much desired by our army, who looked forward with determination to victory or death. Their sufferings rendered their condition more distressing, and continually increased their anxiety for a battle.

“And to him who, for the first time, found himself in the midst of the army, in the presence of the enemy, in circumstances so solemn for the country, beholding the soldier at last in the exercise of his chivalrous mission, and participating in his sufferings and isolation; to one who, from that scene, contemplated a whole nation carelessly abandoned to the fate of a handful of men, and read, as in a book, one of the most important pages of our history; to one, in short, who looked upon that new and imposing situation through the glass of time,—it seemed like realizing a dream of the imagination.

“General Santa Anna, more impatient perhaps than any one else, wishing to provoke the enemy to some movement, and to obtain some information of the state and number of the opposing forces, made arrangements on the night of the 14th that the cavalry should march out the next day, under the command of General Canalizo, making a reconnoissance on the American camp without hazarding a decisive action, and above all things to take a few prisoners,

that he might interrogate them concerning what he wished to know. D. Angel Frias, Governor of Chihuahua, who had come to his state after the lamentable battle of the Sacramento, to implore aid against the invaders, and full of generous patriotism, had asked leave to take part in the approaching contest, was appointed by the General-in-chief to accompany that expedition, and to interrogate for him the prisoners who might be captured.

“On the 15th, at break of day, the cavalry arrived from Corral Falso, consisting of the Fifth and Ninth regiments, the Morelia and Coraceros, and the squadrons of Jalapa, Hussars, Chalchicomula and Orizava; and soon after sunrise the General-in-chief put them in motion, making them file along the rear of our camp, and pass by a rugged path which declined to the Rio del Plan, in order that afterwards, mounting the opposite height, they might cross it to surprise the enemy's left. After that force had marched, General Santa Anna, proceeding to our position on the right, the only point from which the American encampment could be discerned, awaited the result of the movement. A few of the enemy's guerrillas showed themselves on the hill where our cavalry were to make their appearance, and the General and those who accompanied him, anxiously looked for the moment when our forces should meet and destroy them, perhaps without allowing a single soldier to escape. But they waited in vain and the General, growing impatient, and wishing to do them some injury, ordered a few cannon to be fired, which, although perhaps not reaching them, made them disperse; not, however, until some of their marksmen had fired a few shots at our left flank.

“Soon after the return of General Santa Anna to headquarters, Colonel Codallos, his Excellency's adjutant, who had been sent to hasten the cavalry with an order for Gen-

eral Canalizo, returned excessively fatigued. He said that he had made extraordinary exertions to perform his commission ; that the path which the forces had to pursue was impracticable ; that the difficulties had finally become so great that they had already lost two or three dragoons in the defiles, who, falling down the rocks, horse and man, had perished at the bottom of the precipice. The General-in-chief therefore desisted from the movement, and the cavalry returned by the hills to Corral Falso, where they arrived at sunset, with their horses completely broken down.

“ The enemy having made no movement on the 16th, their intentions were doubted, and it was even imagined that, intimidated by the position of our army, they would not make an attack, but retire, to await reinforcements from the United States. It was ascertained also, from two prisoners, that the yellow fever had made great ravages among the American troops, which added to the evils of their position. At length, however, on the 17th, General Alcorta, having gone out at noon to make a reconnoissance by the hill of the Atalya, met a portion of the enemy’s forces, which he fought on his retreat with our advance, while the Third infantry, which garrisoned the Telegrafo, came down to protect them. General Santa Anna immediately proceeded thither, sending down several corps, after ordering the reserve column to form on the road. He placed the light battalions on the declivity of the Telegrafo in several lines, in echelon, from the centre of that position, and the Fourth of the line toward the left, where the enemy was charging with the greatest resolution ; while at the summit on the parapets, remained a portion of the Third line and the Eleventh Infantry. The Sixth Infantry moved to the right, at the order of General Vega, preventing, with their battery, the turning of the position. A very vigorous fire was sustained

on both sides, and the assaults of the Americans upon our lines were repulsed with the greatest vigor. The presence of General Santa Anna, who on the top of the hill, accompanied by his staff, directed the action, gave animation to the troops. The lively vivas to the republic, to independence, and to the General-in-chief, that burst forth, and which greeted his Excellency, excited in them spirited enthusiasm. Our soldiers confronted death with courage; they defied it, and the light of victory shone in their countenances. The battery on the summit, commanded by Lieutenant Olzinger, was dexterously managed, causing much destruction among the Americans, who, divided into three sections, were charging upon the left, the centre and right of the position, and succeeded in advancing further on the left, yet failed to gain any decided advantage. Being assisted, at that point, by the Fourth of the line they poured upon them a terrible fire, which disabled a multitude of soldiers and officers. In the other points equal resistance was made, so that the action was prolonged from hour to hour, but finally terminated, the enemy being repulsed at all points. Some retreated to the very hill of the Atalaya, and some penetrated by the bushy cañadas, which were discovered on the left of our positions.

“ About five o'clock in the afternoon the beat of the drums, the bands, and the enthusiastic vivas diffused universal rejoicing through our camp. More than 200 men, who had fallen dead or wounded that evening, lay upon a field which, by their efforts, for one more day belonged to the republic. The bodies of the unfortunate dead men were interred in the night and the wounded were sent to Jalapa in wagons, the motion of which increased the poignancy of their sufferings. The corps that had sustained the action retired to their respective encampments, with the exception of the

Fourth infantry and the First and Second light, which that night reinforced the garrison of the hill. An express immediately set off for Mexico with the news of the favorable results of our arms that morning. It was the general conviction that night that the enemy would begin their attack by the left, after the reconnoissance which had been made, and it is very remarkable that our resistance was greater when they only attempted to try our strength than when they proposed decidedly to conquer us.

“On the same day, the 17th, the brigade of General Arteaga arrived at Jalapa, composed of active battalions and the National Guard of Puebla ; and they had scarcely retired to their quarters before an order was received from General Santa Anna to take up their march immediately for Cerro Gordo. Without taking any rest after their journey those wretched soldiers proceeded ; and most of them reached Dos Rios that night, leaving various parties behind, who could not endure the fatigue. On the following day, at a very critical moment indeed, the united brigade arrived at Cerro Gordo.

“Although General Santa Anna apparently fixed his whole attention on the position of the right, where he naturally expected the decisive attack, instructed by what had happened, he sent two 12-pounders and one 16, that night, up the hill ; but the last only reached half way up on the left side. He also ordered the chiefs of engineers, Robles and Cano, to construct the most necessary fortifications on that eminence ; and, on the following day, before dawn, he himself placed a battery on the side of the road, almost in front of headquarters, at the aperture of a bushy barranca. The Americans, in the course of the night, also established a battery in the hill of the Atalaya ; and in their preparations for an attack on the following day, were interrupted only

by a few cannon shots, which General Vasquez, Commandante of the *Telegrafo*, ordered to be fired at them.

“At dawn on the 18th, the roar of the enemy’s artillery resounded through the camps as a solemn announcement of a battle.

“On the hill, where the brave insurgents had in former days shed their blood for independence, now waved our flag; and under its shadow, from that elevation, was seen a line of men, who were to serve as a wall against the invader. Among the files, the different and distinctive ranks of the army, from the common soldier to the General-in-chief, then invested with the supreme dignity of the nation, appeared at that time in all the prestige and with all the splendor which the illusions of patriotism conceded to them.

“The enemy, using the battery of *Atalaya*, opened from thence, for some hours, their fire upon the *Telegrafo*, from which our own replied. General Santa Anna then employed himself in completing the battery by the roadside; and the engineers, Robles and Cano, under the enemy’s fire, erected temporary works on the declivity of the *Telegrafo*, on the very spot where the corps, who defended the centre of the position the evening before, had formed. Above the positions of the center and the right of our line, were now the same forces which had previously garrisoned them; upon the hill the First and Second Light were sent, which had gone down early in the morning, to take their rations; and the Sixth Infantry returned to cover the right. The Fourth of the Line remained on the spot where they had fought so bravely on the 17th. The cavalry, which had been ordered down from *Corral Falso* in the night, formed on the road, resting their right opposite the battery just erected, and were supported by the Eleventh Infantry. The

Third and Fourth Light battalions remained also on the road, ready to march to any point that might be designated.

“Such was the disposition of our forces before sunrise, while the cannonade was becoming more and more active between the two hills, until the roar was repeated every instant. The enemy, without cessation, poured down grenades, rockets and all other kinds of projectiles which fell upon the hill, upon the road and even far beyond our camp. Their columns, in the meantime, marched beyond the Atalaya by the crags in front of our left; and about seven in the morning, one of them, under the command of General Twiggs, commenced the attack upon the Telegrafo.

“General Santa Anna, as soon as he had established the battery on the left, proceeded to the positions on the right, influenced, perhaps, by his first idea. But stopping after he had passed the battery of the center and observing from that spot, the activity with which the cannonade was sustained on our part, sent orders to General Vazquez, not to expend his park, and to shelter the troops from the enemy’s fire. Then returning by the road, on arriving at the foot of the Telegrafo, the fire of musketry opened, and he immediately sent up the Third and Fourth Light battalions to aid the troops in defending that point.

“The Americans charged with firmness, deploying as skirmishers, covering themselves among the bushes and briars that were on the ground upon the lines, scarcely marked out, which it had been intended to construct that morning, being supported by the Third of the Line, the Second Light and part of the Fourth. They made equal exertions against the left of the Telegrafo, defended by the Fourth of the Line, and against the right, where the Sixth Infantry was posted, to reinforce them, as on the previous evening. The artillery had ceased to play on both sides on account of

the proximity of the combatants. The fire of musketry was as active as the excitement of the contest. Death flapping her wings over that bloody field set on fire in some places by the projectiles of the enemy, and which was mixed in a horrible manner with the thick smoke that enveloped thousands of men crimsoned with the contest. Our soldiers fell in heaps in the midst of the confusion, and the enemy falling also, were instantly replaced by others, who seemed to reproduce them. There fell the worthy Palacios, commander of the artillery of the field, wounded by the enemy's fire; there a warrior's fame crowned the career of General Vazquez, in the fulness of his energies with a glorious death, amidst the tumult of battle, and there hundreds of brave men shed their blood in the most holy cause. This commander should have been succeeded by his second, General Uraga, but he was at the head of his battalion, the Fourth of the Line, on the left declivity of the Telegrafo; and having not a moment to lose, General Baneneli took the command, whose corps, the Third Light, had remained in reserve, sheltered from the fire by the very summit of the hill. The activity of the engagement redoubling more and more, destroyed new victims. The Second Light and the Third and Fourth of the Line, had lost almost their entire force, and the last, even the greater part of its officers. The enemy, pressing upon our troops with superior numbers, successively gained possession of the lower works of the position, and without losing an instant, rapidly ascended to assault the last crest of the hill.

"Some of our soldiers now began to leave their ranks, and to descend to the opposite side, attempting to mingle with the wounded, who were retiring, but General Santa Anna, observing it, ordered some of his adjutants to prevent this disorder, and they, either on compulsion, or by the stimulus

of enthusiasm, succeeded in persuading the fugitives to return.

“In the meantime, General Baneneli appealed to the last resource, and ordered his men to charge bayonets. They, eager to join in an action which they had only heard, immediately hastened this movement in full force, to come up to where they were directed; but surprised at finding themselves hand to hand with an enemy so superior in numbers, and surrounded on all sides, were panic-stricken in an instant and fell into disorder; their commander in vain endeavoring to keep them in the ranks. Being himself involved in the crowd with the chief of engineers and many other officers, who endeavored, sword in hand, to keep back the men, they were actually rolled down the opposite declivity, borne along by the multitude, which poured onward like a torrent from the height.

“On the summit of the hill was now seen, in the midst of a column of dense smoke, a multitude of Americans, standing amidst the flashing of their fires, which were directed against the enormous mass of men precipitating themselves down the steep declivity, covered, as it were, with a white robe from the color of their dress. That shocking spectacle was like the violent eruption of a volcano, throwing out flames and cinders from its bosom, and spreading them all over its surface.

“Among the fire and smoke, and above the mass of blue formed by the Americans behind the summit of the Telegrafo, still floated our deserted flag. But the banner of the stars was soon raised by the enemy upon the same staff, and for an instant both became entangled, our own at length falling to the ground, amidst the shouts and roar of the victors' guns, and the mournful cries and confused voices of the vanquished.

“It was now three-quarters past ten o'clock in the morning. The enemy had appeared on the right of our line during the attack on the *Telegrafo*; and advancing in column upon our position of the center, endeavored to take all our entrenchments by assault. Captain Godinez of the navy, commanding the artillery, had concerted with the respective commanders of the three positions, to allow the enemy to advance upon any of them without firing, until they should approach within a short distance, taking the precaution to have the cannon loaded with grape shot. The American column, composed of volunteers, under the command of General Pillow, approached nearer and nearer to our lines without receiving a single shot; but as soon as they reached a convenient place, a close discharge of our pieces, which raked their ranks, accompanied with a vigorous volley of small arms from the three positions, made a horrible slaughter among the enemy, threw them into disorder, and obliged them to make a precipitous retreat.

“Before they could reorganize, and though our soldiers had not suffered the slightest loss, the *Telegrafo* had yielded; and the Americans who had possession of it, descending by the right declivity, upon the battery on the road, which our forces had not begun to use, entirely cut off those positions, now surrounded on all sides, and commanded by the hill, from which the enemy directed their fire. General Jareo no longer attempted any resistance, but surrendered with his force.

“When the *Telegrafo* was lost, the Sixth Infantry had retreated to the positions on the right, where they capitulated with the other corps. The Grenadier battalion, which had been drawn out from the battery of the center to the foot of the hill, chiefly dispersed, in spite of the exertions made to collect it.

“The brigade of General Arteaga, that had arrived in the midst of the conflict, being infected by the disorder of the other forces, fell into confusion, opposite headquarters, without having come into action. The Eleventh Infantry, in obedience to different orders from the Commander-in-chief, made repeated marches and counter-marches for that same point; while the scattered remains of the Second, Third, and Fourth Light battalions, and the Third and Fourth of the line, likewise became disordered; and the entire mass of men, panic-stricken, without discipline, moved about in that small piece of road, in the most frightful state of confusion.

“An enthusiastic officer harangued the troops at the pitch of his voice, assuring them that they had yet lost nothing, wishing to re-animate the spirit now dead in all that unfortunate crowd. General Baneneli, rushing in with his horse, and full of wrath, poured forth a thousand horrible imprecations upon his soldiers, and with the butt of his pistol threatened particularly one of his captains. The General-in-chief vented his rage upon the officers who had lost their positions; and the agitation of the multitude, and the difficulties of the ground, with the general dangers and desperation, rendered the scene indescribable.

“In the meantime the enemy’s column, commanded by General Worth, passing the barrancas and crags on our left, which had been deemed inaccessible, approached the battery that had been thrown up that day, the only remaining one in our possession. The General-in-chief ordered General Canalizo to charge with the cavalry, but the woods absolutely prevented the execution of the movement. The column advanced, in spite of the fire of the cannon, in a direction for the road, to the left of our battery, to cut off our retreat. When, however, they had approached near

enough, more than two hundred skirmishers were sent forward, whose fire, as if with a breath of wind, fast cleared away the men at our guns, which were supplied by the artillery and a party of cuirassiers, who had been ordered to dismount to reinforce the battery. The first adjutant, Velasco, chief of the cuirassiers, had the glory of falling at the guns. The skirmishers advanced to the front of the battery, so that the head of the column was very near the road, when our cavalry, seeing that they were about to be cut off, retreated rapidly by the Jalapa road. The last effort was then made by Robles, and the brave artillery officers, Malagon, Arguelles and Olzinger, who, surrounded on all sides, turned their pieces towards the left, directing them against the head of the column, a few moments before the skirmishers, who rushed upon them with the bayonet, got possession of them and turned them against us.

“General Santa Anna, accompanied by some of his adjutants, proceeded by the road to the left of the battery, when the enemy’s column, now coming out of the woods, absolutely prevented his passage by a discharge which obliged him to fall back. The carriage in which he had left Jalapa was riddled with shot, the mules killed and taken by the enemy, as well as a wagon containing sixteen thousand dollars, received the day before for the pay of the troops, Every tie of command and obedience now being broken among our troops, safety alone being the object, and all being involved in a frightful whirl, they rushed desperately to the narrow pass of the defile that descends to the Plan del Rio, where the General-in-chief had proceeded, with the chiefs and officers who accompanied him.

“Horrible, indeed, was the descent by that narrow and rocky path, where thousands rushed, disputing the passage with desperation, and leaving a track of blood upon the

road. All classes being confounded, all military distinction and respect were lost, the badges of rank became marks for sarcasms, that were only meted out according to their grade and humiliation. The enemy, now masters of our camp, turned their guns upon the fugitives. This augmented more and more the terror of the multitude crowding through the defile, and pressed forward every instant by a new impulse, which increased the confusion and disgrace of the ill-fated day.

"Cerro Gordo was lost! Mexico was opened to the iniquity of the invader.

"General Santa Anna, frowning and silent, letting his horse go almost at his will, and followed by a bleeding crowd, descended to the bottom of the barranca, crossed the river, and climbed the opposite height. There it was probable he would meet an ambush of the enemy, who would have killed, with impunity, as many as might ascend in disorder by the narrow sloping path, unable to defend themselves or to find any refuge.

"Having reached the summit, the General halted, and ordered Generals Ampudia and Rangel and Colonel Ramiro to collect, at that point, all the dispersed; that they might be drawn off in order and in the best possible manner. Then, taking to the right, he proceeded toward Encero, by a path almost parallel to the road from Cerro Gordo to Jalapa. He was followed by a small company: Generals Perez, Arguelles, and Romero, and the chiefs and officers Schiafino Escovar, Galindo, Vega, Roaas, Quintana, and Arriga, and Srs. Trias, Armendaris, Urquidi and a nephew of his own.

"From the field of battle shots were still heard occasionally, fired at the wretched and defenceless men who had not succeeded in escaping.

"In the meantime a party of the enemy's cavalry, with two

light pieces, had left there, by the Jalapa road, in pursuit of our cavalry, and were about to reach the Encero almost the same moment with Santa Anna. On discovering each other the Americans fired several cannon shots, and General Santa Anna, leaving the path, proceeded towards the left, in a direction at right angles to it.

“He wandered for a long time, uncertain, with his companions, without pursuing any fixed route, until he formed a resolution, and then proceeded in the paths leading to the hacienda of Tuzamápan.

“Having passed many villages and scattered ranchos, among the undulations of an unknown district, they continued their march, all overcome with amazement at the misfortune which they had suffered. A melancholy expression overspread the countenances of those who had accompanied Santa Anna. Everything within the presence of this man, the first chief of our nation and our army, whom a few hours before they had seen erect and proud, possessed of power which he exercised, and hopes of the brightest glory, now humbled and confused, seeking among the wretched a refuge to flee to, was to them a lively picture of the fall of our country, of the debasement of our name, of the anathema pronounced against our race.

“At several places the general dismounted to take some rest, and, sitting on a bench where his attendants placed it, he remained immovable, unable, in consequence of his lameness, to take a single step. A horse, which he asked for in the place of his own, was pertly refused by a curate, and all these occurrences, insignificant as they were in themselves, appeared deeply affecting under existing circumstances.

“About five in the morning he reached the hacienda of Tuzamápan, where he resolved to remain until the next

day. Soon after his arrival, two or three soldiers of the Eleventh appeared, bringing with them the chest of their corps, which contained some money, to deliver it to their commander, General Perez; an honorable deed, which appears to us worthy of praise, in a few unhappy men, who were about to be abandoned in these places in the greatest misery.

"At eleven at night the overseer of the hacienda informed the General that he had just received notice of the approach of a party of Americans, detached for the pursuit, who were about to surround the house. Several musket shots were soon heard, at a very short distance, which confirmed the news, and it was necessary to set off immediately to secure a safe retreat.

"The night was so dark that the nearest objects were invisible. The firing became nearer and more frequent, and the servants of the hacienda, working mechanically, managed so that the litera prepared for the General was not ready. He therefore mounted his horse, and a servant on foot, with a candle, took his place before him, serving as a guide to the party, who filed, one after the other, by a road which seemed to sink under the feet of the horses. It was one of those steep descents, leading down from the hill country between Tuzamapan and Orizava. After traveling a long time, they halted in the ruins of a small sugar-mill, where they awaited the approach of day, when they continued their march.

"Having crossed a river, whose current flowed on to meet that of the Junta, they came to the banks of the latter, where flowed its waters, placid, blue, and deep, through one of its highest ridges. This rose almost perpendicular, covered with beautiful, leafy groves, forming an extensive border, and at its foot stood many old trees, which, with



THE TORPEDO BOAT "PORTER."

their thick branches, threw a somber light upon the place and gave it an aspect truly majestic. A few fishermen who lived there in miserable hovels took them over on a small raft, guided by a rope, extending from one shore to the other.

“By winding they ascended the elevation which rises on that bank, and finally reached the rancho of Volador, and remained long at this place. There, for the first time, General Santa Anna broke silence, and in conversation expressed the idea of continuing the war with obstinacy, by appealing to the last resource which was left us, the system of guerrillas.

“At a short distance from the rancho the road which they followed leads among most beautiful trees; and from some open spots are seen, now on this side and now on that, profound ravines, whose bottom was lost in obscurity, caused by the thickness of the dark green foliage of the immense groves, covering that region with perpetual spring.

“The Mexicans, with all their hard fighting, failed to gain their point—a victory, and the spell of their discouragement was not dispelled to the bitter end.”

CHAPTER XIII.

THE BATTLES BEFORE THE CITY OF MEXICO.

The United States Proves Herself the Dominant Power of America—The Remarkable Campaign Before the City of Mexico—Though Fighting Against Powerful Odds the Valor of our Troops Counts for more than Superior Numbers—Our Officers Prove Themselves Superior Strategists—The Overwhelming Defeat of the Mexicans Compels them to ask For an Armistice to Gain Time which is Shortly Followed by Renewed Hostilities, soon Terminating in the Surrender of Mexico.

On entering the palace of the City of Mexico, General Scott issued an order saying: "The General-in-chief calls upon his brethren in arms to return both in public and private worship, thanks and gratitude to God for the signal triumphs which they have recently achieved for their country. Beginning with the 19th of August, this army has gallantly fought its way through the fields and forts of Contreras, San Antonio, Cherubusco, Molino del Rey, Chapultepec and the gates of San Casone and Tacubaya of Belén, into the Capital of Mexico."

Tuttle, the historian gives an excellent compilation of the official reports of General Worth and makes the battle pictures most vivid, uniting this with the Mexican stories of Buena Vista and Cerro-Gordo, we have a dramatic revelation of the greater scenes of the Mexican war—three almost incomparable battle pictures.

"A detachment under General Worth captured Pueblo, on the 15th of May, where the army remained until the 7th of August, when the whole army marched for the City of Mexico. On the afternoon of the third day's march, a sudden turn in the route revealed a scene that was well calculated to excite the weary soldiers. The whole vast

plain of Mexico was before them. The coldness of the air, which was most sensibly felt at this great elevation, their fatigue and dangers were forgotten, and their eyes were the only sense that thought of enjoyment. Mexico, with its lofty steeples and chequered domes, its bright reality, and its former fame, its modern splendor and its ancient magnificence, was before them, while around on every side its thousand lakes seemed like silver stars on a velvet mantle. Scott's army encamped that night at the base of the mountains with the enemy's scouts on every side. On the following day the army halted at Ayotta, only fifteen miles from Mexico. We were separated, says one who bore the fatigues of the march, from the city by the marshes which surround Lake Tezcuco, and by the lake itself. The road from this point was commanded by a steep and lofty hill called El Pinnal, which had been strongly fortified by Santa Anna. Batteries mounting over fifty guns in all, had been placed on its sides, and a deep ditch, twenty-four feet wide and ten deep, filled with water, had been cut, connecting the forts already surrounded by marshes. On this side Santa Anna had twenty-five thousand men against the American force of a little over nine thousand.

On the 22d of August the Americans made a reconnoissance of the work, which was pronounced impracticable, as the lives of half the troops would be sacrificed before the ditch could be crossed. After a long search another road was found which led around on the left, but which was guarded with five strong batteries at a point about five miles from the city. All approach to the city seemed to be cut off, but at length, by means of his scouts, General Worth, who was encamped about five miles distant, found a path around the left of Lake Chalco, which led to the western gate of the city, and which had not yet been forti-

fied. On the 14th the army commenced its march by this route; on the 19th it arrived at San Juan, Worth's division being considerably in advance. When the Americans arrived at this place they received orders to sling their blankets across their shoulders, put their knapsacks into their wagons, and to put two days' bread and beef in their haversacks. When this order came the men knew that the work was at hand. The enemy was reported to be in position as follows: Santa Anna, with twenty thousand men, was at St. Augustine; Valencia, with ten thousand, was at an elevation called Contreras, which commanded the road in that direction. It now became Scott's object to drive Valencia from his position, and thus get in between Santa Anna and the city. With a view to effecting this, General Worth was directed to keep Santa Anna in check, while a portion of the army under General Twiggs was to rout Valencia. The progress from this point is thus described by one who participated:*

"We left San Juan about 1 o'clock, not particularly desiring a fight so late in the day, but still not shunning it in case we could have a respectable chance. About 2 P. M., as we had crawled to the top of a hill, whither we had been ourselves pulling Magruder's battery and the mountain howitzers, we suddenly espied Valencia fortified on a hill about two hundred yards off, and strongly reinforced by a column which had just come out of the city. We laid down close to avoid drawing their fire, while the battery moved past at a full gallop. Just then General Smith's manly voice rang out, '*Forward the rifles, to support the battery.*' On they went until we got about eight hundred yards from the work, when the enemy opened upon them with the long guns, which were afterwards found to be six-

* "The Mexican War and Its Heroes."

teen and eight-inch howitzers. The ground was the worst possible for artillery, covered with rocks, large and small, prickly-pear and cactus, intersected by ditches filled with water and lined with maguey-plant, itself imperviable to cavalry, and with patches of corn which concealed the enemy's skirmishers, while it impeded our own passage. The artillery advanced but slowly under a most tremendous fire, which greatly injured it before it could be got in range, and the thickness of the undergrowth caused the skirmishers, thrown forward, to lose their relative position, as well as the column. At 4 P. M. the battery got in position under a most murderous fire of grape, canister and round-shot. Here the superiority of the enemy's pieces rendered our fire nugatory. We could get but *three* pieces in battery, while they had *twenty-seven*, all of them three times the calibre of ours. For two hours our troops stood unmoved, the storm of iron and lead hailing upon them. At every discharge they laid flat down to avoid the storm, and then sprung up to serve the guns. At the end of that time, two of the guns were dismounted, and we badly hurt; thirteen of the horses were killed and disabled, and fifteen of the cannoniers killed and wounded. The regiment was then recalled. The lancers had been repelled in three successive charges. The Third Infantry and First Artillery had also engaged and successfully repelled the enemy's skirmishers without losing either officers or men. The greatest loss had been at the batteries. Affairs looked gloomy for the first day's fight, but the brigade was formed, and General Smith, in person, took command. All felt revived, and followed him with a yell, as, creeping low to avoid the grape, which was coming very fast, we made a circuit in the rear of the batteries; and, passing off to the right, we were soon lost to view in the chaparral and cactus.

“Passing over the path that we scrambled through, behold us at almost six o'clock in the evening, tired, hungry and sorrowful, emerging from the chaparral and crossing the road between it and Valencia. Here we found Cadwalader and his brigade already formed, and discovered Riley's brigade skirmishing in rear of enemy's works. Valencia was ignorant of our approach, and we were as yet safe. He was strongly entrenched on a hillside and surrounded by a regular field-work. Mendoza, with a column of six thousand, was in the road, but thought us to be friends. On our right was a large range of hills whose continued crest was parallel to the road, and in which were formed in line of battle five thousand of the best Mexican cavalry. On our left we were separated from our own forces by an almost impassable wilderness, and it was now twilight. Even Smith looked around for help. Suddenly a thousand *vivas* came across the hillside like the yelling of pirate wolves in the dead of night, and the squadrons on our right formed for charging. Smith is himself again! ‘Face to the rear!’ ‘Wait till you see their red caps, and then give it to them!’ Furiously they came on a few yards, then changed their minds, and, disgusted at our cool reception, retired to their couches.

“On the edge of the road, between us and Valencia, a Mexican hamlet spread out, with its mud huts, large orchards, deep-cut roads, and a strong church; and through the centre of this hamlet ran a path parallel to the main road, but concealed from it; it is nearly a mile long. In this road Smith's and Riley's corps bivouacked. Shields, who came up in the night, lay in the orchard, while Cadwalader was nearest the enemy's works. As we were within range of their batteries, which could enfilade the road in which we lay, we built a stone breastwork at either end to

conceal ourselves from their view and grape. There we were, completely surrounded by the enemy, cut off from our communications, ignorant of the ground, without artillery, weary, dispirited and dejected. We were a disheartened set. With Santa Anna and Sala's promise of 'no quarter,' a force of four to one against us, and one-half defeated already, no succor from Puebla, and no news from General Scott, all seemed dark. Suddenly the words came whispered along, '*We storm at midnight.*' Now we are ourselves again! But what a horrible night! There we lay, too tired to eat, too wet to sleep, in the middle of that muddy road, officers and men side by side, with a heavy rain pouring down upon us, the officers without blankets or overcoats (they had lost them in coming across), and the men worn out with fatigue. About midnight the rain was so heavy that the streams in the road flooded us, and there we stood crowded together, drenched and benumbed, waiting for daylight.

"At half-past three the word '*fall in*' was passed down, and we commenced our march. The enemy's works were on a hillside, behind which rose other and slightly higher hills, separated by deep ravines and gullies, and intersected by streams. The whole face of the country was of stiff clay, which rendered it almost impossible to advance. We formed our line about a quarter of a mile from the enemy's works, Riley's brigade on our right. At about four we started, winding through a thick orchard which effectually concealed us, even had it not been dark, debouching into a deep ravine, which ran within about five hundred yards of the work, and which carried us directly in rear and out of sight of their batteries. At dawn of day we reached our place, after incredible exertions, and got ready for our charge. The men threw off their wet blankets and looked to their

pieces, while the officers got ready for a rush, and the first smile that lit up our faces for twelve hours boded but little good for the Mexicans. On the right, and opposite the right of their work, was Riley's brigade of the Second and First Infantry and Fourth Artillery, next the rifles, then the First Artillery and Third Infantry. In rear of our left was Cadwalader's brigade, as a support, with Shield's brigade in the rear as a reserve—the whole division under command of General Smith, in the absence of General Twiggs. They had a smooth place to rush down on the enemy's work, with the brow of the hill to keep under until the word was given.

“At last, just at daylight, General Smith, slowly walking up, asked if all was ready. A look answered him: ‘*Men, forward!*’—and we *did* ‘forward.’ Springing up at once, Riley's brigade opened, when the crack of a hundred rifles startled the Mexicans from their astonishment, and they opened their fire. Useless fire, for we were so close that they overshot us, and before they could turn their pieces on us we were on them. Then such cheers arose as you never heard. The men rushed forward like demons, yelling and firing the while. The carnage was frightful, and though they fired sharply, it was of no use. The earthen parapet was cleared in an instant, and the blows of the stocks could be plainly heard mingled with the yells and groans around. Just before the charge was made a large body of lancers came winding up the road, looking most splendidly in their brilliant uniforms. They never got to the work, but turned and fled. In an instant all was one mass of confusion, each trying to be foremost in the flight. The road was literally blocked up, and while many perished by their own guns, it was almost impossible to fire on the mass from the danger of killing our own men. Some fled up the ravine on the

left, or on the right, and many of these were slain by turning their own guns on them. Towards the city the rifles and Second Infantry led off the pursuit. Seeing that a large crowd of the fugitives were jammed up in a pass in the road some of our men ran through the cornfield, and thus, by heading them off and firing down upon them, about thirty men took over five hundred prisoners, nearly a hundred of them officers. After disarming the prisoners, as the pursuit had ceased, we went back to the fort, where we found our troops in full possession, the rout complete.

“We found that the enemy’s position was much stronger than we had supposed, and their artillery much larger and more abundant. Our own loss was small, which may be accounted for by their perfect surprise at our charge, as to them we appeared as if rising out of the earth, so unperceived was our approach. Our loss was one officer killed, Captain Hanson, of the Seventh Infantry, and Lieutenant Van Buren, of the rifles, shot through the leg, and about fifty men killed and wounded. Their force consisted of about eight thousand men, under Valencia, with a reserve which had not yet arrived, under Santa Anna. Their loss, as since ascertained, was as follows: killed and buried in the field, seven hundred and fifty; wounded, one thousand; and fifteen hundred prisoners, exclusive of officers, including four generals—Salas, Mendoza, Garcia and Guadalupe—in addition to dozens of colonels, majors, captains, etc. We captured, in all, on the hill twenty-two pieces of cannon, including five eight-inch howitzers, two long eighteens, three long sixteens, and several of twelve and eight inches. In addition to these were taken immense quantities of ammunition and muskets; in fact, the way was strewn with muskets, escopets, lances and flags for miles. Large quan-

tities of horses and mules were also captured, though large numbers were killed.

"Thus ended the glorious battle of Contreras, in which two thousand men, under Gen. P. F. Smith, completely routed and destroyed an army of eight thousand men, under General Valencia, with Santa Anna and a force of twenty thousand men within five miles. Their army was so completely routed that not fifteen hundred men rejoined Santa Anna and participated in the second battle. Most people would have thought that, a pretty good day's work. Not so. We had only saved ourselves, not conquered Mexico, and men's work was before us yet.

"At eight A. M. we formed again, and General Twiggs having taken command, we started on the road to Mexico. We had hardly marched a mile before we were sharply fired upon from both sides of the road, and our right was deployed to drive the enemy in. We soon found that we had caught up with the retreating party, from the very brisk firing in front, and we drove them through the little town of San Angelo, where they had been halting in force. About half-a-mile from this town we entered the suburbs of another, called San Katherina, when a large party in the churchyard fired on the head of the column, and the balls came right among us. Our men kept rushing on their rear and cutting them down, until a discharge of grapeshot from a large piece in front drove them back to the column. In this short space of time five men were killed, ten taken prisoners, and a small color captured, which was carried the rest of the day.

"Meanwhile General Worth had made a demonstration on San Antonio, where the enemy was fortified in a strong hacienda; but they retired on his approach to Cherubusco, where the works were deemed impregnable. They con-

sisted of a fortified hacienda, which was surrounded by a high and thick wall on all sides. Inside the wall was a stone building, the roof of which was flat, and higher than the walls. Above all this was a stone church, still higher than the rest, and having a large steeple. The wall was pierced with loop-holes, and so arranged that there were two tiers of men firing at the same time. They thus had four different ranges of men firing at once, and four ranks were formed on each range, and placed at such a height that they could not only overlook all the surrounding country, but at the same time they had a plunging fire upon us. Outside the hacienda, and completely commanding the avenues of approach, was a field-work extending around two sides of the fort, and protected by a deep, wet ditch, and armed with seven large pieces. This hacienda is at the commencement of the causeway leading to the western gate of the city, and had to be passed before getting on the road. About three hundred yards in the rear of this work another field-work had been built where a cross-road meets the causeway, at a point where it crosses a river, thus forming a bridge-head, or *tete de pont*. This was also very strong, and armed with three large pieces of cannon. The works were surrounded on every side by large cornfields, which were filled with the enemy's skirmishers, so that it was difficult to make a reconnoissance. It was, therefore, decided to make the attack immediately, as they were full of men, and extended for nearly a mile on the road to the city, completely covering the causeway.

“The attack commenced about 1 P. M. General Twiggs' division attacked on the side towards which they approached the fort; that is, opposite the city. General Worth's attacked the bridge-head, which he took in about an hour and a half; while Generals Pillow and Quitman

were on the extreme left, between the causeway and Quiggs' division. The rifles were on the left and in the rear of the work, entrusted by General Scott with the task of charging it in case General Pierce gave way. The firing was most tremendous—in fact one continued roll while the combat lasted. The enemy, from their elevated station, could readily see our men, who were unable to get a clear view from their position. Three of the pieces were manned by 'the deserters,' a body of about one hundred, who had deserted from the ranks of our army during the war. They were enrolled in two companies, commanded by a deserter, and were better uniformed and disciplined than the rest of the army. These men fought most desperately, and are said not only to have shot down several of our officers whom they knew, but to have pulled down the white flag of surrender no less than three times.

"The battle raged most furiously for about three hours, when, both sides having lost a great many, the enemy began to give way. As soon as they commenced retreating, Kearney's squadron passed through the *tete de pont*, and, charging through the retreating column, pursued them to the very gate of the city. When our men got within about five hundred yards of the gate they were opened upon with grape and canister, and several officers wounded. The official returns give our loss in killed and wounded at one thousand one hundred and fifty, besides officers. The Mexican loss was five hundred killed in the second battle, one thousand wounded, and eleven hundred prisoners, exclusive of officers. Three more generals were taken, among them General Rincon, and Anaya, the Provisional President; also ten pieces of cannon and an immense amount of ammunition and stores. Santa Anna in his report states his loss in killed, wounded and missing at twelve thousand.

He has only eighteen thousand left out of thirty thousand, which he gives as his force on the 20th in both actions.

“Thus ended the battle of Cherubusco, one of the most furious and deadly for its length, of any of the war. For reasons which he deemed conclusive, General Scott did not enter the city that night, but encamped on the battle-field, about four miles from the western gate of the city. The next day a flag of truce came out, and propositions were made which resulted in an armistice.”

An armistice was concluded on the 24th of August between General Scott and President Santa Anna, with a view of terminating the war and effecting a treaty of peace. Negotiations were at once commenced, but terminated on the 7th of September, when both armies assumed hostile attitudes. On the date last mentioned a large body of Mexicans was discovered hovering about Molino del Rey, within a mile of the American camp and General Scott's headquarters. General Worth was at once ordered to attack the enemy at this point, and, his division being reinforced, he moved forward to battle. The position of the Mexicans was well taken. Their left rested upon and occupied a group of strong stone buildings, called El Molino del Rey, adjoining the grove at the foot of the hill of Chapultepec, and directly under the guns of the castle which crowned its summit. The right of his line rested upon another stone building, called Casa Mata, situated at the foot of the ridge that slopes gradually from the heights above the village of Tacubaya to the plain below. Midway between these buildings was the enemy's field battery, and their infantry forces were disposed on either side to support it. “The early dawn,” says Worth, “was the moment appointed for the attack, which was announced to the troops by the opening of Huger's guns on El Molino del Rey, upon which they

continued to play actively until this point of the enemy's lines became sensibly shaken when the assaulting party, commanded by Wright, and guided by that accomplished officer, Captain Mason, of the engineers, assisted by Lieutenant Foster, dashed gallantly forward to the assault."

* "Unshaken by the galling fire of musketry and canister that was showered upon them, on they rushed, driving the infantry and artillerymen at the point of the bayonet. The enemy's field battery was taken, and their own guns were trained upon the retreating masses; before, however, they could be discharged, perceiving that they had been dispossessed of this strong position by comparatively a handful of men, the enemy made a desperate effort to regain it. Accordingly, their retiring forces rallied and formed with this object. Aided by the infantry, which covered the house-tops (within reach of which the battery had been moved during the night), the enemy's whole line opened upon the assaulting party a terrific fire of musketry, which struck down *eleven* out of *fourteen* officers that composed the command, and non-commissioned officers and men in proportion, including among the officers Brevet-Major Wright, the commander; Captain Mason and Lieutenant Forster, engineers, all severely wounded. This severe shock staggered, for a moment, that gallant band. The light battalion held to cover Huger's battery, under Captain E. Kirby Smith, and the right wing of Cadwalader's brigade, were promptly ordered forward to support, which order was executed in the most gallant style; the enemy was again routed, and this point of their line carried and fully possessed by our troops. In the meantime Garland's brigade, ably sustained by Captain Drum's artillery, assaulted the enemy's left, and, after an obstinate and very severe contest, drove them from this apparently impreg-

* General Worth's report.

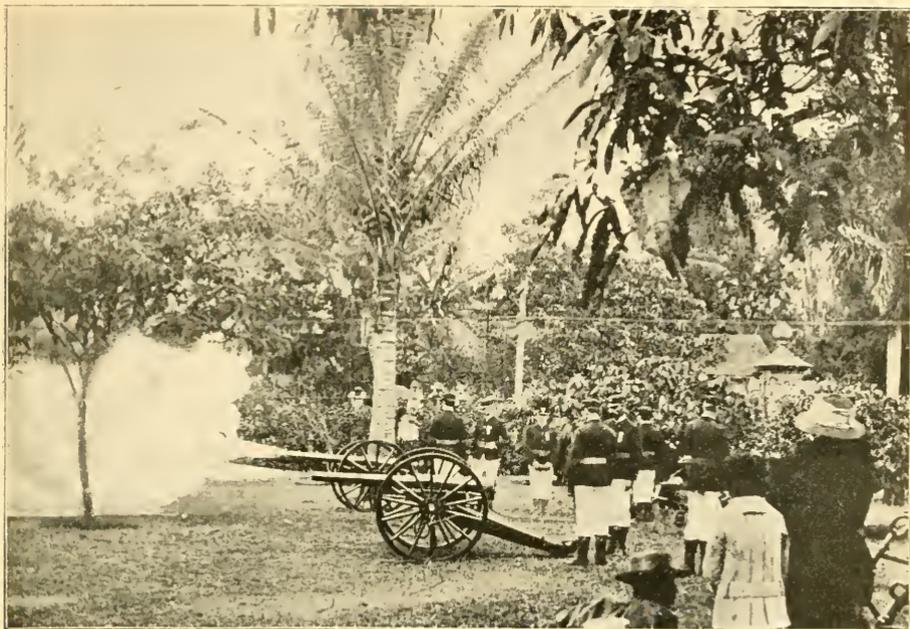
nable position, immediately under the guns of the castle of Chapultepec. Drum's section and the battering guns under Captain Huger advanced to the enemy's position, and the captured guns of the enemy were now opened on their retreating forces, on which they continued to fire until beyond their reach.

While this work was in progress of accomplishment by the centre and right, the troops on the left were not idle. Duncan's battery opened on the right of the enemy's line, up to this time engaged, and the Second brigade, under Colonel McIntosh, was now ordered to assault the extreme right of the enemy's line. The direction of this brigade soon caused it to mask Duncan's battery, the fire of which, for the moment, was discontinued, and the brigade moved steadily on to the assault of Casa Mata, which, instead of an ordinary field entrenchment, as was supposed, proved to be a strong stone citadel, surrounded with bastioned entrenchments and impassable ditches, an old Spanish work, recently repaired and enlarged. When within easy musket range the enemy opened a most deadly fire upon the advancing troops, which was kept up, without intermission, until the gallant men reached the very slope of the parapet of the work that surrounded the citadel. By this time a large proportion of the command was either killed or wounded, among whom were the three senior officers present, Brevet-Colonel McIntosh, Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel Scott, of the Fifth Infantry, and Major Waite, Eighth Infantry; the second killed and the first and last desperately wounded. Still the fire from the citadel was unabated. In this crisis of the attack, the command was momentarily thrown into disorder and fell back on the left of Duncan's battery, where they rallied. As the Second brigade moved to the assault a very large cavalry and infantry force was

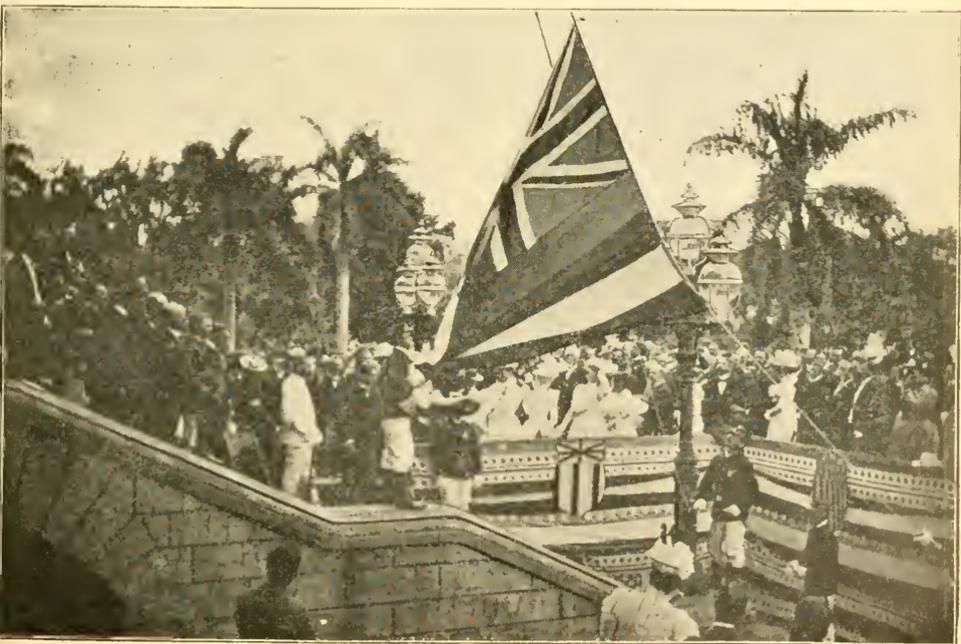
discovered approaching rapidly upon the left flank to reinforce the enemy's right.

As soon as Duncan's battery was masked, as before mentioned, supported by Andrews's voltigeurs, of Cadwalader's brigade, it moved promptly to the extreme left of the line to check the threatened assault on this point. The enemy's cavalry came rapidly within canister range, when the whole battery opened a most effective fire, which soon broke the squadrons and drove them back in disorder. During this fire upon the enemy's cavalry, Major Sumner's command moved to the front, and changed direction in admirable order, under a most appalling fire from the Casa Mata. This movement enabled his command to cross the ravine immediately on the left of Duncan's battery, where it remained, doing noble service until the close of the action. At the very moment the cavalry were driven beyond reach, the American troops drew back from the Casa Mata, and enabled the guns of Duncan's battery to re-open upon this position, which, after a short and well-directed fire, the enemy abandoned. The guns of the battery were now turned upon the retreating columns.

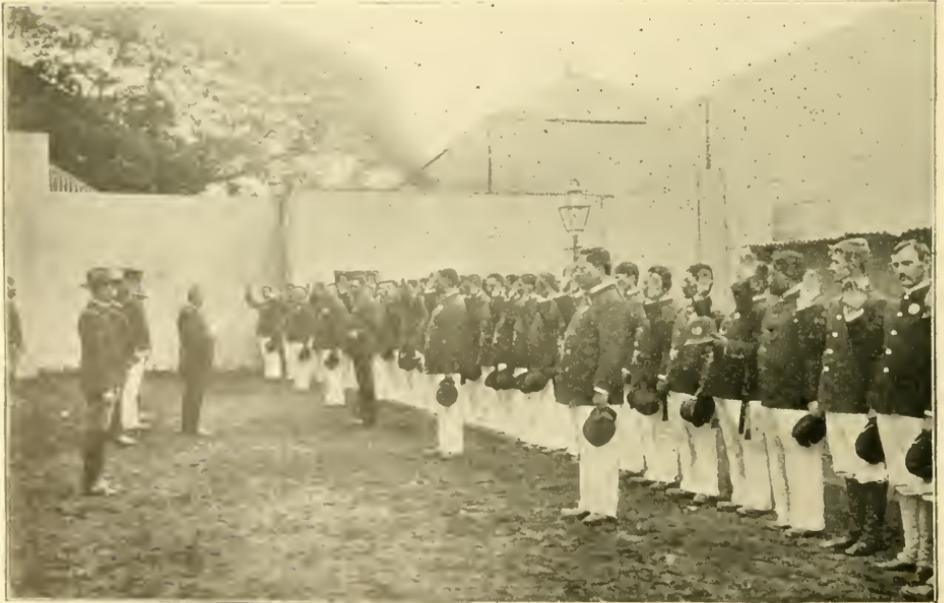
The Mexicans were now driven from every point of the field, and their strong lines, which had certainly been defended well, were in Worth's possession. In fulfillment of the instructions of General Scott, the Casa Mata was blown up, and such of the captured ammunition as was useless to the Americans, as well as the cannon-moulds found in El Molino del Rey, were destroyed. After which, Worth's command, under the orders of the General-in-chief, returned to quarters at Tacubaya, with three of the enemy's four guns, as also a large quantity of small arms, with gun and musket ammunition, and exceeding eight hundred prisoners, including fifty-two commissioned officers. By the con-



LAST SALUTE TO THE HAWAIIAN FLAG.



THE HAWAIIAN FLAG HAULED DOWN, AUGUST 12TH, 1898.



HAWAII.—LAST CABINET MEETING.—POLICE FORCE OF HONOLULU
SWEARING ALLEGIANCE TO THE UNITED STATES.

current testimony of prisoners, the enemy's force exceeded four thousand men, commanded by General Santa Anna in person. His total loss, killed (including the second and third in command, Generals Valdarez and Leon), wounded, and prisoners, amounted to three thousand, exclusive of some two thousand who deserted after the rout. Worth's command, reinforced as before stated, only reached three thousand one hundred men of all arms. The contest continued two hours, and its severity was painfully attested by the heavy loss of American officers, non-commissioned officers and privates, including in the first two classes some of the brightest men of the service.

A series of battles of forty-eight hours' continuance followed Worth's triumph at Molino del Rey, after which, on the 14th of September, 1847, General Scott's glorious army hoisted the flag of the United States on the walls of the National Palace of Mexico.

The President of the Mexican Congress assumed provisional authority on February 2, 1848, and that body concluded a Treaty of Peace with the United States commissioners at Guadalupe-Hidalgo. This treaty was ratified by both governments on July 4, 1848. It stipulated the evacuation of Mexico by the American troops within three months; the payment of \$15,000,000 by the United States to Mexico for New Mexico and California, which had become territories of the United States by conquest.

In 1853 the maps on which the former treaties with Mexico had been based were found incorrect, and Santa Anna sent an army to occupy the territory involved. A second Mexican War seemed imminent. The difficulty was adjusted, however, by the purchase of the doubtful claim from Mexico for \$10,000,000. This transaction was known as the Gadsden Purchase.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE ACQUISITION OF ALASKA.

Our Great Territorial Purchase from Russia—The Great Bargain of Seward and Sumner Extending our Dominion into the Polar Regions and Asiatic Waters—An Immense and Significant Enlargement of our Area of Empire.

WE quote from the works of Charles Sumner: "Late in the evening of Friday, March 29, 1867, Mr. Sumner, on reaching home, found this note from Mr. Seward awaiting him: 'Can you not come to my house this evening? I have a matter of public business in regard to which it is desirable that I should confer with you at once.' Without delay he hurried to the house of the Secretary of State, only to find that the latter had left for the Department. His son, the Assistant Secretary, was at home, and he was soon joined by Mr. De Stoeckl, the Russian Minister. From the two Mr. Sumner learned, for the first time, that a treaty was about to be signed for the cession of Russian-America to the United States. With a map in his hand, the minister, who had just returned from St. Petersburg, explained the proposed boundary according to verbal instructions from the Archduke, Constantine. After a brief conversation when Mr. Sumner inquired and listened, without expressing an opinion, they left together, the Minister on his way to the Department, where the treaty was copying. The clock was striking midnight as they parted, the Minister saying with interest, 'You will not fail us.' The treaty was signed about four o'clock in the morning of

March 30th, being the last day of the current session of Congress, and on the same day it was transmitted to the Senate, and referred to the Committee on Foreign Relations.

“April 1st, the Senate was convened in Executive session by the proclamation of the President of the United States, and the committee proceeded to the consideration of the treaty. The committee, at the time, consisted of Messrs. Sumner (chairman), Fessenden, of Maine; Cameron, of Pennsylvania; Harlan, of Iowa; Morton, of Indiana; Patterson, of New Hampshire, and Reverdy Johnson, of Maryland. Carefully and anxiously they considered the question, and meanwhile it was being discussed outside. Among friendly influences, was a strong pressure from Hon. Thaddeus Stevens, the acknowledged leader of the House, who, though without constitutional voice on the ratification of a treaty, could not restrain his earnest testimony. Mr. Sumner was controlled less by a desire for more territory, than by a sense of the amity of Russia, manifested especially during our recent troubles, and by an unwillingness to miss the opportunity of dismissing another European sovereign from our continent, predestined, as he believed, to become the broad, undivided home of the American people; and these he developed in his remarks before the Senate.”

A Russian translation, by Mr. Buynitzky, appeared at St. Petersburg, with an introduction, whose complimentary character is manifest in its opening;

“Senator Charles Sumner, of Massachusetts, appears, since the election of Lincoln, as one of the most eloquent and conspicuous representatives of the Republican party. His name stands in the first rank of the zealous propagators of Abolitionism, and all his political activity is directed toward one object,—the completion of the glorious act of

enfranchisement of five millions of citizens, by a series of laws calculated to secure to freedmen, the actual possession of civil and political rights. As chairman of the Senate Committee upon Foreign Relations, Mr. Sumner attentively watches the march of affairs in Europe generally; but, in the course of the present decade, his particular attention was attracted by the reforms which took place in Russia. The emancipation of the peasants in our country was viewed with the liveliest sympathy by the American statesman, and this sympathy expressed itself eloquently in his speeches, delivered on various occasions, as well in Congress as in the State Conventions of Massachusetts."

THE CESSION OF RUSSIAN-AMERICA TO THE UNITED STATES.

Speech in the Senate on the Ratification of the Treaty between the United States and Russia, April 9, 1867.

"Thirteen governments founded on the natural authority of the people alone, without a pretense of miracle or mystery, and *which are destined to spread over the northern part of that whole quarter of the globe*, are a great point gained in favor of the rights of mankind."—JOHN ADAMS, *Preface to his Defence of the American Constitutions*.

BOUNDARIES AND CONFIGURATION.

"Starting from the frozen ocean, the western boundary descends Behring Strait, midway between the two islands of Krusenstern and Ratmanoff, to the parallel of 65-30, just below where the continents of America and Asia approach each other the nearest; and from this point it proceeds in a course nearly southwest through Behring Strait, midway between the island of St. Lawrence and Cape Chukotski, to the meridian of 172° west longitude, and thence, in a southwesterly direction, traversing Behring Sea, midway between the island of Attoo, on the east and

Copper Island on the west, to the meridian of 193° west longitude, leaving the prolonged group of the Aleutian Islands in the possessions transferred to the United States, and making the western boundary of our country the dividing line which separates Asia from America.

“Look at the map and observe the configuration of this extensive region, whose estimated area is more than five hundred and seventy thousand square miles. I speak by authority of our own coast survey. Including the Sitkan Archipelago at the south, it takes a margin of the mainland fronting on the ocean thirty miles broad and five hundred miles long to Mt. St. Elias, the highest peak of the continent, when it turns with an elbow to the west, and along Behring Strait northerly, then rounding to the east along the frozen ocean.

“In the Aleutian range, besides innumerable islets and rocks, there are not less than fifty-five islands exceeding three miles in length; there are seven exceeding forty miles, with Oonimak, which is the largest, exceeding seventy-three miles. In our part of Behring Sea there are five considerable islands, the largest of which is St. Lawrence, being more than ninety-six miles long. Add to all these the group south of the peninsula of Alaska, including the Shumagins and the magnificent island of Kadiak, and then the Sitkan group, being archipelago added to archipelago, and the whole together constituting the geographical complement to the West Indies, so that the northwest of the continent answers to the southeast, archipelago for archipelago.

“I cannot doubt that the enlightened Emperor of Russia, who has given pledges to civilization by an unsurpassed act of emancipation, would join the first Napoleon in a desire to enhance the maritime power of the United States.”

[This reference by Charles Sumner refers to the Louisiana purchase.]

THE TREATY.

“The treaty begins with the declaration that ‘the United States of America and his Majesty the Emperor of all the Russias, being desirous of strengthening, if possible, the good understanding which exists between them,’ have appointed plenipotentiaries who have proceeded to sign articles wherein it is stipulated on behalf of Russia that ‘his Majesty, the Emperor of all the Russias, agrees to cede to the United States by this convention, immediately upon the exchange of the ratification thereof, all the territory and dominion now possessed by his said Majesty on the continent of America and in the adjacent islands, the same being contained within the geographical limits herein set forth;’ and it is stipulated on behalf of the United States, that ‘in consideration of the cession aforesaid, the United States agree to pay at the Treasury in Washington, within ten months after the exchange of the ratifications of this convention, to the diplomatic representative or other agent of his Majesty the Emperor of all the Russias, duly authorized to receive the same, \$7,200,000 in gold.’ The ratifications are to be exchanged within three months from the date of the treaty, or sooner if possible.”*

Mr. Sumner said: “Beyond the consideration founded on the desire of ‘strengthening the good understanding’ between the two countries, there is the pecuniary consideration already mentioned which underwent a change in the progress of the negotiation. The sum of seven millions was originally agreed upon; but when it appeared that

* United States Statutes at Large, Vol. XV., pp. 539-543.

there was a fur company and also an ice company enjoying monopolies under the existing government, it was thought best that these should be extinguished, in consideration of which our Government added two hundred thousand to the purchase-money, and the Russian Government in formal terms declared 'the cession of territory and dominion to be free and unincumbered by any reservations, privileges, franchises, grants or possessions, by any associated companies, whether corporate or incorporate, Russian or any other, or by any parties, except merely private individual property-holders.' Thus the United States receive the cession free of all incumbrances, so far, at least, as Russia is in a condition to make it. The treaty proceeds to say: "The cession hereby made conveys all the rights, franchises and privileges now belonging to Russia in the said territory or dominion and appurtenances thereto." In other words, Russia conveys all she has to convey.

"DEPARTMENT OF STATE, Washington, March 23, 1867.

"SIR:—With reference to the proposed convention between our respective governments for a cession by Russia of her American territory to the United States, I have the honor to acquaint you that I must insist upon that clause in the sixth article of the draft which declares the cession to be free and unincumbered by any reservations, privileges, franchises, grants, or possessions by any associated companies, whether corporate or incorporate, Russian or any other, etc., and must regard it as an ultimatum. With the President's approval, however, I will add \$200,000 to the consideration money on that account.

"I avail myself of this occasion to offer you a renewed assurance of my most distinguished consideration.

"WILLIAM H. SEWARD.

"Mr. Edward de Stoeckl, etc., etc., etc."

TRANSLATION.

"WASHINGTON, March 17 (29), 1867.

"MR. SECRETARY OF STATE—I have the honor to inform you, that, by a telegram, dated 16th (28th) of this month, from St. Petersburg, Prince Gortchakoff informs me that his Majesty the Emperor of all the Russias gives his consent to the cession of the Russian possessions on the American continent to the United States, for the stipulated sum of \$7,200,000 in gold, and that his Majesty the Emperor invests me with full powers to negotiate and sign the treaty.

"Please accept, Mr. Secretary of State, the assurance of my very high consideration. "STOECKL.

"To Hon. WILLIAM H. SEWARD, Secretary of State of the United States."

"Territorial acquisitions are among the landmarks of our history. In 1803, Louisiana, embracing the valley of the Mississippi, was acquired from France for fifteen million dollars. In 1819 Florida was acquired from Spain for about three million dollars. In 1845 Texas was annexed without purchase, but subsequently, under the compromise of 1850, an allowance of twelve and three-fourths million dollars was made to her. In 1848, California, New Mexico, and Utah were acquired from Mexico after war, and on payment of fifteen million dollars. In 1854 Arizona was acquired from Mexico for ten million dollars. And now it is proposed to acquire Russian America.

"The passion for acquisition, so strong in the individual, is not less strong in the community. A nation seeks an outlying territory, as an individual seeks an outlying farm. The passion shows itself constantly. France, passing into Africa, has annexed Algeria. Spain set her face in the same direction, but without the same success."

There was a great deal of opposition to this great achievement. Mr. Sumner, in his later years, saw new glories in this great country of ours, and yet in vindicating the purchase of Alaska, his tone became almost apologetic, but he did not flinch from the main question and purpose, the imperial enlargement of our landed possessions. Secretary Seward was one of the broadest-minded statesmen America has produced, and yet he forced conditions upon Russia that might have lost, to the nation, the vast endowment of the American people for the hereafter, gained in the Arctic purchase. Practically this was going beyond seas, and was a bold precedent for the ambitious policy that now sends fleets and armies to occupy and possess tropical islands.

CHAPTER XV.

HAWAII, OUR FIRST PACIFIC COLONY.

The Old Royalties—Establishing the Republic—Annexation and the Sugar Interests—
Japan and the Hawaiian Government—Hawaii the Ally of the United States in
our War with Spain—Our Campaign in the Philippines Rendered Less Difficult
—Pacific Slope Interest in American Expansion—American Homes in Hawaii—
The Climate, Education, and Native Characteristics.

UNDER Kaméhaméha I. the Hawaiian or Sandwich Islands were united into one kingdom. The second king of that name and his queen died in England, 1823. Under Kaméhaméha III. the integrity of the kingdom was recognized by England, France, and the United States, and subsequently by other Governments. This king gave his subjects a constitution in 1840, which was revised and extended in 1852, and on his death in 1854, he was succeeded by his nephew, Kaméhaméha IV., the husband of Queen Emma, who died in 1863. His brother, Kaméhaméha V., succeeded, and proclaimed a revised constitution, August 20, 1864. On his death in 1872, without issue, Prince Lunalilo was chosen, on whose death in 1874 Kalakaua was elected king, and he was succeeded January 20, 1891, by Liliuokalani, his eldest sister.

On January 15, 1893, in consequence of a disagreement between the Queen and her Cabinet regarding a new constitution, a Committee of Public Safety was formed which, two days later, issued a proclamation declaring that the Hawaiian monarchical system was abrogated, and that a provisional government had been established.

A deputation was sent to Washington to ask the United

States Government to annex the Islands. The United States, however, refused, and on July 4, 1894, the constitutional convention at Honolulu declared the Republic of Hawaii, and elected Mr. Dole as its first President. At the same time a movement was inaugurated with the object of the annexation of these Islands to the United States before they should fall into the hands of England, Germany, or Japan.

The annexation project was strenuously opposed by the Sugar Trust, which succeeded, for a number of years, in holding up legislative action on this question.

In 1897 the large and rapid inpouring of Japanese indicated that Japan was making preparations for annexation, and the Hawaiian Government refused to admit several large bodies of colonists, compelling the Japanese steamers, which brought them, to transport them back to their native country. The Japanese Government thereupon dispatched two war-ships to Honolulu. This led to a revival of the annexation movement in the United States, and the war with Spain brought the matter to a final conclusion.

The attitude of President Dole, his Cabinet, and the Hawaiian Congress, on the outbreak of war against Spain, was deserving of admiration. The Hawaiian Government made itself the ally of the United States, and our campaign in the Philippine Islands would have been rendered doubly difficult if the Hawaiian authorities had observed the rules of neutrality. We were accorded as much liberty to make use of islands for our purposes in the Pacific, as we were exercising in the West Indian campaign at Key West. To have refused to allow the Hawaiian Islands to enjoy the security that would come to them from the protection of the American flag, under such circumstances, would have been more than ungracious. The House of Representa-

tives promptly passed a resolution in favor of annexation on June 15th.

In the Senate there was some opposition, and it was not until the 6th of July that a two-thirds vote was secured.

On the same day President McKinley signed the resolution passed by Congress for the annexation, and the U. S. cruiser *Philadelphia* was ordered to Honolulu to raise the American Flag over the Islands.

It is questionable whether the dwellers in the Mississippi Valley and the Gulf States, and along the Atlantic slope, comprehend the fervor of public sentiment in the Pacific and the further Rocky Mountain States concerning our new possessions—the Hawaiian Islands and the Philippine Archipelagoes.

The majestic sweep of the waters between America and Asia is so vast that to the common human understanding there is a feeling that they never have been explored, and that there are abysses of mystery the secrets of which shall be revealed only when those gigantic wastes of waves shall have become as familiar to our people as the narrower spread of the Atlantic. The Hawaiian group has been so long in the public eye that there is not a general realization that it is as far from the Californian coast as the distance between Newfoundland and Ireland. We know a good deal about Honolulu, but not much beyond reports of missionary labors, and statistics of commerce, and the stories of tragedy and strange romance, forming a shadowy but fascinating history, of the various islands composing the Paradise of the Pacific.

Honolulu is a tropical city, and yet in spite of the palm trees, which are not indigenous, and the volcanic mountains standing about, the coral rocks, the phenomenal mingling of races, and queer peculiarities of dress, it has an Ameri-

can appearance in the business quarters, and decidedly a New England fashion of churches. There is an old church built by the native Christians with blocks of lava that is not of this type, but the church spires vividly recall those seen in Connecticut towns, and if the tropical trees and vegetation could be removed, and the streets decorated with elms, the likeness to New England cities of like proportions would become startling—all but the people, of whom there is a variety. The majority of the inhabitants do not look as much like Americans as one could wish, but there was a flame of flags of our country over the roofs after the news of annexation came, and, to a considerable extent, before, that pleased the eye, kindled the fancy, and enriched the imagination; but there was still unhappiness about the royalties, when officially the Hawaiian flag came down and the Stars and Stripes went up. The Princess, a Scotchman's daughter, is a clever girl whose good manners toward Americans have made her popular, and many of the annexationists would approve granting her a liberal pension. The old Queen is not a favorite, and there are no open advocates, except those overthrown with her, of doing anything for her. Mr. Claghorn, the father of the Princess, is a gray-haired gentleman, now engaged largely in coffee growing, and distinguished for his extensive planting of new trees. He is naturally mournful about the disinheritance of his daughter, whose mother was, it will be recalled, sister to the old Queen, Liliuokalani. Sunday observance is a notable feature in Honolulu, and there is a strain of intense temperance sentiment, so positive and aggressive that those who give wine at their tables are not comfortable when the missionaries drop in and find a bottle of a beverage that intoxicates, losing its liquor in course of consumption. There were a few of the old royal party

full of ancient animosity, fierce in threatenings when the consummation of annexation came to pass. One half-caste woman went so far as to talk of harming the house of Dr. McGrew, who is credited with being the foremost and most persistent advocate of annexation. There will be no trouble of a serious nature, but Americans are much divided, both as to policy and persons, and the solid mass of annexationists, having accomplished their object, are divided on many questions, so much so that they should not be hastened to conclusions in local organization, and the application of the forces of our Government, so that the assimilation of the political and legal condition of the islands, with the currents of sentiment, and the particulars and processes of the enforcement of national laws, may proceed without agitation. Time is a great solvent, as in the case of the sugar question, the important phase of which is the system of serfdom behind the importation of Chinese and Japanese labor. The contracts with labor arranged for compensation by a division of profits—what we call in the States “farming on shares”—will do for the sugar industry what the same system has done for us in the cotton industry. And if, as in the case of cotton, there is too great production, coffee growing will be found a resource.

There are many charming households in Honolulu, and among them, conspicuous for private kindness, and a hospitality generous without ostentation, as well as official dignity, is that of Mr. Dole, who has guided with a clear head and firm hand the American colony, until they are safe under the old flag, and once more those who were immigrants are citizens of their native land. But it must not be forgotten that many Americans, true under all circumstances, are the children and children's children of those

who had celebrity for missionary work half a century ago. Mr. Dole is not a demonstrative politician, and office has sought him. Whether he would care to continue in a place of public responsibility is a question about which there are differences of opinion, and a very pretty compliment is paid Mrs. Dole by those who say he had better do as his wife says.

The American minister, Mr. Harold Sewall, has been most active in American interests, and his public-spirited patriotism has been a much-needed and excellent influence, and Mrs. Sewall has been a leader in the wonderful band of women who have devoted themselves to the care of the sick soldiers of the United States, and to the comfort of those in health who came ashore in thousands to have bounteous feasts spread before them in the midst of scenes of tropical beauty that made the land seem to the boys one of enchantment, and her brother, a young Virginian, is serving as a private soldier in a troop of cavalry, and doing his duty with pride. Young Southern officers from recent West Point classes are numerous in the American army of the Philippines, and several of them are from Old Virginia, and it is delightful to see the lines of States and sections, if not forgotten, so shadowy that they are in no degree barriers that are boundaries of good-fellowship. There is glory enough for all, and pride in country that towers over and broadens beyond all prejudice of place, and consolidates Americanism.

The climate of Hawaii is delightful and every gradation of temperature, altitude, and humidity is presented, each respective climate variation retaining an unchanged evenness throughout the year. The average range of temperature throughout the year is about 17°. The highest temperature during five years was 88°, showing that the heat

record of the thermometer is very seldom a record of discomfort.

Each of the principal Islands is an immense but extinct volcano. There is only one active crater, that of Kilauca, on the Island of Hawaii.

Mr. Henry S. Townsend, the Inspector-General of Hawaiian schools, is of the opinion that the Hawaiians have been persistently misrepresented. He says:

“The original Hawaiians were not cannibals, though they had not attained a very high degree of civilization. They were, however, easily influenced, and the early missionaries soon converted the whole people to Christianity. To-day it is impossible to find among the adult Hawaiians a single individual who is unable to read or write; yet they are pictured, by many ignorant writers, as interesting savages.

“There is little crime among them. Many sleep in safety of property and person in houses unlocked, and women travel unattended and without fear in every district of the Islands. There is not yet a necessity for alms-houses, nor is there anything in the population to correspond with the tramp or the beat.”

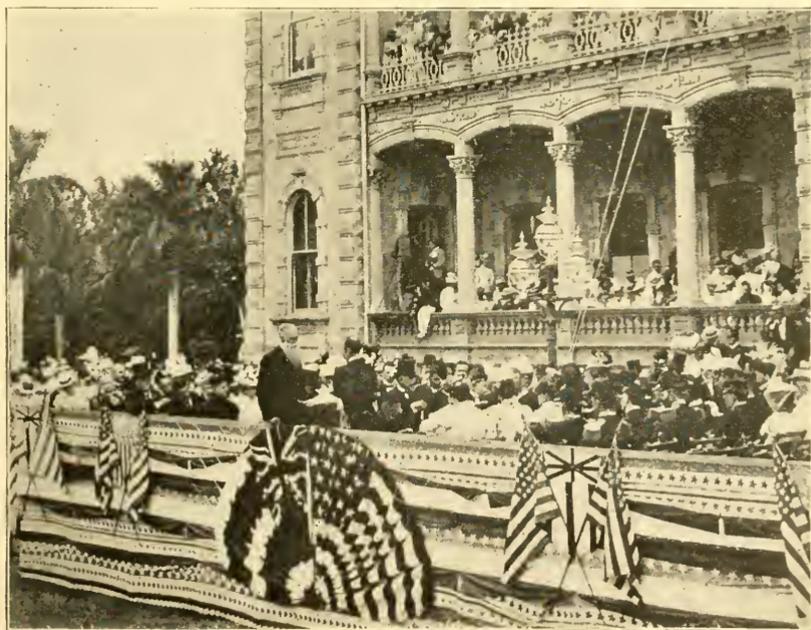
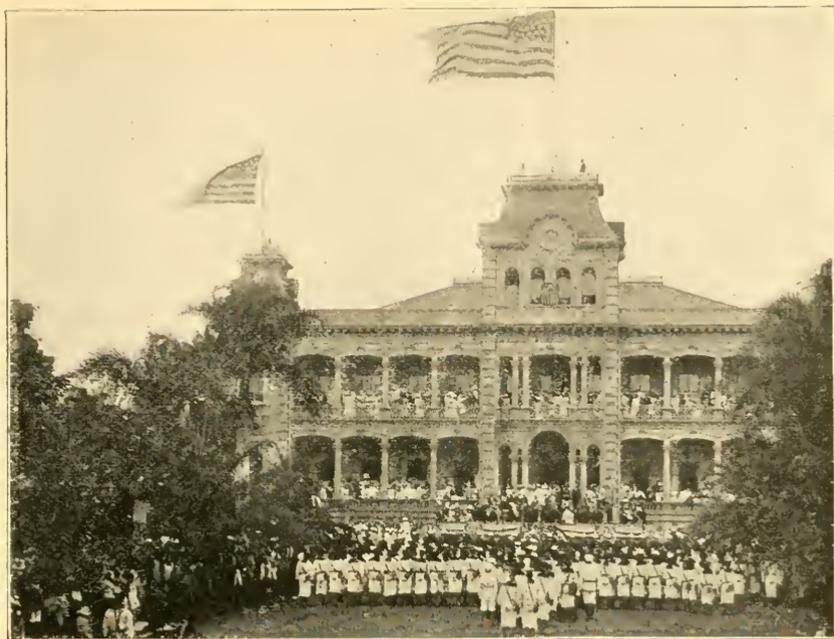
The total area of the Island is 6,640 square miles.

The population, in 1896, was 109,020; 72,517 males, 36,503 females. Of this population 31,019 were natives, 8,485 half-castes, 21,616 Chinese, 24,407 Japanese, 15,191 Portuguese, 3,086 Americans, 2,250 British, 1,432 Germans, 378 Norwegians, 101 French, 455 Polynesians, and 600 other foreigners.

The native population is closely allied to the Maoris of New Zealand, and at the time of Captain Cook's discovery of the Islands, upward of a century ago, the population numbered probably 200,000. The natives have rapidly de-

creased in number, and since the census of 1884 the loss has been over 9,000.

The foreign element is, however, rapidly increasing, and since 1890 there has been a gain of over 26,000. Most of the immigrants have been Japanese. Chinese immigration has recently been restricted. The capital, Honolulu, has over 30,000 inhabitants, is lighted by electricity, and has electric street-car service. Steamers connect the Islands with the American Continent, Australasia, and the Orient. There is railroad and telegraphic service on the Island, and nearly every family in Honolulu has a telephone.



HAWAII.—RAISING THE "STARS AND STRIPES." ANNEXATION CEREMONY.



HONOLULU.—A BUSINESS STREET.—IN THE SUBURBS.

CHAPTER XVI.

OUR RELATIONS WITH OTHER NATIONS.

Clay and Webster on Presidential Power and the Right of Free Speech and Humane Sympathy with Liberty at Home and Abroad—Henry Clay on the Power of the President and the Duties of a Nation to Humanity—Henry Clay's Flaming Denunciations of the Turks for Carrying on War against the Greeks—The most Atrocious and Brutal War that ever Stained Earth or Shocked High Heaven—Daniel Webster Accused of being a Revolutionist—This for some Civil Words to Kossuth—How the Great Constitutional Lawyer and Conservative Statesman Answered the Charge—The Famous Hulsemann Letters—Laying Down the Great American Principles of our Relations with Other Nations and the Cause of Liberty.

IN 1824 Daniel Webster offered the following resolution in the House of Representatives :

Resolved, That provision ought to be made by law for defraying the expense incident to the appointment of an agent or commissioner to Greece, whenever the President shall deem it expedient to make such appointment.

Henry Clay, on the 20th of January, 1824, said in regard to Mr. Webster's resolution :

“MR. CHAIRMAN: Is it not extraordinary that for these two successive years the President of the United States should have been freely indulged, not only without censure, but with universal applause, to express the feelings which both the resolution and the amendment proclaim, and yet, if this House venture to unite with him, the most awful consequences are to ensue. Everywhere the interest in the Grecian cause is felt with the deepest intensity, expressed in every form, and increases with every new day and passing hour, and are the representatives of the people alone to be insulated from the common moral atmosphere of the whole land ?

“This measure has been most unreasonably magnified. Gentlemen speak of the watchful jealousy of the Turk and seem to think the slightest movement of this body will be matter of serious speculation at Constantinople. The Turk will, in all probability, never hear of the names of the gentlemen who either espouse or uphold the resolution. It certainly is not without value, and that value is not altogether without a moral.

“ There is reason to apprehend that a tremendous storm is ready to burst upon our happy country, one which will call into action all our vigor, courage and resources. Is it wise or prudent in preparing for the storm, if it must come, to talk to this nation of its incompetency to repel the European invasion, to lower its spirit, to weaken its moral energy, and to qualify it for easy conquest and base submission? If there be any reality in the dangers which are supposed to encompass us should we not animate the people and adjure them to believe, as I do, that our resources are ample and that we can bring into the field a million of freemen ready to exhaust their last drop of blood, and to spend their last cent in the defense of the country, its liberty and its institutions? Sir, are we, if united, to be conquered by all Europe combined? All the perils to which we could possibly be exposed are much less in reality than the imagination is disposed to paint them. They are best averted by an habitual contemplation of them, by reducing them to their true dimensions. If combined Europe is to precipitate itself upon us, we cannot too soon begin to invigorate our strength, to teach our heads to think, our hearts to conceive, and our arms to execute the high and noble deeds which belong to the character and glory of our country.

“ The experience of the world instructs us that conquests are already achieved, which are boldly and firmly resolved on, and that men only become slaves who have ceased to resolve to be free. We may content ourselves with studying the true character of our own people, and with knowing that the interests are confided to us of a nation capable of doing and suffering all things for liberty. Such a nation, if its rulers be faithful, must be invincible. Are we so humble, so low, so debased that we dare not express our sympathy for suffering Greece, that we dare not articulate our detestation of the brutal excesses of which she has been the bleeding victim, lest we might offend some one or more of their imperial and royal majesties?

“ If gentlemen are afraid to act rashly on such a subject, suppose, Mr. Chairman, that we unite in an humble petition addressed to their majesties, beseeching them that of their gracious condescension they would allow us to express our feelings and our sympathies. How shall it run? ‘ We, the representatives of the free people of the United States of America, humbly approach the thrones of your imperial and royal majesties and supplicate that of your imperial and royal clemency’—I cannot go through the disgusting recital. My lips have not yet learned to pronounce the sycophantic language of a degraded slave.

“ Are we so mean, so base, so despicable that we may not attempt to express our horror, utter our indignation at the most brutal and atrocious war that ever stained earth or shocked high Heaven; at the ferocious deeds of a savage and infuriated soldiery stimulated and urged on by the clergy of a fanatical and inimical religion and rioting in all the excesses of blood and butchery, at the mere details of which the heart sickens and recoils? If the great body of Christendom can look on calmly and coolly while all this is perpetuated on a

Christian people in its own immediate vicinity, in its very presence, let us at least evince that one of its remote extremities is susceptible of sensibility to Christian wrongs and capable of sympathy for Christian sufferings; that in this remote quarter of the world, our hearts are not yet closed against compassion for human woes, that they pour out their indignant feelings at the oppression of a people endeared to us by every ancient recollection and every modern tie, as her attempts have been made to alarm the committee by the dangers of our commerce in the Mediterranean, ah, sir, 'what shall it profit a man if he gain the whole world and lose his own soul?' Or, what shall it avail a nation to save the whole of a miserable trade and lose its liberties?"

"It is not for Greece alone that I desire to see this measure adopted. It will give to her but little support, and that purely of a moral kind. It is principally for America, for the credit and character of our common country, for our own unsullied name that I hope to see it pass.

"Go home, if you can; go home, if you dare, to your constituents, and tell them that you voted it down. Meet, if you can, the appalling countenances of those who sent you here, and tell them that you shrank from the declaration of your own sentiments; that you cannot tell how, but that some unknown dread, some indescribable danger, drove you from your purpose; but that scimitars and crowns, and crescents, gleamed before you and alarmed you; and that you suppressed all the noble feelings prompted by religion, liberty, by national independence and by humanity!"

Daniel Webster, Secretary of State in President Fillmore's term, laid down, in the language of diplomacy, the principle that any citizen of the United States, had the right to free speech, whether favorable or otherwise to a foreign government, and that under the flag of the United States all were protected. The Hungarian patriot, Kossuth, had been a sort of guest of the Nation, and was tendered many public honors. The Austrian Charge d'Affaires Chevalier Hulsemann objected particularly to the fact that the Secretary of State had publicly delivered an address in the presence of Kossuth, which he claimed was revolutionary and in which was held out encouragement to Hungary in her struggle for liberty. The Chevalier took it upon himself to complain to the President of the United States and also to write to the Secretary of State objecting to what he claimed was an international discourtesy, par

ticularly the proposing of a test for the speedy emancipation of Hungary by the Secretary of State. The following letter addressed to Mr. McCurdy, the American Charge d'Affaires at Vienna, shows how Daniel Webster, in his personal capacity, handled the difficulty.

THE SECRETARY OF STATE TO MR. MCCURDY.

DEPARTMENT OF STATE, Washington, June 8, 1852.

SIR:—I transmit a copy of a note of the 29th of April last, addressed to me by Chevalier Hulsemann, announcing his intention of returning to Austria. This note reached me in Baltimore, I being then bound on a visit to Massachusetts from which I have now lately returned. On receiving it I directed Mr. Hunter to return the answer, a copy of which is also herewith inclosed. It is obvious from the tenor of all his recent communications to this department, that the Chevalier Hulsemann's experience in the diplomatic service of his government has not instructed him accurately in the nature and limits of his official functions, and that, notwithstanding his long residence in this country, he is quite uninformed as to the character of our institutions and the responsibility of public men in the United States, for their acts and for their sentiments in a private capacity in regard to the foreign powers.

The Chevalier Hulsemann came here in 1838 as Secretary of Legation, under the highly accomplished Baron de Mareschall, who was accredited as Envoy Extraordinary to his Imperial Majesty. Ever since the retirement of that gentleman he has acted as Charge d' Affaires, but, so far as we are aware without any regular commission from his government. It is certain that he has never been accredited to this department by the Austrian Minister for Foreign Affairs. The Chevalier Hulsemann, it appears, has yet to learn that no foreign government or its representative can take just offence at anything which an officer of this government may say in his private capacity.

Official communications only are to be regarded as indicating the sentiments and views of the government of the United States. If these communications are friendly in their character, the foreign government has no right or reason to infer that there is any insincerity in them, or to point to other matters as showing the real sentiments of the government. You will see from Chevalier Hulsemann's note that he made an appeal to the President against what he calls newspaper improprieties, and unofficial remarks of the head of this department. The President, actuated by a benevolent desire to preserve unimpaired the friendly relations between the two governments, waved ceremony, and unofficially listened to his remarks. In pursuing this course, however, he by no means intended to allow the Chevalier Hulsemann to suppose that he was not well aware of his official position. The Chevalier Hulsemann should know that a Charge d' Affaire, whether regularly commissioned or acting as

such without commission, can hold official intercourse only with the Department of State. He has no right even to converse with the President on matters of business, and may consider it as a liberal courtesy that he is presented to him at all. I take it for granted that if you should imagine the Austrian Minister for Foreign Affairs had offended you, you would lay claim to the right to appeal to the Emperor. Although usually we are not rigid in these matters, yet a marked disregard of ordinary forms implies disrespect to the government itself. I shall not, of course, notice the specific subject of complaint of Chevalier Hulsemann. Whatever is personal to him must be allowed to pass without observation. You are at liberty to read this dispatch to the Austrian Minister for Foreign Affairs.

I am, Sir, respectfully, your obedient servant,

To C. H. McCURDY, etc., Vienna.

DANIEL WEBSTER.

Chevalier Hulsemann was immortalized by Mr. Webster's great paper addressed to him defining the attitude of the United States toward all other nations on questions of popular freedom and personal liberty. The case in hand was that of Austria and Hungary, but the principles abide and have not only permanent interest and authority, but application to all nations. This is the higher law of our foreign relations.

THE SECRETARY OF STATE TO MR. HULSEMANN.

DEPARTMENT OF STATE, Washington, Dec. 21, 1850.

The undersigned, Secretary of State of the United States, had the honor to receive, some time ago, the note of Mr. Hulsemann, Chargé d'Affaires of his Majesty, the Emperor of Austria, of the 30th of September. Causes, not arising from any want of personal regard for Mr. Hulsemann, or of proper respect for his government, have delayed an answer until the present moment. Having submitted Mr. Hulsemann's letter to the President, the undersigned is now directed by him to return the following reply.

The object of Mr. Hulsemann's note are, first, to protest, by order of his government, against the steps taken by the late President of the United States to ascertain the progress and probable result of the revolutionary movements in Hungary; and, secondly, to complain of some expressions in the instructions of the late Secretary of State to Mr. A. Dudley Mann, a confidential agent of the United States, as communicated by President Taylor to the Senate on the 28th of March last.

The principal ground of protest is founded on the idea, or in the allegation, that the government of the United States, by the mission of Mr. Mann and his instructions, has interfered in the domestic affairs of Austria in a manner unjust or disrespectful toward that power. The President's message was a

communication made by him to the Senate, transmitting a correspondence between the executive government and a confidential agent of its own. This would seem to be itself a domestic transaction, a mere instance of intercourse between the President and the Senate, in the manner which is usual and indispensable in communications between the different branches of the government. It was not addressed either to Austria or Hungary; nor was it a public manifesto, to which any foreign state was called on to reply. It was an account of its transactions communicated by the executive government to the Senate, at the request of that body; made public, indeed, but made public only because such is the common and usual course of proceeding. It may be regarded as somewhat strange, therefore, that the Austrian Cabinet did not perceive that, by the instructions given to Mr. Hulsemann, it was itself interfering with the domestic concerns of a foreign state, the very thing which is the ground of its complaint against the United States.

This department has, on former occasions, informed the ministers of foreign powers, that a communication from the President to either house of Congress is regarded as a domestic communication, of which, ordinarily, no foreign state has cognizance; and in more recent instances, the great inconvenience of making such communications the subject of diplomatic correspondence and discussion has been fully shown. If it had been the pleasure of his Majesty, the Emperor of Austria, during the struggles in Hungary, to have admonished the provisional government or the people of that country against involving themselves in disaster, by following the evil and dangerous example of the United States of America in making efforts for the establishment of independent governments, such an admonition from that sovereign to his Hungarian subjects would not have originated here a diplomatic correspondence. The President might, perhaps, on this ground, have declined to direct any particular reply to Mr. Hulsemann's note; but, out of proper respect for the Austrian government, it has been thought better to answer that note at length; and the more especially, as the occasion is not unfavorable for the expression of the general sentiments of the government of the United States upon the topics which that note discusses.

A leading subject in Mr. Hulsemann's note is that of the correspondence between Mr. Hulsemann and the predecessor of the undersigned, in which Mr. Clayton, by direction of the President, informed Mr. Hulsemann "that Mr. Mann's mission had no other object in view than to obtain reliable information as to the true state of affairs in Hungary, by personal observation." Mr. Hulsemann remarks, that "this explanation can hardly be admitted, for it says very little as to the cause of the anxiety which was felt to ascertain the chances of the revolutionists." As this, however, is the only purpose which can, with any appearance of truth, be attributed to the agency; as nothing whatever is alleged by Mr. Hulsemann to have been either done or said by the agent inconsistent with such an object, the undersigned conceives that Mr. Clayton's explanation ought to be deemed, not only admissible, but quite satisfactory.

Mr. Hulsemann states, in the course of his note, that his instructions to address his present communication to Mr. Clayton reached Washington about

the time of the lamented death of the late President, and that he delayed from a sense of propriety the execution of his task until the new administration should be fully organized; "a delay which he now rejoices at, as it has given him the opportunity of ascertaining from the new President himself, on the occasion of the reception of the diplomatic corps, that the fundamental policy of the United States, so frequently proclaimed, would guide the relations of the American government with other powers." Mr. Hulsemann also observes that it is in his power to assure the undersigned "that the Imperial government is disposed to cultivate relations of friendship and good understanding with the United States."

The President receives this assurance of the disposition of the Imperial government with great satisfaction; and, in consideration of the friendly relations of the two governments thus mutually recognized, and of the peculiar nature of the incidents by which their good understanding is supposed by Mr. Hulsemann to have been for a moment disturbed or endangered, the President regrets that Mr. Hulsemann did not feel himself at liberty wholly to forbear from the execution of instructions, which were of course transmitted from Vienna without any foresight of the state of things under which they would reach Washington. If Mr. Hulsemann saw, in the address of the President to the diplomatic corps, satisfactory pledges of the sentiments and policy of this government in regard to neutral rights and neutral duties, it might, perhaps have been better not to bring on a discussion of past transactions. But the undersigned readily admits that this was a question fit only for the consideration and decision of Mr. Hulsemann himself; and although the President does not see that any good purpose can be answered by reopening the inquiry into the propriety of the steps taken by President Taylor to ascertain the probable issue of the late civil war in Hungary, justice to his memory requires the undersigned briefly to restate the history of those steps, and to show their consistency with the neutral policy which has invariably guided the government of the United States in its foreign relations, as well as with the established and well-settled principles of national intercourse, and the doctrines of public law.

The undersigned will first observe, that the President is persuaded, his Majesty, the Emperor of Austria, does not think that the government of the United States ought to view with unconcern the extraordinary events which have occurred, not only in his dominions, but in many other parts of Europe, since February, 1848. The government and people of the United States, like other intelligent governments and communities, take a lively interest in the movements and events of this remarkable age, in whatever part of the world they may be exhibited. But the interest taken by the United States in those events has not proceeded from any disposition to depart from that neutrality toward foreign powers, which is among the deepest principles and the most cherished traditions of the political history of the Union. It has been the necessary effect of the unexampled character of the events themselves, which could not fail to arrest the attention of the contemporary world, as they will doubtless fill a memorable page in history.

But the undersigned goes further, and freely admits that, in proportion as

these extraordinary events appeared to have their origin in those great ideas of responsible and popular government, on which the American constitutions themselves are wholly founded, they could not but command the warm sympathy of the people of this country. Well-known circumstances in their history, indeed their whole history, have made them the representatives of purely popular principles of government. In this light they now stand before the world. They could not, if they would, conceal their character, their condition, or their destiny. They could not, if they so desired, shut out from the view of mankind the causes which have placed them, in so short a national career, in the station which they now hold among the civilized states of the world. They could not, if they desired it, suppress the thoughts or the hopes which arise in men's minds, in other countries, from contemplating their successful example of free government. That very intelligent and distinguished personage, the Emperor Joseph the Second, was among the first to discern this necessary consequence of the American Revolution on the sentiments and opinions of the people of Europe. In a letter to his minister in the Netherlands in 1787, he observes, that "it is remarkable that France, by the assistance which she afforded to the Americans, gave birth to reflections on freedom." This fact, which the sagacity of that monarch perceived at so early a day, is now known and admitted by intelligent powers all over the world. True, indeed, it is, that the prevalence on the other continent of sentiments favorable to republican liberty is the result of the reaction of America upon Europe; and the source and center of this reaction has doubtless been, and now is, in these United States.

The position thus belonging to the United States is a fact as inseparable from their history, their constitutional organization, and their character, as the opposite position of the powers composing the European alliance is from the history and constitutional organization of the government of those powers. The sovereigns who form that alliance have not infrequently felt it their right to interfere with the political movements of foreign states; and have, in their manifestoes and declarations, denounced the popular idea of the age in terms so comprehensive as of necessity to include the United States, and their forms of government. It is well known that one of the leading principles announced by the allied sovereigns, after the restoration of the Bourbons, is, that all popular or constitutional rights are holden not otherwise than as grants and indulgences from crowned heads. "Useful and necessary changes in legislation and administration," says the Laybach Circular of May, 1821, "ought only to emanate from the free will and intelligent conviction of those whom God has rendered responsible for power; all that deviates from this line necessarily leads to disorder, commotions, and evils far more insufferable than those which they pretend to remedy." And his late Austrian Majesty, Francis the First, is reported to have declared, in an address to the Hungarian Diet, in 1820, that "the whole world had become foolish, and, leaving their ancient laws, were in search of imaginary constitutions." These declarations amount to nothing less than a denial of the lawfulness of the origin of the government of the United States, since it is certain that that government was established in consequence of a change which did not proceed from thrones, or the permission of crowned

heads. But the government of the United States heard these denunciations of its fundamental principles without remonstrance, or the disturbance of its equanimity. This was thirty years ago.

The power of this republic, at the present moment, is spread over a region, one of the richest and most fertile on the globe, and of an extent in comparison with which the possessions of the house of Hapsburg are but as a patch on the earth's surface. Its population, already twenty-five millions, will exceed that of the Austrian empire within the period during which it may be hoped Mr. Hulsemann may yet remain in the honorable discharge of his duties to his government. Its navigation and commerce are hardly exceeded by the oldest and most commercial nations; its maritime means and its maritime power may be seen by Austria herself, in all seas where she has ports, as well as they may be seen, also, in all other quarters of the globe. Life, liberty, property, and all personal rights, are amply secured to all citizens, and protected by just and stable laws; and credit, public and private, is as well established as in any government of Continental Europe; and the country, in all its interests and concerns, partakes most largely in all the improvements and progress which distinguish the age. Certainly, the United States may be pardoned, even by those who profess adherence to the principles of absolute government, if they entertain an ardent affection for those popular forms of political organization which have so rapidly advanced their own prosperity and happiness, and enabled them, in so short a period, to bring their country, and hemisphere to which it belongs, to the notice and respectful regard, not to say the admiration, of the civilized world. Nevertheless, the United States have abstained, at all times, from acts of interference with the political changes of Europe. They cannot, however, fail to cherish always a lively interest in the fortunes of nations struggling for institutions like their own. But this sympathy, so far from being necessarily a hostile feeling toward any of the parties to these national struggles, is quite consistent with amicable relations with them all. The Hungarian people are three or four times as numerous as the inhabitants of these United States were when the American Revolution broke out. They possess, in a distinct language, and in other respects, important elements of a separate nationality; which the Anglo-Saxon race in this country did not possess; and if the United States wish success to countries contending for popular constitutions and national independence, it is only because they regard such constitutions and such national independence, not as imaginary, but as real blessings. They claim no right, however, to take part in the struggles of foreign powers in order to promote these ends. It is only in defense of his own government, its principles and character, that the undersigned has now expressed himself on this subject. But when the people of the United States behold the people of foreign countries, without any such interference, spontaneously moving toward the adoption of institutions like their own, it surely cannot be expected of them to remain wholly indifferent spectators.

In regard to the recent very important occurrences in the Austrian empire, the undersigned freely admits the difficulty which exists in this country, and is alluded to by Mr. Hulsemann, of obtaining accurate information. But this dif

ficulty is by no means to be ascribed to what Mr. Hulsemann calls, with little justice, as it seems to the undersigned, "the mendacious rumors propagated by the American press." For information on this subject, and others of the same kind, the American press is, of necessity, almost wholly dependent upon that of Europe; and if "mendacious rumors" respecting Austrian and Hungarian affairs have been anywhere propagated, that propagation of falsehoods has been most prolific on the European continent, and in countries immediately bordering on the Austrian empire. But, wherever these errors may have originated, they certainly justified the late President in seeking true information through authentic channels.

His attention was first particularly drawn to the state of things in Hungary by the correspondence of Mr. Stiles, Chargé d'Affaires of the United States at Vienna. In the autumn of 1848 an application was made to this gentleman, on behalf of Mr. Kossuth, formerly Minister of Finance for the Kingdom of Hungary by Imperial appointment, but, at the time the application was made, chief of the revolutionary government. The object of this application was to obtain the good offices of Mr. Stiles with the Imperial government, with a view to the suspension of hostilities. This application became the subject of a conference between Prince Schwarzenberg, the Imperial Minister for Foreign Affairs, and Mr. Stiles. The prince commended the considerateness and propriety with which Mr. Stiles had acted; and, so far from disapproving his interference, advised him in case he received a further communication from the revolutionary government in Hungary, to have an interview with Prince Windischgrätz, who was charged by the Emperor with the proceedings determined on in relation to that kingdom. A week after these occurrences, Mr. Stiles received, through a secret channel, a communication signed by L. Kossuth, President of the Committee of Defence, and countersigned by Francis Puszky, Secretary of State. On the receipt of this communication, Mr. Stiles had an interview with Prince Windischgrätz, "who received him with the utmost kindness, and thanked him for his efforts towards reconciling the existing difficulties." Such were the incidents which first drew the attention of the government of the United States particularly to the affairs of Hungary, and the conduct of Mr. Stiles, though acting without instructions in a matter of much delicacy, having been viewed with satisfaction by the Imperial government, was approved by that of the United States.

In the course of the year 1848, and in the early part of 1849, a considerable number of Hungarians came to the United States. Among them were individuals representing themselves to be in the confidence of the revolutionary government, and by these persons the President was strongly urged to recognize the existence of that government. In these applications, and in the manner in which they were viewed by the President, there was nothing unusual; still less was there anything unauthorized by the law of nations. It is the right of every independent state to enter into friendly relations with every other independent state. Of course, questions of prudence naturally arise in reference to new states, brought by successful revolutions into the family of nations; but it is not to be required of neutral powers that they should await the recognition of the

new government by the parent state. No principle of public law has been more frequently acted upon, within the last thirty years, by the great powers of the world, than this. Within that period, eight or ten new states have established independent governments, within the limits of the colonial dominions of Spain, on this continent; and in Europe the same thing has been done by Belgium and Greece. The existence of all these governments was recognized by some of the leading powers of Europe, as well as by the United States, before it was acknowledged by the states from which they had separated themselves. If, therefore, the United States had gone so far as formally to acknowledge the independence of Hungary, although, as the result has proved, it would have been a precipitate step, and one from which no benefit would have resulted to either party; it would not, nevertheless, have been an act against the law of nations, provided they took no part in her contest with Austria. But the United States did no such thing. Not only did they not yield to Hungary any actual countenance or succor, not only did they not show their ships of war in the Adriatic with any menacing or hostile aspect, but they studiously abstained from every thing which had not been done in other cases in times past, and contented themselves with instituting an inquiry into the truth and reality of alleged political occurrences. Mr. Hulsemann incorrectly states, unintentionally certainly, the nature of the mission of this agent, when he says that "a United States agent had been despatched to Vienna with orders to watch for a favorable moment to recognize the Hungarian republic, and to conclude a treaty of commerce with the same." This, indeed, would have been a lawful object, but Mr. Mann's errand was, in the first instance, purely one of inquiry. He had no power to act, unless he had at first come to the conviction that a firm and stable Hungarian government existed. "The principal object the President has in view," according to his instructions, "is to obtain minute and reliable information in regard to Hungary, in connection with the affairs of adjoining countries, the probable issue of the present revolutionary movements, and the chances we may have of forming commercial arrangements with that power favorable to the United States." Again, in the same paper, it is said: "The object of the President is to obtain information in regard to Hungary, and her resources and prospects, with a view to an early recognition of her independence and the formation of commercial relations with her." It was only in the event that the new government should appear, in the opinion of the agent, to be firm and stable, that the President proposed to recommend its recognition.

Mr. Hulsemann, in qualifying these steps of President Taylor with the epithet of "hostile," seems to take for granted that the inquiry could, in the expectation of the President, have but one result, and that favorable to Hungary. If this were so, it would not change the case. But the American government sought for nothing but truth; it desired to learn the facts through a reliable channel. It so happened, in the chances and vicissitudes of human affairs, that the result was adverse to the Hungarian revolution. The American agent, as was stated in his instructions to be not unlikely, found the condition of Hungarian affairs less prosperous than it had been, or had been believed to be. He

did not enter Hungary, nor hold any direct communication with her revolutionary leaders. He reported against the recognition of her independence, because he found she had been unable to set up a firm and stable government. He carefully forebore, as his instructions required, to give publicity to his mission, and the undersigned supposes that the Austrian government first learned its existence from the communications of the President to the Senate.

Mr. Hulsemann will observe from this statement, that Mr. Mann's mission was wholly unobjectionable, and strictly within the rule of the law of nations and the duty of the United States as a neutral power. He will accordingly feel how little foundation there is for his remark, that "those who did not hesitate to assume the responsibility of sending Mr. Dudley Mann on such an errand, should, independent of considerations of propriety, have borne in mind that they were exposing their emissary to be treated as a spy." A spy is a person sent by one belligerent to gain information of the forces and defences of the other, to be used for hostile purposes. According to practice, he may use deception, under the penalty of being lawfully hanged if detected. To give this odious name and character to a confidential agent of a neutral power, bearing the commission of his country, and sent for a purpose fully warranted by the law of nations, is not only to abuse language, but also to confound all just ideas, and to announce the wildest and most extravagant notions, such as certainly were not to have been expected in a grave diplomatic paper; and the President directs the undersigned to say to Mr. Hulsemann, that the American government would regard such an imputation upon it by the Cabinet of Austria as that it employs spies, and that in a quarrel none of its own, as distinctly offensive, if it did not presume, as it is willing to presume, that the word used in the original German was not of equivalent meaning with "spy" in the English language, or that in some other way the employment of such an opprobrious term may be explained. Had the Imperial government of Austria subjected Mr. Mann to the treatment of a spy, it would have placed itself without the pale of civilized nations; and the Cabinet of Vienna may be assured, that if it had carried, or attempted to carry, any such lawless purpose into effect, in the case of an authorized agent of this government, the spirit of the people of this country would have demanded immediate hostilities to be waged by the utmost power of the republic, military and naval.

Mr. Hulsemann proceeds to remarks that "this extremely painful incident, therefore, might have been passed over, without any written evidence being left on our part in the archives of the United States, had not General Taylor thought proper to revive the whole subject by communicating to the Senate, in his message of the 18th (28th) of last March, the instructions with which Mr. Mann had been furnished on the occasion of his mission to Vienna. The publicity which has been given to that document has placed the Imperial government under the necessity of entering a formal protest, through its official representative, against the proceedings of the American government, lest that government should construe our silence into approbation, or toleration even, of the principles which appear to have guided its action and the means it has adopted." The undersigned re-asserts to Mr. Hulsemann, and to the Cabinet

of Vienna, and in the presence of the world, that the steps taken by President Taylor, now protested against by the Austrian government, were warranted by the law of nations and agreeable to the usages of civilized states. With respect to the communication of Mr. Mann's instructions to the Senate, and the language in which they are couched, it has already been said, and Mr. Hulsemann must feel the justice of the remark, that these are domestic affairs, in reference to which the government of the United States cannot admit the slightest responsibility to the government of his Imperial majesty. No state, deserving the appellation of independent, can permit the language in which it may instruct its own officers in the discharge of their duties to itself to be called in question under any pretext by a foreign power.

But even if this were not so, Mr. Hulsemann is in an error in stating that the Austrian government is called an "iron rule" in Mr. Mann's instructions. That phrase is not found in the paper; and in respect to the honorary epithet bestowed in Mr. Mann's instructions on the late chief of the revolutionary government of Hungary, Mr. Hulsemann will bear in mind that the government of the United States cannot justly be expected, in a confidential communication to its own agent, to withhold from an individual an epithet of distinction of which a great part of the world thinks him worthy, merely on the ground that his own government regards him as a rebel. At an early stage of the American Revolution, while Washington was considered by the English government as a rebel chief, he was regarded on the continent of Europe as an illustrious hero. But the undersigned will take the liberty of bringing the Cabinet of Vienna into the presence of its own predecessors, and of citing for its consideration the conduct of the Imperial government itself. In the year 1777 the war of the American Revolution was raging all over these United States. England was prosecuting that war with a most resolute determination, and by the exertion of all her military means to the fullest extent. Germany was at that time at peace with England; and yet an agent of that Congress, which was looked upon by England in no other light than that of a body in open rebellion, was not only received with great respect by the ambassador of the Empress Queen at Paris, and by the minister of the Grand Duke of Tuscany (who afterwards mounted the imperial throne), but resided in Vienna for a considerable time; not, indeed, officially acknowledged, but treated with courtesy and respect; and the Emperor suffered himself to be persuaded by that agent to exert himself to prevent the German powers from furnishing troops to England to enable her to suppress the rebellion in America. Neither Mr. Hulsemann nor the Cabinet of Vienna, it is presumed, will undertake to say that anything that was said or done by this government in regard to the recent war between Austria and Hungary is not borne out, and much more than borne out, by this example of the Imperial Court. It is believed that Emperor Joseph the Second habitually spoke in terms of respect and admiration of the character of Washington, as he is known to have done of that of Franklin; and he deemed it no infraction of neutrality to inform himself of the progress of the revolutionary struggle in America, or to express his deep sense of the merits and the talents of those illustrious men who were then leading their country to inde-

pendence and renown. The undersigned may add that in 1781 the courts of Russia and Austria proposed a diplomatic congress of the belligerent powers, to which the commissioners of the United States should be admitted.

Mr. Hulsemann thinks that in Mr. Mann's instructions improper expressions are introduced in regard to Russia; but the undersigned has no reason to suppose that Russia herself is of that opinion. The only observation made in those instructions about Russia is, that she "has chosen to assume an attitude of interference, and her immense preparations for invading and reducing the Hungarians to the rule of Austria, from which they desire to be released, gave so serious a character to the contest as to awaken the most painful solicitude in the minds of Americans." The undersigned cannot but consider the Austrian Cabinet as unnecessarily susceptible in looking upon language like this as a "hostile demonstration." If we remember that it was addressed by the government to its own agent, and has received publicity only through a communication of one department of the American government to another, the language quoted must be deemed moderate and inoffensive. The comity of nations would hardly forbid its being addressed to the two imperial powers themselves. It is scarcely necessary for the undersigned to say, that the relations of the United States with Russia have always been of the most friendly kind, and have never been deemed by either party to require any compromise of their peculiar views upon subjects of domestic or foreign polity, or the true origin of governments. At any rate, the fact that Austria, in her contest with Hungary, had an intimate and faithful ally in Russia, cannot alter the real nature of the question between Austria and Hungary, nor in any way affect the neutral rights and duties of the government of the United States, or the justifiable sympathies of the American people. It is, indeed, easy to conceive, that favor toward struggling Hungary would not be diminished, but increased, when it was seen that the arm of Austria was strengthened and upheld by a power whose assistance threatened to be, and which in the end proved to be, overwhelmingly destructive of all her hopes.

Toward the conclusion of his notes Mr. Hulsemann remarks, that "if the government of the United States were to think it proper to take an indirect part in the political movements of Europe, American policy would be exposed to acts of retaliation, and to certain inconveniences which would not fail to affect the commerce and industry of the two hemispheres." As to this possible fortune, this hypothetical retaliation, the government and people of the United States are quite willing to take their chances and abide their destiny. Taking neither a direct nor an indirect part in the domestic or intestine movements of Europe, they have no fear of events of the nature alluded to by Mr. Hulsemann. It would be idle now to discuss with Mr. Hulsemann those acts of retaliation which he imagines may possibly take place at some indefinite time hereafter. Those questions will be discussed when they arise; and Mr. Hulsemann and the Cabinet at Vienna may rest assured, that, in the mean time, while performing with strict and exact fidelity all their neutral duties, nothing will deter either the government or the people of the United States from exercising, at their own discretion, the rights belonging to them as an independent nation, and of forming

and expressing their own opinions, freely, and at all times, upon the great political events which may transpire among the civilized nations of the earth. Their own institutions stand upon the broadest principles of civil liberty; and believing those principles and the fundamental laws in which they are embodied to be eminently favorable to the prosperity of states, to be, in fact, the only principles of government which meet the demands of the present enlightened age, the President has perceived, with great satisfaction, that, in the constitution recently introduced into the Austrian empire, many of these great principles are recognized and applied, and he cherishes a sincere wish that they may produce the same happy effects throughout his Austrian Majesty's extensive dominions that they have done in the United States.

The undersigned has the honor to repeat to Mr. Hulsemann the assurance of his high consideration.

DANIEL WEBSTER.

The CHEVALIER J. G. HULSEMANN,
Charge d'Affaires of Austria, Washington.

CHAPTER XVII.

WHEN OUR NAVY WON GREAT GLORY.

Henry Clay and Naval Preparations—His Sympathy with Greece—The Recognition of Greece—The Triumph of Clay—The Fear of Clay that England would Possess Cuba—The Seventeen Years' War of Spain—Clinging to Her South American Colonies—Correspondence with the Emperor of Russia—The Fights of Our Frigates in the Last War With England—The Impressment of American Seamen that Caused the War—Actual Fighting Before War was Declared—The Famous Chase of the *Constitution* and the Combat with the *Guerriere*.

A most engaging account is given by Henry Clay's biographer, Geo. D. Prentice, of his struggles for a navy and his eloquent pleas for Greece.

The bill which proposed an appropriation by the government for the purchase of timber, and the repair of those vessels which were in a state of decay, gave rise to an animated discussion. It was urged that it was in vain for us to think of contending with the maritime force of Great Britain, whose fleets covered the ocean like wide-extended cities.

In the prosecution of his argument Henry Clay described three different degrees of naval force, and considered each of them in reference to the necessities and the pecuniary ability of the United States. The first was a force that should enable us to go boldly forth, upon every sea and ocean, and bid defiance to the largest fleets of a belligerent power wherever they might be encountered. Such a force, he admitted, it would be the extreme of madness and folly for our government, to think, at that time, of establishing.

The second description of force was one which, without



THE "NEW YORK" - CAPTURE OF THE BLOCKADE RUNNER

often venturing to seek an enemy in foreign climes, should be competent to beat off any squadron or fleet which Great Britain or any other nation might attempt to station permanently upon our coast. He showed that this might be done by a force equal to one-third of that employed against us, it being a fact proved by nautical experience that a nation cannot maintain a permanent force upon a distant station without an equal force constantly in port for repairs, and another as constantly on the passage. From this he inferred that twelve ships of the line and fifteen or twenty frigates would enable us to encounter the most formidable fleet which Great Britain, during the continuance of her European conflict, could maintain in American waters. Such a naval armament, he acknowledged, could not be looked for at that time, but he urged on Congress the policy of making appropriation for it and expressed his entire conviction that the finances of the country would warrant its completion in a few years. He was not intimidated by the boasted navy of the ocean-queen. So great, he contended, was her distance from us, so imminent the perils of a squadron on a foreign shore, and so numerous the facilities offered by an extensive sea-board to our own vessels, for annoying and evading an enemy, that we should soon have the means of providing a force which would empower us to vindicate all our maritime rights.

A third description of the naval force by Henry Clay was considered as perfectly within the nation's resources at the time of the discussion. This was a force which should enable us to prevent any single vessel of whatever magnitude from endangering our whole coasting trade and laying our chief cities under contribution. He said :

“If we are not able to meet the gathered wolves of the forest, shall we put up with the barking impudence of every petty cur that trips across our way?”

"If there be a point, more than any other in the United States, demanding the aid of naval protection, that point is the mouth of the Mississippi. The population of the whole western country is depending on this single outlet for their surplus productions. These productions can be transported in no other way. The whole commerce of the Mississippi, a commerce that is destined to be the richest that was ever borne by a single stream, is placed at the mercy of a single ship lying off the Belize. Again, what is to become of Cuba? Will it assert independence, or remain a province of some European power? In either case the whole trade of the western country, which must pass almost within gunshot of the Morro Castle, is exposed to danger. It is not, however, of Cuba I am afraid. I wish her independent; but suppose England gets possession of that valuable island, with Cuba on the south and Halifax on the north, and the consequent means of favoring, or annoying the commerce of particular sections of the country, will not the most sanguine among us tremble for the integrity of the Union? If along with Cuba, Great Britain should acquire East Florida, should we have the absolute command of the Gulf of Mexico? Can gentlemen from the western country contemplate such possible and probable events, without desiring to see at least the commencement of such a naval establishment as will effectually protect the Mississippi?

"A marine is the natural, the appropriate guardian of foreign commerce. The shepherd and his faithful dog are not more necessary to guard the flocks that browse and gambol on the neighboring mountain. Neglect to provide the one, and you must abandon the other. Suppose the expected war with Great Britain is commenced, you enter and subjugate Canada, and she still refuses to do you justice. What other possible mode will remain to operate on the enemy upon that element where alone you can then come in contact with him, and if you do not prepare to protect there your own commerce and to assail his, will he not sweep from the ocean every vessel bearing your flag and destroy even the coasting trade? What is our foreign commerce that has suddenly become so inconsiderable? It has, with very trifling aid from other sources, defrayed the expense of government ever since the adoption of the present Constitution, maintained an expensive and successful war with the Indians, a war with the Barbary powers, a quasi war with France, sustained the charge of suppressing two insurrections and extinguishing upwards of forty-six millions of the public debt. In revenue, it has, since the year 1789, yielded \$191,000,000, and if our commerce is re-established, it will, in the course of time, net a sum for which we are scarcely furnished with figures in arithmetic."

It was with such arguments that Clay won over the House to a generous appropriation for the navy that won the war of 1812. In less than two years it became the right arm of the country.

When Mr. Clay assumed the duties of the secretaryship

of state he took up the cause of Greece, having failed, when in Congress, to procure on the part of the United States, the recognition of Grecian independence. He sent a minister to represent our government at Greece, and thus that country was hailed into the family of independent nations. America was the first to recognize her, and the measure was effected by the zeal and perseverance of Mr. Clay. The recognition of America gave heart to the Greeks, and the Turks were beaten back.

Another interference in the affairs of other nations that seemed to demand the help of America was, when in an official letter addressed to Mr. Middleton, American Minister to Russia, he sought to induce the Emperor Alexander to use his influence toward putting a period to the war, that for seventeen years had been raging between Spain and her South American colonies.

He had, in an address in Congress, on a bill to prevent ships from being built at Baltimore for supposed use by the rebellious colonies, splendidly championed their cause, and on the subject of strict neutrality called attention to the fact that Spain had had an accredited minister to watch over its interests and to remonstrate against any acts of which it might complain, while the colonies, being wholly unrepresented, had no organ through which to communicate grievances.

"Whenever war exists," said Mr. Clay, "between two independent states or between parts of a common empire, I know of but two relations in which other powers can stand towards the belligerents. The one is that of neutrality and the other that of belligerency." Being then in a state of neutrality the question was whether the provisions of the bill were necessary to the performance of duty. For his part he wished for their independence. It had

been said that the people of South America were incapable, from the ignorance and superstition prevailing among them, of achieving independence or enjoying liberty. Mr. Clay asked "to what cause is that ignorance and superstition owing? Is it not due to the offices of their government, to the tyranny and oppression of hierarchical and political rule under which they groan? Independence is the first step toward improving their condition."

Mr. Clay described the state of South America, illustrated the impossibility of her ever being re-conquered by Spain, dwelt upon the benefits that would result from the re-establishment of peace, not only to the belligerent powers, but to all Europe, and suggested that the Emperor of Russia, by effecting such a measure, might render himself as great and glorious in peace as he had already become in war. Although Mr. Clay, in this letter, did not directly ask the interference of Russia in behalf of Greece, still he was careful to suggest to the Emperor the cause of the Greeks, and reminded him of the fame that would crown his years, if he were to deliver that suffering people, as well as the South Americans, from the grasp of tyranny. The emperor instructed his minister at the Spanish court to use every exertion in favor of the pacification of the colonies, and shortly afterwards the effusion of blood was stopped, and the independence of South America acknowledged by the parent country. In the meantime Alexander directed his personal attention more immediately to the Greeks, preparing to war with them, when death took him off and left their liberation to his successor.

The war of 1812 is of particular interest as showing the wonderful fighting capacity of the United States Navy with the ten frigates built through the energy and far-sightedness of Henry Clay.

Lord Castlereagh, in a speech before the House of Parliament on February 18, 1811, stated that out of 145,000 seamen employed in the British service, the whole number of American subjects amounted to more than 3,300. A search of the papers of the State Department at Washington showed that some 6,257 American citizens had been impressed into the British service, and there were as many protests filed. John R. Spears in his "History of Our Navy," claims that there were more than 20,000 free American men who were forced into the service of the British Navy by press-gangs. It was this that led up to the war of 1812.

—It happened that the actual fighting occurred before war was declared. The British frigate *Guerriere* of thirty-eight guns, commanded, then, by Captain Samuel John Pechell, met on May 1, 1811, the American merchant ship *Spitfire*. The *Guerriere* deliberately stopped her and took off John Deguyo, an American citizen, who was a passenger. At the time of this outrage the United States frigate, *President* of forty-four guns, commanded by Captain John Rodgers, was lying at Fort Severn, Annapolis, Md. He had been ordered to cruise up and down the coast to protect American commerce, and the facts of the *Guerriere's* assault upon the liberty of John Deguyo had been communicated to him. He at once sought the *Guerriere*, and late, that evening, met a stranger. The *President*, with her crew at quarters, drew up close on the other, and Captain Rodgers hailed from the lee rail, "What Ship is that?" Instead of an answer the stranger replied by hailing in turn, "What Ship is that?" Captain Rodgers repeated his question, and to his intense surprise he got for an answer a shot from the stranger that struck the *President's* main mast. Like an echo to this shot was one fired

without orders from the *President*. To this the stranger replied with three shots in quick succession, and then with a broadside. At that, the impatient gunner who had fired the first shot from the *President*, had the opportunity to try again under orders, and the rest of the crew joined in. For ten minutes they loaded the guns with a rapidity well worth noting, and fired with a deliberation and precision never to be forgotten. For some unknown reason the stranger ceased firing. She was manifestly much inferior to the *President* in armament. Captain Rodgers ordered his men to stop the engagement; but no sooner had this order been obeyed than the stranger re-opened fire. Despite the darkness and growing wind and sea, one broadside knocked the stranger helpless.

Now, when Rodgers once more hailed, he received a reply, but, owing to his position to windward, he could not understand it, but it is recorded that the captain pluckily said "No," when asked if he had struck. However, Rogers ran down under the stranger's lee, and hove to where he might be of service in case she should sink, and there he waited for daylight.

During the night the vessels drifted apart, but at eight o'clock the next morning Captain Rodgers sent Lieutenant Creighton on board the stranger to "regret the necessity which had led to such an unhappy result, and offer assistance if any were needed." It was then learned that she was the twenty-gun corvette *Little Belt*, under command of Arthur B. Bingham. More than one quarter of her crew were destroyed; on the *President* one boy was slightly hurt by a splinter.

The whole affair was, of course, carefully investigated by both governments, the officers on each ship swore that the other had fired the first gun.

Theodore Roosevelt, Assistant Secretary of the Navy, in his book on "The War of 1812," explains the superiority of the American seaman with the fact that the French, Spaniards, Algerians, Malays, and others constantly attacked American commerce. "Wherever an American seaman went, he not only had to contend with all the legitimate perils of the sea, but he had also to regard almost every stranger as a foe. The effect of such a state of things, which made commerce so remunerative that bolder spirits could hardly keep out of it, and so hazardous that only the most skillful and daring could succeed in it, was to raise up as fine a set of seamen as ever manned a navy. The American was more easily managed than most of his kind, being shrewd, quiet, and, in fact, comparatively speaking, rather moral than otherwise; if he was a New Englander, and retired from a sea life, he was not unapt to end his days as a deacon. Altogether there could not have been better material for a fighting crew than cool, gritty American Jack."

The three days' chase of the *Constitution* by the British fleet was a test of seamanship of the highest order, and resulted in a victory for the American, for he escaped overwhelming odds by the wonderful handling of the boat. The *Guerriere*, which afterward had to strike her flag to the *Constitution*, was the first of the British boats to get near her in the long pursuit. Just before sunset, the lookout on the *Constitution* sighted three strangers, and later another. They were thought to be English, and the American therefore discreetly started to get out of the way. All through the night she was followed by the English.

As daylight broadened three sails were discovered on the starboard quarter, and three more at the stern. Soon another was spied to the westward. By nine o'clock when the mists had lifted, the *Constitution* saw to leeward two

frigates, a ship of the line, two small frigates, a brig and a schooner. It was the squadron of Captain Philip Vere Broke. Luckily for "*Old Ironsides*" all of the Englishmen were beyond gun shot. Hull sent his boats ahead and then began the weary work of towing. At the same time the stern chasers were run out over the after-bulwarks and through the cabin windows. It fell a dead calm, and before long all of the English vessels had begun to tow also.

Then a brilliant idea occurred to Lieutenant Morris of the *Constitution*. All the spare hawsers and rope that could stand the strain were spliced together, and a line almost a mile in length was towed ahead of the ship and the kedge-anchor dropped. At once the *Constitution* began to walk away from her pursuers; as she tripped one kedge she commenced a haul upon another. Hull displayed his colors and fired a gun, but it was not long before the British discovered the Yankee trick and were trying it themselves. A slight breeze happily sprang up which the *Constitution* got first and forged ahead of the leading vessel that had fifteen or sixteen boats towing away at her. Soon it fell calm again and the towing and kedging were resumed. The British gained once more, and Hull sent overboard some twenty-four hundred gallons of water to lighten his vessel.

At daybreak, of the following day, three of the enemy's frigates had crept up to within long gunshot on the lee quarter, and the *Guerriere* was close on the beam. Slowly but surely the *Belvidere* drew ahead, and at last she was almost off the *Constitution's* bow when she tacked. Hull, to preserve his position and the advantage of being to the westward, was obliged to follow suit. The American was then apparently in the midst of the foe. The breeze freshening, Hull hoisted in his boats, and the weary rowers rested their strained arms.

An American merchantman appeared. The Englishman did not dispatch a vessel to pursue her, but to encourage her to continue her course, flew the stars and stripes. Hull straightway as a warning drew down his own flag and set the English ensign. The merchantman hauled on the wind and made his best efforts to escape.

The wind freshened, and the sails being trimmed and watched closely, the *Constitution* gained two miles and more upon the pursuers. Dark, angry clouds and deeper shadows on the water to westward showed that a sudden squall was approaching. The topmen were sent aloft, and the *Constitution* held on with all sails set, but with everything ready at the command to let go. As the rush of wind and rain approached all the canvas was furled, a reef taken in the mizzen topsail, and the ship was brought under short sail as if she expected to be laid on her beam ends.

The English vessels astern probably expected that a hard blow was going to follow so they let go and hauled down as they were, without waiting for the wind to reach them. Some of them hove to and began to reef, and then scattered in different directions as if for safety, but no sooner had the rain assailed the *Constitution* than Hull hoisted his fore and main top-gallant as well, and with the wind blowing the water all about him he soared away over the seas at a gait of eleven knots. For an hour the breeze held strong and then it disappeared.

A Yankee cheer broke out in which the officers joined, for the English fleet was far down the wind. A few minutes more sailing and the leading frigates were hull-down below the horizon. Still they held in chase throughout all the night, signaling each other now and then. At daybreak all fear was over, but the *Constitution* kept under all sail even after Broke's squadron gave up.

The first real test of fighting was on the occasion of the affair between the *Constitution* and the *Guerriere*. A month after the successful eluding of the British navy, the *Constitution* sighted, in latitude $41^{\circ}, 40'$, and longitude $55^{\circ}, 48'$, a British man-of-war, which proved to be the *Guerriere*.

Hull raised his flag. Immediately in response, up went every masthead of the other ship, the red cross of Old England. It was growing late in the afternoon; the breeze had freshened, and the white caps had begun to jump on every side. The crew of the *Constitution* broke into three ringing cheers as their grand old craft bore down upon the enemy. When almost within range, the English let go her broadside, and turning on the tack, fired her other broadside. The shot fell short, and the *Constitution* reserved her fire. For three-quarters of an hour, the two manœvered, trying to rake and to avoid being raked in turn.

At six in the evening, the enemy, seeing all attempts to outsail her antagonist were in vain, showed a brave indication of wishing to close the fight. Hull reserved his fire until quite close to the *Guerriere*, when he shouted: "Now boys, pour it into them." The broadside was as one single explosion, and the destruction was perfect. The enemy's decks were strewn with the dead and wounded, and the blood ran out of the scuppers. Her cockpit filled with the wounded. For a few minutes, shrouded in smoke, they fought at the distance of a half-pistol shot. But in that short space of time, the Englishman was literally torn to pieces in hull, spars, sails and rigging.

As her mizzen mast gave way, the Englishman brought up into the wind, and the *Constitution* forged slowly ahead and fired again, and then fell afoul of her antagonist, with her bowsprit across her larboard quarter. While in this position, Hull's cabin was set on fire by the enemy's for-

ward battery, and part of the crew were called away from the guns to extinguish the threatening blaze. Now both sides tried to board. It was the old style of fighting for the British tars, and they bravely swarmed on deck at the call, "Boarders away!" and the shrill piping of 'tween decks. The Americans were preparing for the same attempt, and three of their officers, who mounted the taff-rail, were shot by the English. The swinging and grinding of the huge ships against each other made boarding impossible, and it was at this anxious moment that the sails of the *Constitution* filled. She fell off, and shot ahead. Hardly was she clear when the foremast of the enemy fell, carrying with it the main-mast, and leaving the proud vessel of a few hours before, a helpless wreck, "rolling like a log in the trough of the sea, entirely at the mercy of the billows." It was now nearly seven o'clock; the sky had clouded over; the wind was freshening, and the sea was growing heavy. Hull drew off for repairs, rove new rigging, secured his masts, and, wearing ship, approached, ready to pour in a final broadside.

It was not needed. Before the *Constitution* could fire, the flag, which had been flying at the stem of the enemy's mizzen-mast, was struck. The fight was over. In the *Constitution* seven were killed and seven wounded; in the *Guerriere*, fifteen killed, sixty-two wounded and twenty-four were missing. The next day the *Guerriere*, being useless, was set on fire. At 3.15 in the afternoon she blew up.

Great Britain had, when we challenged her to combat in 1812, one thousand ships of war, and was so thoroughly in command of the sea that "her title there was none to dispute." Exclusively of gunboats we had:

Constitution	44	John Adams	28
President	44	Wasp	18
United States	44	Hornet	18
Congress	38	Argus	16
Constellation	38	Siren	16
Chesapeake	38	Oneida	16
New York	36	Vixen	14
Adams	28	Enterprise	14
Boston	28	Viper	12
Essex	32	Nautilus	14

The quarrel was about the impressment of our sailors. We expected to take Canada, and the British proposed to occupy and possess forever, New Orleans and Louisiana. Neither got what they wanted, and nothing was said in the treaty about the ostensible cause of the war, but the British stopped searching our ships for their subjects. Two of the ships in our list were unseaworthy, the *New York* and *Boston*, and the *Oneida* was on Lake Ontario. The *Adams* required repairs. We had seventeen cruisers on the ocean, and the British had fifty to our one. In addition England had the West India Islands, Bermuda and Halifax for places of refuge and repairs. In his naval history Cooper says :

The vessels were scattered ; some were undergoing repairs, others were at a distance ; and with the exception of one small squadron, everything was virtually committed to the activity, judgment and enterprise of the different captains. In the port of New York were collected the *President* 44, Commodore Rodgers ; *Essex* 32, Captain Porter ; and *Hornet* 18, Captain Lawrence. These vessels were ready to sail at an hour's notice, except the *Essex*, which ship was overhauling her rigging, and restoring her hold. Commodore Rodgers had dropped into the bay, with the *President* and *Hornet*, where he was joined by the *United States* 44, Commodore Decatur ; *Congress* 38, Captain Smith ; and *Argus* 16, Lieutenant-Commandant Sin-

clair, all of which vessels arrived from the southward on the 21st of June.

A few days after the chase of the *Constitution*, the English squadron separated, the *Africa* returning to port with the prisoners and prizes, and the frigates shaping their courses in different directions, in the hope that the ship which had avoided them so carefully when in company, might be less averse to meeting them singly.

The *Essex* 32, Captain Porter, got to sea from New York, not long after the departure of Commodore Rodgers, and went first to the southward. She made several prizes early, destroying most of them and receiving the prisoners on board. The weather now compelled the *Essex* to run to the northward. When a few weeks from port a small fleet was approached at night, which was immediately understood to be enemies. The English ships were steering to the northward, before the wind, and the *Essex* was stretching toward them, on an easy bowline, and under short canvas. The night had a dull moon, and it wanted but an hour or two to daylight. As the *Essex* drew near, it was perceived that the English were sailing in very open order, with considerable intervals between them, and that the convoying ship, a large vessel, was some distance ahead, and of course to leeward.

As it was the intention of Captain Porter to preserve the weather gauge, until he ascertained who and what the convoy might be, he stretched in towards the sternmost ship of the strangers, which he spoke. At this time the people of the *Essex* were at their guns, with everything ready to engage, but keeping the men on deck concealed, and having the lower ports in. After some conversation with the first vessel, it was ascertained that the fleet consisted of a few transports, under the convoy of a frigate and bomb-

vessel, whereupon Captain Porter determined to get alongside of the former, if possible, and to carry her by surprise. With this view, the *Essex* shot ahead, leaving the first vessel, apparently, without exciting her suspicions. On ranging up close abeam of a second, some further discourse passed, when the Englishman so far took the alarm, as to announce the intention of making the signal of a stranger's having joined the fleet. It became necessary, therefore, to throw aside disguise, and to order the transport to haul out of the convoy, under the penalty of being fired into. This was done quietly, and seemingly, without attracting the attention of the rest of the fleet, which, of course, passed to leeward. On taking possession of her prize, the *Essex* found her filled with soldiers, and so much time was necessarily consumed in securing the latter, that the day dawned and it became inexpedient to renew the attempt on the convoy. The frigate was said to be the *Minerva* 36, and the troops in the convoy amounted to nearly 1,000 men. About 150 were taken in the prize.

A few days after this success, the *Essex* sighted a strange sail to windward. The American at that moment was disguised as a merchantman, having her gun-deck ports in, top-gallant mast housed, and sails trimmed in a slovenly manner. Deceived by these appearances, the stranger came running down free. The American ship showed her ensign and kept away, under short sail. This emboldened the stranger, who followed, and having got on the weather quarter of his chase, began his fire, setting the English colors. The *Essex* now knocked out her ports, and opened upon the enemy, who appears to have been so much taken by surprise, that after receiving one or two broadsides the crew deserted their quarters and ran below. In eight minutes after the *Essex* had begun to fire

the English ship struck. On sending Lieutenant Finch on board to take possession, the prize proved to be his Britannic Majesty's ship *Alert*, Captain Laugharne, mounting 20 eighteen-pound carronades, and with a full crew. The lieutenant found seven feet of water in the *Alert*, and was obliged to wear round to keep her from sinking.

The *Alert* was the first vessel of war taken from the English in this contest, and her resistance was so feeble as to excite surprise. It was not to be expected, certainly, that a ship carrying eighteen-pound carronades could successfully resist a ship carrying thirty-two pound carronades, and double her number of guns and men; but so exaggerated had become the opinion of the British prowess on the ocean, that impossibilities were sometimes looked for. As it is understood that only a part of the guns of the *Essex* bore on the *Alert*, the manner in which the latter was taken, must be attributed to a sudden panic among her people, some of whom were censured after their exchange. Even the officers did not escape, the first lieutenant being dismissed from the service by a court-martial. The *Alert* had but three men wounded, and the *Essex* sustained no injury at all.

Another interesting story is that of the brig *Argus*, under Captain Sinclair, which after separating from the *United States*, cruised alone, making several captures of merchantmen, though she met no vessel of war of a force proper for her to engage. During this cruise she was chased for three days and nights, by a squadron of the enemy, two of which were ships of the line. On this occasion the *Argus* proved her fine qualities, and the coolness of her officers and crew did them infinite credit. All the guns were preserved, though the brig was so hard pressed as to be obliged to cut away anchors, and to throw over-

board some of her boats. Notwithstanding the perseverance of her pursuers, the *Argus* actually took and manned a prize during the chase, though two of the enemy got near enough to open their fire as the vessels separated. The brig escaped, having made five prizes before she got in.

The *Wasp*, 18 guns, Captain Jones, left the Delaware on a cruise. She was one of the sloops fitted out at the close of the Tripolitan war, a beautiful and fast cruiser. She retained all of her old armament and construction, having been a ship from the first, mounting 16 thirty-two pound carronades and 2 long twelves. The *Wasp* sailed to the northward. She ran off Boston, made one capture, and, after an absence of three weeks, returned to the Delaware. On the 13th of October she sailed a second time to get into the track of vessels steering north, and about 11 o'clock in the night of the 17th several sail were made. Two of these appeared large, and Captain Jones did not deem it prudent to close, but, hauling off to a convenient distance, he steered in the same direction with the unknown vessels, with the intention of ascertaining their characters in the morning. When the day dawned the strangers were seen ahead and to leeward. Making sail to close, they were ascertained to be a convoy of six English ships, under the charge of a heavy brig-of-war. Four of the merchantmen were armed, apparently, mounting from 12 to 18 guns. The commander of the brig, however, manifested no wish to avail himself of the assistance of any of his convoys, but shortening sail, the latter passed ahead, while he prepared to give battle. As it was the evident intention of the Englishman to cover his convoy, very little manœvering was necessary to bring the vessels alongside of each other. At 32 minutes past 11 A. M., the *Wasp* ranged close up on the starboard side of the enemy,



THE "COLUMBIA," NIGHT PATROL.

receiving her broadside, at the distance of about sixty yards, and delivering her own. The fire of the Englishman immediately became very rapid, it having been thought at the time, that he discharged three guns to the *Wasp's* two, and as the main-topmast of the latter ship was shot away within five minutes after the action commenced, appearances, at first, were greatly in the enemy's favor. In eight minutes the gaff and mizzen top gallant-mast also fell. But though the fire of the *Wasp* was the most deliberate, it was also the most deadly.

In consequence of the fall of the main-topmast of the American ship, which, with the main-topsail-yard, lodged on the fore and fore-topsail braces, it became next to impossible to haul any of the yards, had circumstances required it, but the battle was continued with great spirit on both sides, until the ships had gradually closed so near that the bends of the *Wasp* rubbed against her antagonist's bows. Here the vessels came foul, the bowsprit of the enemy passing in over the quarter-deck of the *Wasp*, forcing her bows up into the wind, and enabling the latter to throw in a close raking fire.

When Captain Jones perceived the effect of the enemy's fire on his spars and rigging, it was his intention to board, as he had closed with this view; but finding his ship in so favorable a position to rake the enemy, he countermanded an order to that effect, and directed a fresh broadside to be delivered. The vessels were now so near that in loading some of the *Wasp's* guns, the rammers hit against the bows of her antagonist, and the people of the English ship could no longer be kept at their quarter's forward. The discharge of one or two of the carronades swept the enemy's decks, and the impetuosity of the *Wasp's* crew could no longer be restrained; they began to leap into the rig-

ging, and from thence on the bowsprit of the brig. As soon as Lieutenant Biddle, of the *Wasb* found that the crew was eagerly awaiting the command to board, he sprang into the rigging, followed by Lieutenant Rodgers and a party of officers and men. On the forecastle of the brig Lieutenant Biddle passed all his own people, but there was no enemy to oppose him. Two or three officers were standing aft, most of them bleeding. The decks were strewn with killed and wounded, but not a common hand was at his station, all of those that were able having gone below, with the exception of the man at the wheel. The latter remained at his post, with the spirit of a true seaman, to the very last.

The English officers threw down their swords as Lieutenant Biddle and his men passed aft.

The prize was the British sloop of war *Frolic* 18, Captain Whinyates, homeward bound, with the vessels in the Honduras trade under convoy. The *Frolic*, mounted on her main deck, sixteen thirty-two pound carronades, four long guns, differently stated to have been sixes, nines and twelves, and with two twelve-pound carronades on a top-gallant fore-castle. This armament would make a force greater than that of the *Wasb* by four guns. The *Wasb* was cut up aloft to an unusual degree, there having been no question that her antagonist's fire was heavy and spirited. The braces and standing rigging were nearly all shot away, and some of the spars that stood were injured. She had five men killed and five wounded. The hull sustained no great damage.

The *Frolic* was also much injured in her spars and rigging, more particularly in the former; and the two vessels were hardly separated before both her masts fell. She had been hulled at almost every discharge, and was virtually a wreck

when taken possession of by the Americans. Her loss in men was never accurately known, but her captain, lieutenant and master, were wounded; the two latter mortally. Lieutenant Biddle, who remained in charge of the prize, after so gallantly boarding her, stated, that so far as he could ascertain, she had from seventy to eighty killed and wounded. Subsequent information, however, has given reason to believe that the number was even greater. Captain Whinyates, in his official report, states that not twenty of his crew escaped unhurt, which would probably raise the casualties to a number between ninety and a hundred.

The *Frolic* had scarcely submitted, when a sail was seen standing in towards the two vessels, evidently a ship of force. Instructions were given to Lieutenant Biddle to make the best of his way to Charleston with the prize, and the *Wasp* began to make sail, with an intention to continue her cruise; but, on opening her canvas, and turning the reefs out of her topsails, they were found to be nearly in ribands. The stranger, which turned out to be the enemy's ship *Poictiers*, 74, hove a shot over the *Frolic* in passing, and, soon ranging up near the *Wasp*, both vessels were captured. The *Poictiers* proceeded with her two prizes to Bermuda, and the Americans being paroled, soon after returned home.

As this was the first combat of the war between vessels of a force so nearly equal as to render cavilling difficult, the result occasioned much exultation in America.

The success of the *Constitution* and *Hornet*, two of the vessels of Commodore Bainbridge's squadron, served greatly to increase the popularity of the navy. Their commanders were rewarded with medals, swords, and votes of thanks by different legislatures, and Captain Lawrence was promoted, and transferred to the command of the *Chesapeake*.

Cooper's History gives the great story of the *Essex* :

"In the way of service to the public, perhaps the greatest performed by the *Essex* was in protecting the American ships in the Pacific, nearly all of which would probably have fallen into the hands of the enemy, but for her appearance in that ocean. And the positive injury done the English commerce was far from trifling. The *Essex* had now captured about 4000 tons of its shipping, made near 400 prisoners, and for the moment had literally destroyed its fisheries in this part of the world."

The *Essex* and *Essex Junior* quitted the harbor of Nooah-eevah, on the 12th of December, 1813, bound for the coast of South America, which was made early in January. After watering at San Maria, and looking into Conception, the ships proceeded to Valparaiso. Up to this time not a dollar had been drawn for, to meet the expenses of the frigate. The enemy had furnished provisions, sails, cordage, medicines, guns, anchors, cables, etc. A considerable amount of pay even had been given to the officers and men, by means of the money taken.

After the arrival in Valparaiso, it was found that the feelings of the Chilean government had taken an entirely new direction, as had been reported by Mr. Downes, favoring on all occasions the interests of the English, in preference to those of the Americans. Without paying much regard to this circumstance, however, Captain Porter determined to remain in, or off, the port, in waiting for the *Phoebe* 36, Captain Hillyar, one of the ships sent out in quest of him, under the impression that her commander would not fail, sooner or later, to seek him at that place. There was also the prospect of intercepting such of the English traders as might happen to touch at that port.

The *Phoebe* arrived as was expected, but instead of

coming alone, she had the *Cherub* 20, Captain Tucker, in company.

As the *Phæbe* came in, the wind was light, and she passed quite near the *Essex*, with her people at quarters. Captain Hillyar hailed and inquired after the health of Captain Porter. After making the usual reply, the latter informed the English officer that if the vessel got foul, much confusion would ensue, and that he could not be answerable for the consequences. Captain Hillyar now observed that he did not meditate any attack, though the manner in which this was uttered, does not appear to have quieted the suspicions of the American officers. While the two vessels and their crews were in this novel position, the *Phæbe* was taken suddenly aback, and her bows played directly upon the *Essex*. Captain Porter immediately called away his boarders, and for a few minutes there was every appearance of a combat in a neutral port.

The English ships, having obtained some supplies, went outside, and cruised off Valparaiso for six weeks. During this time, the *Essex* made several attempts to engage the *Phæbe* alone, sometimes by bringing her to action with the *Essex Junior* in company, and at others by bringing her to action singly having the crew of the *Essex Junior* on board the frigate. Captain Porter ascertained to his satisfaction, that he could easily outsail either of the enemy's vessels, but his object was not so much to escape, as to capture the *Phæbe*, which he had reason to think he might do, could he bring her to close action without her consort's interference. On the 27th of February, the *Cherub* being nearly a league dead to leeward of her, the *Phæbe* ran close in, hove to off the port, hoisted a motto flag and fired a gun to windward, when the *Essex* immediately weighed and stood out of the harbor, and answered the weather gun of

the enemy. On this occasion, the ships got within gunshot of each other, and when the American frigate opened fire, the *Phæbe* ran down and joined her consort. This conduct excited a good deal of feeling among the officers of the *Essex*, who rightly judged that the challenge should not have been given, if it were not the intention of the enemy to engage singly.

The *Essex* met with an accident in attempting to leave the harbor and finding it impossible to beat up to the common anchorage, in his present condition, in time to avoid the enemy, Captain Porter stood across the entrance of the harbor, to the northeastern side, where he let go an anchor, about three miles from the town, a mile and a-half from the Castello Viego, which, however, was concealed by a bluff, half a mile from a detached battery of one twenty-four pound gun, and within pistol-shot of the shore. Notwithstanding this position, the enemy continued to approach, and it soon became evident, by the motto flags and jacks he set, that it was his serious intention to engage. The *Essex*, in consequence, cleared for action, and attempted to get a spring on her cable, but had not succeeded in effecting this important object, when the *Phæbe*, having obtained an advantageous position, nearly astern, about 4 P. M. opened her fire, at long shot. At the same time, the *Cherub* commenced the action on the starboard bow. The fire of the *Phæbe*, from the double advantage she possessed in her long guns and her station, became very destructive, as scarce a gun from the *Essex* could touch her. The *Cherub*, however, was soon driven off, when she ran down to leeward, and engaged from a position near that taken by the *Phæbe*. Three long twelves were got out aft, and they played with so much effect on the enemy, that at the

end of half an hour, both his ships hauled off from shore to repair damages.

The enemy was not long in making his repairs, and both ships next took position on the starboard quarter of the *Essex*, where it was not in the power of the latter vessel to bring a single gun to bear upon him, as he was too distant to be reached by carronades. His fire was very gallant, and it left no alternative to Captain Porter, between submission, and running down to assail him. He gallantly decided on the latter. But, by this time, the *Essex* had received many serious injuries, in addition to the loss of her topmast. Her topsail sheets and halyards had all been shot away. The only sail that could be got upon the ship to make her head pay off was a flying jib, which was hoisted, when the cable was cut, and the vessel edged away, with the intention of laying the *Phæbe* aboard.

The fore-topsail and foresail were now let fall, though, for want of tacks and sheets they were nearly useless. Still the *Essex* drove down her assailants, closing near enough to open with her carronades. For a few minutes the firing on both sides was tremendous, the people of the *Essex* proving their discipline and gallantry, at that trying moment, in a way to justify all the high expectations that had been formed of them, though their decks were already strewn with killed, and the cockpit was crowded with the wounded. This work proved too hot for the *Cherub*, which hauled off a second time, nor did she come near enough to use her carronades again, during the remainder of the action, keeping up a distant fire with her long guns.

Three entire crews of one of the guns of the *Essex* were swept away, the captain, though wounded, being the only survivor. Captain Porter had a hawser bent to the sheet-anchor which was let go and brought the head of the ship

around, bringing her broadside to bear, and doing execution until the hawser parted. By this time the ship was on fire. Captain Porter summoned his officers. Only one, Acting Lieutenant McKnight, could join him on the quarter-deck. The first lieutenant, Mr. Wilmer, had been knocked overboard by a splinter and drowned, while getting the sheet-anchor from the bow; Acting Lieutenant Cowell, the next in rank, was mortally wounded; Acting Lieutenant Oldenheimer had just been knocked overboard. Seventy-five men, officers included, were all that remained for duty; and the enemy, in perfectly smooth water, was firing his long eighteens at a nearly unresisting ship, with as much precision as he could have discharged them at a target. It had become an imperative duty to strike, and the colors were hauled down.

In this bloody contest the *Essex* had 58 men killed, 66 wounded, making a total of 124. Of the missing there were 31, most of whom were drowned in attempting to swim ashore when the ship was on fire, or by being knocked overboard by the splinters, or pieces of the rigging. The entire loss was 152 out of 255. The Americans lost a ship, but not honor. Admiral Farragut was through the slaughter as a midshipman.

HUMBLING THE BARBARY STATES.

Commodore Decatur had the grateful mission, in 1815, to humble the Dey of Algiers, who made the mistake of supposing the navy of the United States had been destroyed in the war with England.

Decatur sailed with a small squadron in May, 1815. His flagship was the *Guerriere*, 44 guns. When he passed the Strait of Gibraltar he found the Algerine pirate fleet cruising in search of American vessels. On the 17th

of June he met, fought, and captured the flagship of the Algerine admiral (a frigate of forty-four guns), and another pirate ship with six hundred men. With these prizes he sailed for the harbor of Algiers, and demanded of the ruler, (June 28th), the instant surrender of all American prisoners in his hands, full indemnity for all American property destroyed by his forces, and all claims to tribute from the United States thereafter. When the Dey heard of the fate of his fleet, he hastened to comply with Decatur's demands. The commodore summoned him to the deck of the *Guerriere*, with his captives. The Dey appeared with them and some of his officers, on the 30th of June. There he signed a treaty and left the frigate in deep humiliation.

Decatur then sailed for Tunis, and demanded and received from the Bashaw, or ruler of that State, \$46,000 in payment for American vessels, which he had allowed the British to capture in his harbor. This was in July. Then Decatur proceeded to Tripoli, and in August he demanded, from its ruler, \$25,000 for the same kind of injury to property, and the release of prisoners. The Tripolitans' treasury was nearly empty, and the commodore accepted, instead of cash, the release from captivity of eight Danish and two Neapolitan seamen who were held as slaves. This closed Decatur's services at sea.

PERRY'S VICTORY.

Perry's fleet, on Lake Erie, was the brig *Lawrence*, 20 guns, the brig *Niagara*, 20, brig *Caledonia*, 3, schooner *Ariel*, 4, schooner *Scorpion*, 2, and two swivels, sloop *Trippe*, 1, schooner *Tigress*, 1, and schooner *Porcupine*, 1. The British squadron was the ship *Detroit*, 19 guns, one on pivot, and two howitzers, ship *Queen Charlotte*, 17 guns, one howitzer, schooner *Lady Provost*, 13 guns, one how-

itzer, brig *Hunter*, 10 guns, sloop *Little Belt*, 3 guns, schooner *Chippewa*, 1 gun, and two swivels.

On the morning of September 10, at sunrise, the British fleet was seen on the horizon. At ten o'clock the *Lawrence* was cleared for action, and Perry brought out a battle-flag with the dying words of Lawrence, "Don't give up the ship." Perry said: "My brave lads! This flag contains the last words of Captain Lawrence. Shall I hoist it?"

"Ay, ay, sir," they all shouted, and aloft went the flag, greeted with cheers of the whole fleet.

The *Niagara*, Captain Elliott, led the fleet. Barclay's vessels were near together, the *Detroit* (his flag-ship), in the van. At noon a bugle sounded on board the *Detroit* as a signal for action; the British bands struck up "Rule Britannia," and a 24 pound shot was sent over the water from the *Detroit* toward the *Lawrence*. It fell short; but a few minutes afterward another shot, from Barclay's long guns, went crashing through the bulwarks of the *Lawrence*. The latter kept silent. "Steady, boys! Steady," said Perry, who knew the advantage possessed by Barclay with his long guns, and he determined to fight at close quarters. His ship suffered shockingly during the action—the *Niagara* falling behind—the *Lawrence* receiving the fire of nearly all the heavy guns of the enemy. At last she became a wreck and a slaughter-house, without men to handle the guns. Lossing writes:

"The *Niagara* had lagged behind—the swift, staunch, well-manned *Niagara*. She did not come to the relief of the helpless and severely wounded *Lawrence*, but Perry went to her—an exploit at that hour of peril, one of the most gallant on record. He determined to fly to her, and, bearing down with her upon his foe, secure a victory. So certain did he feel of ultimate triumph, and having occasion

to receive guests, that he exchanged his sailor's suit for the uniform of his rank. Leaving the gallant and thrice wounded Yarnall in charge of the *Lawrence*, the colors of which were yet flying, he entered a boat with his little brother and four stout seamen, and standing erect, with the pennant and battle flag half folded around him, he pushed off for the *Niagara*, half a mile distant.

"The hero, now so conspicuous, was made a special mark for the missiles of his antagonists. Barclay knew that if the man who had fought the *Lawrence* so bravely reached the *Niagara*, the British squadron would be in great danger of defeat. For fifteen minutes, during Perry's fearful voyage in the open boat, the great and little guns of the British, by Barclay's order, were brought to bear upon him, but he received no bodily harm from cannon balls, grape shot, canister and musket bullets showered upon him. Oars were splintered, bullets traversed the boat, and his oarsmen were covered with spray caused by the fall of round shot near the boat, but not a person was hurt. Perry sprung on board of the *Niagara*, took the command, bore down upon the British, and broke their line. For awhile the whole American squadron was engaged in the combat.

"Eight minutes after Perry dashed through the British line the colors of the *Detroit* were lowered, and her example was followed at once by all the other British vessels. The battle had lasted three hours. When the smoke cleared away, it was discovered that the vessels of the two squadrons were intermingled. The victory was complete. As soon as it was assured, Perry wrote, in pencil, on the back of an old letter, resting the paper on his navy cap, that remarkable dispatch to General Harrison, the first sentence of which has been so oft repeated :

"We have met the enemy, and they are ours: two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop.

Yours with great respect and esteem,
O. H. PERRY."

"The next movement in the solemn drama was the reception of the British officers, the expected guests of Perry—who delivered to him their swords. Barclay had been severely wounded. All the captives were treated with great courtesy and kindness. The bodies of the slain were buried in the deep waters of the lake, at the twilight hour of that beautiful September day, after the impressive burial service of the Anglican Church had been read.

"This victory proved to be one of the most important events of the war. It saved the western states from invasion by the British and Indians, and opened the way for Harrison to recover what Hull had lost, and more. It lifted the pall of despondency, which reverses to the land troops had spread over the land, and there was great jubilation everywhere. The effect upon the country was electric, and amazingly inspiring."

The 10th of September is as well remembered as the 8th of January, and Perry's victory ranks with New Orleans in the general estimation. During many years it was celebrated by popular festivals—the ringing of bells, the firing of cannon, public addresses and the singing of songs. The 10th of September we shall ever remember.

Although the English had surrendered, two of their boats tried to escape. It was the schooner *Chippewa* and the sloop *Little Belt*, who had taken advantage of the veiling cloud of smoke, in an endeavor to escape back to the Detroit river.

The commander of the *Scorpion*, Stephen Chaplin, and Thomas Holdup, in command of the *Trippe*, noticed this

little trick on the part of the Englishmen, and went in chase, capturing both of them. It thus happened that Chaplin fired the last shot of the battle.

After the British commander had struck his colors, a cheer went up from each of the American ships, the last of all being the battered *Lawrence*, from which came but a feeble response. Perry, who had been preparing to receive the British officers, on hearing this faint appeal from the remnant of the crew of the *Lawrence*, determined to return to her at once. After informing the British officers that they would be received there, he entered a boat, and was conveyed to his former flagship. Those of his crew who were able, gathered to receive him with uncovered heads, in silence, amidst a most touching scene.

The number of dead among the Americans was 27 (of whom 22 were killed on the *Lawrence*); the wounded, 96. The British lost 41 killed and 94 wounded.

CHAPTER XVIII.

WAR WITH THE PIRATES OF THE MEDITERRANEAN.

Our Navy at the Beginning of the Century—The War with the Barbary Pirates—Picturesque and Deadly Fighting at Tripoli—The Glory of Decatur—The Praise of Nelson—Hand to Hand Fighting—Decatur Kills his Brother's Murderers—The Burning of the *Philadelphia* and the Awful Fate of the Fire Ship.

It was in the first year of the century now so old that the Americans proposed in the name of Christian civilization to put an end to the slave trade and piracy on the Mediterranean of the Barbary States, and sent a squadron there. It consisted of the *President*, Captain James Barron; the *Philadelphia*, Captain Samuel Barron; the *Essex*, Captain William Bainbridge, and the twelve-gunned schooner *Enterprise*, under command of Lieutenant Andrew Sterrett. The first fight with the pirates occurred on August 1, 1801. The *Enterprise* attacked the *Tripoli*, of fourteen guns and eighty men. When the battle had raged for two hours at point blank range the *Tripoli's* flag was lowered. Lieutenant Porter put off in a boat to take possession, while the crew of the *Enterprise* turned to repair damages to their rigging, thereat the pirates opened a murderous fire and hoisted the red flag again. After a fierce conflict the Corsairs once more hauled down their flag. Porter was on his way again to take possession when they renewed battle more vigorously than ever.

“Sink the damned, treacherous creatures to the bottom!” said Sterrett. Exasperated by the treachery they had seen, the crew started in to obey the order with a will, and the Corsair captain saw his fate before him. He begged for

quarter, and it was granted to him. The enemy had lost twenty killed and twenty-eight wounded. The *Enterprise* did not lose a man. Congress gave Sterrett a sword and every other member of the crew a month's pay because of the heroic action.

A decided disaster was that of the loss of the frigate *Philadelphia*, on October 31, 1803. She was in charge of Captain William Bainbridge aiding in the blockade of Tripoli. When he saw a Corsair stealing into port under a strong breeze he chased the enemy that hugged the coast. Suddenly the *Philadelphia* struck a reef, the bow rose high from the water, and in the tremendous shock sailors were thrown to the decks. Everything was done to get her from her dangerous position, even to cutting her foremast and throwing overboard many of her guns. The gunboats of the enemy thereupon attacked the grounded frigate. The Americans replied as best they could, but soon the *Philadelphia* keeled over and was helpless. The magazine was flooded and the ship scuttled. Three hundred and fifteen men were forced to surrender to the pirates. Two days later a high tide raised the stern of the *Philadelphia*, the pirates repaired the damage which had been done to her and hauled her off. The Bashaw of Tripoli, with his American prisoners held for ransom, and with the *Philadelphia* added to his fleet, was now a dangerous enemy.

It became absolutely necessary that the *Philadelphia* be recaptured, or, if necessary, destroyed. Lieutenant-commander Charles Stewart, who had recently arrived with the brig *Siren*, of eighteen guns, offered his services to Commodore Preble, although the latter was pledged to intrust the service to Decatur, it was decided that Lieutenant Stewart should be allowed to co-operate. A letter was

received from Captain Bainbridge from his prison in Tripoli, written with lemon juice, legible on being held to the fire, suggesting various plans for annoying the enemy, and among them that of destroying the *Philadelphia* by surprise. The Ketch, *Mastico*, which Decatur had recently captured, offered a suitable vessel for the undertaking. She was taken into the service under the name of the *Intrepid*.

The thrilling story is told by McKenzie. It is to the great credit of the American navy that its ranks are always filled with men ready to volunteer for any hazardous duty, and when Stephen Decatur mustered the men on the quarter deck of the *Enterprise* and briefly told them of the services required of them, it is related that every officer, man and boy came forward in a body. The gallant wish of all could not be gratified. Lieutenant Decatur selected James Lawrence, Joseph Bainbridge and Jonathan Thorne. He also took his surgeon, Lewis Hermann, and his favorite midshipman, Thomas Macdonough. Sixty-two of the best of the crew were chosen, and the whole went gladly to the *Intrepid*. They were joined by Midshipman Ralph Izard, John Rowe, Alexander Laws, Charles Morris and John Davis. A Sicilian pilot, Salvadoro Catalano, well acquainted with the harbor of Tripoli, was chosen. To make the exact number of the crew ordered by his superior, Decatur added to his men Midshipman Thomas O. Anderson. Full of hope of distinction and patriotic excitement, this little band of adventurers set sail in company with the *Siren*.

After a pleasant passage the two vessels arrived in sight of Tripoli on the seventeenth of February, when one of the heavy gales common to the neighborhood forced the vessels to stand out to sea. For six days they were almost at the mercy of the wind and waves, with scant food, but



THE BATTLESHIP "KEARSARGE."
—SISTER SHIP TO THE "KENTUCKY."—

with brave hearts. In order to form a just estimate of the hazard of Decatur's proposed attack it should be stated that the *Philadelphia* had forty guns mounted, all double shotted and ready for firing. She was moored within half gun-shot of the Bashaw's castle and the other batteries of the local fortifications. Three Tripolitan cruisers, mounting together twenty-six guns, two galleys and nineteen gun-boats, lay between her and the shore. It had been the intention to make the attack together with the *Siren*, but as Decatur got nearer the harbor he did not dare to trust to the uncertain weather, and decided to make the attack with the *Intrepid* alone. He assigned each of his men to a special service, and addressed to them a last word of appeal in behalf of their country, their brother officers and seamen in captivity.

He then steered boldly towards the *Philadelphia*, aided by the faint illumination of a crescent moon, and when the wind had become very light and the progress of the *Intrepid* was scarcely perceptible she stole slowly onward towards her big foe. The *Intrepid* got within twenty yards of the *Philadelphia* when she was spied and ordered to keep off. The pilot, Catalano, previously instructed by Decatur, cried out that he had lost his anchors in the late gale and asked that he might be permitted to run a warp to the frigate and ride by her until anchors could be obtained from the shore. The pirates soon spied the *Siren* which was just coming in, but Catalano with great tact informed them that she was the *Transfer*, a former British man of war which had been purchased at Malta to serve Tripoli.

During this talk one of the *Intrepid's* boats shoved off and pulled to the forechains of the *Philadelphia*, where she made fast. The pirates suddenly raised the cry of "Ameri-

canos." Decatur sprang at the main chains of the *Philadelphia*, calling out to his men "Board."

He clamored over the rail and reached the enemies' deck, being preceded a bit by Midshipman Charles Morris, and followed by Midshipman Laws, and quickly in succession over the ports and rail followed the other officers and the crew. Decatur drew his men up and then rushed sword in hand upon the Tripolitans.—[Alexander S. McKenzie, pages sixty-four to seventy-five].

It was impossible to ascertain the number slain, but it was estimated as being between twenty and thirty. The enemy beaten escaped in boats to the shore.

S. Putnam Waldo in his account says Decatur found himself in complete possession of the *Philadelphia*, and in command upon the same deck which his gallant father had commanded before him. There was no chance of saving the ship, for there was no wind. The Bashaw's troops had commenced a tremendous fire from their batteries and the castle, and the gun-boats and Corsairs were also pouring their fire into the *Philadelphia*. Decatur set fire to the ship. A favorable breeze rose at this moment which blew the *Intrepid*, with its gallant crew, directly out of the reach of the enemy's cannon, and enabled Decatur and his men to behold at a safe distance the burning *Philadelphia*. As the flames heated the loaded cannon in the frigate they were discharged, those pointing into the city of Tripoli doing great damage. Spears states the thrilling story in these terms: "With poles and oars the Americans strove to get away, the flames on the *Philadelphia* reached her tarred rigging at the rail, running thence to the masthead they made such giant torches as to illuminate the whole boat and expose the fleeing party as if in the light of day. All eyes were for a moment dazzled with the blazing light,

and then came a shock and roar that made the earth and sea shudder. The fire had reached the magazine and the *Philadelphia* was blown to atoms.

The waves from the explosion came out to rock the triumphant Americans in their little boat, rapidly reaching their shipmates and safety. Not an American was slain in this desperate business and but four were wounded. At the time of Decatur's first, and in the estimation of some, this his greatest achievement there was no intermediate grade between a First-lieutenant and that of Post-captain, to which he was promoted for the destruction of the *Philadelphia*, and it is recounted that his brother officers, who were his seniors, voluntarily consented that he should be promoted over them, a high tribute not only to Decatur, but to the magnanimity and patriotism of American officers. Lord Nelson has said of this feat of Decatur's that it was "the most bold and daring act of the age."

After the destruction of the *Philadelphia* war against the Tripolitans was carried on with increased vigor. On the afternoon of August 3, 1804, six gunboats and two divisions were sent in to take the enemies' boat. The master commandant, Richard Somers, led one division, and Captain Stephen Decatur the other. Of the six gunboats but three succeeded in getting at the enemy. One of these carried Stephen Decatur, and another his brother James Decatur. The Tripolitan fleet numbered nine gunboats, fully as well manned and armed as any of the American, but the Yankees dashed at the head of the fleet with hearty cheers. Stephen Decatur's boat was the first to open fire. Its long gun had been loaded with a thousand musket balls in a bag, and was fired at close range. A moment later she was beside the enemy and Decatur led the way to her quarter deck. It was a bloody but a brief fight, and the Americans won.

The Tripolitan captain was found dead with fourteen bullets from the great gun through him.

Meantime James Decatur had attacked another of the enemy, and her commander seeing the power of the Americans hauled down his flag after the first fire had been received. He then waited the coming of Lieutenant James Decatur—waited with a loaded pistol in his hand. As Decatur stood at the rail ready to board and take possession, the Tripolitan shot him dead, the bullet passing through his head. Stephen Decatur heard of his brother's murder. He was towing the captured gunboat, but cast her off and seconded by his crew went after the assassin. A round of grape shot and musketry was poured into the fleeing barbarians, and then Decatur led the assault, and himself selected the captain for his own victim.

The Tripolitan was a more powerful man than the American. Decatur lunged at him with a boarding pike. The Mussulman parried the blow, caught the weapon and wrenching it away lunged at Decatur. Decatur had drawn his sword and with this parried the thrust, but his sword broke short at the hilt. The Tripolitan lunged again, and Decatur was wounded in the chest and arm. A moment later the two were clasped in a struggle for life. At this moment another Mussulman aimed a blow at Decatur's head. Reuben James, a sailor with both arms disabled, leaped in, and with his own head got the blow aimed at Decatur. As it happened each of the leaders had fallen with one arm free, the others pinned down by the men on top. The Tripolitan drew a long knife, Decatur a pocket pistol, and for a moment each felt the others ribs to locate the heart, but Decatur was first by a fraction of a second, and his pistol ball did faithful work, killing the Mussulman instantly.

It is comforting to know that the brave Reuben James recovered from the wounds he had received and lived to serve the Nation more than forty years. It was his boast that he was in ten fights and as many scrimmages, and it was his custom to celebrate the anniversary of each with enthusiasm. A jolly old tar was Reuben James.

Equally brave were the men on the third American gun-boat commanded by Sailing Master John Trippe and Midshipman John D. Henley. Two officers and nine men had boarded the Tripolitan, when the two boats became separated, leaving these eleven men to face the whole barbarian crew, which they charged with pikes and swords. Trippe and Henley singled out the Captain, knowing that victory was assured if they could cut him down, but he was a magnificent specimen of humanity, and fighting with the energy born of fanaticism he wounded Trippe no more than eleven times, and at last Trippe went down with one knee on the deck, but while in this position he caught the Tripolitan with breast unguarded, and thrust him through with a pike, and thus ended one of the most remarkable fights recorded in the annals of the navy, for Trippe and his ten men killed fourteen of the Tripolitans and made the remaining twenty-two prisoners. There were but seven of the enemy wounded, for the Americans had fought to kill, besides Trippe, a boatswain, mate and two marines were wounded, but none killed on the American side.

Meantime Master Commandant Somers, being unable to follow Decatur, faced singly five of the enemies' boats. The other American gun-boats, which had not been able to get to the fight at first, now came in and the enemy was driven off. The *Constitution*, the flag ship, and the smaller vessels of the American fleet sailed close under the enemies' batteries, silencing them over and over again,

and bombarded the city. That the batteries were not permanently silenced was due to the fact that the Tripolitans had twenty-five thousand soldiers within, and these remanned the guns of each battery as soon as the American ships ceased firing at it.

While one of the American gun-boats was firing on a shore battery a hot shot penetrated her magazine, and she was blown up; Midshipman T. Spence and the gun's crew were loading the big gun on the bow. As the smoke cleared away spectators saw the midshipman and his men still at work loading the gun, and not only did they complete their work as the boat sank under them, but they gave three cheers for the flag, and then fired their last shot at the enemy. Spence was not able to swim, but got hold of a big oar and kept afloat with eleven others until picked up.

Preble, desirous of annoying the enemy by all means, decided to send a fire-ship among its shipping, and his decision resulted in the loss of a number of brave men and gave them everlasting glory. The Ketch *Intrepid* which had served so well in the attack upon the captured *Philadelphia*, was selected for the sacrifice. One hundred and fifty barrels of powder, one hundred fixed shells and a lot of old iron were placed in a bin amidship, and from this a train led to a room well aft where a huge mass of combustibles were placed. It was intended to run the boat in among the shipping start the fuses, and for her officers and men then to escape in two swift row-boats. Master-commandant Somers was chosen to command, with Midshipman Wadsworth and ten seamen; in addition to these was a stowaway, Midshipman Joseph Israel. He had pleaded in vain for permission to go, and so hid on board. He was discovered and then allowed to go. Somers before starting took off a ring he wore, and breaking it into three pieces gave one

to Decatur, another to Stewart, his two most intimate friends. He kept the third himself. The two pieces given away were to be preserved as mementoes, if he failed to return. The *Intrepid* slipped away, and was on the outer edge of the shipping when it was discovered by the enemy. In the rigging of the *Nautilus*, a midshipman was able with the aid of a powerful glass to follow the *Intrepid* up the channel. He saw her glide as a shadow between the gun-boats there. At this moment the signal gun announced her discovery. It was followed by the rapid firing of every cannon on that side of the harbor. Immediately there was a commotion, and the light of a lantern in the hands of one running was seen passing along the deck of the *Intrepid*. This light passed over the midship hatch to drop out of sight an instant later, and then a hell of flame burst up in the sky where the light had disappeared.

When morning came it was seen that one of the enemies gun-boats was missing and the Tripolitans were hauling three others badly shattered out on the beach. The *Intrepid* and all who sailed in her had been blown to pieces. Richard Somer, finding that he was discovered and the crew of a Tripolitan gun-boat coming on board had deliberately fired the mine and destroyed himself with the enemy.

Other attacks on the city followed. Congress gave Preble a gold medal, each of his officers and midshipmen a sword, and all others of the crew a month's pay. The force was increased, and the Bashaw becoming alarmed eventually offered to deliver up all prisoners for a ransom of \$60,000 and agree never again to trouble American commerce. This offer was accepted and peace followed.

CHAPTER XIX.

OUR RELATIONS WITH CHINA.

Our Policy in Relation to China and Our Opposition to the Second Opium War—The Confidence of China in the United States—The Protection Offered China by the United States, through Her Representatives—The Fall of China Principally Due to Her Opposition to Christian Civilization—The Fame of "Chinese Gordon" the Work of an American—China's Recognition of the Services of Our Countrymen.

THERE is an instructive sketch by Wm. E. Curtis, Esq., in "The United States and Foreign Powers," referring to the year 1857, when Mr. W. B. Reed was appointed Envoy and Minister there :

"The British and French were united in their demands upon China, and desired the assistance of the United States in armed co-operation. This, however, was refused. Our policy was to gain everything necessary by peaceful and friendly overtures alone, a course also most consistently followed by the Russian minister, Count Pontiatine. Mr. Reed was particularly instructed to say to the Chinese that we were not parties to the existing hostilities—the second opium war, as it may justly be termed, having begun—but our people desired only to engage in trade under suitable guarantees for their protection, and that the United States Government did not wish to legalize the opium trade, in violation of the laws of China.

"The correspondence between the Chinese Commissioner Yeh, at Canton, and Mr. Reed, is curiously illustrative of the skill and elegance of composition so typical of a learned Chinese diplomat. Mr. Reed says that citizens of the United States 'have suffered many wrongs from the

rulers and people of China.' Yeh says: 'But allow me to observe that since the merchants and citizens of the United States have come to China to trade, they have ever been treated with courtesy and kindness, and therefore can have no wrongs to redress.' When Mr. Reed expressed his regret that the Commissioner was unable to meet him for a personal interview, the Commissioner replied: 'From this it is plainly to be perceived that your excellency well understands the position of things, and the heartfelt regrets which you express have greatly tranquillized my feelings'—which means that a personal interview is not necessary, and, indeed, it was not accorded. In fact, the tranquil and extremely arrogant Yeh could not be made to acknowledge that there was anything wrong or inoperative about the old treaty. 'Our two countries,' he said, 'are like two good friends,' and since making the treaty 'are still in every respect on the best of terms.'

"The scene of action now changes. Finding satisfactory negotiations at Canton impossible, Mr. Reed determined to proceed to Peking. The British and French fleets were about to sail for the mouth of the Peiho, there to demand satisfaction for their wrongs, if necessary, by an armed demonstration at Peking. Mr. Reed accompanied them, and was an observer of all that took place at Taku, but not a participant in any of the warlike operations. All his influence was exerted to prevent hostilities, but in vain. The allies captured the Taku forts and sailed up the tortuous channel to Tientsin, where new treaties were drawn up by all the Powers represented, and duly signed. It was agreed that ratifications should be exchanged the next year.

"The treaty negotiated by Mr. Reed, signed June 18, 1858, gave the United States the right of direct corres-

pondence with the Privy Council at the capital. Under certain limitations the United States minister was to be allowed to visit Peking annually, but permanent residence was not granted. The ports Niuchwang, Tangchow (Chefoo), Swatow, Taiwan, Tamsui, and Kiungchow were opened to the foreign trade at this time.

“When this treaty was signed, and for several years before and afterwards, the country was in the midst of a disastrous civil war, which threatened the dynasty with extinction and the restoration of the Mings. This was the famous Taiping insurrection. The Emperor, Tao Kuang, died on the 26th of February, 1850. ‘At the hour *mao* in the morning his celestial majesty transmitted the imperial dignity to his fourth son, and in the evening at the hour of *hai*, he set off for the abode of the gods.’ The new Emperor was a young man of nineteen, who assumed the title of Hienfung. One of his first acts was to dismiss and degrade two of the best and highest officers in the court, and appoint in their stead, persons most fanatically opposed to the foreign barbarians, as the Europeans were designated.

“There was an old prophecy in China that about this time, 1851, the former dynasty of the Mings would be re-established. This gave a sort of prophetic promise of victory to the rebellion, which just then broke out in Kiansi and soon assumed such threatening proportions as seriously to endanger the government. It was originally a religious movement, inspired without any doubt by the teachings of the Christian missionaries, although by no means conducted in the interest, or with any clear conception, of the Christian religion. In 1852 the pretender occupied a throne at Nankin and issued edicts dated ‘the first year of Taiping of the dynasty of the late Mings.’

“This great rebellion, which for ten long years desolated the country, was finally suppressed with foreign aid. The British general, Gordon, has won all the fame and laurels for the result, but the true victor was the one who organized and led the Ever Victorious Army. We read of him in English books as ‘an American adventurer named Ward.’ He may have been an adventurer, and he certainly was an American named Frederick Ward; but he fell at the head of his men in 1862, at a time when General Gordon had only to reap the honors for the completion of a work already nearly done. Whatever may be said on the other side as to the relative merits of the two men, the one a mere ‘adventurer,’ if you like, the other an officer in the British army, one fact remains to testify how the Chinese recognized the services of our countryman. Only two foreigners have ever been awarded posthumous honors by the emperor of China. One of these is Frederick Ward and the other, Anson Burlingame.

“It soon became obvious that the commissioners were determined to delay the exchange of ratifications beyond the date appointed, and also that they designed to prevent the foreign envoys from reaching Peking. The latter decided to lose no more time, so they left Shanghai, and in a few days were again at anchor in the Gulf of Pechili. Greatly to their surprise they found the entrance to the Peiho closed by barricades, and the forts at Taku repaired and strengthened. The indications were that the approach of the foreigners to Peking would be met with resistance. The British admiral demanded the removal of the obstructions, adding, that if not removed by the morning of the 25th of July, he would order them blown up. Mr. Ward, however, determined to make an attempt to reach Peking in advance. Accordingly, he crossed the bar early on

the following day, in a small steamer, but when about half a mile from the forts the steamer grounded, and he had to remain there until the evening tide enabled him to return to the Powhatan. About midnight the British began removing the barriers, and the forts opened fire on the ships. The next day the battle began in earnest, and the British suffered an ignominious defeat. This broke off all negotiations on the part of the English and French, who forthwith returned to Shanghai.

“Mr. Ward, however, opened correspondence with the governor of Chihli and expressed his desire to visit Peking in accordance with the provisions of the treaty. In reply the governor stated that he would be conducted to Peking from Pehtang, a port a few miles north of Taku; and that carts, horses and coolies would be provided for the journey by the provincial treasury. Accordingly Mr. Ward and his suite went to Peking, but subjected to annoying restrictions.

“The next year the British and French returned to the Peiho with a powerful fleet and army. They again captured the forts at Taku, and marched to Peking. Their treaties were ratified in the Hall of Ceremonies, and the British embassy was then established in the city.”

It has always been the policy of the United States to treat with the Asiatic Nations diplomatically, and not by force of arms. There is only one instance in history where our guns were turned against China, and that was through no fault of the home government. It was Josiah Tattnell, flag-officer of the Asiatic station, who was born in Bonaventure near Savannah, Georgia, and was educated in England under the supervision of his grandfather in 1805-11. On returning to the United States in 1811, he entered the navy as a midshipman, and on the 15th of October, 1857, was appointed flag-officer of the Asiatic station.

He found China at war with the allied English and French fleets, and went to the scene of operations at Peiho. Shortly before the engagement his flag-ship grounded and was towed off by the English boats. This service was taken as an excuse for subsequent active participation in the attack on the Chinese. In explanation of his violation of neutrality, Tattnell exclaimed that "blood was thicker than water." He was sustained in his course by public opinion at the time, and also by the government. On February 2nd, 1861, he resigned his commission as captain in the navy, and offered his services to the governor of Georgia. He was commissioned senior flag-officer of the Georgia navy February 28th, 1861, and in March, 1861, he became a captain in the Confederate navy, and was ordered to command the naval defences of Georgia and South Carolina. On November 7th, 1861, he led an improvised naval force against the attack on Port Royal. He conducted attacks on the blockading fleet at the mouth of the Savannah, constructed batteries for the defence of that river, and materially delayed the operations of the national forces. In March, 1862, he was ordered to relieve Franklin Buchanan, who was wounded in the engagement with the "Monitor," and took command of the "Merrimac" and the naval defences of the waters of Virginia.

CHAPTER XX.

THE BEGINNING OF SPANISH DECADENCE.

Disturbances in Spain Offer South Americans Opportunities for Freedom—Loyalty to Spain Required by Tyranny and Massacre—Feeling Against the Bonapartes in Colombia—The Usual Pompous Proclamations—Spaniards Sent to Fill all Places and the People Robbed—The Same Misgovernment that has Brought Cuba to Woe—How the South American Republics were Almost a Confederacy in the Revolutionary Period—The Native Americans Opposing the Spaniards—The Same Grievances Existed from Paraguay and Chili to Venezuela—The Character and Career of Simon Bolivar.

THE Revolution and war in Colombia was more important than in any other part of South America, for there the war commenced, the struggle was more protracted and severe, and here, too, Spain made her greatest exertions, and the success of the revolution in Colombia, in no small degree, has been the means of the ultimate triumph of Liberty's cause through the Spanish American dominions.

We shall therefore, in noticing the causes of events which led to the revolution, have to consider many, whose influence was general on all parts of the Spanish dominions in America, as well as on those now constituting the Colombian Republic.

The first causes of the civil commotions in America are to be sought for in the disturbances which occurred in Spain. These disturbances, the offspring of the ambitious views of Napoleon Bonaparte, although without his intention, prepared the way for the revolution in South America, and in this view have been productive of important benefits

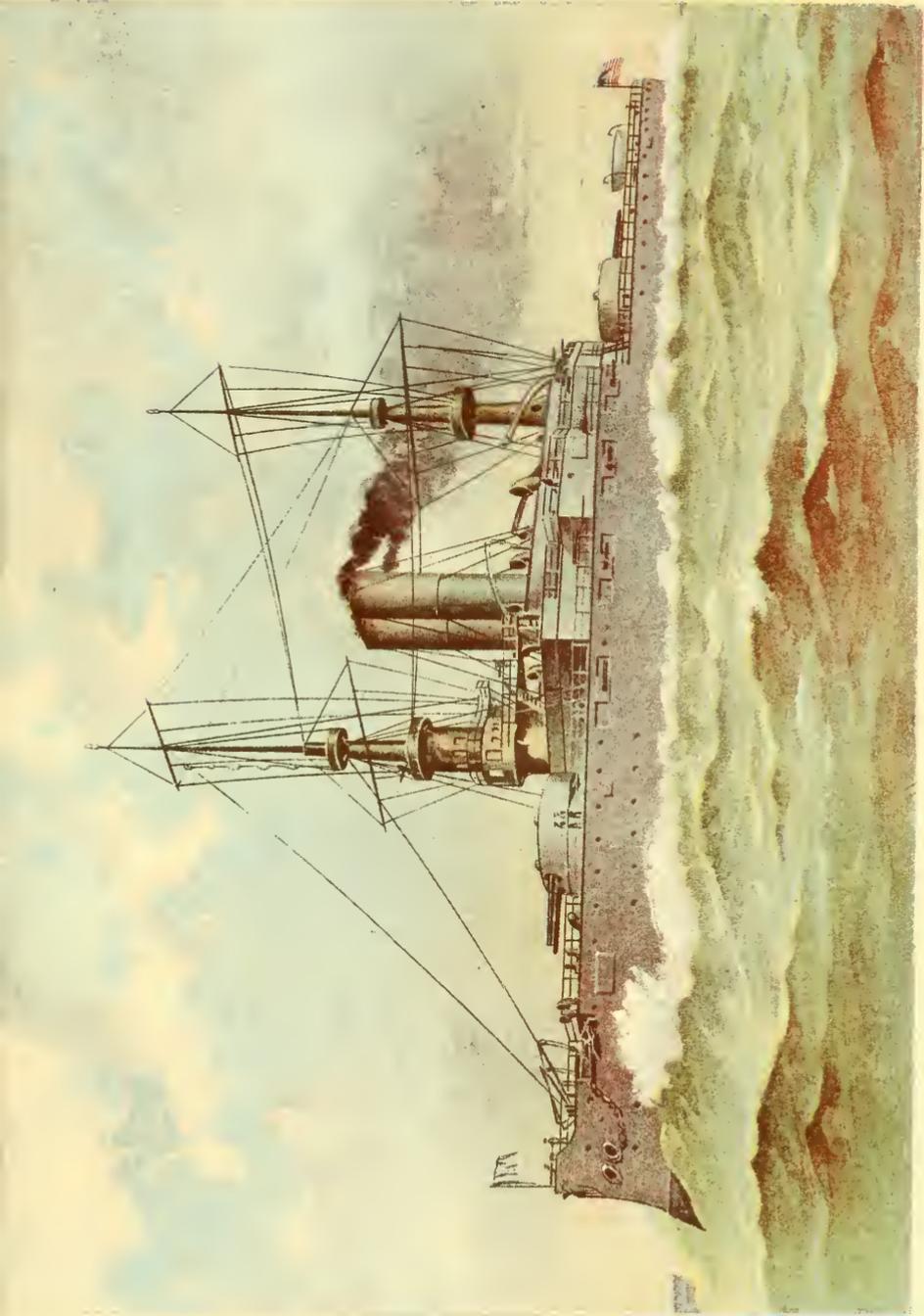
to the inhabitants of that country, and to the world. His proceedings at Bayonne, in compelling Ferdinand to abdicate the throne of Spain in favor of Joseph Bonaparte, and the evident designs of Napoleon, threw Spain into confusion. The loyalty, and spirit of the nation was roused, and the people refused to submit to a monarch imposed on them by treachery, and supported by foreign bayonets. In the provinces not occupied by the French, *juntas* were established, which assumed the government of their districts; and that at Seville styling itself the supreme junta of Spain and the Indies, dispatched deputies to the different governments in America, requiring an acknowledgment of its authority; to obtain which, it was represented that the junta was acknowledged and obeyed throughout Spain. At the same time, the regency created at Madrid by Ferdinand, when he left his capital, and the junta at Asturias, each claimed superiority, and endeavored to direct the affairs of the nation.

Napoleon, on his part, was not less attentive to America; agents were sent in the name of Joseph, king of Spain, to communicate to the colonies the abdication of Ferdinand, and his own accession to the vacant throne, and to procure the recognition of his authority by the Americans. Thus the obedience of the colonies was demanded by no less than four tribunals, each claiming to possess supreme authority at home. There could scarcely have occurred a conjuncture more favorable for the colonists to throw off their dependence on Spain, being convulsed as she was by a civil war, the king a prisoner, the monarchy subverted, and the people unable to agree among themselves where the supreme authority was vested, or which of the pretenders to it were to be obeyed. The power of the parent state over its colonies was *de facto* at an end; in conse-

quence of which, they were, in a measure, required to "provide new guards for their security." But so totally unprepared were the colonists for a political revolution, that instead of these events being regarded as auspicious to their prosperity, they only served to prove the strength of their loyalty and attachment to Spain. Notwithstanding that the viceroys and captain-generals, excepting the viceroy of New Spain, manifested a readiness to acquiesce in the cessions of Bayonne, to yield to the new order of things, and to sacrifice their king, provided they could retain their places, in which they were confirmed by the new king, the news of the occurrences in Spain filled the people with indignation; they publicly burnt the proclamations sent out by King Joseph, expelled his agents, and such was their rage, that all Frenchmen in the colonies became the subject of insult and execration.

As the disorders in the peninsula continued, and no sovereign power existed there which the colonies could respect, a number of the most distinguished inhabitants of Caraccas presented a petition to Cacas, the captain-general, recommending the establishment of a junta, similar to those in Spain.

These sentiments led to the establishment of a junta in the province of Quito, in August, 1809; and the Marquis Selva Alegre was chosen its president. A similar junta had previously been created in La Paz, the capital of one of the districts under the dominion of the audience of Charcas, and was suppressed by the military force of the viceroy of Buenos Ayres. The viceroy of New Granada, Don Amar, determined to destroy the junta formed at Quito; but desirous of exhibiting an appearance of acting in conformity to the will of the people, he convened the principal inhabitants of Santa Fe de Bogota, for the pur-



THE BATTLESHIP "ALABAMA,"
SISTER SHIP TO THE "WISCONSIN" AND "ILLINOIS."

pose of consulting them on the subject; believing that they would not have independence sufficient to oppose his will. In this, however, he was disappointed; the assembly not only approved of the proceedings at Quito, but declared that a similar body ought to be formed in Santa Fe, for the security of the country, in case Spain should finally be conquered by the French.

When the assembly again met, they were surprised to see that the guards of the palace were doubled, and that great military preparations had been made, as if an enemy was approaching the city. But even this seasonable display of military force did not have the effect of overawing the assembly; its debates were bold and spirited. The viceroy took immediate steps to suppress the popular junta at Quito by an armed force; and the viceroy of Peru having dispatched troops for the same object, the junta was obliged to yield to a power which it had no means of resisting. And although an assurance was given by the president of the *audiencia* of Quito, that no one should, in any way, suffer on account of what had taken place, yet in violation of this plighted faith, a large number of those who had belonged to, or supported the popular government, were arrested and imprisoned; and on the 2d of August, the following year, they were all massacred in prison, under pretense of revolt. The troops stationed in the city, after massacring the prisoners, were suffered to plunder the inhabitants; the scene of rapine and carnage was shocking, and involved the property of thousands, and the lives of more than three hundred persons, murdered in cold blood. The anniversary of the fate of these early victims to the liberation and independence of Colombia, was commemorated by order of the junta of Caraccas, in 1810, in a solemn manner, with appropriate funeral honors.

These tyrannical and sanguinary measures, producing great excitement throughout the colonies, tended to weaken the attachment that was felt towards the parent country. Few individuals, however, even thought of independence; on the contrary, all were anxious for a re-establishment of the government of Spain, and a reformation in the colonies. The intelligence of the disturbance in America, and the violent measures pursued by the colonial chiefs, alarmed the central junta of old Spain, and with a view to conciliate the wounded feelings of the Americans, they issued a pompous declaration, in which they asserted that "the colonies were equal to the mother country." But this was entirely deceptive; no reformation of the system, no correction of abuses, was attempted; and, notwithstanding the disturbances which the violence of the governors had occasioned, Spaniards were sent to America to fill all places, and to occupy all public employment, as had been done for ages past; while the colonies were still drained of money to supply the pressing wants of Spain, engaged in a struggle with the gigantic power of France.

Nothing could exceed the astonishment of the Americans, when, at the very time they were expecting to hear of the final triumph of the patriots in Spain, and the restoration of Ferdinand VII., they learned that the French were masters of Madrid, and that the central junta had been driven to Andalusia. But their confidence in the courage of the people of Spain remained unshaken; and instead of being discouraged by these disasters, they only served to awaken the zeal of the Americans in the cause of the mother country, which they still regarded as their own. Hence, not only the regular remittances were made, but large sums were raised by subscriptions from every class of the population.

There was the same situation after the American and French revolutions, and the fall of Spain for a time into the hands of Napoleon, in all the countries of Spanish America—the same confusion as to rulers—the same clinging to the Spanish dynasties—the same doubts as to the authority of the juntas—the same bitterness of the natives of Spain in contesting the aspirations for equal rights with them by the natives of America—the same cruelties, and through all the wars, characteristic combats. It was within the consciousness of the people of Central and South America that they had far greater wrongs to redress than those in North America which ceased to be the colonies of Great Britain and became the United States. In the long wars and the many contentions as to forms of government, there was developed neither a Washington nor a Napoleon, though many able men appeared in affairs, military and civil. The one name that stands first in the world's consideration, of the patriots of South America, is Simon Bolivar, and his history cannot be written without including largely that of several countries. Mr. Holstein's "Memoirs of Bolivar" open with these just observations:

"To trace with justice and impartiality the history of powerful men who have not yet finished their career, is by no means an easy task. Burke says 'that death canonizes a great character.' In the political and military life of General Bolivar, many traits, however, have already appeared, which give a correct knowledge of the character and talents of the Liberator.

"The most extravagant and contradictory opinions have, at different times, been given of General Bolivar. Some say, 'He is a great—an extraordinary man; a man of transcendent knowledge and talents; the hero of South America; the benefactor of his country; its Washington;

its Napoleon.' Others assure us 'He is the Cromwell, the tyrant, the oppressor of his country.' Truth is rarely to be found in any extreme.

"That such various opinions should have been received of this man, is not at all surprising, when we consider that the majority of mankind are inclined to admire splendor, power and success; and the more so, when the object of their attention is beyond their own sphere; moreover, they blame or approve, according to their own interest or feelings. Rarely is their opinion formed from the evidence of truth, or with the spirit of impartiality. But the professed defender of freedom and the rights of man, naturally attract our attention more and more intensely by every successful event."

The actions of General Bolivar have been considered as being in accordance with the wishes of all liberal and enlightened men; nay, with those of every oppressed and enslaved being. His smallest successes have given general satisfaction, and every eye has been fixed upon him and his proceedings. But without any exact and positive knowledge of facts, each individual has formed his own idea of General Bolivar, in conformity with his own wishes, and with his confused and incorrect notions of events on the main. Public opinion was soon captivated to such a degree that whatever accurately informed and impartial men could say against the Liberator was disregarded, and treated as mere calumny, or coming from the agents of the Holy Alliance, from enemies of the cause of freedom, or from rash adventurers. The majority of the public have been prevented from judging for themselves, and have continued to contemplate General Bolivar as the hero, the father, the liberator of South America.

Various causes, in the commencement of General Bolivar's

career, contribute to form these opinions : First. The great difficulty of procuring exact information, because every one possessing it, had his own opinions, his own views, his own interests, while corresponding with his friends ; others concealed the real state of facts, or circumstances which might enlighten, fearing their letters might be intercepted or miscarry, or that their names might be mentioned by their friends, and so their interest be affected.

Secondly. The bulletins and proclamations of the rulers in Colombia, on many occasions, have been very extravagant and partial, as is generally the case with documents of this description, in every army throughout the world. These bulletins and proclamations have been faithfully translated without comment, without any of the particulars which would give a correct idea of the events, and have naturally inspired gigantic notions of the power of *armies* in Colombia ; and of the heroic bravery and deep military skill of the leaders of these armies. Besides, the Spanish language is distinguished from all others by its pompous phrases, which give it an agreeable and high-sounding expression. The effect of the language, too, is enhanced by the Caraguin character, which is generally vain and boasting. And so it has happened that a skirmish, in which, in fact, only a few men were killed or wounded, was given out as a regular and bloody battle.

Thirdly. We are in absolute want of a good, detailed and exact history of the events of the revolution, and of the contending parties from 1810 to the present time. It is a fact, that the people of the United States know little or nothing with certainty of what has passed, and is still passing in Colombia. Our gazettes give some accounts, but they are few and exceedingly imperfect.

The imperfect and erroneous statements which have been

published, and the exaggerated proclamations and bulletins have chiefly influenced public opinion; the *habit*, too, of thinking General Bolivar a great and extraordinary man, a hero, has been growing since 1813, and has increased to such a degree that it will be a difficult task to convince men of the exaggeration of their ideas, and the extravagance of their notions respecting him.

So far as I am concerned, I can declare, that I have neither desire nor interest to flatter or calumniate General Bolivar. I vouch for the correctness of all the facts contained in these memoirs, well knowing that this work will obtain only that degree of credit with the public which it may appear to merit by its accuracy and candor.

Simon Bolivar was born in the city of Caraccas, July 24, 1783, and is the second son of Don Juan Vicente Bolivar y Ponte, a military colonel in the plains of Aragua, and Dona Maria Conception Palacios y Sojo; and both were natives of Caraccas, and were Mantuanas. The first died in 1786, the latter in 1789.

Young Bolivar was sent to Spain at the age of fourteen, in compliance with the custom of the wealthy Americans of those times, who usually spent in one year in Europe, the amount of several years' income at home; seeking office and military decorations, that were often put up to the highest bidder, under the administration of Manuel Godoy, Prince of the Peace. The young Americans were likewise accustomed to go to Spain to complete their education, and to pursue their studies in the profession of law, physic, or theology; for, according to the laws of the time, no American was admitted to the bar, and allowed to practice in his profession in the universities of old Spain, nor could he exercise his profession at home without a diploma from a university in Spain. Without the same qualification, too, no

American could, at least in New Granada, have the honor of being a Capuchin Friar! But, as the object of young Simon was to see the world, and not in any manner to study seriously, he paid little attention to any object other than that of pleasure, and of satisfying his desire to witness the different scenes of life. He, however, devoted some time to the study of jurisprudence.

He was at this period lieutenant in the corps of militia in the plains of Aragua, of which his father had been commander. He had an elder brother, who died in 1815, and two sisters who enjoyed an annual income of from \$40,000 to \$50,000, the produce of several considerable estates, and particularly of an extensive *Hato*, on which were raised large herds of cattle. These estates were at no great distance from the city of Caraccas, and at one or another of them Bolivar and his family usually resided. San Mateo was, however, the place he always preferred. It was the largest of his possessions, where between 1,000 and 1,500 slaves were regularly kept before the revolution. His residence in the valley of Aragua, not far from the lake of Valencia, was beautiful and striking. The famous Boves destroyed it in 1814.

From Spain Bolivar passed into France, and resided at Paris, where he remained a number of years enjoying, at an early period, all the pleasures of life, which a rich young man, with bad examples constantly before him, can there easily find. I have remarked that whenever Bolivar spoke to me of the Palais Royal, he could not restrain himself from boasting of its delights. It was on such occasions that all his soul was electrified; his physiognomy became animated, and he spoke and gesticulated with such ardor as showed how fond he was of that enchanting abode so dangerous to youth.

In the year 1823 Mr. Ackermann published in London a very interesting monthly periodical in the Spanish language, under the title of "El Mensagero." It was entirely devoted to the affairs of the new Spanish republics. It contains, among other articles, a *biographical sketch of General Bolivar*, in which the author asserts that the young Bolivar, during his residence in Paris, gave himself up to all the possible amusements of young men of his age: "Still," said the author, "he was assiduous to obtain the dear object he has always had in view, as the accomplishment of all his wishes, and his ambition, namely, *that of making with eagerness all possible acquaintances which might have been useful to him for the emancipation of his country.*"

There is a freedom of personal disparagement in these Memoirs that gives great force to the compliment that defines his public ambition. He had many military vicissitudes. He was not an extreme partisan, and that was great gain to him, but he did not escape calumny, as one who was sanguinary and merciless. The nature of the warfare as conducted appears in the Spanish treatment of Col. Bricenno, who was defeated and taken prisoner with seven of his officers, and the governor of Barinas, Don Francisco Tiscar, ordered them to be shot. Eight of the most respectable inhabitants of Barinas, being suspected of having assisted Colonel Bricenno in his organization, were also shot! From that time the war became much more bloody and murderous. Not only was every prisoner shot, but various Spanish chieftains extended this system to the peaceable inhabitants.

The reason the governor (Tiscar) gave, for ordering the death of Bricenno and his officers was, their having been the principal instigators and signers of the proclamation of January 16, 1813, in which they declared they would put

to death all Spaniards and Islenos (inhabitants of the Canary Islands) that might be taken prisoners.

Of that sanguinary document, the following are the true causes: "Bolivar and his companions, while upon their march from Carthagena to Venezuela, heard that the Spaniards and Islenos committed the most barbarous acts upon the peaceable inhabitants in Venezuela, who, in virtue of the convention between Miranda and Monteverde, had confidently resumed their former occupations." It will be remembered that Monteverde was born in one of the Canary Islands. Surrounded as he was, by numbers of his countrymen, he was weak enough to concede altogether to their passions, and their hatred against all who took an active part in the revolution at Caraccas. This news so enraged the Caraguins, companions in arms of General Bolivar, that they published a solemn declaration, in form of a manifesto, in which they proclaimed the "war of death" against all the European Spaniards and Islenos.

Bolivar was falsely accused of signing this document, but he did not. While the Spaniards were engaged in dissensions; he united the patriots, gained victories, and made a triumphant entry into Caraccas, the capital of his native land, August 4, 1813.

The enthusiasm was universal, reaching every class and each sex of the inhabitants of Caraccas. The women came to crown their liberator. They spread the ground with many flowers and branches of laurel and olive on his passage through the streets of the capital. The shouts of thousands were mingled with the noise of artillery, bells and music; and the crowd was immense. The prisons were opened and the unfortunate victims of liberty came forth with pale and emaciated faces, like spectres from their graves.

The writer of the memoirs tells this story. Previous to his entry into Caraccas, a kind of triumphal car was prepared, like that which the Roman consuls used on returning from a campaign, after an important victory. Theirs was drawn by horses; but Bolivar's car was drawn by twelve fine young ladies, very elegantly dressed in white, adorned with the national colors, and all selected from the first families in Caraccas. They drew him in about half an hour from the entrance of the city to his residence; he standing on the car bareheaded and in full uniform, and he assumed, after a few days, the title of "Dictator and Liberator of the Western Provinces of Venezuela." Bolivar gave the name of "liberating army" to all those troops that came with him, and established an order of knighthood called, "The Order of the Liberator."

CHAPTER XXI.

HISTORY REPEATS ITSELF IN CUBA.

The Spanish Colonial System in South America too strong for the Home Government, and Intolerable and Irreconcilable in its Oppression and Animosity—It is the same story told in the Current History of Cuba—The Colonies of Spain were intensely attached to her, but cruelly Spurned—Nothing Short of Slavery would suffice—The Confederacy of Colombia—French and British Influence—American Sympathizers with Cuba owe Historical Regard to Colombia—The Revolutions in the United States and France agitate the World—British Policy hostile to Spain, and the Influence of the Intrusion of Napoleon—Proclamation of the Governor of Trinidad—British Expedition to La Plata—Defeated at Montimaro—Pitt's Policy—The War for Independence in Mexico reads like late Cuban News.

THE very confusion into which the people of the Spanish possessions of northern South America fell, owing to the partial conquest of Spain by Napoleon, caused a protraction of the struggle in various communities, because no one seemed to remain competent to make peace. The historian Niles says :

“ The natural, but mistaken apprehension of a union among states similarly situated, and having a common interest, of which history affords so many examples, has been strikingly illustrated in Colombia. When the country threw off the Spanish yoke, not only Venezuela and New Granada, which had been separate governments, but many of the provinces of each, formed juntas for themselves, declared their independence, and raised military forces to maintain it, not only against the authority of Spain, but that of the general governments established by the revolutionists claiming jurisdiction over them. In New Granada, the congress, composed of deputies from a number of the provinces, were obliged to make war upon the provinces of Cundanimarca and Carthagena, to force them into a union, or to compel obedience to its decrees. Although these contentions disparaged and greatly injured the provinces, yet it is not improbable that the existence of so many independent governments was, on the whole, serviceable in the prosecution of the war. Hostilities were carried on by the general governments of Venezuela and New

Granada, and also by the governments of many of the provinces at the same time, in conjunction or separately, and sometimes in the latter mode, when they were at war with each other. When the patriots were overcome in one province, they kept up resistance in another; and when the armies of congress were defeated, and the government itself overthrown, still the provincial juntas would keep alive the spirit of resistance. When the cause was prostrated in Venezuela, it was maintained in New Granada, and the former again liberated by troops furnished by the latter. The existence of so many independent separate governments, all of whom were engaged in carrying on the war, distracted the attention of the Spanish chiefs, and greatly embarrassed their operations; but, on the other hand, it prevented the concentration of power, and the establishment of an energetic and efficient government, as well as occasioned almost constant dissensions. It required a long course of fatal experience to overcome the apprehensions and prejudices which existed against a consolidated government, embracing all the provinces composing the present territory of Colombia; and it is probable that it could not have been effected, at least in a peaceable manner, except for the influence of Bolivar. The government established in Venezuela in 1811, was a confederacy similar to that of the United States, and at that time, and long after, was almost universally popular both in Venezuela and New Granada. General Miranda, by favoring a more concentrated and energetic government, gave great offence, and occasioned himself to be viewed with suspicion. The province (now department) of Cundanimarca, in 1814, could not be induced to unite, under the most urgent circumstances, with the other provinces, with which it had formerly been connected, and the employment of troops and the capture of Bogota, its capital, only, could compel it to join the confederation. When these circumstances are considered, it is apparent that the revolution, in the public mind, must have been great, which should have led to the union of Venezuela and New Granada, an event not apparently even thought of at the time of which we have been speaking; and to the establishment of a government, which is not a confederacy of provinces, but an entire consolidation of them into one state, with a unity of authority. The first of these events took place in December, 1819, when, after the overthrow of the royal power, by the great victory of Boyaca, a congress was convened at Angostura. Bolivar delivered to the congress an elaborate speech, in which he showed that he had studied profoundly the principles of government, their forms, and their spirit. The object of this speech was to produce a conviction of the importance of a union of Venezuela and New Granada, and the establishment of an efficient government. On the 17th of the month a fundamental law was passed, which united, in one state, Venezuela and New Granada, to be called the *Republic of Colombia*.

“The prevailing anxiety of the colonists, from the commencement of the disturbances in Spain, had been an apprehension of falling under the power of Bonaparte, in the event of his becoming master of the Spanish peninsula; and as the cause of the Spanish patriots became more desperate, the fears of the

colonists increased. 'What will become of us if Spain shall be conquered?' was a question universally asked; and its discussion directly led to the consideration of the necessity and right of providing new guards for their own security. The question admitted of only two answers; for if Spain fell under the power of France, her colonies must have shared her fate, or taken care of themselves. The case supposed, presented but one alternative to America; to fall under the power of France, or become independent. The first ideas which the Spanish Americans had of independence did not relate to independence as it respected Spain, but as to France. How different was the origin of the revolution which resulted in the independence of the British-American colonies from that which separated the Spanish colonies from the mother country. The revolution in the British colonies originated from measures of oppression on the part of the parent state, and long and systematical resistance to those measures on the part of the colonies. The Anglo-Americans were alarmed from an apprehension of being oppressed by the parent country; but the Spanish-Americans, although tyrannized over by Spain for centuries, were terrified at the prospect of the overthrow of the power of their oppressors, and they detested the idea of being placed under the dominion of a foreign power.

"The news of the disastrous events in the Spanish peninsula, and the proclamation of the regency, reached Caraccas in the year 1810, and occasioned great alarm. The struggle in Spain was believed to be nearly at an end, and the final triumph of Bonaparte certain. At such a conjuncture the inhabitants felt it to be their duty and their right to provide for their own security; the legitimate government of the mother country being annihilated, and the colonies exposed to fall into the hands of a foreign power.

"The prime object of the colonial rulers was to keep the colonies in a state of *dependence* on some power in Europe, and they seemed hardly to care where or what it was. And it is not difficult to discover the motives of this conduct; as long as America could be kept in a state of dependence, the colonial rulers supposed a readiness to acknowledge any authority which claimed dominion over Spain, and consequently over America, was the most sure way of preserving their stations. They wished to keep America dependent, not so much from a regard to the interests of Spain, as to preserve their own power, being very sensible that they could have no part in any government constituted by the people. Hence, the violence with which they pursued the American patriots; every act, every movement tending toward the independence of the colonies, although temporary, and with the entire and express recognition of Ferdinand VII., was regarded as a blow aimed at their own power. This is the cause of the fury with which they pursued the first patriots in the colonies; and the zeal they pretended to feel for their country was stimulated by an apprehension of losing their own power.

"The influence which the condition of Spain had on her colonies, the measures that the Americans had adopted, and the violence with which they had been opposed by the Spanish rulers, both in Spain and the colonies, had greatly

increased the jealousy and unfriendly feelings between the creoles, or native Americans, and the European-Spaniards in America. In July, 1810, an affray occurred at Santa Fe de Bogota, which originated from a European-Spaniard insulting a native American, and including in the opprobrious and reproachful language which he applied to him, all his countrymen. The quarrel between these two individuals soon assumed a serious aspect; the citizens collecting to the scene of contention, the Spaniards joining on the side of their countrymen, and the creoles taking part with theirs, a contest ensued, in which the latter, being the most numerous, were triumphant. Under the influence of the excitement which this popular contest had occasioned, a meeting of the inhabitants was convened and a junta established. In Chili the Captain-General exasperated the people to such a degree that he was obliged to resign his office, and a junta was formed in September; and in Mexico an insurrection broke out the same month in consequence of the violent measures of Venegas, the new Viceroy."

The fact that the rebels recognized Ferdinand had no influence on the colonial system of Spain, and the Regency of Spain declared Caraccas to be in a state of blockade in this decree, August 31, 1810:

"Scarcely had the council of regency received intelligence of the occurrences at Caraccas, whose inhabitants, instigated no doubt by some intriguing and factious persons, were guilty of *declaring themselves independent of the mother country, and of forming a governing junta to exercise this supposed independent authority, when it determined to take the most active and efficacious means to attack the evil in its origin and prevent its progress.* But in order to proceed with mature deliberation the regency consulted the council of Spain and the Indies, and has taken such measures as will answer the end proposed, particularly as neither the province of Maracaibo, nor the department of Coro, have taken part in the criminal proceedings; but, *on the contrary, have acknowledged the council of regency, and taken the most efficacious measures to oppose the absurd idea of Caraccas declaring herself independent, without being possessed of the means of obtaining independence!* The regency hereby declares the province of Caraccas in a state of rigorous blockade, etc. These resolutions do not extend to the above-mentioned divisions, which, having refused to follow the pernicious examples of Caraccas, have manifested their constant fidelity by opposing the plan of rebellion, which only originated in the unlimited ambition of some persons and in the blind credulity of others, who suffered themselves to be hurried away by the ardent passions of their fellow-countrymen. The regency has taken the most secure measures to extirpate these evils, and to punish the authors of them with all the rigor which the rights of sovereignty authorize it to use, unless there be a previous and voluntary submission, in

which case the regency grants them a general pardon. The regency commands that these resolutions be circulated through all the Spanish dominions, that they may be carried into effect there as well as in foreign countries, and that they may act conformably with the measures taken for the blockade of the said coasts," etc.

The historian Niles says :

"This decree of the regency was a declaration of war, and its authors, without inquiring into the causes which occasioned the measures pursued in the colonies, or making a single effort for conciliation, rashly plunged the two countries into all the horrors of civil war. The answer of the junta of Caraccas to the Marquis de las Hermanzas, minister in Spain, containing an expose of the reasons which occasioned the establishment of the junta, and justifying the measure, instead of tending to allay the feelings of the regency, and the people of Spain, greatly inflamed them.

"Emissaries were sent to Porto Rico, Montevideo, Panama and Mexico, for the purpose of arousing political and religious prejudices in favor of Spain, and against the new governments in America, by making promises to some and threatening others, to produce dissensions among the patriots, thus to destroy the new governments in the bud. But the principal reliance of the rulers of Spain was on the sword, and consequently troops were sent to Montevideo, Vera Cruz, Coro, Santa Martha and Panama, with a view to dragoon the Americans into submission ; although at this time every soldier was wanted at home for the defence of the country. The rage, however, which prevailed against the invaders of their own country, violent as it was, did not equal that towards the rebellious Americans. The animosity of the Cortes against the colonists corresponded with the feelings of the regency, and although some Americans, who happened at the time to be in the Isle of Leon, were chosen members of the Cortes, so strong were the feelings of that body, they scarcely dared to speak in favor of their countrymen."

It will be perceived that this is the same story as that of Cuba, with the difference that the loyalty of Cuba to Spain during the Bonaparte invasion was exceptional. The Spaniards were so slow to understand the Americans that they found those who would have been with them always alienated before there was a thought of conciliation. The American members of the Cortes, in January, 1811, submitted propositions of conciliation, a most instructive document, as follows :

"1st. In conformity to the decree of the central junta, dated the 15th of

October, 1809, which declared the inhabitants of Spanish-America equal in rights to those of the Peninsula, the national representation of every part of Spanish-America, the Spanish West Indies, and the Philippine Islands, including every class of their inhabitants, shall be the same in form, manner, and without distinction, as in the kingdom and islands of European Spain.

"2d. The free natives and inhabitants of Spanish-America shall be allowed to plant and cultivate whatever their climate will produce, with license to encourage industry, and to promote manufactures and arts to their fullest extent.

"3d. Spanish-America shall enjoy the liberty of exporting her own natural and manufactured productions to the Peninsula, as well as to the allies and to neutral nations; and of importing whatever she may want. All her ports are consequently to be opened." [This and the preceding demand were agreed to, but the order to carry them into execution was never published.]

"4th. There shall be a free trade between Spanish-America and the Spanish settlements in Asia. Everything militating against this freedom to be abolished.

"5th. Freedom of trade to be granted from all the ports in Spanish-America and the Philippine Islands to other parts of Asia. Any law existing contrary to such freedom to be annulled.

"6th. All estancos or monopolies in favor of the public treasury or of the king, shall be suppressed; but the public treasury shall be indemnified for the loss of the profits arising from such monopoly by new duties on the same articles.

"7th. The working of the quicksilver mines shall be free in Spanish-America, but the administration of the produce shall remain in charge of the officers of the mining department, independent of the viceroys and captain-general, and officers of the *real hacienda*." [This was granted, and orders were published for carrying it into execution in the provinces under the Spaniards.]

"8th. All Spanish-Americans shall be eligible equally with Spaniards to all appointments of rank or emolument, whether at court or in any part of the monarchy,—either in political, military or ecclesiastical departments.

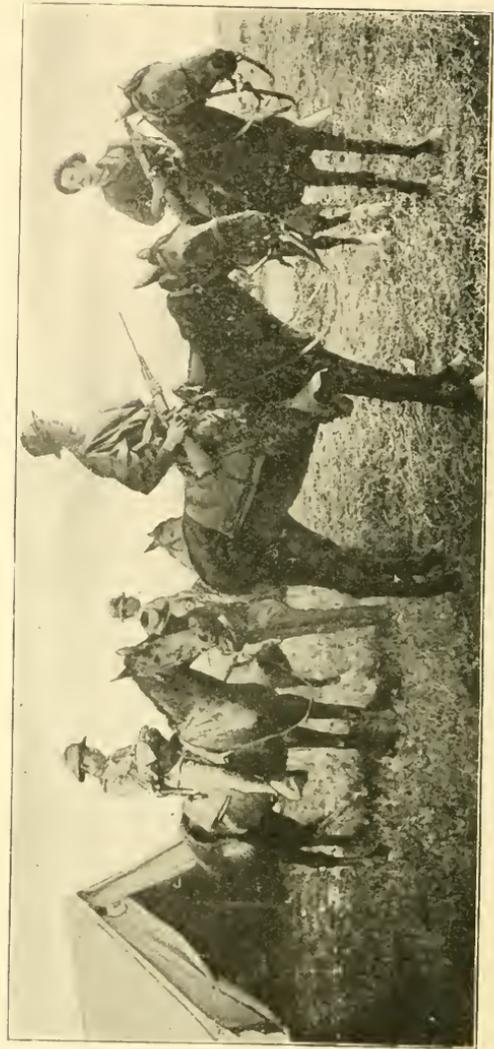
"9th. Consulting the natural protection of each kingdom in Spanish-America, half of the public appointments shall be filled by Spanish subjects born in America.

"10th. That the above stipulations may be punctually adhered to, a consultive junta shall be formed in each capital, to the intent that it may propose persons suited to fill each vacancy."

This has the flavor of the futile autonomist literature in Cuba; and the fatalities of the Spanish colonial system that appeared in South America have been duplicated in current Cuban experience. The people of the United States



PRESIDENT MCKINLEY'S WAR MESSAGE ON ITS WAY TO CONGRESS.



U. S. CAVALRY.—VOLUNTEERS AND REGULARS

who sympathize so keenly with the Cubans, owe historical respect for the South Americans, who won their independence through the same course of horrors and sorrows.

The Bonapartes finding that the Americans disliked the French so intensely they would never submit to France, did what they could to promote a coalition in Spanish-America. Joseph Bonaparte dispatched agents to America for the purpose of exciting and encouraging the revolution there ; giving them full and minute instructions, embracing even the motto to be inscribed on the revolutionary banners, which was, "Long live the Catholic, Apostolic, and Roman religion, and perish the bad government." These instructions were given to M. Desmolard, of Baltimore, who was the principal agent of Joseph Bonaparte, and to other emissaries sent into the colonies.

A copy of these instructions was found in Caraccas, in the office of the secretary of the junta, and forwarded to the admiral of the Barbadoes station, as a caution against the intrigues of the Bonapartes. The French agents penetrated into different parts of the American settlements, and one of them was discovered in the town of Habana and shot.

The court of St. James, in 1797, openly encouraged a revolution in Venezuela, as appears by the proclamation of the governor of Trinidad. Spain then being an ally of France, and her resources wasted by Napoleon in supporting his wars against England and her allies, the British ministry wished to separate her colonies from Spain, to deprive her of the supplies she received from them, and also to secure to Great Britain a lucrative trade with America. But after the general rising in Spain against Bonaparte, the tables were turned, and the Spaniards, from being the enemies of Great Britain, became her friends and

allies. Feeling interested in the success of the war prosecuting in the Spanish peninsula against France, Great Britain became the mediator between Spain and her colonies, and in June, 1810, Lord Liverpool wrote to General Layard, governor of Curacoa, "that his Britannic majesty had strong reasons for hoping that the inhabitants of Caraccas would acknowledge the authority of the regency of Spain." The English attempted mediation between Spain and Colombia in hostility to France, and Colombia invited the sympathy and assistance of the United States. The British influence was finally weighed in Colombia in opposition to impossible Spain.

The revolutions in the United States and France in the last quarter of the eighteenth century aroused the people of all enlightened nations, and deepened the conflict for supremacy on the seas between England, France and Spain. The influence of her vast American possessions aggrandized Spain, but was not wholesome, and her enormous colonial fabric was easily shaken, but the several parts were strangely moved to inconsistency by their attachment to the dynasty of Spain and pride in the grandeur of her name, still fascinating, though declining. England closely estimated the lessons she received in the loss of her colonies, and remembered that in the later days of the Continental conflict, both France and Spain were against the British, the French and Spaniards when Rodney won his decisive victory being about to unite to attempt the conquest of Jamaica.

The French Revolution followed closely upon that in the United States. For a time the whole world seemed against the French who had taken the liberty of throwing off the monarchical system, the United States being, for the time, the only country in diplomatic relations with the French Republic. Suddenly there was a startling apparition, that

of Napoleon. Mr. Pitt had, in remembrance of the shifty course of Spain, encouraged the first manifestations of dissatisfaction among the Spanish colonists. The following proclamation from the British Governor of Trinidad defines the policy of his government.

“By virtue of an official paper, which I, the governor of this island of Trinidad, have received from the right honorable Henry Dundas, minister of his Britannic majesty for foreign affairs, dated 7th April, 1797, which I here publish in obedience to orders, and for the use which your Excellencies may draw from its publication, in order that you may communicate its tenor, which is literally as follows: ‘The object which at present I desire most particularly to recommend to your attention is the means which might best be adapted to liberate the people of the continent near the island of Trinidad, from the oppressive and tyrannic system which supports, with so much rigor, the monopoly of commerce, under the title of exclusive registers, which the government licenses demand; also to draw the greatest advantages possible, and which the local situation of the island presents, by opening a direct and free communication with the other parts of the world without prejudice to the commerce of the British nation. In order to fulfill this intention with greater facility, it will be prudent for your Excellency to animate the inhabitants of Trinidad in keeping up the communication which they had with those of Terra Firma, previous to the reduction of that island; under the assurance that they will find there an *entrepot*, or general magazine of every sort of goods whatever. To this end his Britannic majesty has determined, in council, to grant freedom to the ports of Trinidad, with a direct trade to Great Britain.

“‘With regard to the hopes you entertain of raising the spirits of those persons, with whom you are in correspondence, toward encouraging the inhabitants to resist the oppressive authority of their government, I have little more to say, than that they may be certain that, whenever they are in that disposition, they may receive, at your hands, all the succors to be expected from his Britannic Majesty be it with forces, or with arms and ammunition, to any extent; with the assurance that the views of his Britannic Majesty go no further than to secure to them their independence, without pretending to any sovereignty over their country, nor even to interfere with the privileges of the people, nor in their political, civil, or religious rights.’

“THOMAS PICTON, &C., &C.

“Puerto de Espana, 26th June, 1797.’”

Niles, Historian of South America and Mexico, says :

“It had long been a favorite project of Mr. Pitt to aid the emancipation of South America, and to open a trade with that country. He had frequent con-

ferences with the ex-Jesuit, Juan Pablo Viscardi Gusman, a native of Peru, and an enthusiast in favor of the independence of America, who represented the country to be impatient under the Spanish yoke, and ripe for revolt. He also published in London an appeal to his countrymen, using all the powers of his eloquence in attempting to bring them to a sense of their degraded condition. The British ministry encouraged General Miranda in his designs to revolutionize Venezuela, and aided the premature expedition which he fitted out in 1801; and furnished the funds for that which he afterward fitted out from the United States in 1806, though it was done without the assistance or sanction of Congress. This expedition failed without accomplishing anything, and a number of young men from the United States, falling into the hands of the Spaniards, became victims of their own credulity, and the cruelty of tyrannical power. It is said, that during President Adams' administration, the British ministry made proposals to our government to assist in the emancipation of the Spanish colonies, which did not meet a favorable reception.

"The failure of Miranda's expedition did not discourage the British government; for in 1806 Spain then being in alliance with France in the war which prevailed in Europe, they fitted out a squadron under Sir Home Popham, which entered the La Plata on the 25th of June, and anchored about twelve miles below Buenos Ayres, where the troops disembarked without opposition.

"The inhabitants, and the Viceroy Soleimeto, were filled with consternation. After experiencing a feeble opposition at Rio Chueto, three miles from the city, General Beresford entered the capital and took possession of the citadel. Don J. M. Pueyredon, afterward dictator, at the head of a company of hussars, was the only officer who did anything to oppose the advance of the English. The Spaniards, on learning the small number of their enemies, determined to expel them. The viceroy had escaped to Montevideo, and Liniers, a French emigrant, but an officer in the Spanish service, passed over to the eastern shore of the river, exciting the people to arms. The viceroy collected one thousand regulars, which he joined with those of Liniers, to whom the command of the united force was given. With these troops, Liniers immediately recrossed the river, when the inhabitants flocking around his standard, soon enabled him to attack the British with great effect, compelling them, after they had sustained a heavy loss, to surrender on the 12th of August, 1806. Soon after this event reinforcements arrived from the Cape of Good Hope, which enabled Sir Home Popham to reduce Montevideo by storm.

"This expedition, as appeared from the trial of Sir Home Popham, was not expressly authorized by the British ministry, but was so far from being disapproved of by them, that it was followed up by a bold and extensive plan of conquest. Two squadrons, each with a large body of troops, one commanded by General Whitlock, the other by General Crawford, were fitted out for the capture of Buenos Ayres; after accomplishing this, Crawford had received orders to proceed around Cape Horn and capture Valparaiso; and, for the more effectually securing their conquest, to establish military posts across the continent,

from Buenos Ayres to Valparaiso. The object of the ministry was entirely changed since 1797; now it was not to aid the inhabitants in establishing their independence, but to subjugate the country."

In this enterprise the British were defeated with great loss, the native Americans not rising as expected to throw off the Spanish yoke. The English had not made material progress in any quarter to upset the Spanish government in American colonies, when the scene was changed by the subjugation of Spain by Bonaparte. The native American-Spanish rivaled the Spaniards of the peninsula in their hatred of the French, and they preferred with great passion the Spanish King Ferdinand, to Joseph Bonaparte. Niles writing of Mexico, in 1838, says:

"All the officers of government being sent from Spain, the inhabitants could view them in no other light than as their oppressors, and as having been imported for that express purpose. The possession of power, and the favor of the government, rendered the Europeans haughty and insolent, as is always the case with a privileged class, and this tended still more to exasperate the feelings of the creoles. Hence the long, bitter and sanguinary war of the late revolution.

"If there ever was a people in a state of political bondage, of oppressive and degrading servitude, it was the Spanish colonists. Fortunately for them, the cause of liberty, and the honor of America, circumstances favored their emancipation, and *they* are now free. The struggle has been long, arduous and bloody, characterized by a spirit of bitterness and animosity, which spread desolation over the fairest portions of America, and in some districts almost swept away the entire population. The independence and liberty of Spanish-America has been dearly purchased; it has been bought with the best blood of the country, and this has flowed freely. In Mexico, after a destructive war for twelve years, the royal government was finally overthrown. But this only established a new and ephemeral tyranny, in the person of Iturbide, who had been the instrument of crushing the Spanish despotism. Whilst he was at the head of affairs the government acquired no stability."

It is remarkable how close the correspondence is between the elements of the war in Mexico that gave to that country her freedom, and those that appear in the long agony of the Cuban conflict. This from the Mexican historian reads like a fresh chapter of Cuban history:

“The contest assumed a character peculiarly savage and horrible; the war was not only a war of death, but of desolation. Vengeance and destruction seem to have filled the minds of the royal chiefs, who were as weak as they were destitute of every sentiment of justice or humanity, in supposing that ‘examples of terror,’ and destruction, would restore tranquillity to a distracted country. After the capture of Zitaquaro, Calleja published a decree, depriving the Indians, of that department, of their property and immunities, declaring the property of all Mexicans, who had taken any part in the insurrection, or who fled from the city on the entry of the royal troops, to be forfeited; transferring the capital of the department to Marabatio, and ordering the town of Zitaquaro razed to the ground, allowing the inhabitants six days only to leave it, with their movables, which they were permitted to take ‘as proof of mercy;’ and threatening the same destruction against any town which should harbor the members of the junta. The scene of horror and distress which this decree, conceived in the true spirit of Vandalism, produced, surpassed the power of imagination.”

CHAPTER XXII.

MEXICO'S WARS OF INDEPENDENCE.

The Imperial Tragedies in Mexican History—The Philosophy of Rebellion against Spain, and the Dominant Nature of Spaniards and Hatred of Native Americans—The Interference of Napoleon in Spain, and the Conflict of Jurisdiction of Juntas, and How the Republic of Mexico Emerged from Chaos.

THERE is in Nile's "History of Mexico," a passage regarding the final expulsion of the Spanish flag from Mexico, that is remarkable. It follows the account of the execution of Iturbide, and finds a striking parallel in a recent situation.

Mexico, as well as the other independent States, at one period felt some apprehension that the allied powers in Europe, which interfered in the internal concerns of Spain, would extend their kind offices to her possessions on this side of the Atlantic; but the disposition manifested by Great Britain has removed such apprehensions, as her ministers have declared that England would not agree to any cession Spain might make of the States which were *de facto* released from her dominion.

The tragedy of Iturbide is told in the terms following: A conspiracy in the Mexican capital was discovered, and twenty persons implicated were arrested, among whom were several general officers, a number of colonels, and some citizens of distinction. The papers of the conspirators were headed, "God, Independence and the Hero of Iguala;" it is said that a woman acted as secretary. The criminals were brought to trial before a council of war and two of them sentenced to death, and the rest to perpetual

banishment. After this premature explosion of the conspiracy, the infatuated Iturbide landed at Soto la Marina in disguise, on the 14th of July, 1824. He came in an English brig with Charles de Beneski, a foreigner, who pretended that his object was to treat with the Mexican government concerning a plan of colonization, and that he had powers for that purpose from three Irish capitalists of London. Beneski presented himself to General Garza, military commandant, who inquired concerning Iturbide, and was informed by Beneski, that he left him at London, residing quietly with his family. Iturbide, being disguised, passed himself as the companion of Beneski, who was permitted to go into the country, and thus attempted to advance into the interior. On the 16th, General Garza was informed by an officer who commanded a detachment of troops, that he had seen Beneski, with another person in disguise, proceeding into the interior, which excited his suspicion. General Garza at once went in pursuit with some troops and overtaking them at Arrogas, he immediately recognized in the disguised person, Don Augustin Iturbide, arrested him and conveyed him under a strong guard to Soto la Marina. General Garza communicated the arrest of Iturbide to the provincial congress of the State of Tamaulipas, then in session at Padilla, which resolved that the decree of the general congress of the 28th of April, 1824, be carried into immediate effect, and ordered the minister of state to cause Iturbide to be executed without delay. Accordingly, he was shot in the town of Padilla. Thus terminated the career of Don Augustin Iturbide, the first, and it is hoped, the last usurper of sovereign power in America. This event relieved the republic of one source of apprehension, and one cause of the vacillation of public opinion; by annihilating forever the hopes and designs of the partisans

of a military usurper. It tended to concentrate public opinion in favor of the political system which had been adopted, and to give stability and energy to the government.

Since this period public tranquillity has not been disturbed in Mexico by civil commotions; the government has been administered with success, and has enjoyed the increasing confidence of all classes of the population.

The Spaniards still retained possession of the strong fortress of St. Juan de Uloa, which, commanding the entrance into the port of Vera Cruz, greatly deranged the Mexican commerce, by exactions from all vessels entering the harbor. This was the more vexatious, in consequence of there being no seaport to which the trade of Vera Cruz could be transferred. The annoyance which the castle occasioned to the commerce of the country, united with the desire to reduce the last stronghold of Spanish power in Mexico, rendered the government and the nation anxious to accelerate an event which it was evident could not long be delayed. The superiority of the Mexican navy to that of the Spanish prevented the governor of the castle, Copinger, from receiving any reinforcements, or even supplies from abroad, whilst the garrison continually wasted away by disease and hardships, till they at last became reduced to a handful of men. Still the governor obstinately refused to capitulate. At length, however, the time arrived when he could hold out no longer, and accordingly, on the 18th of November, 1821, the castle surrendered, to the great joy of all Vera Cruz and Mexico. The garrison, (except the sick who were conveyed to Vera Cruz) were, with the governor, sent to Havana.

Mexico has probably received less aid from foreigners than most of the other new republics; some enterprises have been undertaken from the United States against the

Texas country, but these have had no influence on the great contest, and some individuals from the United States and the British isles have engaged in the Mexican service; but she has had no foreign succor of any importance; the Mexican patriots have maintained the long and sanguinary struggle alone, without allies and without assistance, and by their own valor and perseverance, have overcome both foreign and domestic tyranny.

The patriots of Mexico, as well as those of other parts of America, formerly Spanish, made an early attempt to secure the countenance, if not the assistance, of the United States. In 1811, Don B. Gutierrez was sent by the patriots of Mexico as their agent or commissioner to Washington, where he continued until nearly the close of the following year, at which time he joined Toledo in an expedition against the eastern internal provinces. In 1816 the Mexican Congress sent Don Herrera to the United States. But these missions were productive of no other advantage than the promotion, in the breasts of our citizens of feelings of friendship and sympathy for a people who were struggling for the same rights, the attainment of which a few years since had cost the United States so much blood and treasure. Yet for our government to have assisted the Spanish colonies would have been violating the fundamental principles of the Constitution, and the genius of our foreign policy. Hence it was that Congress, in 1817, passed an act for the more effectually preserving the neutrality of the United States, which authorized the President to prevent the sale of vessels of war by the citizens of the United States to the subjects of any foreign power, and prohibited the exportation of arms or ammunition, except bonds were given as security against their being conveyed to either of the belligerent parties. In pursuance of this policy, an

expedition, which was preparing at New Orleans in 1815, and destined against the north-eastern provinces of Mexico, was stopped by a proclamation of the President.

Near the close of the year 1818, the President appointed commissioners to visit some of the South American States, which claimed to be independent, and in 1822 Congress formally acknowledged the independence of Mexico and the other republics of the South.

The tribute to Mexico for her self-sustaining power in winning her freedom and capacity for retaining it, is as well put, as deserved. The country was greatly impoverished.

The Mexican patriots received little or no assistance from abroad, except in funds, and not that until the contest was decided. The war had destroyed the machinery, and stopped the operation of the mines, destroyed the government magazines of tobacco, and essentially impaired every branch of revenue, whilst at the same time it had augmented in a greater ratio the expenses of the government. Whilst the colonial authority existed, the patriots secured the public property for their own use, and destroyed what they could not thus appropriate; both parties had recourse to forced loans. These causes, together with the devastation of a civil war, and the suspension of industry, had so impoverished the country that the revenue was almost entirely annihilated, and the government which succeeded the overthrow of Iturbide was placed under the most distressing embarrassments.

The end of imperial illusions about Mexico did not terminate with the execution of Iturbide. The tragedy of Maximilian was one of the dramas in real life that surpass historic and romantic invention. This would never have occurred if the United States had not been absorbed

in her war of states and sections. The Emperor Napoleon III. thought the time had come to re-establish imperialism in North America.

There were thousands of instances of heroism in the contest of Mexico for her freedom and independence. The confusion of authority both in Spain and Mexico can only be accounted for by the disorganization of Spain following the conquests and usurpations of Napoleon I. and the rival juntas that disputed possession with each other, and Joseph Bonaparte made by his masterful brother King of Spain.

The Maximilian episode by Napoleon III. and his effort to influence the choice of a king in Spain, during the intrigues that saw the elevation of an Italian prince to that dignity, and France, crushed by Germany in a quarrel beginning in French resentment at the proposal of a German prince as a candidate, are reminders of the first Napoleon's Spanish mistakes. The American colonies of Spain were not disposed to take advantage of the humiliation of the mother country by France, to become independent, for they hated the French for the deeds of Napoleon, but the Spanish juntas had all the vices of the deposed monarchy they were supposed to represent, and made war with vindictiveness upon the colonial people whose juntas were sensitive as to their authority, but many of them animated by a sentiment of loyalty to the dynasty superseded by French force of arms. Niles, the historian, says:

"A general revolt of the inhabitants against the authority of the Bonapartes occurred in the peninsula. Intelligence of this reached Mexico on the 29th of July, 1808. It immediately raised the feelings of the people into the highest enthusiasm. In Spain, juntas were established in the different provinces, for their government and security. The

junta at Seville styled itself the supreme junta of Spain and the Indies; several other of the provincial juntas claimed the like superiority, which led to dissensions in the peninsula, and distracted the Americans, so that they knew not which to acknowledge, as entitled to their allegiance. Before the enthusiasm had subsided in Mexico, the deputies sent by the junta of Seville arrived in America, to demand the sovereignty of the country, and to induce the colonies to yield obedience to the junta, the deputies represented that its authority was submitted to, throughout the whole of Spain.

“Such was the hostility of the people against the French, and their loyalty and zeal toward their sovereign, that they seemed ready to acknowledge the authority of any tribunal in Spain, although self-created, which claimed their allegiance in the name of their king.”

But there were other juntas and a regency, and the greater the conflict of jurisdiction the wilder the passions excited. There was a muddle of masters. One document throws a great deal of light upon the conditions in Mexico. The municipality of Mexico, on the 5th of August, 1808, presented a memorial to Iturrigaray, the viceroy, for assembling of a junta, from which we make an extract :

“Juntas of the government, and respectable bodies of the cities and kingdoms, are no more than in exact conformity to the law, which ordains that all arduous cases shall be considered of, in general assemblies. As in existing circumstances, in consequence of the seizure of the king, the sovereignty is vested in the nation, in order that its interests may be consulted, the united authorities, together with the municipalities, which are the heads of the people, do exactly the same as would the monarch himself for the general welfare.

“Mexico has in view the same principles that influenced Seville, Valencia, and the other cities of Spain, and she is empowered, in like manner as the above two faithful capitals, to do what she conceives is advisable in such urgent circumstances.

“These examples point out what ought to be done—to organize a governing junta, composed of the royal audiencia, the archbishop, municipality, and deputies from the tribunals, ecclesiastical and secular bodies, the nobility, and principal citizens, as well as the military. This junta shall deliberate on the most weighty subjects that concern us, which shall be determined conformably to our interests.

“The junta is necessary; for, although we are at present free from the urgent danger which threatened us on the side of France, we, nevertheless, ought not to neglect our means of defence, till we receive such positive advices, as may place us perfectly at ease. It is at the same time necessary to satisfy the wishes of the people, by restoring to them those means they formerly had of appeal to the Council of the Indies, or to the person of the king; and, finally, many amendments ought to be made in the nomination to secular and ecclesiastical dignities. These are the only means, in consequence of the absence of the monarch, by which the kingdom, being thus united, may overcome all its difficulties.

“This union of authorities is likewise necessary, as being the best means to produce unanimity in the minds of the people, and of preventing the fatal consequences which must arise throughout the country from disunion. Every one will then be happy; their patriotism and wishes will be united by love, enthusiasm, and a sense of the public good.

“The city, consequently, thinks that the time has arrived for adopting the same means as have been carried into

effect in Spain. The junta which your excellency is to form, for the present, of the authorities and respectable bodies above-mentioned, when the representatives of the kingdom are assembled, will carefully examine its interests, etc.

“But the two fundamental points on which the junta is to act, ought not to be forgotten. The first is, that the authorities retain the full extent of their power, in the same manner as if the derangement we deplore in the monarchy had not taken place; that is, that your excellency shall still hold the same power which the laws grant, and that the same be observed with respect to the other tribunals. The second is, that in order to fill up the immense void which exists between the authority of your excellency and the sovereign, the proposed junta is to be had recourse to.”

The Viceroy was inclined to submit, but the Spaniards conspired against him, bribed the officers of the guard, captured him in his palace and imprisoned him in a nunnery, setting up a junta of their own, and Niles says :

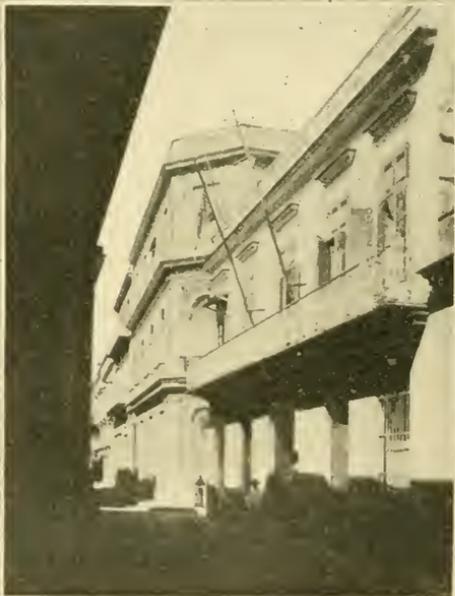
“The violent proceedings in Mexico were not only approved by the central junta, which received the intelligence while in session at Seville, but the junta manifested great joy that the Viceroy, who had favored the wishes of the creoles, had been deposed and imprisoned, without considering the danger of the example, or the evidence it afforded of the feebleness of all sentiments of subordination. These high-handed measures of the European faction greatly exasperated the creoles against the Spaniards in Mexico, and tended to produce disaffection toward the rulers of Spain. The authority of the central junta, although illegal (as the laws required that in case of a suspension of the royal functions, the government should be vested in a regency), was, nevertheless, submitted to by the colonists, and large sums of money remitted from America to Spain, which

enabled the Spaniards to carry on the war against the French."

Of the sanguinary scenes of strife in the evolution of Mexico, a few examples will serve for the whole history. The Spanish Cortes granted in 1810 an amnesty promising oblivion of all that took place in the revolution, but the Spanish Americans disregarded it totally, and used the promise as a trap. The Viceroy had to get the Church to endorse his proclamations, and the *cabildo ecclesiastico*, in a pastoral charge addressed to the clergy, on the 17th of May, 1812, says: "His excellency the Viceroy, the worthy and legitimate representative of our Catholic and most Christian king, Ferdinand VII., has had the unparalleled goodness, not only to authorize us to be the guarantees and trustees of the *indulto*, or general pardon, granted to the insurgents, but also to permit us to grant to you likewise the power, reverend brethren, as by these presents we do, to offer, promise, and assure, in the name of the Holy Trinity, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost,*and in the name of the Virgin of Guadalupe, protectress of this kingdom, and in the name of the Christian and Catholic king, Ferdinand VII., and of his Viceroy in these kingdoms, that a general pardon shall be duly granted to all those who, repenting themselves of their past faults, are now willing to lay down their arms." Notwithstanding this solemnity, the war continued, and the patriots repeatedly defeated the royalists. The revolution gaining ground, the patriot Rayon established, August, 1812, a junta for the government of the country, consisting of himself, Doctor Berdusco, and Don J. M. Liceaga, which nominally, at least, acknowledged the authority of Ferdinand, and published their acts in his name. Calleja, the moment he received intelligence of the creation of this junta, issued a proclamation from his head-



HAVANA.—PUBLIC SQUARE AND MARKET PLACE.—THE SPANISH VOLUNTEERS.



HAVANA.—WHERE MISS CISNEROS WAS IMPRISONED.—GRAVES OF THE SAILORS OF THE MAINE.
GOVERNOR-GENERAL'S COUNTRY PALACE.—WHERE CONSUL-GENERAL LEE RULED.

quarters at Guanajuato, offering ten thousand dollars for each of the heads of the junta, and the Viceroy, greatly alarmed at this measure of Rayon, regarding it as a harbinger of a general rising of the people, ordered Calleja to make an immediate attack upon the insurgents at Zitacuaro. Calleja, after a hard fight, carried the town, and remarked in his official report: "My stay here will be as short as possible, and before my departure I will erase every vestige of the town from the face of the earth, that I may, by this means, punish the criminal instigators of so barbarous, impolitic, and destructive an insurrection, and give an example of terror to those who might otherwise be willing to support it."

Presently this champion of order struck another rebel town, Quaulta, and March 15, 1812, wrote to a friend:

"We will precipitate this town and its inhabitants into the very centre of hell, whatever exertions or fatigue it may cost us. The enthusiasm of these insurgents is unparalleled. Morelos, with a prophetic countenance, gives his orders, and, whatever they may be, they are always punctually executed. We continually hear the inhabitants swear that they will be buried under the ruins rather than deliver up the town. They dance around the bombs as they fall, to prove they are fearless of danger."

The Spaniards' passion to rule for their own purposes was unappeasable save by absolute authority, in the name of some ruler or governing body beyond the Atlantic, and implacable in their relentless resolution that the natives in a colony should not govern it, but be perpetually an inferior and subordinate class. It was from this chaos that the Republic of Mexico at last emerged, and after many trials and vicissitudes, taught in hardship, the true divinity of popular sovereignty grew in strength and power.

CHAPTER XXIII.

SPANISH DESPOTISM IN CUBA.

The Sorrowful History of Cuba—The Spanish Colonial System was Founded in Personal Despotism—The Wrongs of the Cubans—The Justice and Triumph of their Cause and the Causes Which Led up to the War Between the United States and Spain.

THE sorrows of Cuba, as a colony of Spain, varied from those of other possessions of "the Peninsula" in being more protracted and developing more desperate and sanguinary differences. There is a curse upon the Spanish colonial system, and it was in the rapacious selfishness and remorseless ambition to absorb the earnings of others, that had been developed through centuries of indulgence. The fault seemed to be primal. It began in the bargain between Columbus and Ferdinand and Isabella. It will be remembered that Columbus drove a hard bargain with their majesties. He had a high estimation of the value of his goods. The King and Queen were to be sovereigns in particular over the discoveries of Columbus, and he was to be an Admiral and have a vast scope of authority. While he was greedy he was also benevolent, and wanted to aid the crusaders to rescue the Holy Sepulchre. The Spanish nation was left out. The King and Queen got America for a personal possession and Columbus was the principal personage, and was to manage the hemisphere, or whatever it was, for their Majesties. The Viceroys and Captain-Generals were all disposed to be but a little lower than monarchical angels, and there was wild jealousy at once toward Columbus, and conflicts of territorial jurisdiction and official dignity. Neither the people of Spain, nor of the colonies

had any rights, the Spanish sovereigns cared to respect, and Columbus soon became a sufferer from the excess of his authority, and the energy of the assertion of his understanding of his achievements. It would have required superhuman gifts to have enabled him to disentangle himself from the embarrassments heaped upon him by his prerogatives. He died in poverty, the first and most illustrious victim of the Spanish system of governing the colonies that he gave Spain. Soon the amiable savages who were enslaved and driven to despair by unaccustomed labors and cruelties, perished. It seemed perfectly natural for the Spaniards to enslave these people. There was neither scruple nor mercy. Cuba was not highly valued by its discoverers, with the exception of Columbus, because it was not rich in gold, and so the island suffered centuries of comparative neglect. It had a wonderful soil, and wealth in mines and forests, and the delightful harbor of Havana, which became the centre and rallying place for the trade and travel between Spain and central and southern America.

The original Cubans were almost annihilated in their helpless innocence, but the Spaniards were never able to take from the beautiful island its original name, and we may believe this was a sign and prophecy of coming independence. Columbus tried, on the island, four Spanish names in vain. He was enraptured with the beauty of Cuba and wrote of it in highly poetic style. The brilliancy of the fishes and the birds, the woods and waters, the mountains and the rivers, the flowers and the fruits, the clouds of parrots that darkened the sun, the bird songs, sweet as those of angels, inspired the pen of the old navigator, whose letters to his sovereign patrons were poems.

The expeditions of Cortez, Pizarro, De Soto and others started from Havana, and there the treasure ships gath-

ered to be convoyed to Spain, but though the city flourished, the growth of the island in wealth and population was not rapid. There was thoroughly established, however, the system of governing Cuba, not with a thought of the rights of the people, but for those who belonged on the other side of the Atlantic and claimed divine rights of monopoly. Cuba became a place of spoils to Spain, and while, for a time, shipbuilding was extensively carried on at Havana, that was discontinued, though there was an ample supply of incomparable timber. The land of Cuba is the most fertile known, and in spite of negligence and injustice, there was, in the indigo sky and the red and black soil, wealth the increase of which could not be altogether escaped. The prosperity of the French islands, which once far exceeded Cuba in proportion of area, was destroyed by the barbarian revolutionists, and the fugitives transferred coffee culture and other industries from Hayti to Cuba, and she was not governed for herself, but for the Peninsula, under an absolutism that amounted to perpetual martial law. The Captain-Generals had the powers of the commanders of besieged cities, and the public offices were filled with swarms of Spaniards who harvested the public service and hastened home, making room for others with like principles and appetites. The natives of the island were the people who had no rights, and found the only way of conciliating the tyranny from which they suffered was special subserviency in devotion to Spain. Generation after generation the grievances of the islanders accumulated, and with them their animosity increased and became exasperation.

With all the suffering the people of Cuba, however, remained loyal to the Mother Country during the struggles for liberty in Mexico and South America, and when the Spaniards were driven from their other American posses-

sions, the Royalists took refuge in Cuba, where they assisted the Spanish government in preventing that island from taking the same course as her sister colonies in America.

It was as though to avenge themselves for the many disasters in Central and South America that the Spanish royalists in Cuba were determined to crush out every thought of liberty or independence on the part of the oppressed, and it did not take many years before clouds of discontent were decidedly visible. The wave of revolution became stronger and stronger, and in each new outbreak the patriots were more numerous. No sooner had peace been declared after each revolution, than plans were considered for another revolt. During the revolution of 1869-1878, a boy was put in chains and kept at hard labor for alleged seditious writings. Later he was sent to Spain, where he succeeded in escaping shortly afterward. Continuing his studies he became a man of high intellectual attainments, and it was he, Jose Marti, who, at the end of February, 1895, inaugurated the revolution which was the primary cause of our going to war with Spain. Humanity and our geographical position demanded that we should interfere in a cause that has been a blot on history for almost a century.

There has been no change in the laws and decrees through which the crown of Spain has governed its possessions in Cuba through Captain-generals substantially under martial law. It has been accepted as a fact, applicable to all the captain-generals, that it made very little difference to the Cubans what manner of men they were. One captain-general was about the same as another. General Martinez Campos failed because of his humanity, and General Weyler failed on account of his inhumanity, according

to the current stories. The difference was not so great, between the one policy and the other, to change the convictions of interested people whose education was through experience. There was something, however, in the orders and the overtures made by Captain-General Blanco that made an impression, he was earnest in his desire to change the methods of the Spaniards in making war, from those of barbarism, to such as might be classed as belonging to civilization. There were phases indicative of sincerity in aspirations for the pacification of the island—at least there was something beside the accustomed revengefulness. General Blanco seemed to have an idea greatly enlarged upon the reality about the numbers and the influence of the autonomists. He had a solicitude beyond the common to enter into negotiations with the insurgents; to ascertain upon what terms, other than those of independence, the representative men of Cuba, in the struggle for liberty, would consent to put aside their arms. He was met with a spirit of desperate resistance. In some cases the reward of the peacemakers was assassination. There was a weakness in the policy of General Blanco, of which he must have been fully cognizant. It was that, according to the usual presentation of the cause of autonomy, Cuba would have to be responsible for the Spanish debt incurred in their struggles to subjugate the island. Clearly there was no possibility of pacification upon such a basis, for autonomy would have been but another word for servitude, and the condition of Cuba more hopeless than it ever had been.

Among the Madrid rumors cabled to this country and largely circulated, was one to the effect that General Blanco was empowered and desired to go further in attempting to win the Cubans to accept conditions that would end the war by concessions, such as had never been contemplated

by any Spanish government, and never were proposed to those in charge of what may be termed the civil administration of the insurrection. It was said that rather than go on with the war, as there was nothing encouraging to the Spaniards in their military operations, and all were agreed, as De Lome said, in his letter that caused his departure from diplomatic life, the first necessity of pacification upon any terms that could be considered by Spain, was "military success"—in the absence of this, the alternative seemed to be, that Spain, to avoid the utter exhaustion of her resources, would consent to the actual independence of the Cubans, their complete possession of the government of the island, in case there was reserved for the Crown of Spain a shadowy sovereignty somewhat like that the Sultan, as a matter of ceremony, holds over some of the Grecian islands, where he exercises no authority.

It was assumed that it would be a part of this scheme that the Spanish flag should still be used, and that there might be a small indemnity paid Spain, perhaps two million dollars a year—about as much of the revenues of the island in a normal condition as during recent administrations (between the ten years' war and the present) were expended upon the island, while twenty-five millions of dollars were applied to the army and navy of Spain, the payment of war bonds, and in other ways for purposes beneficial to the peninsula alone. If there was anything in this plan of pacification, it did not take form before the people. It seemed to be so unreasonable as to be almost, if not altogether, unanimously rejected by the belligerents on both sides.

The Cuban volunteers, who were the most radical and violent of the Spaniards, escaping military duty in Spain by serving in the militia of Cuban cities, and accepting all

the good situations, disliked, intensely, all those things in the policy of General Blanco that were approved by the humanitarians, holding that the better way to heal the wounds of civil war was by processes, not remote from those known in Christendom, as associated with civilization. There was rioting in Havana; volunteers were out; seven thousand regular Spanish troops were required to restore order. The American citizens in Havana were alarmed, and desired the presence of a United States man-of-war. Consul-General Lee recommended that one of our ships should be sent in a friendly capacity to Havana.

The "Maine" was despatched, and, after a three weeks' stay, blown up from the outside. There has never, in history, been recorded a more dastardly, wholesale murder. The indignation of the American people was instantaneous and overwhelming. Captain Sigsbee, of the "Maine," however, recommended a suspension of public opinion, and the President of the United States, upon the first testimony received, disbelieving in the possibility of the complicity of official Spaniards in this murderous business, gave out as his opinion that the loss of the "Maine" was due to an accident, and said he hoped that the Court of Inquiry into the loss of the "Maine" would establish the fact. The generous anticipation of the President was not justified. The finding of the court was that the "Maine" was blown up by enemies, and it was patent to all the people that a mine, capable of doing such frightful execution as appears in the wreck of our battleship, could not have been loaded and handled and fired without official complicity; and this established fact revived the flame of wrath in the bosoms of Americans, and formed a forcible public feeling, which had steadily driven the nation into conditions threatening war.

The passion that was excited in the country by the great assassination in Havana harbor had encountered no obstacle sufficient to stay its progress. The President's message, stating the finding of the Court of Inquiry, without recommendation, because the immediate identification of those concerned directly in the crime was not practicable, was held by a great proportion of the people to be insufficient, though if its calm phrases are carefully studied it will be seen that they were very forcible in directing attention to the vital points of the case and in condemning the guilty. There developed in the Congress and the country a formidable impatience with all considerate proceedings, because they were necessarily identified with delays.

The President did not seem to be sufficiently alert to satisfy the war spirit. It was expected of him that in speaking of the "Maine" he should compete with unofficial commentators in the use of the language of denunciation. There was a loud and fierce demand that the President should be more decisive in declaring the outlines of his policy, and more active in pushing it to conclusions. After he had prepared a message to accompany the consular reports from Cuba, in placing those papers before Congress, it became evident that it would be the part of prudence that the authors of those reports, and American citizens detained in Cuba, should be given the opportunity to leave the island before the message and documents from the consular offices should receive publicity. This required a few days' delay; whereupon there was a savage outburst of dissatisfaction, and the newspapers, capable of such things, were filled with odious suggestions. This sort of warfare, upon the administration, in connection with the fact that the country rapidly became informed of the great propriety and, indeed, necessity, of closing the consular Cuban

offices, and calling the officers home, in order to insure the personal safety of the Consul-General and all in the service of the United States in Cuba, or known there to be citizens of our country in sympathy with its aspirations. General Lee and his associates having landed on our soil, the President lost no time in laying his message and the reports before Congress. The message discussed with freedom and firmness, and in considerable detail, the reasons for our strained relations with Spain, threatening immediate war, defining the policy of the administration to be, not the recognition of Cuban belligerency nor of Cuban independence, but intervention by the United States with the determination of enforcing pacification, and affording the people of Cuba an opportunity to establish a stable government competent to deal with international relations. This message was received with objections by those radically favoring the recognition of Cuban independence, and accepting, as the representatives of the Cuban cause, those in New York, and in secret places in Cuba, who have been conspicuously published and widely advertised as official representatives of the Insurrection. There was at once excited a bitter controversy between the champions of independence and those who favor direct intervention.

It seemed probable, as the rainy season was at hand, and also the period for the malignancy of the yellow fever to develop, and as Spain had stopped the war so far as she was concerned, for an indefinite period, "suspending hostilities," which means that she gave up, for the time, the only method by which she has ever attempted seriously the conquest of the rebellious island, and as it was known that each day would increase the superiority of the Sea Power of the United States over that of Spain, and as there was no contingency probable—surely none in sight—in which it

would be desirable that we should land troops in Cuba—taking all these things into intelligent estimation, it is plain that there was nothing to be gained by hasty action, and no reason why there should not be time taken for thorough preparation and considerate deliberation. There had appeared, in this connection, evidences of the remarkable European interest taken in the questions that had arisen between the United States and Spain, affecting their friendly relations, an anxious concern on the part of the “great powers” that peace should be preserved; and this influence is believed to have been responsible for the action of Spain in abandoning, for an indefinite time, the use of force, an act, the logic of which, is confession of the loss of Cuba.

But it appeared to be a necessity arising from personal and political incapacity to maintain a steadfast course of policy that the Spaniards vacillated into war without a rational hope in America or a friend who would stand for her in Europe.

CHAPTER XXIV.

OUR COUNTRY, SPAIN AND THE FUTURE.

The Philosophy and Logic of Our War with Spain and the Good Fruit Thereof
—Causes of Spanish Degeneracy—The United States the Only True Republic—Spanish Losses a Guarantee of Her Future—The Logic of Our Expansion—The Future of Cuba—The Living and Dead Nations—Our Growth in Peace and Glory in War—Annexation and Immigration—We had, for Forty Years, been Drifting into War with Spain about Cuba.

THE war between the United States and Spain, though it lasted but one hundred days, will profoundly influence both nations. We may believe it will be for the common good, and eventually better the relations of all nations, with each other, and make for the advancement of the influences that help humanity. No one doubted, though the war be finished early or late, that it would end as it began, in American victory. This was inevitable, for we had superior strength and the will to use it. We have in the United States and Spain, the Quick and the Dead of systems of government. This does not necessarily mean that the people of Spain are effete; that they are lacking in courage or energy or natural capacity, but that they have been misgoverned into a chronic condition of decadence that can be remedied only by the surgery of war, carrying with it a wholesome revolution. The Spanish Government is an antique despotism that has, in modern times, been tempered by violent changes—whirlpools that carried the turbid waters around old familiar circles—in which anarchy posed as republicanism. In contrast stands the United States, the only true republic, and because it is based in the broadest sense upon the people, its government of the people is stronger than any

shape of monarchy. The people of Spain have wasted their substance abroad, because they had not the vitality in their Peninsula to impart to continental colonies. Her ambition was great; her opportunity the greatest the world has seen, but her potentiality was inadequate to the improvement of her fortune, and she has fallen. We have the better part of the continent. Our growth has been a story, not only of the rapid increase of those whose ancestors were among the foremost to come to our shores, but a record of annexation and immigration. The time has come when we shall not find the surf along the borders of our oceans, lakes and gulf, an impenetrable barrier to restrain the further development of our dominions, but we already have the part of the continent that is best suited to our people, and are on good terms with our neighbors. We look out upon the great deeps that are about us and behold, the richest and fairest of the islands of the seas are falling into our hands like ripe fruit; and according to all precedents in our history we will be aided by all the lands we gain. Spain lost first her continental colonies. Her islands are now passing away. We, with the force of a continent reach out for the islands, and while the losses of Spain are her gain, the fact that we gather what she parts with will be to our advantage—this because of the power of our people and the stability of our Government. The strength of Spain will increase when she keeps her blood and her gold and silver at home. Our ability will augment by our investment in American islands and those that fall to us beyond the seas.

The President is of conservative tendencies, but his Americanism is too predominant to allow him to follow the precedents of the great statesmen who, with all their greatness, did not comprehend in its fulness our destiny and the

duties belonging to it. And so, when the battle of Manila was fought, and the Philippine islands were released from bondage to Spain, no one appreciated more keenly, or understood more comprehensively the requirement, that we should care for the goods committed to us, than the President, who immediately ordered twenty thousand men to proceed to Manila, thirteen thousand miles away, to make secure our standing in the Philippines. That done, the United States became an Asiatic power. We have but to confirm our title to a conquest so far away that it is east or west, according to the standpoint we occupy in surveying the situation. On the Atlantic, the western Pacific is east. On our Pacific coast, the Asiatic shores and islands are west. We front on two oceans, and it is the logic of our expansion that we should put a girdle around the earth.

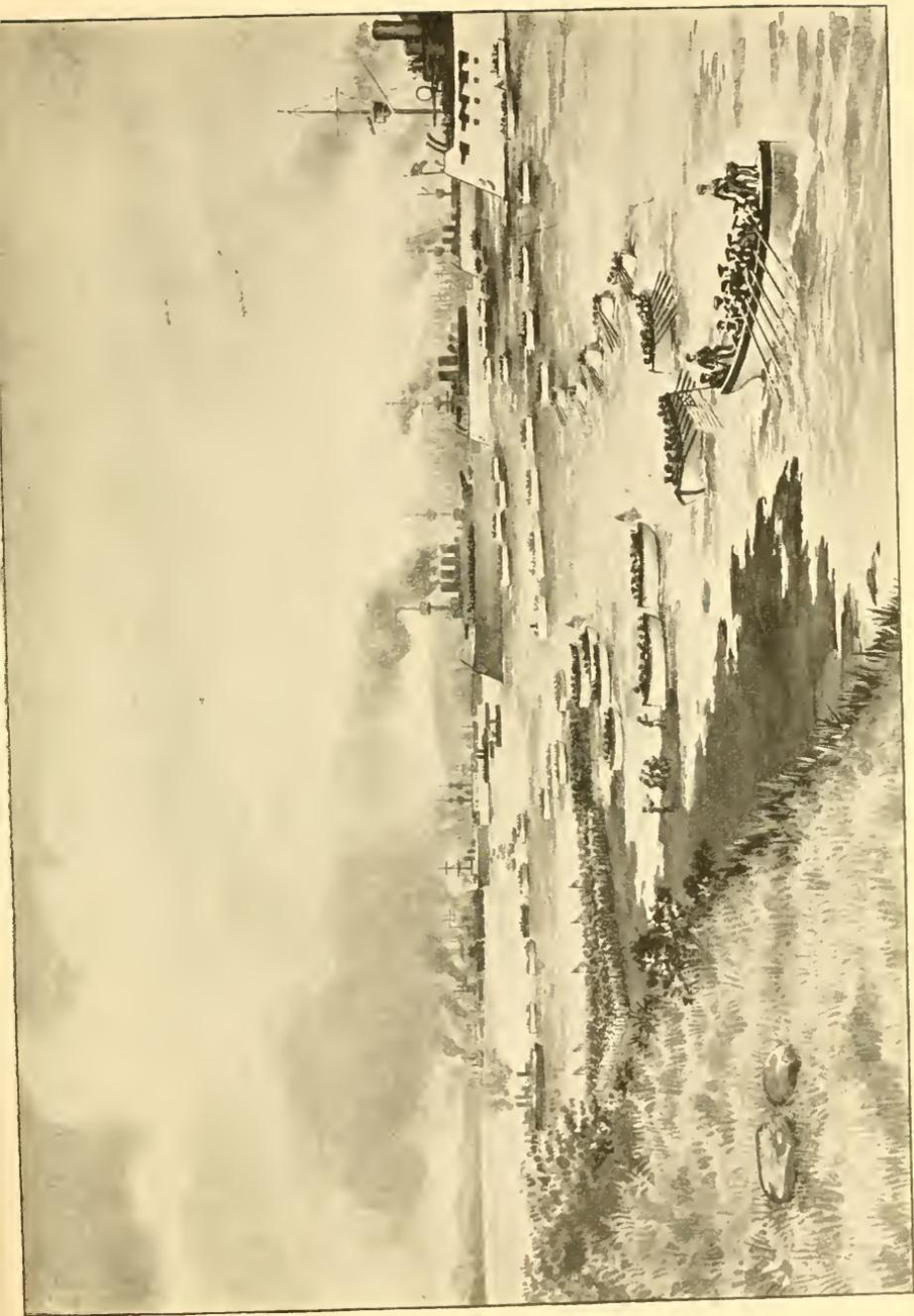
The anger of Spain toward us has long been stimulated by the knowledge that, our attraction was so great, Cuba must some time be ours by gravitation. There has been something magnetic in it. It has been a magnetism that all men have felt. The destiny of Cuba was long manifest. The phrase "manifest destiny" made a deep mark more than a generation ago. Spain resented it the more bitterly because the current of events, carrying Cuba away from her, was certain in its direction as that of the Gulf Stream. The passion of Spain has increased because she knew her helpless situation, yet she has desperately made a barbarous war upon her own children. It has been observed that in the letter of General Maximo Gomez, making proclamation of his gratitude toward the people and the President of the United States, he is particular, after all his well-chosen words, to claim for Cuba an independent nationality. He explicitly and studiously referred to "the

two nations." The old warrior was dreaming. It will not be in the heart or brain of the real people of Cuba to oppose the will of the American people. It will not be within their capacity, and is not any part of their purpose to obstruct the inevitable course of our progression. Those who would war against us for Cuban independence will be few and factional. The lone star of Cuba will take its place in our constellation as the lone star of Texas did. The Cuban people may long hold Gomez in kindly remembrance, notwithstanding the introduction of the torch into the war. The Cubans know that their cause was not helped by the San Domingo method of campaigning. Their greatest reverence, care and devotion will be found for the glory of the great republic. They will be proud to carry the flag and keep step to the music of the Union. They well know that order and liberty, peace and prosperity, are to be had and held only under the authoritative protection of the United States; and they will not desire a change of rulers, from more or less bloody despots, simply to enter into the control of military masters. Cuba will be Americanized as Texas and California were. That is the happiness of her fate. It is the logic of every struggle she has made for liberty. The war with Spain, for Cuba, had been threatening for decades. There may be certain persons claiming that they forced the war through schemes and incidents that they contrived or assisted to bring about, but this war of ours with Spain was in the air forty years ago.

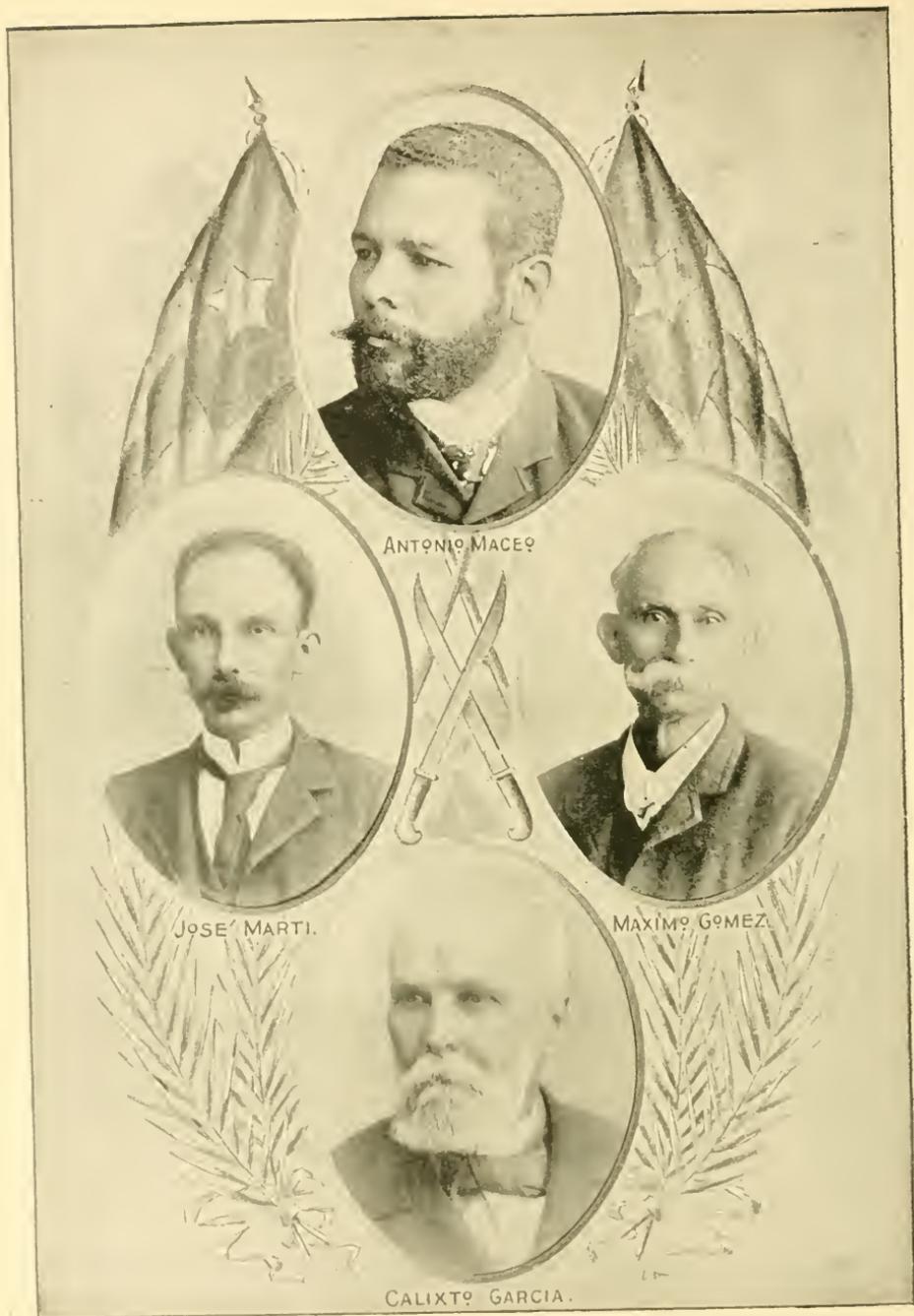
The possession of Cuba, by Spain, was unnatural, for the mother of the country had never cared for the child. The tropical children of the Spaniards have been treated as inferiors, and the idea that a native American is equal to a Spaniard is not only intolerable to the Spaniard—it is resented. This remark applies to all the colonies of Spain.

The grievances of the Cubans are not exceptional—Venezuela, Paraguay, Chili, Peru and Mexico suffered Spanish misrule as the Cubans have done, until the impositions became unbearable; and their evolution into independence and unto liberty was through cruel persecutions and merciless, treacherous, vindictive, persecuting wars. There has been no change of Spanish policy during the various changes of the government of Spain—little variation in methods, in the island, of the administrations, military and civil, of the representatives of the peninsula. Spain has not declined because she has lost her colonies on the continent—she had squandered their resources selfishly, and, at the same time, was impoverished. She was not the poorer because they were freed by force of arms. She was more unjust and corrupt abroad than at home, and hence they fell away as she declined. She lost neither honor nor riches when her colonies ceased to submit to her tyranny, which was of a degree so perverse, implacable and consuming as to be incapable of prosperity. There was no health in the system. Excess of greed was its own punishment. The ferocious profession of honor was a confession of discredit. If Spain, in the future, shall show progress and retrieve her fallen fortunes, it will be through parting with her colonies. Many causes have been assigned for her ruined state. The primary one was her abuse of the colonial system, which corrupted the government, demoralized the army and navy and the entire civil service, discouraging the people. The colonies became schools of tyranny and official dishonesty, ending in the loss of the continent, Cuba remaining a firebrand to kindle war with the United States.

The jealousy and resentment of Spain toward the United States, and the irritation of the United States at the misgovernment of Cuba, which increased with the poverty of



LANDING TROOPS AT SIBONEY.



THE LAST REVOLUTIONISTS OF SPANISH-AMERICA.

the peninsula and the riches of the island, due to her fertility of soil and variety of production, increased until, when the war of 1895 broke out, it was evident that the danger of open hostilities between the two nations had become imminent, and presently it was almost certain that there was an unfriendly crisis, ripening into an irrepressible conflict. The philosopher in the Senate of the United States, as the country was accepting the situation, was Mr. Hoar, of Massachusetts, and this utterance of the senator was the most striking expression of the more considerate sentiment of the people:

“If there have been any hasty or unwise utterances of impatience in such a cause as that, and I think there have been, they have been honest, brave, humane utterances. But when I enter upon this war I want to enter upon it with a united American people—President and Senate and House, and Army and Navy, and Democrat and Republican, all joining hands and all marching one way. I want to enter upon it with the sanction of international law, with the sympathy of all humane and liberty-loving nations, with the approval of our own consciences, and with a certainty of the applauding judgment of history.

“I confess I do not like to think of the genius of America, angry, snarling, shouting, screaming, kicking, clawing with her nails. I like rather to think of her in her august and serene beauty, inspired by a sentiment even toward her enemies, not of hate, but of love, perhaps a little pale in the cheek and a dangerous light in her eye, but with a smile on her lips as sure, determined, unerring, invincible as was the Archangel Michael when he struck down and trampled upon the Demon of Darkness.”

The President's message of April 11th was, in the beginning, a summary history of the causes of the war then not

declared, but in sight. The language of this paper is trenchant and almost peremptory, concluding :

“ I ask the Congress to authorize and empower the President to take measures to secure a full and final termination of hostilities between the Government of Spain and the people of Cuba, and to secure, in the island, the establishment of a stable government, capable of maintaining order and observing its international obligations, insuring peace and tranquillity and the security of its citizens as well as our own, and to use the military and naval forces of the United States as may be necessary for these purposes.

“ The issue is now with the Congress. It is a solemn responsibility. I have exhausted every effort to relieve the intolerable condition of affairs which is at our doors. Prepared to execute every obligation imposed upon me by the Constitution and the law, I await your action.”

The peculiar force of this call upon Congress is displayed when the early paragraphs in the message, reciting grievances are scanned as follows :

“ The present revolution is but the successor of other similar insurrections which have occurred in Cuba against the dominion of Spain, extending over a period of nearly half a century, each of which, during its progress, has subjected the United States to great effort and expense in enforcing its neutrality laws, caused enormous losses to American trade and commerce, caused irritation, annoyance, and disturbance among our citizens, and, by the exercise of cruel, barbarous and uncivilized practices of warfare, shocked the sensibilities and offended the humane sympathies of our people.

“ Since the present revolution began, in February, 1895, this country has seen the fertile domain at our threshold ravaged by fire and sword in the course of a struggle une-

qualed, in the history of the island and rarely paralleled as to the numbers of the combatants and the bitterness of the contest, by any revolution of modern times where a dependent people, striving to be free, have been opposed by the power of the sovereign state.

“Our people have beheld a once prosperous community reduced to comparative want, its lucrative commerce virtually paralyzed, its exceptional productiveness diminished, its fields laid waste, its mills in ruins, and its people perishing by tens of thousands from hunger and destitution. We have found ourselves constrained, in the observance of that strict neutrality which our laws enjoin, and which the law of nations commands, to police our own waters and watch our own seaports in prevention of any unlawful act in aid of the Cubans.

“Our trade has suffered; the capital invested by our citizens in Cuba has been largely lost, and the temper and forbearance of our people have been so sorely tried as to beget a perilous unrest among our own citizens which has inevitably found its expression, from time to time, in the National Legislature, so that issues wholly external to our own body politic engross attention and stand in the way of that close devotion to domestic advancement that becomes a self-contained commonwealth whose primal maxim has been the avoidance of all foreign entanglements.”

The President quoted his predecessors, Cleveland, Grant and Jackson, saying of Cleveland that he made an effort to bring about a peace through the mediation of this Government in any way that might tend to an honorable adjustment of the contest between Spain and her revolted colony, on the basis of some effective scheme of self-government for Cuba under the flag and sovereignty of Spain. It failed through the refusal of the Spanish Government then in

power to consider any form of mediation, or, indeed, any plan of settlement which did not begin with the actual submission of the insurgents to the mother country, and then only on such terms as Spain herself might see fit to grant. The war continued unabated.

General Grant's "measured words" were quoted, uttered in 1875, when after seven years of sanguinary, destructive, and cruel hostilities in Cuba he reached the conclusion that the recognition of the independence of Cuba was impracticable and indefensible; and that the recognition of belligerence was not warranted by the facts according to the tests of public law.

"I am of opinion that other nations will be compelled to assume the responsibility which devolves upon them, and to seriously consider the only remaining measures possible—mediation and intervention. Owing, perhaps, to the large expanse of water separating the island from the Peninsula, . . . the contending parties appear to have, within themselves, no depository of common confidence, to suggest wisdom when passion and excitement have their sway, and to assume the part of peacemaker."

Jackson was quoted—against the recognition, in 1836, of the independence of Texas:

"Prudence seems to dictate that we should still stand aloof and maintain our present attitude, if not until Mexico itself or one of the great foreign powers shall recognize the independence of the new government, at least, until the lapse of time or the course of events shall have proven beyond cavil or dispute, the ability of the people of that country to maintain their separate sovereignty and to uphold the government constituted by them. Neither of the contending parties can justly complain of this course. By pursuing it we are but carrying out the long-established

policy of our Government, a policy which has secured to us respect and influence abroad, and inspired confidence at home."

And yet Jackson finally influenced the recognition and annexation of Texas.

The reference to the blowing up of the '*Maine*' in the President's message on the eve of war must be presented here :

"The present condition of affairs in Cuba is a constant menace to our peace, and entails upon this Government an enormous expense. With such a conflict waged for years in an island so near us, and with which our people have such trade and business relations—when the lives and liberty of our citizens are in constant danger and their property destroyed and themselves ruined—where our trading vessels are liable to seizure and are seized at our very door by war ships of a foreign nation, the expeditions of filibustering that we are powerless to prevent altogether, and the irritating questions and disagreements thus arising—all these and others that I need not mention, with the resulting strained relations, are a constant menace to our peace, and compel us to keep on a semi-war footing with a nation with which we are at peace.

"These elements of danger and disorder, already pointed out, have been strikingly illustrated by a tragic event which has deeply and justly moved the American people. I have already transmitted to Congress the report of the naval court of inquiry on the destruction of the battleship '*Maine*' in the harbor of Havana during the night of the 15th of February. The destruction of that noble vessel has filled the national heart with inexpressible horror. Two hundred and fifty-eight brave sailors and marines, and two officers of our Navy, reposing in the

fancied security of a friendly harbor, have been hurled to death, grief and want brought to their homes, and sorrow to the nation.

“The naval court of inquiry, which, it is needless to say, commands the unqualified confidence of the Government, was unanimous in its conclusion that the destruction of the ‘*Maine*’ was caused by an exterior explosion, that of a submarine mine. It did not assume to place the responsibility. That remains to be fixed.

“In any event the destruction of the ‘*Maine*,’ by whatever exterior cause, is a patent and impressive proof of a state of things in Cuba that is intolerable. That condition is thus shown to be such that the Spanish Government can not assure safety and security to a vessel of the American Navy in the harbor of Havana on a mission of peace, and rightfully there.”

The steps by which the President kept pace with the movement of the situation were cautious, but firm. In the course of the Senate debate Senator Hoar read an extract of the “*London Times*” containing this passage :

“We cannot refuse our sympathy to the people of the United States in circumstances which would have made it difficult, even for our own countrymen, to preserve their boasted calm. We should have needed all our self-command to combine dignity with equity in such a trying position. It is bare justice to say that however inexcusable the language of some of the newspapers of the United States may have been, the attitude of President McKinley is equally dignified and fair.

“In this matter, whatever disagreements we may have had from time to time with our trans-Atlantic kinsmen, our sympathies are on their side. We share their grief at the loss under such cruel conditions of a noble vessel of war

and a gallant crew. We admire the patience and the reserve of a democratic government in circumstances of provocation, in the presence of public excitement which it would only have been too easy to fan into a flame.

Senator Hoar of this, remarked: "I affirm, and I challenge contradiction, that that sympathy and that expression of respect has been won for us largely, if not wholly, by the diplomatic bearing and conduct of the President of the United States in this emergency."

The President's message, transmitted to Congress April 25th, was as follows:

"To the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America ;

"I transmit to the Congress, for its consideration and appropriate action, copies of the correspondence recently had with the representative of Spain in the United States, with the United States Minister at Madrid, and through the latter with the Government of Spain, showing the action taken under the joint resolution approved April 20, 1898, 'for the recognition of the independence of the people of Cuba, demanding that the Government of Spain relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba, and to withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters, and directing the President of the United States to use the land and naval forces of the United States to carry these resolutions into effect.'

"Upon communicating to the Spanish Minister in Washington the demand which it became the duty of the Executive to address to the Government of Spain in obedience to said resolution, the minister asked for his passports and withdrew. The United States Minister at Madrid was in turn notified by the Spanish Minister for Foreign Affairs that the withdrawal of the Spanish representative from the United States had terminated diplomatic relations between the two countries, and that all official communications between their respective representatives ceased therewith.

"I commend to your special attention the note addressed to the United States Minister at Madrid by the Spanish Minister for Foreign Affairs on the 21st instant, whereby the foregoing notification was conveyed. It will be perceived therefrom that the Government of Spain, having cognizance of the joint resolution of the United States Congress, and in view of the things which the President is thereby required and authorized to do, responds by treating the reasonable demands of this Government as measures of hostility, following with that instant and complete severance of relations by its action, which by the usage of nations accompanies an existent state of war between sovereign powers

"The position of Spain being thus made known, and the demands of the United States being denied with a complete rupture of intercourse by the act of Spain, I have been constrained, in exercise of the power and authority conferred upon me by the joint resolution aforesaid, to proclaim under date of April 22, 1898, a blockade of certain ports of the north coast of Cuba, lying between Cardenas and Bahia Honda, and of the port of Cienfuegos on the south coast of Cuba; and further, in exercise of my constitutional powers and using the authority conferred upon me by the act of Congress approved April 22, 1898, to issue my proclamation dated April 23, 1898, calling forth volunteers in order to carry into effect the said resolution of April 20, 1898. Copies of these proclamations are hereto appended.

"In view of the measure so taken, and with a view to the adoption of such other measures as may be necessary to enable me to carry out the expressed will of the Congress of the United States in the premises, I now recommend to your honorable body the adoption of a joint resolution declaring that a state of war exists between the United States of America and the Kingdom of Spain, and I urge speedy action thereon to the end that the definition of the international status of the United States as a belligerent power may be made known, and the assertion of all its rights and the maintenance of all its duties in the conduct of a public war may be assured.

"WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

"EXECUTIVE MANSION,
Washington, April 25, 1898."

Congress acted immediately upon this recommendation and the war was on.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE CRISIS IN CUBAN AFFAIRS.

Congress Declares War—Reasons for the Patience of the President—Cause of the Impatience of Congress in Going to War with Spain—Scenes and Speeches in the Senate and House—Development of Public Opinion—The Order of the Proceedings, the Declaration of War, and the Executive Proclamations.

As the rainy season and the yellow fever period were at hand in Cuba, and the famished being fed, so far as American charity might go, the passionate outcry against delay meant something different from war as a well-considered and conducted business. It was the fate of the battle-ship *Maine* that raised the storm. The President's duty certainly was to exhaust his powers of diplomacy to make peace, and the few days permitted him for deliberation in the midst of excitement of the most intense character should not have been grudged him. His labor for pacification, though unsuccessful, were not without propitious results. Senator Hoar enumerated as among them the consideration of the public opinion of the country, reconciling all elements to the issue of arms, securing the respectful sympathy of the civilized powers, especially the goodwill power of England. This was worth some delay. There was a great deal of fine construction of the language of the President's message that was accompanied by the consular reports. All important passages were searched with refinement of criticism, sharpened with keen animosity in some cases, and the most contradictory and impossible theories encountered each other.

Senator Lodge said of the situation that there was first

the duty of unity of the government, of the people standing together; that the President had commendably exhausted his powers under the Constitution in pacific efforts, and when there was an end of diplomacy he turned the issue of an intolerable situation over to Congress, whose constitutional contact with foreign powers was the declaration of war; and it was the exercise of that awful power that the President's message invoked. Impatient as many Congressmen had been at the loss of a day in striking at the oppressors of Cuba, and avenging the horrible crime against humanity and national insult in the harbor of Havana, it was not possible to get along without debate. The methods of the House allow the majority to make short work of discussion, but in the Senate the case is widely different. The American Senate is the least controllable and most deliberative legislative body in the world. The series of able speeches in the Senate, by turns fiery, scholastic, persuasive, passionate and pathetic, aided in forming correct public opinion, and satisfying the conscience of the country that all sides of a great and most grave question were turned to the light, and all motives of action subjected to analysis. On the 13th of April the House, 334 to 19, resolved for immediate intervention as follows:

“WHEREAS, The government of Spain, for three years past, has been waging war on the island of Cuba against a revolution by the inhabitants thereof, without making any substantial progress toward the suppression of said revolution, and has conducted the warfare in a manner contrary to the laws of nations by methods inhuman and uncivilized, causing the death, by starvation, of more than two hundred thousand non-combatants, the victims being, for the most part, helpless women and children; inflicting intolerable injury to the commercial interests of the United States, involving the destruction of the lives and property of many of our citizens, entailing the expenditure of millions of money in patrolling our coasts and policing the high seas in order to maintain a neutrality; and

"WHEREAS, This long series of losses, injuries, and burdens for which Spain is responsible, has culminated in the destruction of the United States battle-ship 'Maine,' in the harbor of Havana, and in the death of 260 of our seamen,

"*Resolved, etc.,* That the President is hereby authorized and directed to intervene at once to stop the war in Cuba to the intent and purpose of securing permanent peace and order there, and establishing, by the free action of the people thereof, a stable and independent government of their own in the island of Cuba; and the President is hereby authorized and empowered to use the land and naval forces of the United States to execute the purpose of the resolution."

The vote against the resolution was cast by the following named members:

REPUBLICANS.—Representatives Boutelle, of Maine; Johnson, of Indiana; and Loud, of California.

DEMOCRATS.—Representatives Adamson, of Georgia; Bankhead, of Alabama; Brantley, of Georgia; Brewer, of Alabama; Clayton, of Alabama; Cox, of Tennessee; Elliott, of South Carolina; Griggs, of Georgia; Howard, of Georgia; Lewis, of Georgia; Lester, of Georgia; Maddox, of Georgia; Strait, of South Carolina; Tate, of Georgia; and Taylor, of Alabama.

POPULIST.—Representative Simpson, of Kansas.

The Democratic joint resolution defeated in the House, yeas 150, nays 191, was in these terms:

"*Resolved,* That the United States government hereby recognizes the independence of the Republic of Cuba.

"*Section 2.*—That, moved thereto by many considerations of humanity, of interest and of provocation, among which are the deliberate mooring of our battle-ship, the 'Maine,' over a submarine mine and its destruction in the harbor of Havana, the President of the United States be and is hereby directed to employ immediately the land and naval forces of the United States in aiding the Republic of Cuba to maintain the independence hereby recognized.

"*Section 3.*—That the President of the United States is hereby authorized and directed to extend immediate relief to the starving people of Cuba."

The Senate debate was on the following:

"WHEREAS, The abhorrent conditions which have existed for more than three years in the Island of Cuba, so near our own borders, have shocked the moral sense of the people of the United States, have been a disgrace to Christian civilization, culminating, as they have, in the destruction of a United States battle-ship, with 266 of its officers and crew, while on a friendly visit in the harbor of Havana, and cannot longer be endured, as has been set forth by the President of the United States in his message to Congress of April 11, 1898, upon which the action of Congress was invited; therefore,

"Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled—

"*First.*—That the people of the Island of Cuba are, and of right ought to be, free and independent.

"*Second.*—That it is the duty of the United States to demand, and the government of the United States does hereby demand, that the government of Spain at once relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba and withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters.

"*Third.*—That the President of the United States be, and he hereby is, directed and empowered to use the entire land and naval forces of the United States, and to call into the actual service of the United States the militia of the several States, to such extent as may be necessary to carry these resolutions into effect."

This is the report of the majority of the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations :

Senators Turpie, Mills and Daniel, Democrats, and Foraker, Republican, favored the immediate recognition of the independence of Cuba, but supported otherwise the action of the majority.

"It is established that the *Maine* was destroyed by the explosion of a submarine mine in position under her in a Spanish harbor, at a place where she had been moored to a buoy by the express direction and guidance of the Spanish authorities.

"The duplicity, perfidy and cruelty of the Spanish character, as they always have been, are demonstrated still to continue by their manifestations during the present war in Cuba. All these circumstances considered cumulatively, together with other considerations, which will exactly accord with and add force to them, undenied and unexplained as they are by any authority, excepting the baseless report of the Spanish Board of Inquiry, warrant the conclusion stated hereinbefore, that the destruction of the *Maine* was compassed either by the official act of the Spanish authorities (and the ascertainment of the particular person is not material), or was made possible by a negligence on their part so willing and gross as to be equivalent in culpability to positive criminal action.

"Upon due consideration of all the relevant facts of the relation of this government with Spain, including the destruction of the *Maine*, and of the history of the rebellion, it is the opinion of your committee that the United States ought at once to recognize the independence of the people of Cuba, and also ought to intervene to the end that the war and its unexampled atrocities shall cease, and that such independence shall become a settled political fact at the earliest possible moment by the establishment—by the free action of the

people of Cuba, when such action can be had—of a government independent in fact and form.”

The Senate Committee's report is a strong document. In one day there was news of the mobilization of the army, the impressment of the American steamers *St. Louis* and *St. Paul*, and the series of events in America culminating in the action of the House on intervention and the debate in the Senate, when the President invited the Congress to take the case, the only capacity in foreign relations under the Constitution of Congress, being to declare war, was the moral equivalent of that portentous declaration.

There were many express declarations of dissatisfaction in the debates in the Senate and House, with the conservative attitude of the President. Mr. Harris, Senator from Kansas, said, April 5th:

“Mr. President, all over this land there is the cry, ‘Why do you wait?’ and the flag snarls and flouts the wind, impatient.

“Oh, God, it can not be that we forget! that we forget!

“Sir, I have seen war. If to die were to reach the summit of human calamity, if to weep and mourn for the loved and lost were to make up the sum of human woe, then nothing would be worse than war. But, sir, there is a crucifixion of the soul when honor dies; there is a death of a nation ‘when the jingle of the guinea heals the hurt that honor feels;’ there is an existence, when patriotic pride is dead, ‘that doth murder sleep,’ and life becomes a horrid nightmare, and men shun their fellows, and the laugh of little children becomes a taunt and a mockery. True, there have been men who could exist and thrive and fatten without national honor or pride or patriotism, like worms in a muck heap, but that nation has been the scorned of all

time and has quickly died. God forbid that any such should ever be called Americans.

“Sir, I shall never consent that our dead shall lie in Spanish soil and under the Spanish flag. Brave American sailors can know no rest there. When it becomes consecrated by freedom, when that flag has trailed in the dust, when the Cuban Republic is raised as a monument to the men who went down in the *Maine*, then, and then only, will they sleep.

“Do you say this is revenge, and that revenge is unworthy of a great nation? No, Mr. President, a righteous wrath and just resentment, the swift punishment of the assassin and the wrongdoer, are wholly different from revenge, and are the safeguards and protection of a nation among nations, and enable us to look the whole world in the face. What sight more glorious than a nation roused in such a cause as this!

“God hates a coward, and a nation timid, halting, and hesitating in its foreign policy is a sight despised of God and man.”

Senator Rawlins said:

“For years our Government administration, our conduct in respect to the Cuban question, our relations to the kingdom of Spain, have been so cowardly and pusillanimous, so unworthy of any self-respecting people in this wide world, that the Spanish people are justified in holding us in contempt. Had it been that they respected and feared us, as they would fear and respect any other self-respecting government, our ship *Maine* would not have been treacherously destroyed and the bodies of our sailors would not have been mangled and lost. That crime must be charged to our indecision and cowardice.”

Mr. Bailey:

“The House was adjourned from Friday until to-day to give the President time and opportunity to prepare his message. The hour that such messages usually reach this House has passed, and every well-informed man on both sides of the House knows no message will come from the President to-day. Now, Mr. Speaker, it seems to me important that the country shall understand what Congress is doing and intends to do.

“It seems to me equally important that this House shall know what the executive department is doing and intends to do. We ought not to be asked day after day and week after week to provide for an emergency which gentlemen on that side believe has either passed or never existed. I am ready, and every gentleman on this side of the Chamber is ready, to sustain the Administration in every proper measure to prepare for war.”

MR. LENTZ: “We heard a gentleman on the other side of the House say, during this discussion, that the rainy season is coming on in Cuba, and that we ought ‘to be slow in going to war at this time!’ Mr. Chairman, I have never heard anybody say that we ought not to go to war because we are afraid of rain.

“This is a free country, and with the 447 Senators and Congressmen, representatives of a great people, we are better able to decide questions as to the policy of this Government in view of the facts before us, and are better fitted to advise the President, than are those who go at midnight, behind closed doors, to point out the views of the plutocrats and submit them as the voice of the people. This is a Government yet ‘by the people and for the people,’ and it will remain so.

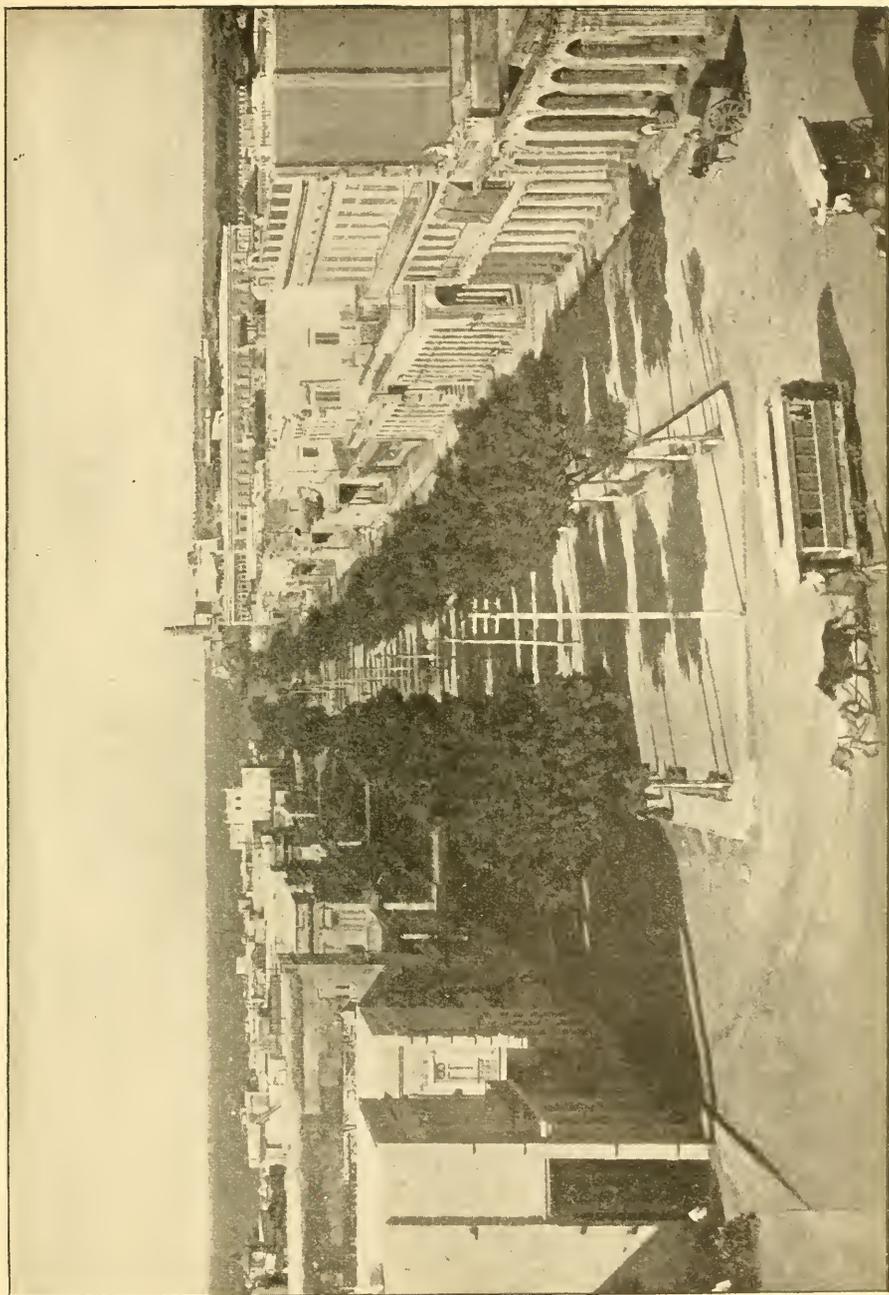
“I predict this, that these 266 American brothers, the martyrs of the Maine shall not forever rest unavenged in

the soil of a tyrant. Our American manhood—the youth of this country—will not rest until that matter has been adjusted to their satisfaction, and to the honor of this country. They will be aroused by the language of poets and philosophers, and a popular sentiment will override the hesitating and faltering policy of the money power.

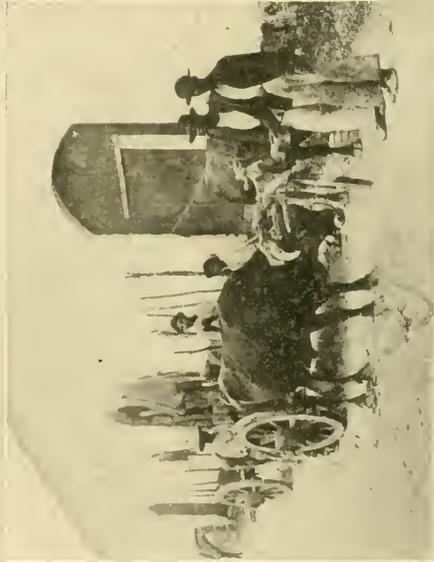
“Lee Fairchild’s words, published lately in the ‘Washington Times,’ will put new life in the youth of this country. Young men will begin to feel and think in sympathy with the stricken hearts of the mothers, the widows, and the sisters of this land who have been bereft of loved ones by this horror in Havana harbor, when they hear his noble words :

“We have a thousand guns; what did we make them for,
 If not in times like these to speak the speech of war?
 Let’s fight or quit our brag and take our banter back;
 Paint white our ships again, and paint our White House black.”

Senator Spooner had regretted utterances in the Senate and he added: “I have regretted them because I felt they might embarrass the President in delicate and difficult negotiations with a peculiar people. I have regretted them because I knew that if they could by any possibility, result in a rupture of diplomatic intercourse and precipitate war, we would be found unready. I have deprecated them in the Senate for another reason, that under our form of government this body sustains a peculiar relation to the President in the matter of foreign relations. He has the right, in stress, to come into this Chamber, to ask us to close our doors to the world, and permit him to take this body into his confidence, and to invoke its advice. This has been done once in a crisis since the Government was founded. And, therefore, it has seemed to me that here, of all places, he should be free from criticism and the embarrassment of either sensational or condemnatory speech.



HAVANA,—“THE PRADO.”



THE STREETS OF HAVANA.—OX TEAMS AND BULL RING.

REMEMBER THE MAINE.



THE "PURITAN" AT MATANZAS



“The President needs no defense from me. He has conducted the negotiations. I do not know what the correspondence is. I have the best of reason, however, to believe that his failure to transmit it was due to reasons which would commend themselves to every thoughtful person in this country.

“It is not easy to conceive a more difficult and burdensome duty than has under the Constitution rested upon him. He has been obliged to so conduct this negotiation as not only to satisfy his own great constituency, if possible, but with a view to commend this Government to the enlightened sentiment of the governing powers of the world. He has traveled, of necessity, the path of diplomacy alone, and I can well imagine it has been a long and wearisome journey. He has felt the pressure of public opinion here, stirred to its depths. It is to the eternal glory of our people, however, that, notwithstanding horrors unspeakable, they have maintained an attitude of dignity and calm, awaiting with intense feeling, but with wonderful patience, the march of events.

“The President has seen some old friends seem to fall away from him. He has heard the voice of criticism. Doubtless he has been stung by the tongue of slander. I do not know, for I have heard no word from him. I do know that, as an American President should, he has gone along the pathway calm, patient, intrepid to the end. There is not to-day in any court of Europe, so far as I know, except the Spanish court, a statesman, or a great newspaper who, or which has not applauded his firmness, his discretion, and the dignity of his demeanor in the midst of domestic excitement and Congressional impatience. This good opinion of our President is worth much to our people.

“The President has been criticised for the tone of his

message in regard to the *Maine*. It has been said that it was cold and passionless. The Chief Executive of seventy million people, conducting a case almost inevitably leading to war, must be passionless, must be calm. If he be not so in the surging tide of popular passion, what, then, is to become of a government by the people?

"I approved when that message was read, and I approve now, its spirit, its tone, and its language. The President was not called upon to denounce the Spanish Government as guilty of participating in the explosion of the *Maine*. It would have been the height of unwisdom. He could; and a rash man would have so done, have sent a message to Congress which would have broken off in a moment diplomatic relations and plunged this country into war. Were we ready? No, Mr. President! He knew then, we know now, and the people know now, that we were not ready. It was the President's duty to be calm and patient, even to temporize, that we might become prepared for war, and every hour preparations have gone forward under his direction."

Before coming to a vote on the Senate resolutions, Mr. Hoar gave the following objections to supporting them: We quote:

"Mr. Hoar; Mr. President, I cannot give my vote for this resolution upon its final passage for several reasons, which I desire to state.

"First. It contains an affirmation contrary to the fact when it affirms that the Republic of Cuba is now free and independent in the face of what I conceive to be the fact, in the face of the declaration, as I understand it, of the person high in command in the troops of the insurgents, who has declared he could prolong the struggle to obtain that independence for twelve years.

“Second. It undertakes to take from the Executive his constitutional power, power affirmed by every Executive from the beginning, a power affirmed by our great authorities on constitutional law from Alexander Hamilton down to the Senior Senator from Alabama [Mr. Morgan], who within three years, and I think also within three hours, has strongly reaffirmed that that power belongs to the Executive and cannot be constitutionally exercised by Congress.

“I cannot vote for the joint resolution because it introduces, and I believe was meant to introduce, discord and divided counsels in what ought to be the act of a united country.

“I cannot vote for it because it undertakes to direct, contrary to all our legislative precedents, a co-ordinate branch of the Government, the Executive, ordering him to proceed at once when his constitutional and legal duties are defined by the Constitution, and not by the law-making power.

“I cannot vote for it because it is contrary to the courtesies which prevail between the legislative and Executive, and undertakes to take from the discretion of the Executive what ought to belong to him under the Constitution itself.

“I will not vote for it because if it pass and the government of Cuba be now free and independent, the forces of the Army of the United States on Cuban land, and the Navy of the United States in Cuban waters, must be under the command of the insurgent leader, or their presence there is a war against him.

“Gentlemen have tried by refined and deluding arguments to torture a sentence of the President of the United States, separated from its context, into a suggestion that possibly he might be expecting to make war upon these insurgents. And yet, and you cannot escape from it, you are undertaking, in your eager passion, to do something

which will be unpleasant to those of your associates who support the President. You are making an affirmation, I repeat, which will put the Army and Navy of the United States under the command of Maximo Gomez the moment they get into Cuban waters or on to Cuban soil, or their presence there is war upon the recognized and established government of the country which you say is his.

"Sixth. I will not vote for it because it violates international law, and thereby in this great transaction sets the sympathy of the nations of the world against us.

"Mr. President, I am not alarmed or disturbed because in the vote I am about to give I am to encounter the dissent of an excited, inflated and angered majority."

In the Senate on April 16th the joint resolution was read the third time, as amended, as follows :

A joint resolution (H. Res. 233) authorizing and directing the President of the United States to intervene to stop the war in Cuba, and for the purpose of establishing a stable and independent government of the people therein.

Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, First. That the people of the Island of Cuba are, and of right ought to be, free and independent, and that the Government of the United States hereby recognizes the Republic of Cuba as the true and lawful Government of that island.

Second. That it is the duty of the United States to demand, and the Government of the United States does hereby demand, that the Government of Spain at once relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba and withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters.

Third. That the President of the United States be, and he hereby is, directed and empowered to use the entire land and naval forces of the United States, and to call into the actual service of the United States the militia of the several States, to such extent as may be necessary to carry these resolutions into effect.

Fourth. That the United States hereby disclaims any disposition or intention to exercise sovereignty, jurisdiction, or control over said island, except for the pacification thereof, and asserts its determination when that is accomplished to leave the government and control of the island to its people.

The VICE-PRESIDENT. The question is, Shall the joint resolution pass?

Mr. HOAR. I ask for the yeas and nays on the passage of the joint resolution.

The yeas and nays were ordered; and being taken, resulted—yeas 67,* nays 21.†

In the House, April 18th the Senate resolution was received. Mr. Dingley moved the House concur in the Senate amendment to House joint resolution No. 233 with an amendment striking out in the first paragraph the words “are and” and also the words “and that the Government of the United States hereby recognizes the Republic of Cuba as the true and lawful government of that island;” so that the first paragraph of said Senate amendment will read as follows:

“First. That the people of the Island of Cuba of right ought to be free and independent.”

[Applause.]

Also amend the title of said joint resolution by striking out the words “and Republic of Cuba.”

The SPEAKER. The question is on agreeing to the motion of the gentleman from Maine to concur in the Senate amendment with an amendment.

The question was taken; and the House proceeded to divide.

Mr. BAILEY. Mr. Speaker, I demand the yeas and nays. The yeas and nays were ordered.

* YEAS.—Allen, Bacon, Baker, Bate, Berry, Butler, Cannon, Carter, Chandler, Chilton, Clark, Clay, Cockrell, Cullom, Daniel, Davis, Deboe, Faulkner, Foraker, Frye, Gallinger, Gear, Gorman, Gray, Hansbrough, Harris, Heitfeld, Jones, Ark., Jones, Nev., Kenny, Kyle, Lindsay, Lodge, McEnery, McLaurin, Mallory, Mantle, Martin, Mason, Mills, Mitchell, Money, Morgau, Murphy, Nelson, Pasco, Penrose, Perkins, Pettigrew, Pettus, Proctor, Quay, Rawlins, Roach, Shoup, Smith, Stewart, Teller, Thurston, Tillman, Turley, Turner, Turpie, Vest, Warren, Wilson, Walcott.

† NAYS—Aldrich, Allison, Barrows, Caffery, Elkins, Fairbanks, Hale, Hanna, Hawley, Hoar, McBride, McMillan, Morrill, Platt, Conn., Platt, N. Y., Pritchard, Sewell, Spooner, Wellington, Wetmore, White. ABSENT.—Walthall.

The question was taken; and there were—yeas 178,*
nays 156,† answered “present” 2, ‡ not voting 19. §

* YEAS.—Acheson, Adams, Aldrich, Alexander, Arnold, Babcock, Baker, Md., Barham, Barney, Barrett, Barrows, Bartholdt, Beach, Belden, Belford, Belknap, Bennett, Bishop, Booze, Boutelle, Ill., Brewster, Broderick, Brownlow, Brumm, Bull, Burleigh, Burton, Butler, Cannon, Capron, Chickering, Clark, Iowa, Clarke, N. H., Cochrane, N. Y., Coddling, Connell, Connolly, Corliss, Cousins, Crump, Crumpacker, Curtis, Kans., Dalzell, Danford, Davenport, Davidson, Wis., Davison, Ky., Dayton, Dingley, Dolliver, Dovener, Eddy, Ellis, Evans, Faris, Fischer, Fletcher, Foote, Foss, Fowler, N. J., Gardner, Gibson, Gillet, N. Y., Gillett, Mass., Graff, Griffin, Grosvenor, Grout, Grow, Hager, Hamilton, Harmer, Hawley, Heatwole, Hemenway, Henderson, Henry, Conn., Henry, Ind., Hepburn, Hicks, Hilborn, Hill, Hooker, Hopkins, Howard, Ala., Howe, Howell, Hull, Hurley, Jenkins, Joy, Kerr, Ketcham, Kirkpatrick, Knox, Kulp, Lacey, Landis, Lawrence, Linney, Littauer, Loudenslager, Lovering, Low, Lybrand, McCall, McClary, McDonald, McEwan, McIntire, Mahon, Marsh, Mercer, Mesick, Miller, Mills, Minor, Mitchell, Moody, Morris, Mudd, Northway, Odell, Olmsted, Otjen, Overstreet, Packer, Pa., Parker, N. J., Payne, Pearce, Mo., Pearson, Perkins, Pitney, Prince, Pugh, Quigg, Ray, Reeves, Robbins, Royse, Russell, Shannon, Shattuc, Shelden, Sherman, Showalter, Smith, Ill., Smith, S. W., Smith, Wm., Alden, Snover, Southard, Southwick, Spalding, Sperry, Sprague, Steele, Stevens, Minn., Stewart, N. J., Stewart, Wis., Stone, C. W., Stone, W. A., Strode, Nebr., Sturtevant, Tawney, Tayler, Ohio, Thorp, Tongue, Updegraff, Van Voorhis, Walker, Mass., Walker, Va., Wanger, Ward, Weaver, Weymouth, Williams, Pa., Yost, Young, Pa.

† NAYS.—Adamson, Allen, Bailey, Baird, Baker, Ill., Ball, Bankhead, Barlow, Bartlett, Bell, Benner, Pa., Benton, Bland, Bodine, Botkin, Bradley, Brantley, Brenner, Ohio, Bromwell, Broussard, Brown, Brucker, Brundidge, Burke, Campbell, Carmack, Castle, Catchings, Clardy, Clark, Mo., Clayton, Cochran, Mo., Colson, Cooney, Cooper, Tex., Cooper, Wis., Cowherd, Cox, Cummings, Davey, Davis, De Armond, De Graffenreid, De Vries, Dinsmore, Dockery, Dorr, Driggs, Elliott, Ermentrout, Fitzgerald, Fitzpatrick, Fleming, Fowler, N. C., Fox, Gaines, Greene, Griffith, Griggs, Gunn, Handy, Hartman, Hay, Henry, Miss., Henry, Tex., Hinrichsen, Howard, Ga., Hunter, Jett, Johnson, Ind., Johnson, N. Dak., Jones, Va., Jones, Wash., Kelley, King, Kleberg, Knowles, Lamb, Lenham, Latimer, Lentz, Lester, Lewis, Ga., Lewis, Wash., Little, Livingston, Lloyd, Lorimer, Loud, Love, McClellan, McCormick, McCulloch, McDowell, McMillin, McRae, Maddox, Maguire, Mahany, Mann, Marshall, Martin, Maxwell, Meekison, Meyer, La., Miers, Ind., Moon, Newlands, Norton, Ohio, Norton, S. C., Ogden, Otey, Peters, Pierce, Tenn., Rhea, Richardson, Ridgely, Rixey, Robb, Robertson, La., Robinson, Ind., Sayers, Settle, Shafroth, Shuford, Simpson, Sims, Slayden, Smith, Ky., Sparkman, Stallings, Stark, Stephens, Tex., Stokes, Strowd, N. C., Sullivan, Sulloway, Sulzer, Sutherland, Swanson, Talbert, Tate, Taylor, Ala., Terry, Todd, Under-

So the motion to concur with an amendment was agreed to.

The President did not receive the resolutions declaring the Cuban conditions, until one o'clock the next day, and the language in which Congress would give its expression was not certainly known in a very important particular until the final vote was taken. Still it was held by some of the more ardent members that it was "delay" in the President not to attach his signature of approval the hour he received this paper. The next day in the Cabinet Room at twenty-four minutes after eleven o'clock, he took up the engrossed parchment, which was on the table before him, and wrote,

"Approved.

"WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

"April 20, 1898."

The silence was so deep that the sound of the pen was plainly heard.

As soon as the ultimatum had been approved, the President directed that it be transmitted at once to Minister Woodford and when the cipher copy, which Judge Day had prepared, had been despatched to the cable office, a summons was sent to Edward Savoy, a trusted messenger of the State Department. He appeared in a few minutes in the lobby outside of the Cabinet Room, and was handed a sealed envelope containing a copy of the ultimatum, being directed to present it to the Spanish Minister. Hastening to the Spanish Legation on Massachusetts avenue, he

wood, Vandiver, Vincent, Warner, Wheeler, Ala., Wheeler, Ky., White, Ill., Williams, Miss, Wilson, Young, Va., Zenor.

† ANSWERED "PRESENT."—Berry, Boutelle, Me.

‡ NOT VOTING.—Barber, Bingham, Brewer, Brosius, Cranford, Curtis, Iowa, Fenton, Hitt, Kitchin, McAleer, Osborne, Powers, Sauerhering, Skinner, Strait, Vehslage, Wadsworth, White, N. C., Wilber.

make known the personal nature of his mission and was immediately shown into the Minister's library. Senor Polo shook hands with him and then received the important missive.

While the messenger waited—the same messenger, by the way, who carried Lord Sackville his passports on another memorable occasion—the Spanish Minister glanced over the document, with the general nature of which he was already acquainted through the public press. Then he enclosed in another envelope his letter demanding his passports, and handed it to the messenger, who hurried with it to the White House.

LEGATION DE ESPANA, WASHINGTON, April 20, 1898.

MR. SECRETARY:—The resolution adopted by the Congress of the United States of America, and approved by the President, is of such a character that my permanence in Washington becomes impossible, and obliges me to request you the delivery of my passports.

The protection of the Spanish interests will be intrusted to the French Ambassador and to the Austrian-Hungarian Minister. On this occasion, very painful to me, I have the honor to renew to you the assurances of my highest consideration.

(Signed) LUIS POLO DE BERNABE.

HON. JOHN SHERMAN, Secretary of State, United States of America.

SEÑOR POLO'S PASSPORTS.

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, DEPARTMENT OF STATE.

To all to whom these presents shall come, Greeting :

Know ye, that the bearer hereof, Don Luis Polo y Bernabe, Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary of Spain to the United States, accompanied by his family and suite, is about to travel abroad.

These are therefore to request all officers of the United States or of any State thereof to permit him to pass freely without let or molestation, and to extend to him all friendly aid and protection in case of need.

In testimony whereof, I, John Sherman, Secretary of State of the United States of America, have hereunto set my hand and caused the seal of the Department of State to be affixed at Washington, this 20th day of April, A. D. 1898, and of the Independence of the United States of America, the one hundred and twenty-second.

On the following day the Pope received from the Queen Regent of Spain :

“I thank your holiness in my own name and that of the entire nation for your efforts in favor of peace, and I am all the more eager to make this expression of gratitude at this critical moment, when human passion and greed have gained the upper hand of the noble purposes of the vicar of Christ. If Providence has decreed to expose Spain to new trials, Spain is preparing with faith and tranquil conscience, aware that her sons will know how to die for her honor.” The letter concluded with a request from her majesty that she may be fortified by the prayers of the Pontiff.

The Official Gazette of Havana published on the 21st the manifesto following :

The General Government of the Island of Cuba to the inhabitants of the Island of Cuba :

Without any reason or legality, without the least offense on our part, and at a time when they have received from us only proofs of friendship, the United States are forcing us into war just at the moment when quietude began to settle over the country, when production was flourishing, commerce taking courage, and peace approaching, with the co-operation of all classes and all parties under the institutions granted by the mother country.

Such a proceeding is without precedent in history. It evidently manifests the bogus politics of the republic, demonstrating the tricky plans and purposes that have always been nourished against Spain's sovereignty in Cuba, which the enemy has been conspiring for nearly a century to destroy. Our foes now carry their hypocrisy and falsehood to the extent of demanding immediate peace in a war provoked and sustained by themselves. Her prudence and moderation have been of no avail to Spain, though she has carried her concessions to the extreme limit of toleration in order to avoid a rupture.

She still deplors this state of affairs, but she accepts it with all the energy inspired by a glorious national history and the pride of her people, a pride which will never yield to the stranger's haughtiness nor consent to see Spain's right and reason trampled upon by a nation of nobodies. If the United States want the Island of Cuba let them come and take it. Perhaps the hour is not far distant in which these Carthaginians of America will find their Zama in this Island of Cuba, which Spain discovered, peopled, and civilized, and which will never be anything but Spanish.

It is our turn to have the honor of defending her, and we will know how to do it with decision and an effort many a time put forth. I count upon you for this with absolute certainty. I believe there is no sacrifice you are not prepared to make in defense of the national territory, whose integrity is sacred to all Spaniards of whatever origin. I am sure that every one in whose veins runs Spanish blood will respond readily to the call which, in these solemn moments, I address to all, and that all will group themselves around me to contribute as much as they can to repel a foreign invasion, without allowing dangers, sufferings, or privations to weaken the heart of courage.

To arms, then, fellow-countrymen, to arms! There will be a place for all in the fight. Let all co-operate and contribute with the same firmness and enthusiasm to fight the eternal enemy of the Spanish name, emulating the exploits of our ancestors, who always exalted high their country's fame and honor. To arms! Cry a thousand times "Viva Espana," "Viva El Rey Alfonso XIII," "Viva La Regente," "Viva Cuba, always Spanish."

Your Governor General,

RAMON BLANCO.

Havana, April 21, 1898.

THE PRESIDENT'S BLOCKADE MESSAGE.

To the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America:

I transmit to the Congress for its consideration and appropriate action copies of correspondence recently had with the representative of Spain in the United States, with the United States Minister at Madrid, and through the latter with the government of Spain, showing the action taken under the joint resolution approved April 20, 1898, "for the recognition of the independence of Cuba, demanding that the government of Spain relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba, and withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters, and directing the President of the United States to use the land and naval forces of the United States to carry these resolutions into effect."

Upon communicating to the Spanish Minister in Washington the demand which it became the duty of the Executive to address to the government of Spain, in obedience to said resolution, the Minister asked for his passports and withdrew. The United States Minister at Madrid was in turn notified by the Spanish Minister for Foreign Affairs that the withdrawal of the Spanish representative from the United States had terminated diplomatic relations between the two countries, and that all official communications between the respective representatives ceased therewith.

I commend to your special attention the note addressed to the United States Minister at Madrid by the Spanish Minister for Foreign Affairs on the 21st instant, whereby the foregoing notification was conveyed. It will be perceived therefrom that the government of Spain, having cognizance of the joint resolution of the United States Congress, and in view of the things which the President was thereby required and authorized to do, responds by treating the

reasonable demands of this government as measures of hostility, following with that instant and complete severance of relations by its action which by the usage of nations accompanies an existent state of war between sovereign powers.

The position of Spain being thus made known and the demands of the United States being denied with a complete rupture of intercourse by the act of Spain, I have been constrained in exercise of the power and authority conferred upon me by the joint resolution aforesaid to proclaim under date of April 22, 1898, a blockade of certain ports of the north coast of Cuba lying between Cardenas and Bahia Honda and of the port of Cienfuegos on the south coast of Cuba; and, further, in exercise of my constitutional powers and using the authority conferred upon me by the act of Congress approved April 22, 1898, to issue my proclamation, dated April 23, 1898, calling forth volunteers in order to carry into effect the said resolution of April 20, 1898. Copies of these proclamations are hereto appended.

In view of the measures so taken, and with a view to the adoption of such other measures as may be necessary to enable me to carry out the expressed will of the Congress of the United States in the premises, I now recommend to your honorable body the adoption of a joint resolution declaring that a state of war exists between the United States of America and the kingdom of Spain, and I urge speedy action thereon to the end that the definition of the international status of the United States as a belligerent power may be made known and the assertion of all its rights and the maintenance of all its duties in the conduct of a public war may be assured.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

Executive Mansion, Washington, April 25, 1898.

PRESIDENT'S PROCLAMATION OF BLOCKADE AND CALL FOR TROOPS.

BY THE PRESIDENT.—A PROCLAMATION.

WHEREAS, by a joint resolution passed by the Congress and approved April 20, 1898, and communicated to the government of Spain, it was demanded that said government at once relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba, and withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters; and the President of the United States was directed and empowered to use the entire land and naval forces of the United States, and to call into the actual service of the United States the militia of the several States to such extent as might be necessary to carry said resolution into effect, and

WHEREAS, in carrying into effect said resolution, the President of the United States deems it necessary to set on foot and maintain a blockade of the north coast of Cuba, including all ports on said coast between Cardenas and Bahia Honda and the port of Cienfuegos, on the south coast of Cuba,

Now, therefore, I, William McKinley, President of the United States, in

order to enforce the said resolution, do hereby declare and proclaim that the United States of America have instituted and will maintain a blockade of the north coast of Cuba, including ports on said coast between Cardenas and Bahia Honda and the port of Cienfuegos on the south coast of Cuba, aforesaid, in pursuance of the laws of the United States and the law of nations applicable to such cases.

An efficient force will be posted so as to prevent the entrance and exit of vessels from the ports aforesaid. Any neutral vessel approaching any of said ports, or attempting to leave the same, without notice or knowledge of the establishment of such blockade, will be duly warned by the commander of the blockading forces, who will endorse on her register the fact and the date of such warning where such endorsement was made, and if the same vessel shall again attempt to enter any blockaded port she will be captured and sent to the nearest convenient port for such proceedings against her and her cargo as prize as may be deemed advisable.

Neutral vessels lying in any of said ports at the time of the establishment of such blockade will be allowed thirty days to issue therefrom.

In witness thereof I have hereunto set my hand and caused the seal of the United States to be affixed.

Done at the city of Washington, this 22d of April, A. D. 1898, and of the independence of the United States the one hundred and twenty-second.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

By the President.

JOHN SHERMAN, Secretary of State.

BY THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES.—A PROCLAMATION.

WHEREAS, a joint resolution of Congress was approved on the twentieth day of April, 1898, entitled, "Joint resolution for the recognition of the independence of the people of Cuba, demanding that the government of Spain relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba, and to withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters, and directing the President of the United States to use the land and naval forces of the United States to carry these resolutions into effect," and

WHEREAS, by an act of Congress entitled, "An act to provide for temporarily increasing the military establishment of the United States in time of war and for other purposes," approved April 22, 1898, the President is authorized, in order to raise a volunteer army, to issue his proclamation for volunteers to serve in the Army of the United States.

Now, therefore, I, William McKinley, President of the United States, by virtue of the power vested in me by the Constitution and the laws, and deeming sufficient occasion to exist, have thought fit to call forth, and hereby do call forth, volunteers to the aggregate number of 125,000, in order to carry into effect the purpose of the said resolution; the same to be apportioned, as far as practicable, among the several States and Territories and the District of Co-

lumbia, according to population, and to serve for two years ; unless sooner discharged. The details for this object will be immediately communicated to the proper authorities, through the War Department.

In witness whereof I have hereunto set my hand, and caused the Seal of the United States to be affixed.

Done at the City of Washington, this twenty-third day of April, A. D. 1898, and of the Independence of the United States the one hundred and twenty-second.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

By the President.

JOHN SHERMAN, Secretary of State.

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE BATTLE OF MANILA.

Commodore Dewey Receives Orders to Capture or Destroy the Spanish Fleet at Manila—Orders Immediately Carried Out—Spanish Squadron Annihilated—Manila, Capital of the Philippines, Blockaded—Thanks of the Nation Extended Through Congress to Commodore Dewey—His Promotion to Rank of Rear-Admiral—The Effect of Dewey's Victory in the Philippines—Their Future Ownership and the Anglo-American Alliance.

THE President's order through the Navy Department to make war upon the Spaniards in the Philippine Islands was cabled April 24th in these words :

“Washington, April 24th, 1898.

“Dewey, Hong Kong, China :

“War has commenced between the United States and Spain. Proceed at once to Philippine Islands. Commence operations at once, particularly against the Spanish fleet. You must capture vessels or destroy them. Use utmost endeavors. LONG.”

Dewey's report of his action appeared as follows :

“Manila, May 1.

“The squadron arrived at Manila at daybreak this morning. Immediately engaged the enemy and destroyed the following Spanish vessels: *Reina Cristina*, *Castilla*, *Ulloa*, *Isla de Cuba*, *Don Juan de Austria*, *Isla de Luzon*, *General Lezo*, the *Duero*, *Correo*, *Velasco*, *Mindanao*, one transport and the water battery at Cavite. The squadron is uninjured, and only a few men were slightly wounded. The only means of telegraphing is to the American consul at Hong-Kong. I shall communicate with him. DEWEY.”

“Cavite, May 4.

“I have taken possession of naval station at Cavite, on Philippine Islands. Have destroyed the fortifications at bay entrance, paroling garrison. I control bay completely, and can take city at any time. The squadron in excellent health and spirits. Spanish loss not fully known, but very heavy.

“One hundred and fifty killed, including captain of *Reina Cristina*. I am assisting in protecting Spanish sick and wounded. Two hundred and fifty sick and wounded in hospital within our lines. Much excitement at Manila. Will protect foreign residents. DEWEY.”

The thanks of the President, speaking for the American people, took this form :

“DEWEY, Manila :

“Washington, May 7.

“The President, in the name of the American people, thanks you and your officers and men for your splendid achievement and overwhelming victory. In recognition he has appointed you Acting-Admiral, and will recommend a vote of thanks to you by Congress as a foundation for further promotion.

LONG.”

Perhaps the best summary account of the first victory of the arms of the United States in collision with those of Spain is contained in the President's message to Congress on the 9th of May :

“*To the Congress of the United States :*

“On the 24th of April I directed the Secretary of the Navy to telegraph orders to Commodore George Dewey, of the United States Navy, commanding the Asiatic Squadron, then lying in the port of Hong-Kong, to proceed forthwith to the Philippine Islands, there to commence operations and engage the assembled Spanish fleet.

“Promptly obeying that order, the United States squadron, consisting of the flagship *Olympia*, *Baltimore*, *Raleigh*, *Boston*, *Concord* and *Petrel*, with the revenue cutter *McCulloch* as an auxiliary despatch boat, entered the harbor of Manila at daybreak on the 1st of May and immediately engaged the entire Spanish fleet of eleven ships, which were under the protection of the fire of the land forts. After a stubborn fight, in which the enemy suffered great loss, these vessels were destroyed or completely disabled and the water battery at Cavite silenced. Of our brave officers and men not one was lost and only eight injured, and those slightly. All of our ships escaped any serious damage.

“By the 4th of May Commodore Dewey had taken possession of the naval station at Cavite, destroying the fortifications there and at the entrance of the bay and paroling their garrisons. The waters of the bay are under his complete control. He has established hospitals within the American lines, where 250 of the Spanish sick and wounded are assisted and protected.

“The magnitude of this victory can hardly be measured by the ordinary standards of naval warfare. Outweighing any material advantage is the moral effect of this initial success. At this unsurpassed achievement the great heart of our nation throbs, not with boasting or with greed of conquest, but with deep gratitude that this triumph has come in a just cause, and that by the grace of God an effective step has thus been taken toward the attainment of the wished-for peace. To those whose skill, courage and devotion have won the fight, to the gallant commander and the brave officers and men who aided him, our country owes an incalculable debt.

"Feeling as our people feel, and speaking in their name, I at once sent a message to Commodore Dewey, thanking him and his officers and men for their splendid achievement and overwhelming victory, and informing him that I had appointed him an acting rear admiral.

"I now recommend that, following our national precedents and expressing the fervent gratitude of every patriotic heart, the thanks of Congress be given Acting Rear-Admiral George Dewey of the United States Navy for highly distinguished conduct in conflict with the enemy, and to the officers and men under his command for their gallantry in the destruction of the enemy's fleet and the capture of the enemy's fortifications in the Bay of Manila.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY."

"Executive Mansion, May 9, 1898."

Congress thanked Commodore Dewey and the officers and men of the squadron under his command, May 9th, by the unanimous adoption of this joint resolution ;

Resolved, By the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, That in pursuance of the recommendation of the President, made in accordance with the provisions of section 1,108 of the Revised Statutes, the thanks of Congress and of the American people are hereby tendered to Commodore George Dewey, U. S. N., commander-in-chief of the Asiatic station, for highly distinguished conduct in conflict with the enemy as displayed by him in the destruction of the Spanish fleet and batteries in the harbor of Manila, Philippine Islands, May 1, 1898.

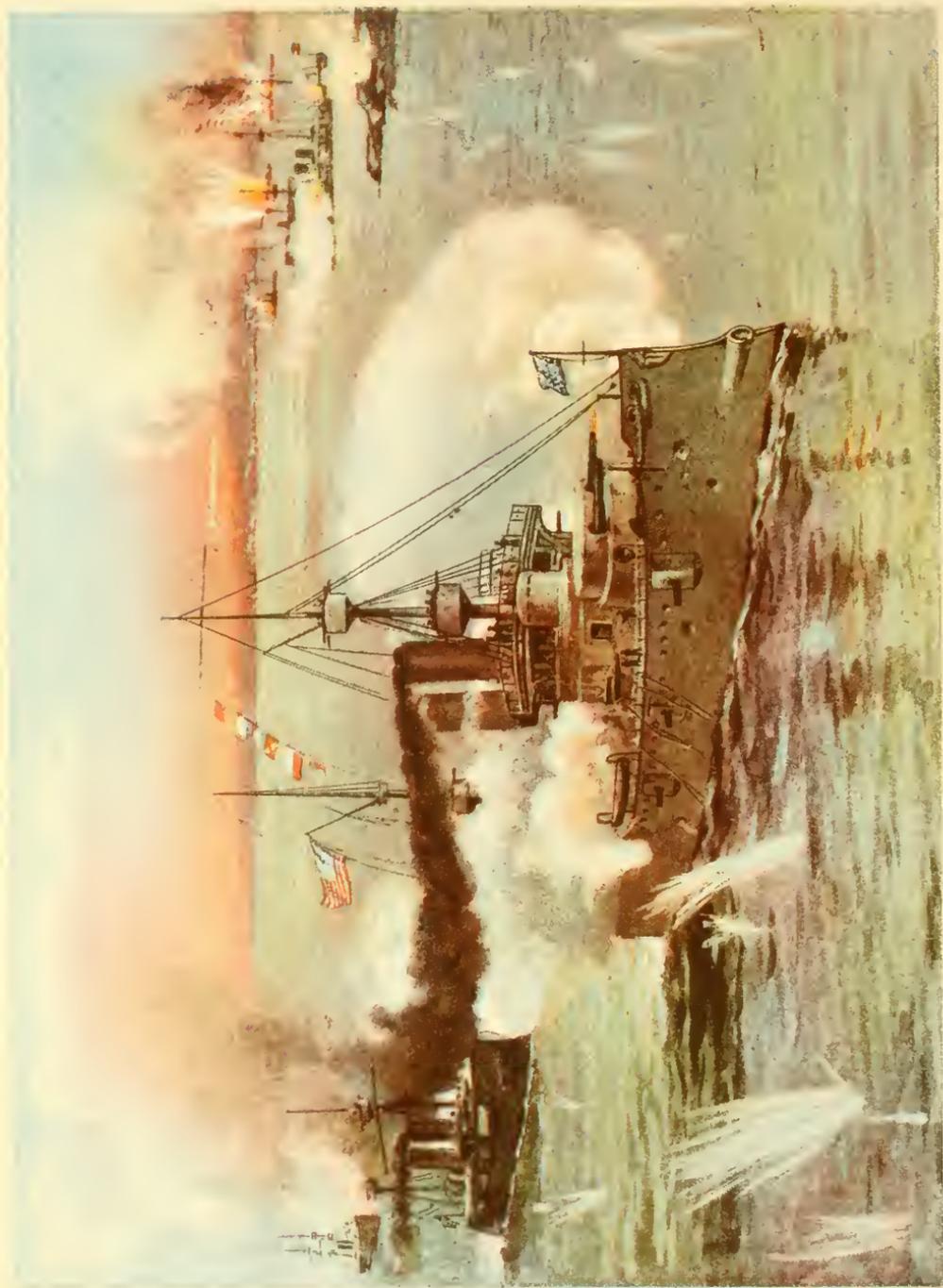
SECTION 2.—That the thanks of Congress and the American people are hereby extended through Commodore Dewey to the officers and men under his command for the gallantry and skill exhibited by them on that occasion.

SECTION 3.—Be it further resolved, That the President of the United States be requested to cause this resolution to be communicated to Commodore Dewey, and through him to the officers and men under his command."

As the only cable touching Manila was in the hands of the Spaniards, we had the first intelligence of the battle from the enemy. The governor of the Philippines telegraphed this report :

Madrid, May 1—8 P. M.—The following is the text of the official despatch from the Governor-General of the Philippines to the Minister of War, Lieutenant General Correa, as to the engagement off Manila :

"Last night, April 30th, the batteries at the entrance to the port announced the arrival of the enemy's squadron, forcing a passage under the obscurity of night. At daybreak the enemy took up positions, opening with a strong fire against Fort Cavite and the arsenal.



THE "OLYMPIA" AT MANILA

"Our fleet engaged the enemy in a brilliant combat, protected by the Cavite and Manila forts. They obliged the enemy, with heavy loss, to manœuvre repeatedly. At 9 o'clock the American squadron took refuge behind the foreign merchant shipping, on the east side of the bay.

"Our fleet, considering the enemy's superiority, naturally suffered a severe loss. The *Maria Cristina* is on fire, and another ship, believed to be the *Don Juan de Austria*, was blown up.

"There was considerable loss of life. Captain Cardzo, commanding the *Maria Cristina*, is among the killed. I cannot now give further details. The spirit of the army, navy and volunteers is excellent.

Midnight.—An official telegram, received at a late hour from the Governor-General of the Philippines, says: "Admiral Montejo has transferred his flag to the cruiser *Isla de Cuba* from the cruiser *Reina Maria Cristina*.

The *Reina Maria Cristina* was completely burned, as was also the cruiser *Castilla*, the other ships having to retire from the combat, and some being sunk to avoid their falling into the hands of the enemy."

The exaggerated but substantially fair celebration of the bravery of the Spaniards, in the despatches of the governor, did not in the least conceal the general fact that the Spanish squadron was destroyed, or obscure the splendor of the American victory. The triumph of our fleet was clearly, even according to the Spanish version, one of the most remarkable in the history of combats for the command of the seas. By universal acclaim the glory of Dewey was associated with that of Farragut and Nelson. The Copenhagen combat of Nelson while on a larger scale than the fight at Manila, was under conditions closely resembling the adventurous offensive of Dewey, though only partially successful. The battles of the Nile and Trafalgar were tremendous British victories, but the defeated fleets were not absolutely destroyed in either case. Farragut displayed address and daring in his remarkable achievements at New Orleans and Mobile, but his losses were severe both in men and ships. The good fortune of Admiral Dewey was almost unexampled. The highest faculties are shown in his handling of those wonderful fighting machines—modern men-of-war—in which engineering capacity has

been reputed to exceed, in the command of essentials, all the excellencies of seamanship.—The American commander at Manila was completely competent both as seaman and engineer, and was as facile in adroit manœuvres as dashing in assault and expert in management. Every man under the flag of the stars did his duty, and the marksmanship with our high power artillery was as perfect as that of the western riflemen at the battle of New Orleans. As Dewey could not control the cable he cut it and stopped the Spanish stories, so that there was a week of reserve and suspense, during which the American people brooded over the loss of life that it seemed certain their glory had cost them. It was strange to have been assured of complete success by the Spaniards and then painful to work upon the problem of probabilities in the dark silence that seemed sinister; and the air was charged with apprehensive rumor when the white light of the whole battle came from the East.

The "Washington Post" sketches a scene that will share in the enduring interest of the battle story.

"Assistant Secretary of State Cridler was asleep in his cot in the State Department when the watchman at the department rudely awakened and handed him a yellow envelope. He rubbed his eyes, tore open the envelope, and found within a cablegram. It read:

"DAY, Washington.

"*Mc Culloch*,

' HONGKONG, May 7.

"WILDMAN"

"It took but an instant for Mr. Cridler to realize that the little slip of paper which he held in his hand meant that communication between Manila and the outside world had been restored and that news from Commodore Dewey would soon follow. Instantly he notified the navy officials

and they gathered promptly at the department. It was nearly 10 o'clock, however, when Manager Marean, of the Western Union Telegraph Company, appeared with the sheets covered with combinations of strange words, bearing the Hong-Kong date. Unable to read it, Secretary Long at once turned it over to the cipher experts of the Navigation Bureau, who withdrew into their office and wisely locked the door. It was nearly 10.30 before Secretary Long, holding a copy of the despatch in his hand, appeared in the large reception room outside of his private office and proceeded to read to the assembled crowd the brief account which Commodore Dewey had forwarded.

“Assistant Secretary Roosevelt illustrated the engagement in his own manner. ‘I saw a prize-fight once,’ said he, where one man hit the other under the jaw as quick as lightning, and the fight was over in nine seconds. The man who was hit fell before he had seen his opponent raise an arm. Dewey must have made the same sort of a fight.’”

The details show the mighty magic of staunch ships manned with heroes, armed with guns wrought in tubes and carriages by matchless American mechanics, and arms of long range, smashing power and exquisite precision, aimed by trained and composed men who could “work logarithms under fire,” and as each bolt was launched with lightning and thunder on its deadly errand, remembered the *Maine* forty-six days before.

The good fortune of Admiral Dewey at Manila included the presence of a historian, who had the grit to stand on the bridge with the commander himself. We refer to the correspondent of the *New York Herald*, Mr. Joseph L. Stickney, formerly a naval officer. We present Mr. Stickney's *Herald* despatches, cabled from Hong-Kong, and worthy the occasion.

"MANILA, Philippine Islands, on Board the Flagship *Olympia*, May 1st (via Hong Kong, May 7th).—Not one Spanish flag flies in Manila Bay to-day. Not one Spanish warship floats except as our prize.

"More than 200 Spanish dead and 500 to 700 wounded attest to the accuracy of the American fire.

"Commodore Dewey attacked the Spanish position at Cavite this morning. He swept five times along the line and scored one of the most brilliant successes in modern warfare.

"That our loss is trifling adds to the pleasure of victory without detracting from its value. The number of hits our vessels received proved how brave and stubborn was the defence made by the Spanish forces.

"Miraculous as it may appear, none of our men were killed and only eight were wounded. Those who were wounded suffered only slight injuries.

"It was just 8 o'clock, a bright moonlight night, when the flagship passed Corregidor Island without a sign being given that the Spaniards were aware of its approach.

"Not until the flagship was a mile beyond Corregidor was a gun fired. Then one heavy shot went screaming over the *Raleigh* and the *Olympia*, followed by a second, which fell far astern.

"The *Raleigh*, the *Concord* and the *Boston* replied. The *Concord's* shells exploding, apparently, exactly inside the shore battery, which fired no more. Our squadron slowed down to barely steerage way and the men were allowed to sleep alongside their guns.

"Commodore Dewey had timed our arrival so that we were within five miles of the city of Manila at daybreak.

"We then sighted the Spanish squadron, Rear-Admiral Montejó, commanding, off Cavite (pronounced Kahveetay, with accent on the 'vee'). Here the Spaniards had a well-equipped navy yard called Cavite arsenal.

"Admiral Montejó's flag was flying on the 3,500 ton protected cruiser *Reina Cristina*. The protected cruiser *Castilla*, of 3,200 tons, was moored ahead, and astern to the port battery, and to seaward were the cruisers *Don Juan de Austria*, *Don Antonio de Ulloa*, *Isla de Cuba*, *Isla de Luzon*, *Quiros*, *Marquis del Duero* and *General Lezo*. These ships and the flagship remained under way during most of the action.

"With the United States flag flying at all their mastheads, our ships moved to the attack in line ahead, with a speed of eight knots, first passing in front of Manila, where the action was begun by three batteries mounting guns powerful enough to send a shell over us at a distance of five miles.

"The *Concord's* guns boomed out a reply to these batteries with two shots. No more were fired, because Commodore Dewey could not engage with these batteries without sending death and destruction into the crowded city.

"As we neared Cavite two very powerful submarine mines were exploded ahead of the flagship. This was at six minutes past 5 o'clock.

"The Spaniards evidently had misjudged our position. Immense volumes

of water were thrown high in the air by these destroyers, but no harm was done to our ships.

"Commodore Dewey had fought with Farragut at New Orleans and Mobile Bay, where he had his first experience with torpedoes. Not knowing how many more mines there might be ahead, he still kept on without faltering. No other mines exploded, however, and it is believed that the Spaniards had only these two in place.

"Only a few minutes later the shore battery at Cavite point sent over the flagship a shot that nearly hit the battery in Manila, but soon the guns got a better range and the shells began to strike near us or burst close aboard from both the batteries and the Spanish vessels.

"The heat was intense. Men stripped off all clothing except their trousers.

"As the *Olympia* drew nearer all was as silent on board as if the ship had been empty, except for the whir of the blowers and the throb of the engines.

"Suddenly a shell burst directly over us.

"From the boatswain's mate at the after five-inch gun came a hoarse cry. 'Remember the *Maine!*' arose from the throats of 500 men at the guns.

"This watchword was caught up in turrets and fire rooms, wherever seaman or fireman stood at his post.

"'Remember the *Maine!*' had rung out for defiance and revenge. Its utterance seemed unpremeditated, but was evidently in every man's mind, and now that the moment had come to make adequate reply to the killing of the *Maine's* crew every man shouted what was in his heart.

"The *Olympia* was now ready to begin the fight.

"Commodore Dewey, his chief of staff, Commander Lamberton, an aid and myself, with Executive Officer Lieutenant Rees and Navigator Lieutenant Calkins, who conned ship most admirably, were on the forward bridge. Captain Gridley was in the conning tower, as it was thought unsafe to risk losing all the senior officers by one shell.

"'You may fire when ready, Gridley,' said the Commodore, and at nineteen minutes of 6 o'clock, at a distance of 5,500 yards, the starboard eight-inch gun in the forward turret roared forth a compliment to the Spanish forts. Presently similar guns from the *Baltimore* and the *Boston* sent 250-pound shells toward the *Castilla* and the *Reina Cristina* for accuracy.

"The Spaniards seemed encouraged to fire faster, knowing exactly our distance, while we had to guess theirs. Their ship and shore guns were making things hot for us.

"The piercing scream of shot was varied often by the bursting of time-fuse shells, fragments of which would lash the water like shrapnel or cut our hull and rigging.

"One large shell that was coming straight at the *Olympia's* forward bridge fortunately fell within less than 100 feet away. A fragment cut the rigging exactly over the heads of Lamberton, Rees and myself.

"Another struck the bridge gratings in line with it. A third passed just

under Commodore Dewey and gouged a hole in the deck. Incidents like these were plentiful.

"Our men naturally chafed at being exposed without returning fire from all our guns, but laughed at danger and chatted good-humoredly. A few nervous fellows could not help dodging mechanically when shells would burst right over them or close aboard, or would strike the water and pass overhead, with the peculiar spluttering roar made by a tumbling rifled projectile.

"Still the flagship steered for the centre of the Spanish line, and, as our other ships were astern, the *Olympia* received most of the Spaniards' attention.

"Owing to our deep draught, Commodore Dewey felt constrained to change his course at a distance of 4,000 yards and run parallel to the Spanish column. 'Open with all guns,' he said, and the ship brought her port broadside bearing.

"The roar of the flagship's five-inch rapid-firers was followed by a deep diapason of her after turret eight-inchers. Soon our other vessels were equally hard at work, and we could see that our shells were making Cavite harbor hotter for the Spaniards than they had made the approach for us.

"Protected by their shore batteries and made safe from close attack by shallow water, the Spaniards were in a strong position. They put up a gallant fight. The Spanish ships were sailing back and forth behind the *Castilla*, and their fire, too, was hot.

"One shot struck the *Baltimore* and passed clear through her, fortunately hitting no one. Another ripped up her main deck, disabled a six-inch gun and exploded a box of three-pounder ammunition, wounding eight men.

"The *Olympia* was struck abreast the gun in the ward room by a shell which burst outside, doing little damage.

"The signal halyards were cut from Lieutenant Brumby's hand on the after bridge. A shell entered the *Boston's* port quarter and burst in Ensign Dodge's state room, starting a hot fire, and fire was also caused by a shell which burst in the port hammock netting. Both these fires were quickly put out.

"Another shell passed through the *Boston's* foremast just in front of Captain Wildes, on the bridge.

"After having made four runs along the Spanish line, finding the chart incorrect, Lieutenant Calkin's, the *Olympia's* navigator, told the Commodore he believed he could take the ship nearer the enemy, with a lead going to watch the depth of water. The flagship started over the course for the fifth time, running within 2,000 yards of the Spanish vessels.

"At this range even six-pounders were effective, and the storm of shells poured upon the unfortunate Spanish began to show marked results.

"Three of the enemy's vessels were seen burning and their fire slackened.

"On finishing this run Commodore Dewey decided to give the men breakfast, as they had been at the guns two hours, with only one cup of coffee to sustain them. Action ceased temporarily at twenty-five minutes of 8 o'clock, the other ships passing the flagship and cheering lustily.

"Our ships remained beyond range of the enemy's guns until ten minutes of

11 o'clock, when the signal for close action again went up. The *Baltimore* had the place of honor in the lead, with the flagship following and the other ships as before.

"The *Baltimore* began firing at the Spanish ships and batteries at sixteen minutes past 11 o'clock, making a series of hits as if at target practice. The Spaniards replied slowly, and the Commodore signaled the *Raleigh*, the *Boston*, the *Concord* and the *Petrel* to go into the inner harbor and destroy all the enemy's ships.

"By her light draught the little *Petrel* was enabled to move within 1,000 yards. Here, firing swiftly but accurately, she commanded everything still flying the Spanish flag.

"Other ships were also doing their whole duty, and soon not one red and yellow ensign remained aloft, except on a battery up the coast. The Spanish flagship and the *Castilla* had long been burning fiercely, and the last vessel to be abandoned was the *Don Antonio de Ulloa*, which lurched over and sank.

"Then the Spanish flag on the arsenal staff was hauled down, and at half-past 12 o'clock a white flag was hoisted there. Signal was made to the *Petrel* to destroy all the vessels in the inner harbor, and Lieutenant Hughes, with an armed boat's crew, set fire to the *Don Juan de Austria*, *Marquis Duero*, the *Isla de Cuba* and the *Correo*.

"The large transport *Manila* and many tugboats and small craft fell into our hands.

"'Capture or destroy Spanish squadron,' were Dewey's orders. Never were instructions more effectually carried out. Within seven hours after arriving on the scene of action nothing remained to be done."

Supplementary to the original report, Mr. Stickney furnished the following details, painting the glorious historical picture for immortality.

"HONG-KONG, Sunday.—Early in the morning of Monday, the day after the battle in Manila Bay, Commander Lamberton and myself were ordered to go to the Cavite arsenal and take possession.

"The *Petrel* took us within 500 yards of the landing, when we were surprised to see that the arsenal was still occupied by about 800 seamen, armed with Mauser magazine rifles.

"As a white flag had been hoisted on the arsenal the day before, Commander Lamberton could not understand what the Spaniards intended to do, and before leaving the *Petrel* he ordered Commander Wood to keep his men at the guns with directions that if we were not back in one hour he should open fire on the arsenal.

"On landing we were met by Captain Sostoa of the Spanish navy, next in rank at this station to Admiral Montejo, who had been wounded and conveyed to Manila.

"Commander Lamberton, Lieutenant Wood of the *Petrel* and myself went with Captain Sostoa to the arsenal headquarters, which was at once surrounded by an armed guard.

"Commander Lamberton told Captain Sostoa that he was surprised to see his men under arms, after they had surrendered the day before.

"Captain Sostoa replied that they had not surrendered, but had merely hoisted the white flag in order to enable them to remove women and children to places of safety.

"Commander Lamberton said that when the Spanish flag came down and the white flag went up no other interpretation could be put upon it than that it was an unconditional surrender, and the women and children ought not to have been there anyhow.

"Captain Sostoa remarked that we came so early in the day they had no time to remove them. If we had not begun the fight so soon the women would have been out of the way.

"Commander Lamberton reminded him that the Spaniards had fired the first shot. However, he added, he was not there to discuss past events. He had come, as Commodore Dewey's representative, to take possession of the arsenal. All Spaniards there, he said, must surrender their arms and persons as prisoners of war, otherwise our ships would open fire on them.

"Then Captain Sostoa said he could do nothing, not being in command, and would have to consult his superiors.

"Commander Lamberton refused to recognize any one but the senior officer actually present, who, he said, must comply with Commodore Dewey's conditions.

"Captain Sostoa asked to have the terms of surrender put down in writing, which was done, these being the conditions:

"Without further delay all Spanish officers and men must be withdrawn, and no buildings or stores must be injured. As Commodore Dewey does not wish further hostility with the Spanish naval forces, the Spanish officers will be paroled, and the forces at the arsenal will deliver all their small arms.

"Captain Sostoa then pleaded for more time. The talk had all been in Spanish, and the time when Commander Wood was to open fire was already nearly up. Consequently, Commander Lamberton gave the Spaniards two hours' time.

"If the white flag was not rehoisted over the arsenal at noon, he said, we should re-open fire.

"We returned to the *Petrel* just in time and started back across the bay to report to the commodore.

"At a quarter to 11 o'clock the white flag was hoisted, but when we went to take possession of the arsenal in the afternoon we found that every seaman had marched off to Manila, carrying his Mauser rifle with him.

"Having learned that evening that the governor of Manila had refused to let the cable company transmit our messages, Commodore Dewey sent the mer-

chant steamer *Zafiro* a short distance down the bay and had her cut the cable.

"Having no instruments for working a cable, we could not keep up communication, and the governor would not let the cable company send its operators to our ships.

"No one can complain that Commodore Dewey has been slow in finishing off his work, but he would have done it even sooner but for an accident to one of the Raleigh's pumps, which detained him in Mirs Bay two days, and also the slow speed of which transport vessels are capable.

"But for these delays the Spanish ships would have been destroyed on Thursday, instead of Sunday, as in all other respects Commodore Dewey's plans were complete.

"During the passage of the forts at the entrance of Manila Bay on Saturday night Frank B. Randall, chief engineer of the revenue cutter *McCulloch*, died suddenly from heat and prostration. He was buried at sea the next day.

"Although the *McCulloch* was of no value as a fighting machine Commodore Dewey several times made use of her to overhaul sailing craft.

"She kept at a safe distance from the scene of action on Sunday, but went down the bay to meet the English merchant steamer *Esmeralda*, which was coming in, and made an excellent record for speed as a despatch boat while bringing us over to Hong-Kong on Thursday.

"As soon as the natives ashore learned that the Spaniards had been driven out of Cavite they began coming in crowds to pillage. Finally, they became so bold as to attack the hospital, and it was necessary either to send a guard of American seamen to protect the wounded or transfer them to Manila. The latter was done on Wednesday, Commodore Dewey utilizing captured steamers for this duty.

"All the houses of Spaniards in the town of San Roque, near Cavite, were absolutely gutted by the natives, who even ventured into the arsenal and carried off many boat-loads of furniture and stores before the marine guard was posted at the gates.

"The Spanish defeat was advertised for miles away by the ships burning in Cavite Bay. The *Castilla*, which was set on fire in Sunday morning's battle, was a magnificent mass of flames twelve hours later, and continued to burn all night, with brilliant intensity.

"I boarded the *Don Juan de Austria*, *Isla de Luzon* and *Marquis del Duero* while they were still burning. I found them fitted up with fine Canet rapid-fire guns and most of the modern improvements.

"I did not discover until after we had spent the afternoon in their vicinity that all their large guns had been left loaded with powder and shell, making them peculiarly dangerous to small boats.

"The guns generally laid level just above the surface of the water. As several of them were pointed at the arsenal, their charges were first drawn, then 'drowned,' as the fire might reach them at any moment.

"When our ships drew away for breakfast on Sunday morning the temper of the men was well illustrated by the almost tearful appeal of one gun captain to Commander Lamberton :

"'For God's sake, captain, don't stop now! Let's finish 'em up right off. To hell with breakfast!'

"'Old Purdy,' a privileged petty officer, because he has served in the navy or army nearly fifty years, was greeted by the commodore on Saturday, when the old man 'shifted his quid' and said :

"'I hope you won't fight on the third of May, commodore.'

"'Why not?' asked Commodore Dewey.

"'Well, you see,' the old man answered, 'I got licked last time I fought on that date.'

"Purdy had been with Hooker at Chancellorsville, and he did not like that anniversary.

"All our men suffered greatly from the heat during the action, for they were shut up below, with furnaces blazing and the tropical sun pouring down its heat rays. Probably several of the men would have succumbed but for the excitement of battle.

"Eighty Spanish bodies were found unburied on Monday night, and we gave them burial on Tuesday morning, calling in a Roman Catholic priest to read the burial service over their remains.

"The bodies presented a horrible sight. One had the head almost wholly carried away. Another had been struck in the stomach by a large projectile, cutting everything away to the backbone.

"One very large man, apparently an officer, was not only mangled, but burned, and all the bodies were frightfully bloated.

"To add to the horror of the scene several lean wolf-like dogs had discovered the bodies before we had.

"Probably there are nowhere a more interested or more thoroughly happy set of persons than the group of wives of American naval officers who have been living in Hong Kong in order to be near their husbands.

"Having heard little news, except alarming rumors, since the squadron left here, they are now recovering their normal serenity, with the certainty that their husbands are safe. There are about a dozen of these officers' wives forming a little navy colony here.

"The more I recall the events of last Sunday's battle at Manila, the more miraculous it seems that no American lost his life.

"The shell that entered the Boston's ward-room was going straight for Paymaster Martin, when it exploded within five feet of him, yet he was not touched.

"Aboard the *Olympia* the surgeon's operating table was placed in the ward-room. Chaplain Frazier, who was assisting the surgeon, had his head out of one of the six-pounder gun ports, when a shell struck the ship's side, less than a yard away. The chaplain pulled his head in just in time to escape having it blown off, as the shell instantly burst.

“Three fragments of one shell struck the *Olympia* within a radius of fifteen feet from Commodore Dewey.

“The armor piercing projectile that exploded the box of three-pounder ammunition on board the *Baltimore* passed between two groups of men, so close to both that it is difficult to see how all escaped.

“If the Spaniards had properly prepared for our coming they would have killed many of our men, but they had not intended to make their fight at Cavite.

“Among other official papers captured in Admiral Montejo's office was his acknowledgment of the receipt of the decision of the council of war officers to mass his guns and ships at Subig Bay, where much better conditions for defence existed. This was prevented only by Commodore Dewey's prompt action. A few days would have sufficed to remove all their guns and ships to Subig Bay, where there is a narrow entrance and the water is shoal, and a plunging fire from the shore would have made victory very difficult for us to attain.

“As I have already stated, after the destruction of the enemy's ships and fortifications and the battle was over, Commodore Dewey anchored the fleet off the city of Manila and sent word to Governor-General Augusti that the port of Manila was now blockaded.

“With this notice went the plainly worded warning that if a single shot were fired at any ship of the American fleet from Manila the city would be laid in ashes.

“Commodore Dewey also made a demand for the use of the cable from Manila to Hong Kong. No reply to this demand was received, and the cable was cut on Monday.

“Never in the history of battles on sea or land has there been a more complete clearing out of an enemy of equal or superior force achieved with so little harm to the victors.

“Not one American was killed. After the battle every American ship was ready to fight another similar action immediately.

“This complete victory was the product of forethought, cool, well-balanced judgment, discipline and bravery.

“The position taken by the Spaniards, coupled with their heavy guns mounted on shore, gave them an enormous advantage. Only our good luck or the bad aim of the Spanish gunners saved us from a terrible loss of life.

“Where every vessel in the American fleet proved itself so efficient I cannot draw distinctions, but when the ships passed each other, close aboard after the action was over, the heartiest cheers heard after those for the commodore were given to the little gunboat *Petrel*.

“During the first hour of the fight a Spanish torpedo boat was seen sneaking along shore ahead of the *Olympia*. Suddenly this torpedo boat turned and made a quick and plucky dash at the flagship.

“The commander of that Spanish craft must have been ignorant of the power of modern guns or utterly indifferent to death.

"Not until she had been twice hit by shots from the *Olympia's* secondary battery did the daring little boat turn back. She reached the beach just in time to save her crew from drowning.

"Two other Spanish torpedo boats made more cautious attempts to come out into the harbor to attack us, but one was immediately sunk by our fire and the other quickly abandoned the attack."

The wounded were: Lieutenant, Frank Woodruff Kellogg; Ensign, Noble Edward Irwin; Coxswains, Michael John Buddinger, Edward Snelgrove; Robert L. Barlow, landsman; Richard P. Covert, William O'Keefe, Rosario Ricciarddelli, seamen.

The squadrons engaged were:

SPANISH.

Reina Christina, steel cruiser; displacement, 3,520; armament, six 6.2, two 2.7, three 2.2, two 1.5, six 3-pounders, two machine; torpedo tubes, 5; speed, 17.5; complement, 370.

Castilla, wood cruiser; displacement, 3,342; armament, four 5.9, two 4.7, two 3.3, four 2.9, eight R. F., two machine; torpedo tubes, 2; speed, 14.0; complement, 300.

Don Antonio de Ulloa, iron cruiser; displacement, 1,130; armament, four 4.7, three 2.2, two 1.5, five machine; torpedo tubes, 2; speed, 14.0; complement, 130.

Isla de Cuba, steel cruiser; displacement, 1,030; armament, four 4.7, four 6-pounders, two 3-pounders; two machine; torpedo tubes, 3; speed, 16.0; complement, 160.

General Lezo, iron gunboat; displacement, 524; armament, two 4.7, one 3.5, two R. F., one machine; torpedo tubes, 2; speed, 11.0; complement, 100.

Marques del Duero, iron dispatch vessel; displacement, 590; armament, one 6.2, two 4.7, one machine; speed, 10.0; complement, 100.

Elcano, iron gunboat; displacement, 524; armament, three 4.7, two R. F., two machine; torpedo tubes, 1; speed, 11.5; complement, 116.

Velasco, iron cruiser; displacement, 1,152; armament, three 5.9, two 2.7, two machine; speed, 14.3; complement, 173.

Mindanao, iron transport; displacement, 4,195 gross tons.

AMERICAN.

The United States fleet was composed of the following vessels:

Olympia, steel cruiser; displacement, 5,800; armament, four 8, ten 5, four-teen 6-pounders, six 1-pounders, four machine; torpedo tubes, 6; speed, 21.6; complement, 412.

Baltimore, steel cruiser; displacement, 4,600; armament, four 8, six 6, four 6-pounders, two 3-pounders, two 1-pounders, 6 machine; torpedo tubes, 5; speed, 20.6; complement, 375.

Raleigh, steel cruiser; displacement, 3,183; armament, one 6, ten 5, eight 6-pounders, four 1-pounders, two machine; torpedo tubes, 1; speed, 19.0; complement, 312.

Boston, steel cruiser; displacement, 3,189; armament, two 8, six 6, two 6-pounders, two 3-pounders, six machine; speed, 15.0; complement, 270.

Petrel, steel gunboat; displacement, 890; armament, four 6, two 3-pounders, one 1-pounder, four machine; speed, 13.7; complement, 132.

McCulloch, steel revenue cutter; displacement, 2,000; four 6-pounders; complement, 100.

Comparison of the two fleets shows that Admiral Dewey, with about 19,500 tons displacement of American war ships, annihilated about 12,000 tons displacement of Spanish war ships. The total number of guns mounted on board the United States ships was 120. On board the Spanish ships there were 94 guns. The number of men on board the former was about 1,600; on the latter, about 1,300.

In neither squadron was there an armored ship, but all of the United States vessels had more or less protection from their steel decks, while only two of the Spanish vessels had protective decks.

Except in number of vessels the United States squadron was the superior of the Spanish squadron; yet every one of Admiral Dewey's ships was penetrable by the guns of the Spanish ships had the gunners of the latter been able to point their pieces properly. The largest guns mounted on board the American ships were 8-inch, of which there were ten. Spain had no larger calibre afloat than 6-inch.

DEWEY'S DIARY.

Monday, April 25.—Received news of the declaration of war. Quitted British waters.

Wednesday.—Sailed for Manila at the fastest speed that could be made with the coal supply of the ships.

Saturday Night.—Passed the batteries at the entrance of Manila Bay.

Sunday.—Sank, burned or captured all the ships of the Spanish squadron. Silenced and destroyed three batteries.

Monday.—Occupied navy yard. Blew up six batteries at the entrance to the bay. Cut the cable. Established blockade of Manila. Drove the Spanish forces out of Cavite.

Tuesday and Wednesday.—Swept the lower bay and entrance for torpedoes. Gave crews well-earned rest. Prepared official despatches.

An official despatch from General Augusti, Governor-General of the Philippines, sent by the way of Labuan, said :

“The enemy seized Cavite and the arsenal owing to the destruction of the Spanish squadron, and established a close blockade. It is said that, at the request of the consuls, the enemy will not bombard Manila for the present, provided I do not open fire upon the enemy’s squadron, which is out of range of our guns. Therefore I cannot fire until they come nearer.

“A thousand sailors arrived here yesterday evening from our destroyed squadron, the losses of which number 618.”

Senor Sagasta, Prime Minister of Spain, said to a *Journal* correspondent, “The unfortunate events which have just taken place at Manila have saddened all Spaniards, but have not made them lose heart, and we feel consolation in these days of mourning in thinking that our sailors did their duty valiantly, and succumbed only before the great superiority of the hostile fleet.

“After behaving so heroically we can say with confidence that in this disaster nothing occurred to wound our pride. I, myself, had much satisfaction in publicly rendering tribute to the commander of the *Reina Cristina* and the other heroes who met death in this unequal combat, giving their lives for the honor of Spain.

“Much has been said regarding the causes of the catastrophe, but all discussion has been beside the question. The truth is that we were too few, that we were overwhelmed by the great superiority of the enemy’s forces, and by the fortunes of war, which unhappily went against us.”

The *World* interviewed and cabled an interview with Sir Charles Dilke, who was asked whether any question of international law or practice affected the United States’ right to retain the Philippines? He said:

“None whatever. The States will hold the Philippines by the right of conquest. No power or powers will have the slightest title to interfere.”

“But may not some power, Germany or France, for instance, bring pressure to bear on the United States to surrender them?”

“That idea of continental pressure I regard as all moonshine. No power would attempt pressure unless we were in the same boat with them, which we never will be. Without English naval support no power will venture upon any action in the matter.”

“Do you consider that the United States should retain possession of the Philippines?”

“Certainly I do. The only alternatives are some kind of autonomous republican government, which would need so much American protection that the United States might as well hold the islands themselves. Then there is handing them over to Japan; but that would excite the opposition of public sentiment in the United States, Japan being a pagan nation. Another alternative is returning them to Spain. But that, too, would excite serious opposition in the United States, and may be dismissed as out of the question. It is true that at the end of the great war with France we gave back all or nearly all the territory we con-

quered, but that is not a parallel case, as we were ostensibly fighting for the king of France."

"Would the United States have to keep a large force of troops in the Philippines?"

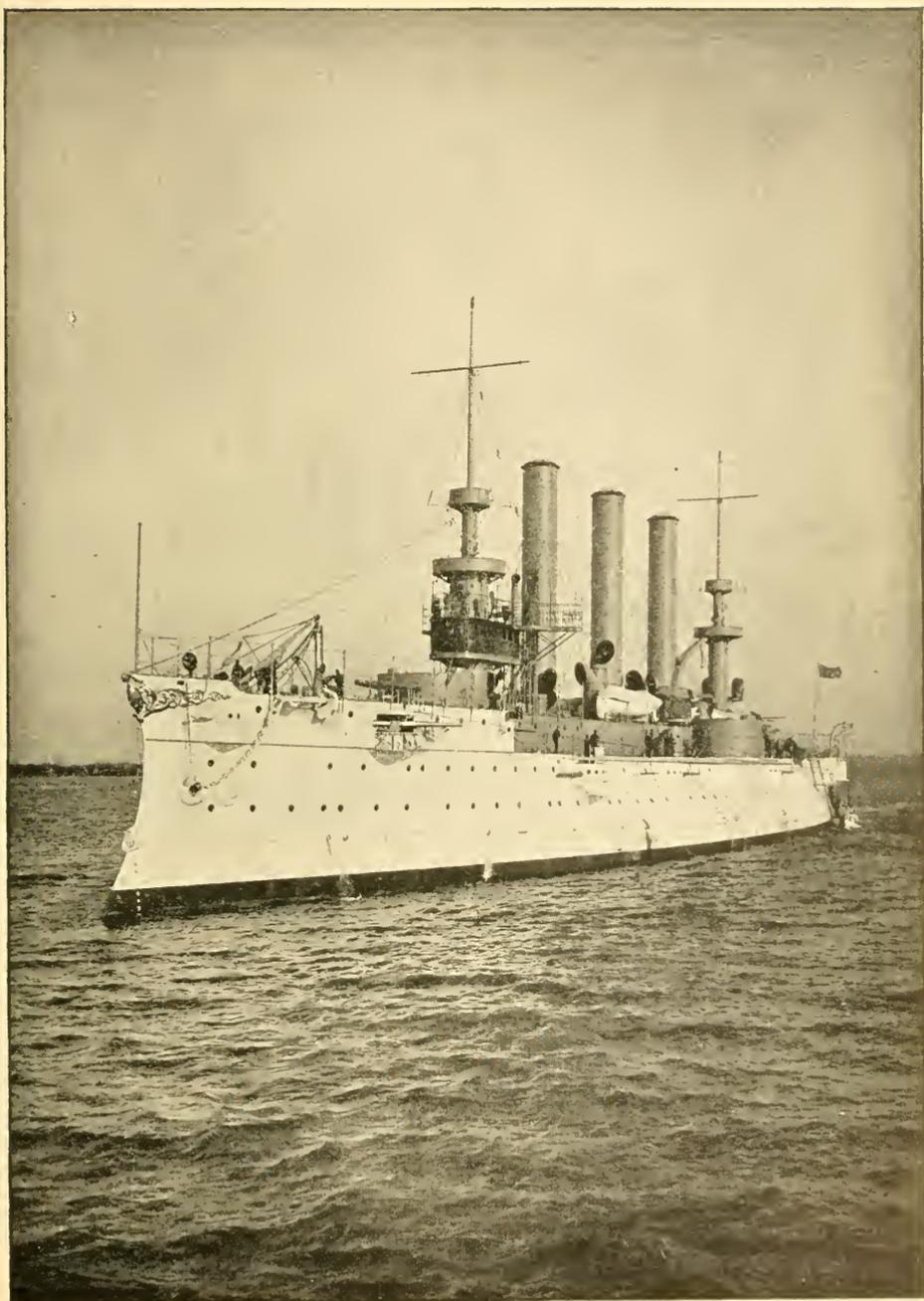
"Considerable force would be required, and, of course, the United States would be compelled to largely increase her navy."

"Do you think the general effect of the United States' retention of the Philippines would be to bring nearer the possibility of an Anglo-American alliance?"

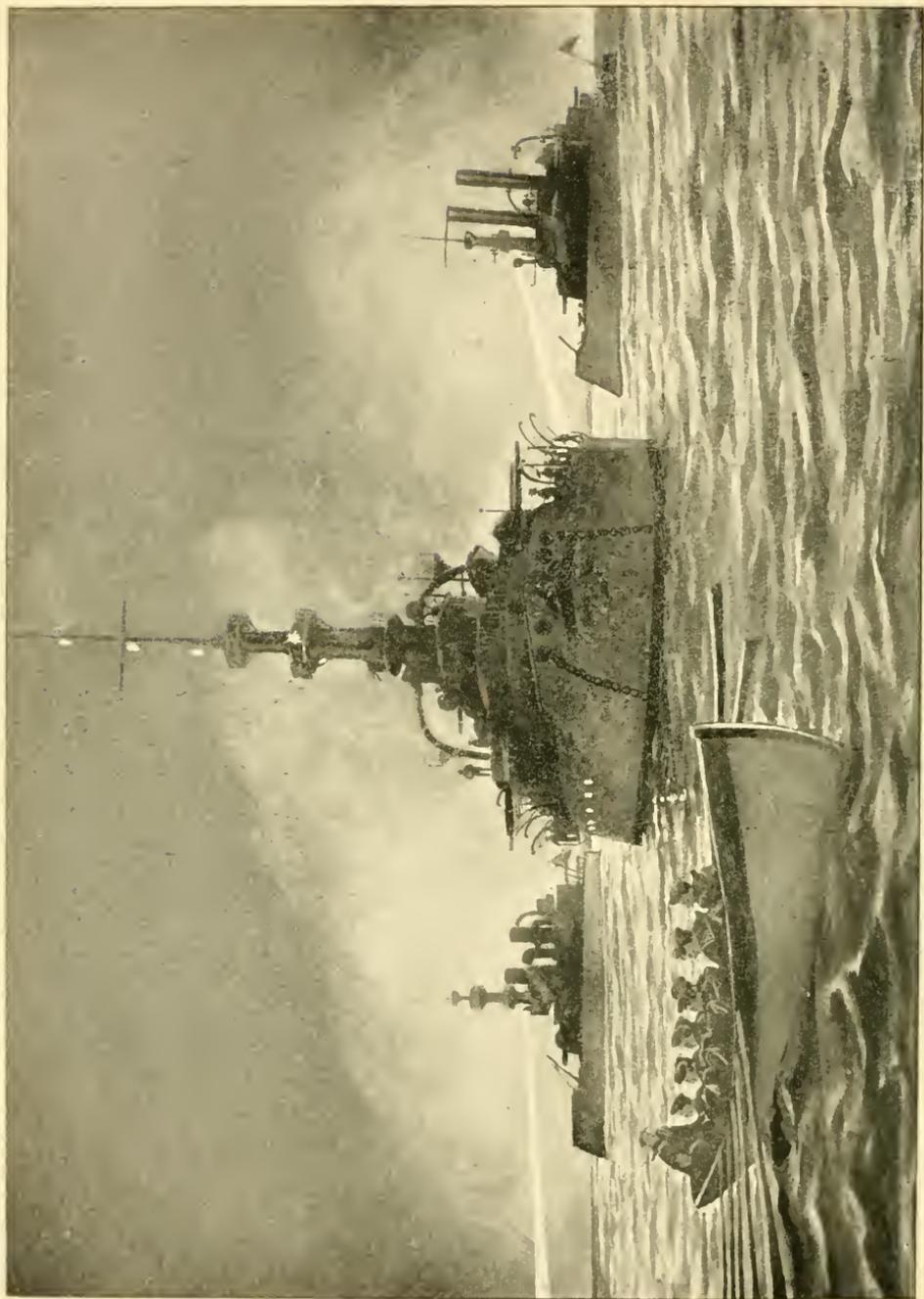
"It would increase their interests in common, but I don't wish to say anything about the alliance idea, as I don't believe there ever will be an alliance between Great Britain and the United States."

Sir Henry Howarth, M. P., a leading authority on foreign politics and international law, said:

"I have no hesitation in saying that the United States have a perfect right to keep the Philippines, and, under the circumstances, it would be both wise and proper for the United States to keep them. There is not a consideration of international law that could in any way fetter the United States in its absolute discretion in the matter. There is no third party involved. The islands were discovered by Spain, and her sovereignty has never been in dispute. By the right of conquest, therefore, America's position is indisputable, and all the members of Parliament, who are authorities, to whom I have spoken agree that the United States should not give them up. Spain found it impossible to govern them in the past, and would find the difficulty still greater in the future. If they were handed over to England it would provoke a multitude of difficult questions. If Japan got them it would also provoke great jealousies. Should the United States annex Hawaii together with the Philip-



THE U. S. ARMORED CRUISER "BROOKLYN."



NIGHT PATROL OFF SANTIAGO.

pires these would constitute two magnificent bases, giving the United States immense power in the Pacific, which I always hoped they would achieve in the interests of civilization and commerce."

The American casualty list was eight men wounded, and the official Spanish report was six hundred and eighteen killed and wounded. The American figures of Spanish loss was twelve hundred killed and wounded, and the estimate is that between one hundred and fifty and two hundred were killed. The damage to American ships was about \$5,000; Spanish property destroyed or captured \$6,000,000. The Spanish naval force was larger and its equipment more modern and effective than at first appeared. If the land batteries of the Spaniards had been well served the odds would have been against the Americans. The Spanish allowed themselves to be surprised, so that they lost the advantages of position and shore support. Then they were out-manœuvred and beaten in the use of big guns as arms of precision. There is lack of dignity in talking of the Americans creeping in under cover of darkness, and in the excuse that there was no search light at the entrance to the bay, and no patrol established, so that the first notice of the presence of the hostile fleet was a spark from the funnel of the revenue cutter *McCulloch*! The Spaniards seem to have depended upon their mines, but made miscalculations and fired them too soon. They can blow up a ship that they have officially moored to suit themselves, but not one that has freedom to move and puts them under fire. The Spanish claim that their men were courageous, and fought well amidst most disheartening circumstances is justified. The mournful words of Sagasta will be long remembered.

American officers on the flag-ship stood in a group unprotected on the bridge, the commodore the centre of the

group, and apology is made for one who occupied the conning tower, that it was not proper for all the officers of the commodore's boat to be exposed to death from a single shell, and therefore one was compelled to betake himself to a comparatively safe place. The utter coolness with which the commodore knocked off in the midst of the engagement and ordered a recess and that all might partake of refreshments, is an incident that will find a perpetual place in the choicest stories of our naval battle experiences. However, the Americans were masters of the situation when they were called to cease firing and go to breakfast. The Spaniards do not seem to have made much disturbance during the American intermission. The two terrors, that the Spaniards have boasted of, are their mines and torpedo destroyers, but neither was serviceable at Manila. The torpedo boats made plucky dashes, but were wiped out with rapid-firing guns. Our gunners, when they got the word to let go, moved by one impulse, raised a hoarse shout, "Remember the *Maine*" and avenged her.

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE SANTIAGO CAMPAIGN.

Landing of the Americans in Cuba—The First Skirmish—Arrival of General Shafter with the First Military Expedition—The Rapid Advance of the Americans and the Effectiveness of American Fighting ; Volunteers Fight Like Veterans Carrying Strongly Intrenched Positions without the Aid of Artillery—The Destruction of Cervera's Fleet, again Showing the Superior American Marksmanship and Discipline of the American Navy—Arrival of General Miles—Surrender of General Toral and the Fourth Army Corps—Occupation of Santiago by American Troops.

WITH Vice-Admiral Cervera's four magnificent armored cruisers and two torpedo boats, the pride of Spain's navy, in Santiago Harbor, and the *Merrimac* sunk in the channel, the war with Spain assumed a new phase. It was then evident that the first duty of the American government was to capture the city of Santiago. The war was thereafter to be waged aggressively. The American government had naturally planned for an invasion of Cuba from the time the war began ; but when, on May 20th, Madrid reported that Cervera was at Santiago, there was hope that he might be trapped, and the campaign against Santiago was considered. Then, on May 29th, came Commodore Schley's positive announcement that the Spanish ships were in the harbor, followed, on June 3rd, by Hobson's exploit. Even with the *Merrimac* sunk in the channel, the presence of a powerful American squadron off Santiago was necessary. There was the danger that Cervera might blow out the channel and escape. That could not be permitted, of course, for it was imperative that Cervera's ships should be kept out of action. Their presence at Santiago removed much uncer-

tainty, gave the United States an objective point, and made more warships available for uses other than patrol service. Transports might now go to Cuba with comparative safety. The gunboats in Cuban waters were not feared, and Admiral Camara's squadron, while fitting out at Cadiz, was not dangerous. The government at Washington had been anxious to strike a blow at Spain in Cuba, and the opportunity was now offered. A campaign against Havana, in the rainy season, was out of the question. It meant exposing our troops to the horrors of the climate there, for an extended period, and then a sufficient number of troops for such a campaign were not drilled and equipped. The capture of Santiago and the destruction of Cervera's fleet, or its seizure, would release the fleet before Santiago, and make the end of the war nearer; for Spain's coast could then be easily harassed, San Juan be bombarded, or other aggressive action be possible. An opportunity, most fortunate for the United States, was offered and it was not neglected.

It was originally the intention of the war department to start the expedition from Tampa for Cuba on June 6th. Transports for that purpose had been assembled there, and the Fifth Army Corps, under Major-General William R. Shafter, was assigned for this expedition. With the expectation that the army of invasion would reach the vicinity of Santiago about June 11th, the navy had, on June 10th, made a landing at Guantanamo Bay, thirty-five miles from Santiago. It was thought this would afford a good base of operations. It offered excellent facilities for a coaling station and a harbor of refuge for the navy during storms. It was also the terminus of the French cable. A battalion of marines, numbering about six hundred, under Lieutenant-Colonel R. W. Huntington, formed the landing party. They took up a position upon the hill, guarding the aban-

doned French cable station. That night they were unmolested, and happy in the thought of having made the first landing and raised the first American flag on Cuban soil. Their troubles, however, soon began. After a hard day's work in the heat, landing supplies and clearing their position of brush, at a time when more than a hundred were bathing in the bay, they were attacked by the Spaniards. The bathers, hearing the attack, rushed for their guns, and charged up the hill to reply. All that night, and until six the next morning, the harassing fire was kept up. Surgeon Gibbs was killed in the skirmish, and several scouts were found dead. On Sunday, the 12th, the marines were busy throwing up intrenchments, and on the two following nights the guerilla warfare was continued. The situation had become intolerable. The green marines had fought bravely and steadily. They earned commendation for their courage, but they were not accustomed to bushwhacking, and were almost exhausted from loss of sleep. About three hundred of them, under command of Captains Elliot and Spicer, started out, on the 14th, to rout the Spaniards. After a sharp engagement, in which they killed about sixty and wounded twice as many, they captured a heliograph by which the Spaniards communicated with the interior to secure reinforcements, and they also destroyed the well upon which the Spanish troops, operating against them, depended for water. In this fight they were aided by the *Marblehead* and *Dolphin*, which had steamed into Guantnamo Bay. They had also taken part in the previous skirmishes. The Cubans, who understood guerilla warfare, proved themselves useless in this battle of Cusco Hill.

The American army had not yet arrived off Santiago, the officers of the fleet became impatient, and the marines almost hopeless; but fortunately they were not again

molested. The navy continued its operations in Guantanamo Bay, clearing it of mines and preparing it for a base of operations. The fortifications of Santiago were also bombarded, the shells of the *Vesuvius* being particularly effective. There were several narrow escapes from disaster in Guantanamo Bay—the *Marblehead*, for instance, striking several contact mines which did not explode. Other warships ran the same risk. It was not until the 14th of June that General Shafter's expedition started. The delay was due to many causes, explained easily by our lack of preparation before the war, difficulties with transports, and other minor matters that combined to delay, irritate and aggravate. Finally, everything was settled, and the thirty-five transports, convoyed by the battleship *Indiana* and a number of unarmored vessels, sailed from Tampa. On the 20th the great fleet arrived off Santiago. General Shafter was met by Admiral Sampson, and, after a conference, the *Seguranca*, General Shafter's flag-ship, sailed to Acerraderos, a point eighteen miles west of Santiago, situated on a little bay at the base of the mountains. Here a landing was made, and General Shafter, with his staff, including the foreign military attaches, and Admiral Sampson, met and consulted with General Garcia, the Cuban leader. At this meeting the plan of campaign was considered and a decision reached as to the landing.

The work of landing Shafter's fifteen thousand men was a task of great danger and difficulty, yet it was accomplished with the loss of but two men, who were drowned. This was a great accomplishment and every man was ashore within two days. Admiral Sampson, on the 22d, made a feint against Cabanas, which is west of Santiago about two and one-half miles, while the troops were landed at Baiquiri, a point about eighteen miles by a direct line from

Santiago. The fortifications at Aguadores and Santiago were also bombarded. On the second day some of the troops were landed at Siboney, five miles further west. Siboney then became the army's headquarters. Perhaps the most remarkable feature of the landing was the lack of opposition. The troops comprising the original expedition were as follows: First Division, Brigadier-General J. F. Kent commanding: First Brigade, Sixth and Sixteenth regular infantry and Seventy-first New York volunteers; Second Brigade, Brigadier-General J. C. Bates commanding; Second, Tenth and Twenty-first regular infantry; Third Brigade, Ninth, Thirteenth and Twenty-fourth infantry. Second Division, Brigadier General H. W. Lawton commanding: First Brigade, Colonel J. J. Van Horn, Eighth and Twenty-second regular infantry, and Second Massachusetts volunteers; Third Brigade, General A. R. Chaffee, Seventh, Twelfth and Seventeenth regular infantry. Third Division: First Brigade, Major-General H. S. Hawkins, Third and Twentieth regulars. Cavalry, Major-General Wheeler commanding, with Brigadier-General S. B. M. Young second in command: Eight troops each of the First, Third, Sixth, Ninth and Tenth cavalry and the First volunteer (Rough Rider) cavalry. Light batteries E and K First, and A and F of the Second artillery, and two heavy batteries, G and H, of the Fourth artillery and two companies, C and E, of engineer battalion, under Brigadier-General Ludlow. Before the first assault upon Santiago, the Thirty-third Michigan and one battalion of the Thirty-fourth Michigan arrived.

The army lost no time in pushing forward. The first night saw the advance guard of the troops landed at Baiquiri, five miles on the road to Santiago. On the 23d the first engagement occurred, at La Quasima. The Ameri-

can forces consisted of eight troops each from the First and Tenth cavalry, and the First (Wood-Roosevelt) volunteer cavalry under Brigadier-General Young, numbering less than a thousand. They started from Siboney to take an important position on the road to Sevilla. The Rough Riders (volunteer cavalry) went along the ridge of a hill, while General Young's forces were proceeding at its base to attack the enemy in the front, while the Rough Riders assaulted their flank. The Spaniards were stationed at the apex of a V, along the sides of which the two detachments of Americans were marching. Concealed in the chaparral, the enemy attacked both forces simultaneously when they were about three miles from Siboney. The situation was trying for the raw troops, but they were steady and eager. Colonel Wood and Lieutenant-Colonel Roosevelt led a magnificent charge against the enemy and routed them, while General Young's men, at the base of the hill, were equally successful and gallant. Colonel (now Brigadier-General) Leonard Wood, commanding the volunteer cavalry, in a letter to the Secretary of War, dated June 27th, modestly describes the engagement as follows:

"We commenced our advance from our first landing-place on the 23d, and that night Colonel Young and I, as second in command of the Second Cavalry Brigade, had a long war talk about taking the very strong Spanish position about five miles up the road to Santiago. He decided that he would make a feint on their front, while I was to make a detour by trail under a couple of Cuban guides, and take them in flank and try to get them out of their very strong position, which was in the wildest and roughest part of the trail toward the town. Our little plan worked.

"I located the Spanish outpost and deployed silently, and when in position fired on them. Shortly after I opened, I

could hear Young on the right, down in the valley. The fight lasted over two hours, and was hot at close range. The Spanish used the volley a great deal, while my men fired as individuals.

"We soon found that instead of 1,500 men we had struck a very heavy outpost of several thousand. To cut a long story short, we drove them steadily but slowly, and finally threw them into flight. Their losses must have been heavy, for all news coming out of Santiago reports a great many dead and wounded, and that the Spanish had 4,000 men and two machine guns (these we saw), and were under two general officers, and that the Spanish dead and wounded were being brought in for six hours; also that the garrison was expecting an assault that night; that the defeated troops reported that they had fought the entire American army for four hours, but had been compelled, by greatly superior numbers, to retreat, and that the army was coming, etc.

"My men conducted themselves splendidly and behaved like veterans, going up against the heavy Spanish line as though they knew no fear."

The spirit of the troops was admirable. The colored troopers fought alongside the white soldiers with equal gallantry. The volunteers were not surpassed by the regulars in daring. Perhaps both under-estimated the skill and courage of their adversaries, but they made a fight that has added glory to American arms. The casualties were very heavy in proportion to the men engaged, twenty-two being killed and at least sixty wounded and missing. The first man killed was Sergeant Hamilton Fish, Jr., of the Rough Riders. He was the first American soldier sacrificed for the cause of Cuban liberty. Captain Allen K. Capron, of the Rough Riders, was also killed in this engagement; a popular, brave, efficient officer, whose example

was particularly inspiring to the men. In this fight the college athlete, the clubman, the cowboy, the plainsman, the clerk and the adventurer fought side by side without wavering. "Not a man flinched," said Lieutenant-Colonel Roosevelt; and, as a Spanish prisoner put it, "They did not fight as other soldiers. When we fired a volley they advanced instead of going back. The more we fired the nearer they came to us." In this engagement Edward Marshall, a newspaper correspondent, was shot through the spine; yet he did not falter, but dictated news to his paper during intervals of consciousness. With him, as with the soldier, it was duty first, though there was no chance for promotion. Costly as this engagement was in men, it was worth the price, for it made the advance to the intrenchments before Santiago practically unopposed. There was frequent firing between the scouts of both sides, but the enemy steadily retreated until our soldiers were almost upon their intrenchments, and within a few miles of Santiago. There the enemy made its last stand.

Thursday, June 30th, a week after the engagement at La Quasima, saw General Shafter's outposts within hailing distance of the enemy's intrenchments before Santiago. No time had been lost since the landing. The rapid advance of the army, considering the rough character of ground over which they traveled, was remarkable. The roads, notwithstanding the work of the engineers, were almost impassable. The troops at the front carried practically nothing but ammunition and short rations. Four batteries of light artillery had been brought forward with great difficulty, the siege guns being still at the landing-places. With his army extended five miles in front of Santiago, General Shafter had to determine whether to wait for the siege guns and then attack the city, or to rely upon dash

and courage to take the place of artillery. The bravery of the enemy seems to have been under-estimated, and General Shafter felt he could take Santiago in forty-eight hours. His forces numbered about 16,000, while the enemy had 14,000. They were magnificently intrenched, and their intrenchments were protected by wire fences. Batteries were placed advantageously and in every respect the Spanish position was almost impregnable. General Shafter thought, however, that with batteries E and F of the First, and A and F of the Second Artillery, he was in condition to attack. The battle was thus to be fought almost wholly by the infantry. General Shafter was doubtless moved in his determination to begin the attack, without waiting for his siege guns, by an appreciation of the importance of keeping the army in good health, the climatic influences being almost as dangerous as the gun-fire of the enemy. The assault was determined upon, and Friday, July 1st, was the date fixed for the battle.

During the night of June 30th, the American troops moved nearer the Spanish intrenchments. On the right was Lawton's division; next to this was General Kent's, General Hawkins', and General Wheeler's—the latter dismounted cavalry. The battle was opened early in the day by artillery firing, and the Spaniards created surprise by their good marksmanship. There were three important positions which the American army sought to take, and they were well fortified. In front of Lawton's division was the town of El Caney, a position of great strategical importance. South of it was San Juan, which was of equal importance, and defended as El Caney was, by heavy intrenchments and blockhouses. Further south was Aguadores, commanding the road to Morro Castle. To take these positions required the hardest and most desperate fighting.

The movement against Aguadores was not at all successful. The Thirty-third Michigan and a battalion of the Thirty-fourth Michigan, under General Duffield, were brought, by train, from Siboney to a point near Aguadores. The warships shelled the Spanish position and the Michigan troops advanced under fire. They replied steadily, but the smoke of their Springfields showed their position, and made it particularly dangerous, as was shown by the explosion of a Spanish shell in the center of one company. It was discovered that the bridge over the river Gauma had been wrecked by the Spaniards, making it impossible to attack Morro Castle. Could this have been done the course of the battle might have been changed and the attempt made to take Morro, so as to make possible the passage of the channel by the American fleet. The only thing gained by this movement was to distract the enemy's attention.

The assault upon El Caney occupied the whole of General Lawton's division. The advance was made against the intrenchments under a steady, galling fire, and in a blistering heat. Captain Capron's battery, which had opened the fight, shelled the enemy's intrenchments, and the brigade under General Chaffee advanced. It was desperate fighting, but they drove the enemy before them, slowly but steadily, suffering severely in doing so. They charged up the hill and down on the other side, always gaining ground, and never wavering despite the fearful fire. The enemy's blockhouses were destroyed or captured. General Ludlow had been placed in command of Van Horn's brigade, General Van Horn having been injured in the landing. Ludlow's troops and those under Colonel Miles, with Chaffee in front, advanced so as to surround the enemy in El Caney on three sides. This was done, but not without heavy fighting near the rifle pits and severe losses.

Nightfall, on the first day, saw Lawton's division practically in control of El Caney.

The center and left wing of the army devoted its attention to attacking the intrenchments of the enemy on the regular road to Santiago and at San Juan, a small village occupying an important location. Here was repeated the gallantry and bravery and heavy fighting that characterized the action under General Lawton. The central defences of the enemy resisted the attack of the Americans with great tenacity. Here again the Spanish infantry proved that they had been under-estimated. They were stubborn, steady, daring and earnest, fighting sharply and incessantly. The attacks had been well planned and were well executed. The American troops there, as in the entire fighting before Santiago, had worthy foemen. The assaults upon the central position of the Spaniards and upon San Juan proved even more costly than that upon El Caney, but the American troops were regardless of danger, eager to fight, and determined, when at work. Their officers were gallant and fearless. On several occasions commanding generals led their men in person to the assault. The heavy casualties among the officers during the fighting before Santiago showed the fearlessness of our troops and the stubbornness of the enemy, and proved the fallacy of the theory that the new rifles would prevent hand-to-hand conflicts. The intrenchments in the centre and at San Juan were carried, and the enemy driven within the city. After a long struggle the day ended with a considerable American advance and very heavy losses. General Shafter's plans had been well conceived and well executed. On July 2nd, after a night occupied in carrying the wounded to the rear, burying the dead, and throwing up intrenchments, hostilities were renewed. Finally the

Spaniards were driven, with heavy loss, further toward Santiago; El Caney was captured, and the Spanish army demoralized. The weather was exceedingly hot, and the heat disabled as many Americans on the line of fire as did the enemy's bullets.

Of the fighting of the American troops before Santiago on the 1st and 2nd of July too much cannot be said. They were bravely and skillfully led and never repulsed. The volunteers, with the army, distinguished themselves for their steadiness; and, as at La Quasima, the colored troops vied with the white soldiers in daring. The strength of our army, its magnificent fighting capacity, was demonstrated before Santiago on these two days, but at fearful cost. Twenty-three officers and 208 men were killed, while 80 officers and 1,202 men were wounded, with 81 missing, a total loss of 1,594, or ten per cent. of the troops engaged. We had won a victory, but at a cost which made the battle seem almost as disastrous as a defeat. At least, it seemed that way the next morning. General Shafter cabled Washington that day that a thin line of troops surrounded Santiago, but he doubted if he would be strong enough to take the city. His men were tired, unnerved, and almost disheartened. The climate was telling on them and their situation was particularly trying; General Shafter, himself, was physically in bad shape. It was then that the government at Washington determined to hasten heavy reinforcements to General Shafter. And yet, before night, General Shafter had demanded the surrender of the city from General Toral, who commanded the Spanish troops in place of his superior officer, General Linares, who had been wounded. The American general had seen the situation through different eyes toward the end of the day. He was not frightened, but he had been anxious, and later in the day he

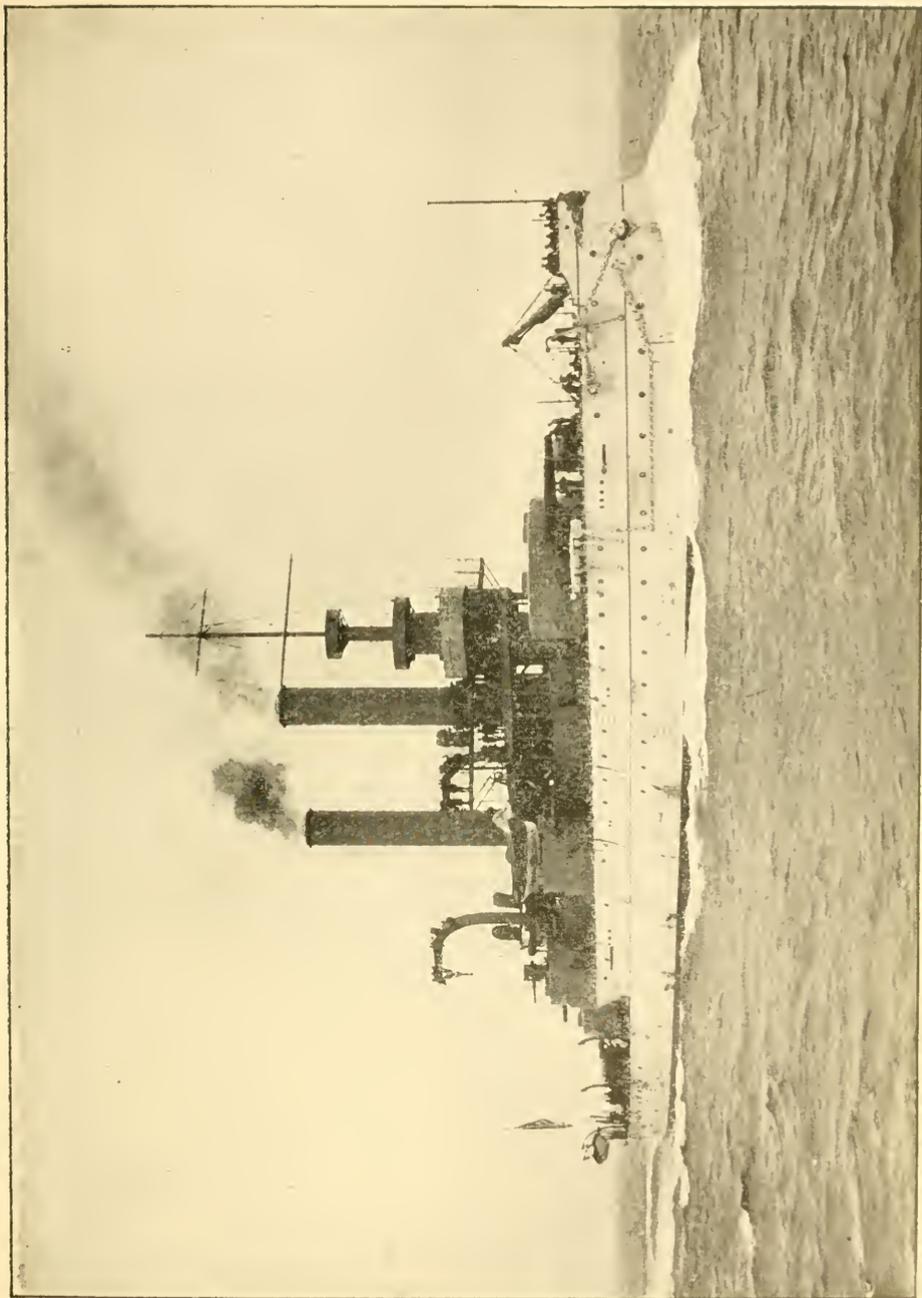
received encouraging information. He had not, at first, considered the terrible havoc which his attack upon the Spanish intrenchments had inflicted upon the enemy. Their dead and wounded were more numerous than those of the Americans; provisions were becoming scarce and the situation desperate, while the enforced departure of Cervera's fleet from Santiago Harbor had added to the despair. When Shafter demanded Santiago's surrender he knew what had been the fate of Cervera's ships.

When Commodore Schley learned, on May 29, that the Spanish fleet was actually in Santiago Harbor, he said: "I have got them and they will never go home." He spoke the truth. On Sunday, July 3d, the blockading warships had been on duty five weeks. The weather was stifling hot. The men aboard the ships were greatly concerned about the land battle that had been waged for two days. They had information as to its progress, and had themselves bombarded the Spanish defences at the harbor's entrances during the battle, while the *Vesuvius* spread terror in the city by her earthquaking gun-cotton shells. On duty before the harbor beginning on the West were the American warships: the armored cruiser *Brooklyn*, Commodore Schley's flagship, under command of Captain Cook; the battleship *Texas*, Captain Philip; the battleship *Iowa*, Captain Evans; the converted yacht *Gloucester*, Lieutenant-Commander Wainwright; the battleship *Oregon*, Captain Clark; the converted yacht *Vixen*, and the battleship *Indiana*, Captain Taylor. Admiral Sampson, on board his flagship, the armored cruiser *New York*, Captain Chadwick, had gone eight miles down the coast to Siboney, to consult General Shafter.

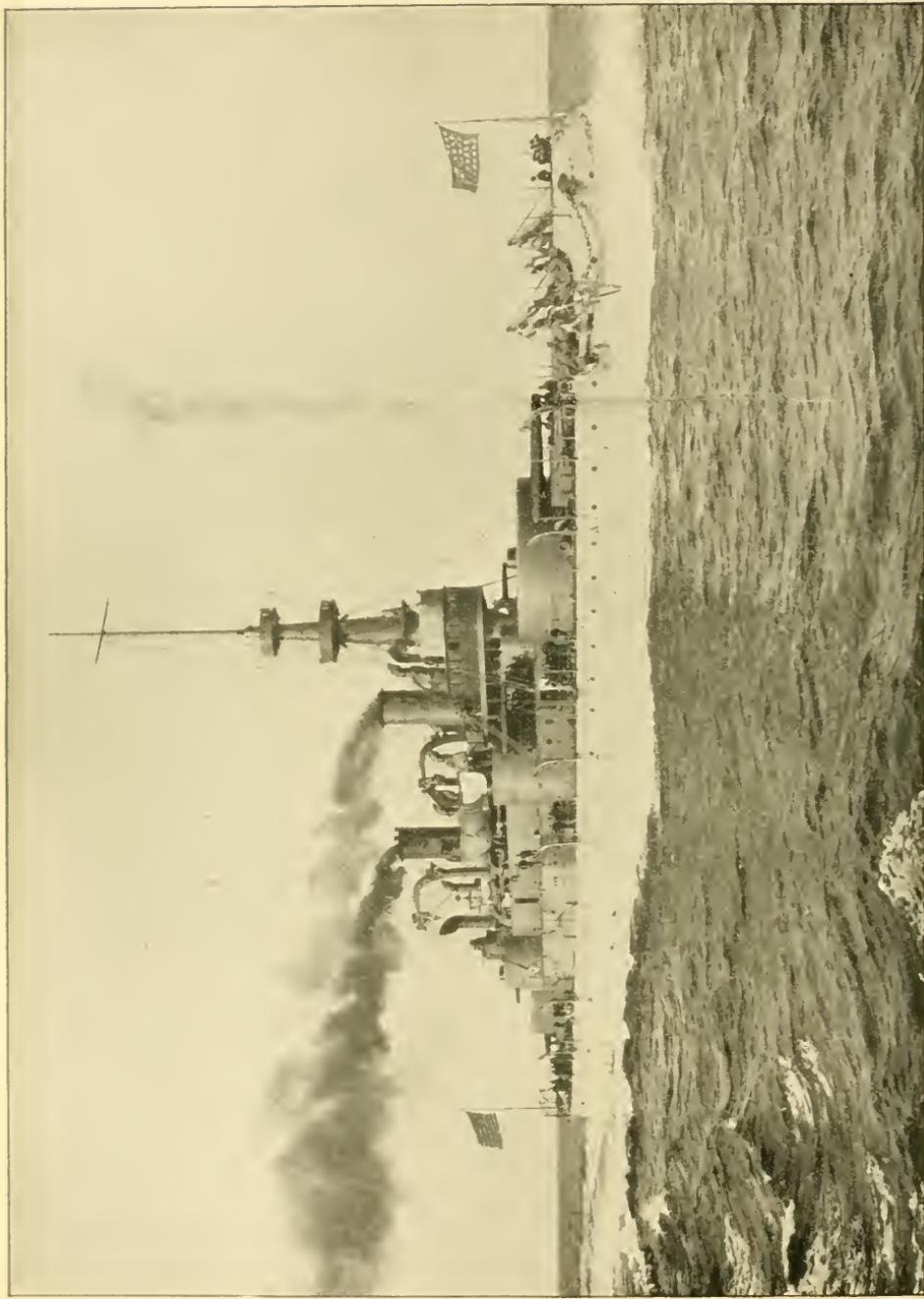
Shortly before ten, in the morning, columns of smoke were noticed in Santiago harbor by the lookout on board of the *Brooklyn*. Hobson's cork had not been well fitted, it

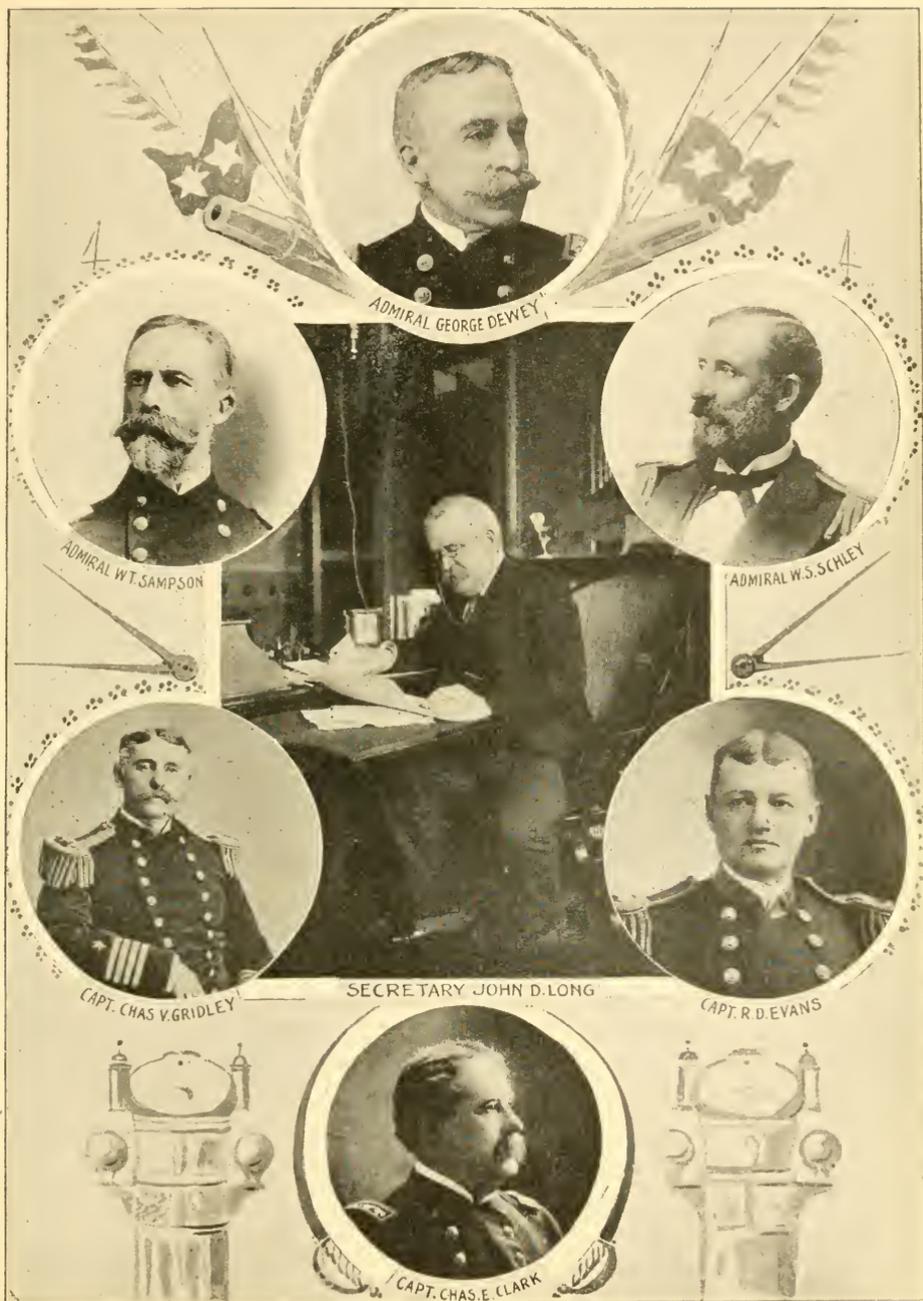
appeared, but there was no criticism of the gallant lieutenant. Commodore Schley signaled at once to all the ships, "The enemy is coming out of the harbor," and each captain knew his duty and did it. It was uncertain what course the cruisers would take. They might go to the East, they might try to break through the blockaders or proceed West to make the Harbors of Cienfuegos or Havana. It required only a minute to see that the leading vessel, the magnificent *Maria Teresa*, flagship, was bound West. Then the warships closed in toward the entrance of the harbor. Following the *Teresa* was her sister-ship, the *Almirante Oquendo*; then the *Cristobal Colon*, and fourth the splendid *Vizcaya*, sister to the *Teresa* and *Oquendo*; while back of her were the two torpedo destroyers *Pluton* and *Furor*. It was a desperate and brilliant dash these great vessels were making. They knew the probabilities were that they would be destroyed, but they hoped that their great speed—not one of the cruisers was rated slower than 20 knots—would save them. This was a feat, destined to be famous, though doomed to failure.

As the *Maria Teresa* left the harbor she opened fire upon the American warships, and the shore batteries joined in. The American ships did not hesitate, but turned their heavy guns upon the enemy. The *Iowa* fired steadily upon the *Teresa*, keeping her on the starboard side and trying to ram her, but the cruiser was too fast and soon passed on. The *Texas* and *Brooklyn* paid their respects to the *Teresa* very impressively. The *Oregon* came rushing up at full speed, firing upon the Spanish vessels, as they sped on, with dreadful effect. The *Almirante Oquendo*, meanwhile, was receiving the fire of the *Iowa* and *Texas*, and the *Cristobal Colon* was rushing onward, and giving and receiving deadly fire. The speed of the escaping Spanish ships was too



THE U. S. BATTLESHIP "IOWA."





ADMIRAL GEORGE DEWEY

ADMIRAL W.T. SAMPSON

ADMIRAL W.S. SCHLEY

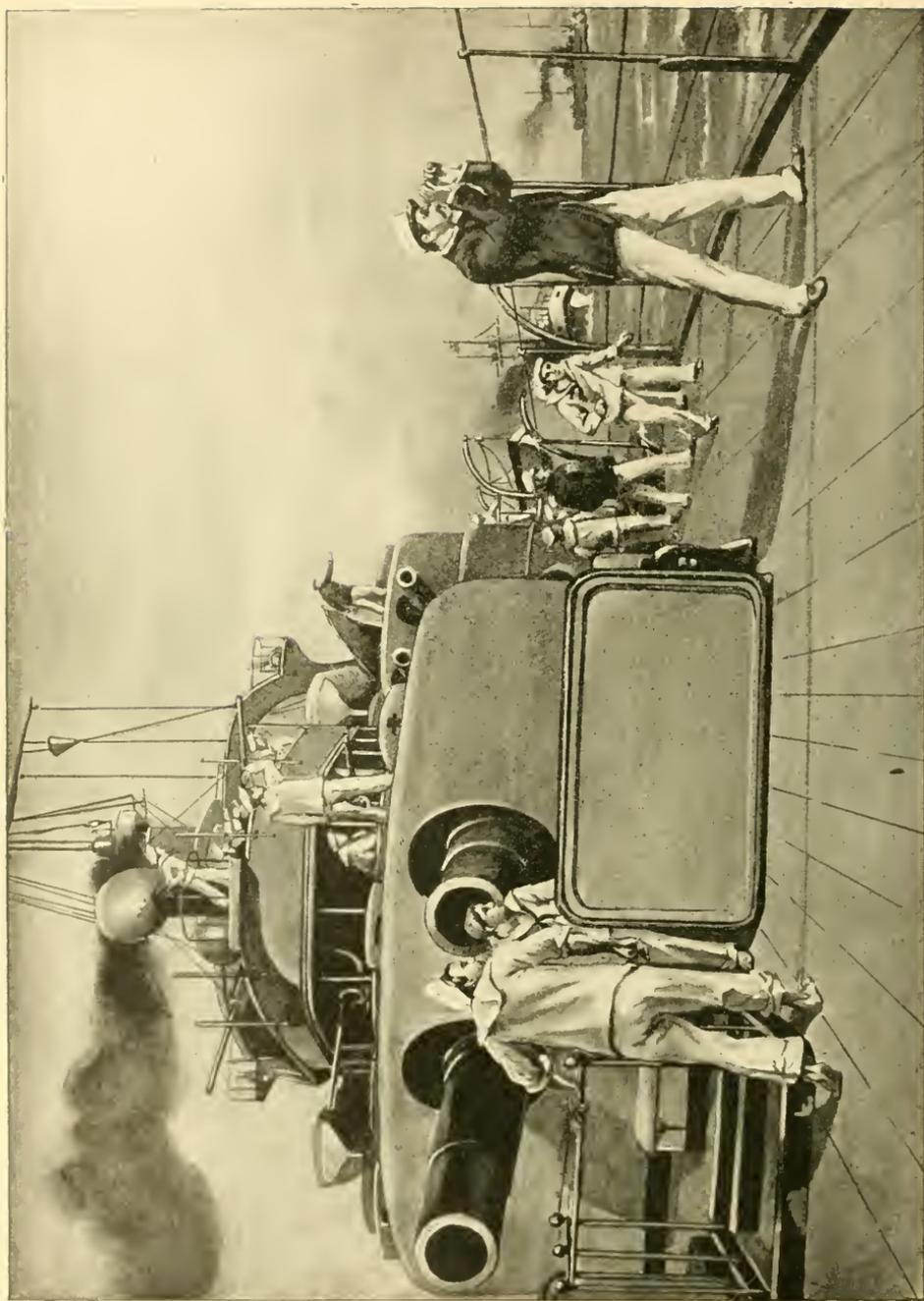
CAPT. CHAS. V. GRIDLEY

SECRETARY JOHN D. LONG

CAPT. R. D. EVANS

CAPT. CHAS. E. CLARK

MEN OF OUR NAVY.



SIGHTING THE ENEMY COMING OUT OF THE HARBOR.

much for the *Iowa* and *Indiana*, which had been firing heavily at long range, but the *Brooklyn* and *Oregon* kept up the good work and were soon engaged with the *Infanta Teresa*, the *Oquendo* and the *Colon*. The *Texas* was doing magnificent work against the *Vizcaya*, while the other warships of the American fleet were not wanting in effective firing. Meantime the *Oregon* was forging ahead at magnificent speed, engaging each of the cruisers in turn. The great ship that had come round the Horn to fight these cruisers, and which, it was feared for awhile, might meet them alone while coming North along the South American coast, was showing her mettle and justifying the judgment of the naval authorities in having her make the thirteen thousand mile trip. She raked the Spanish ships as she passed them and, at the same time, fired upon those that were in front. The *Maria Teresa* early showed the effect of the steady and accurate fire of the American ships. She was soon burning, and at 10.35 was forced ashore. The *Oquendo* followed her, five minutes later, badly injured and on fire from the American shells. The *Cristobal Colon* had been gaining on the *Vizcaya* during this time, but the latter was putting up a game fight against our ships. She had been attacked by the *Iowa* and the *Texas*, while the *Indiana* had given her some hard hits at long range. An eight-inch shell from the *Brooklyn* raked the *Vizcaya* fore and aft along her gun deck, killing and wounding eighty sailors. In a moment another shell had struck her superstructure and exploded with awful effect. She then followed her sister ships and headed for the shore. Another shot hit and exploded her forward torpedoes just as she struck the beach, and she was completely wrecked. Thus three defeated warships were burning on the beach where they had struck some minutes earlier. The *New York*, with Admiral

Sampson, was soon rushing along from Siboney, trying to get into the fight.

The torpedo-destroyers came out of the harbor intending to follow the cruisers, but they did not get far away. The *Gloucester*, commanded by Lieutenant-Commander Wainwright, who had been executive officer of the *Maine* and the last man to leave that ship in Havana Harbor, engaged them both at once, as she had each cruiser, in turn, as they left the harbor. The *Gloucester* made a gallant fight against these destroyers and proved that pluck and skill are effective, no matter what kind of a vessel it commands. She "remembered the *Maine*." The *Iowa* destroyed one with a twelve-inch shell and the *Gloucester* ruined the other. The *Colon* kept up its speed. She was running for life, but the *Brooklyn* and the *Oregon* were having no mercy, while the *Texas* was near at hand. This was a most remarkable chase. The *New York* steadily drew nearer. After a run of forty miles, seeing that there was no chance for escape, the commander of the *Colon* ran his vessel in shore—almost at the exact spot as it happened where the *Virginius*, twenty-five years before, had tried to land a filibustering expedition. The Spanish Admiral was taken prisoner, and more than a thousand officers and men shared his fate, several hundred others having been killed or wounded. The strongest Spanish fleet had been destroyed and the United States navy commanded the seas. Had it not been for the superior speed of the *Brooklyn*, and the battle-ship *Oregon*, both of which engaged every Spanish ship, one of them, at least, might have escaped. It was a sad day for Spain and the turning point in the war. The purpose of the campaign against Santiago had been accomplished and at a cost of one man killed on the *Brooklyn* and two wounded. Our ships were struck many times, but

only three shells did serious damage. Superior seamanship, magnificent gunnery, superb work with the rapid-fire guns, and American spirit had done the work. A heroic and chivalrous sailor, Cervera, had sacrificed his fleet under orders received from Madrid through Captain-General Blanco.

Captain Evans' account of the battle is intensely interesting:

"At the time 'general quarters' was sounded, the engine bell rang full speed ahead, and I put the helm to starboard, and the *Iowa* crossed the bows of the *Infanta Maria Teresa*, the first ship out. As the Spanish admiral swung to the westward the twelve-inch shells from the forward turret of the *Iowa* seemed to strike him fair in the bow, and the fight was a spectacle.

"As the squadron came out in column, the ships beautifully spaced as to distance, and gradually increasing their speed to thirteen knots, it was superb.

"The *Iowa*, from this moment, kept up a steady fire from her heavy guns, heading all the time to keep the *Infanta Maria Teresa* on her starboard, and hoping to ram one of the leading ships.

"In the meantime, the *Oregon*, *Indiana*, *Brooklyn* and *Texas* were doing excellent work with their heavy guns.

"In a very short space of time the enemy's ships were all clear of the harbor mouth, and it became evidently impossible for the *Iowa* to ram either the first or the second ship on account of their speed. The range was 200 yards from the leading ship. The *Iowa's* helm was immediately put hard to the starboard, and the entire starboard broadside was poured into the *Infanta Maria Teresa*. The helm was then quickly shifted to port, and the ship headed across the stern of the *Teresa* in an effort to head off the *Almirante Oquendo*.

"All this time the engines were driving at full speed ahead. A perfect torrent of shells from the enemy passed over the smokestacks and superstructures, but none struck the ship.

"The *Cristobal Colon*, being much faster than the rest of the Spanish ships, passed rapidly to the front in an effort to escape. In passing the *Iowa*, the *Colon* placed two six-inch shells fairly in our starboard bow. One passed through the dispensary, wrecking the latter, and bursting on the berth-deck, doing considerable damage. The other passed through the side at the water-line with the cofferdam, where it still remains.

"As it was now obviously impossible to ram any of the Spanish ships on account of their superior speed, the *Iowa's* helm was put to the starboard, and she ran on a course parallel with the enemy. Being then abreast of the *Almirante Oquendo*, at a distance of 1100 yards, the *Iowa's* entire battery, including the rapid-fire guns, was opened on the *Oquendo*. The punishment was terrific.

"Many twelve and eight-inch shells were seen to explode inside of her, and smoke came out through her hatches. Two twelve-inch shells from the *Iowa* pierced the *Almirante Oquendo* at the same moment, one forward and the other aft. The *Oquendo* seemed to stop her engines for a moment, and lost headway; but she immediately resumed her speed and gradually drew ahead of the *Iowa*, and came under the terrific fire of the *Oregon* and *Texas*.

"At this moment the alarm of 'torpedo boats' was sounded, and two torpedo-boat destroyers were discovered on the *Iowa's* starboard quarter at a distance of 400 yards. Fire was at once opened on them with the after battery, and a twelve-inch shell cut the stern of one destroyer squarely off. As this shell struck, a small torpedo-boat

fired back at the battle-ship, sending a shell within a few feet of my head. I said to Executive Officer Rogers, 'that little chap has got a lot of cheek.' Rogers shouted back, 'He shoots very well, all the same.'

"Well up among the advancing cruisers, spitting shot at one and then at another, was the little *Gloucester*, shooting first at a cruiser and then at a torpedo-boat, and hitting a head wherever she saw it. The marvel was that she was not destroyed by the rain of shells.

"In the meantime the *Vizcaya* was slowly drawing abeam of the *Iowa*, and for the space of fifteen minutes it was give and take between the two ships. The *Vizcaya* fired rapidly but wildly, not one shot striking the *Iowa*, while the shells from the *Iowa* were tearing great rents in the sides of the *Vizcaya*. As the latter passed ahead of the *Iowa* she came under the murderous fire of the *Oregon*.

"At this time the *Infanta Maria Teresa* and the *Almirante Oquendo*, leading the enemy's column, were seen to be heading for the beach, and in flames. The *Texas*, *Oregon* and *Iowa* pounded them unmercifully. They ceased to reply to the fire, and in a few moments the Spanish cruisers were a mass of flames on the rocks, with their colors down, the *Teresa* flying a white flag at the fore.

"The crews of the enemy's ships stripped themselves and began jumping overboard, and one of the smaller magazines exploded.

"Meantime the *Brooklyn* and the *Cristobal Colon* were exchanging compliments in lively fashion at apparently long range; and the *Oregon*, with her locomotive speed, was hanging well on to the *Colon*, also paying attention to the *Vizcaya*. The *Teresa* and the *Oquendo* were in flames on the beach just twenty minutes after the first shot was fired. Fifty minutes after the first shot was fired the *Viz-*

caya put her helm to port, with a great burst of flame from the after part of the ship, and headed slowly for the rocks at Acerraderos, where she found her last resting-place.

“As it was apparent that the *Iowa* could not possibly catch the *Cristobal Colon*, and that the *Oregon* and *Brooklyn* undoubtedly would; and, as the fast *New York* was also on her trail, I decided that the calls of humanity should be answered, and attention given to the 1,200 or 1,500 Spanish officers and men who had struck their colors to the American squadron commanded by Admiral Sampson. I, therefore, headed for the wreck of the *Vizcaya*, now furiously burning fore and aft.

“When I was as far as the depth of water would admit, I lowered all my boats and sent them at once to the assistance of the unfortunate men who were being drowned by dozens or roasted on the decks. I soon discovered that the insurgent Cubans from the shore were shooting at men who were struggling in the water after having surrendered to us. I immediately put a stop to this, but I could not put a stop to the mutilation of many bodies by the sharks inside the reefs. These creatures had become excited by the blood from the wounded mixing in the water.

“My boats' crews worked manfully and succeeded in saving many of the wounded from the burning ship. One man, who will be recommended for promotion, clambered up the side of the *Vizcaya* and saved three men from burning to death. The smaller magazines of the *Vizcaya* were exploding with magnificent cloud effects. The boats were coming alongside in a steady string, and willing hands were helping the lacerated Spanish officers and sailors on to the *Iowa's* quarter-deck. All the Spaniards were absolutely without clothes. Some had their legs torn off by fragments of shells. Others were mutilated in every conceivable way.

“The bottoms of the boats held two or three inches of blood. In many cases dead men were lying in the blood. Five poor chaps died on the way to the ship. They were afterwards buried with military honors from the *Iowa*. Some examples of heroism—or, more properly, devotion to discipline and duty—could never be surpassed. One man, on the lost *Vizcaya*, had his left arm almost shot off just below the shoulder. The fragments were hanging by a small piece of skin; but he climbed, unassisted, over the side and saluted as if on a visit of ceremony. Immediately after him came a strong, hearty sailor, whose left leg had been shot off above the knee. He was hoisted on board the *Iowa* with a tackle, but never a whimper came from him. Gradually the mangled bodies and naked well men accumulated, until it would have been almost difficult to recognize the *Iowa* as a United States battleship.

“Blood was all over her usually white quarter-deck, and 272 naked men were being supplied with water and food by those who, a few minutes before, had been using a rapid-fire battery on them. Finally came the boats with Captain Eulate, commander of the *Vizcaya*, for whom a chair was lowered over the side, as he was evidently wounded. The captain's guard of marines was drawn up on the quarter-deck to salute him, and I stood waiting to welcome him. As the chair was placed on the deck, the marines presented arms; Captain Eulate slowly raised himself in the chair, saluted me with grave dignity, unbuckled his sword-belt, and, holding the hilt of the sword before him, kissed it reverently, with tears in his eyes, and then surrendered it to me. Of course I declined to receive his sword, and as the crew of the *Iowa* saw this they cheered like wild men. As I started to take Captain Eulate into the cabin to let the doctors examine his wounds, the magazines on board

the *Vizcaya* exploded with a tremendous burst of flame. Captain Eulate, extending his hands, said 'Adios, *Vizcaya!*' 'There goes my beautiful ship, Captain,' and so we passed on to the cabin, where the doctors dressed his three wounds. In the meantime thirty officers of the *Vizcaya* had been picked up, besides 272 of her crew.

"Our ward-room and steerage officers gave up their state-rooms, and furnished food, clothing and tobacco to those naked officers from the *Vizcaya*. The paymaster issued uniforms to the naked sailors, and each was given all the corned beef, coffee and hardtack he could eat. The war had assumed another aspect.

"As I knew the crews of the first two ships wrecked had not been visited by any of our vessels, I ran down to them. I found the *Gloucester*, with Admiral Cervera and a number of his officers on board, and also a large number of wounded, some in a frightfully mangled condition. Many prisoners had been killed on shore by the fire of the Cubans. The *Harvard* came off, and I requested Captain Cotton to go in and take off the crews of the *Infanta Maria Teresa* and the *Admirante Oquendo*, and by midnight the *Harvard* had 976 prisoners aboard, a great number of them wounded.

"For courage and dash there is no parallel in history to this action of the Spanish admiral. He came, as he knew, to absolute destruction. There was one single hope; that was that the *Cristobal Colon* would steam faster than the *Brooklyn*. The spectacle of two torpedo-boat destroyers, paper shells at best, deliberately steaming out in broad daylight in the face of the fire of a battleship can only be described in one way. It was Spanish and it was ordered by Blanco. The same must be said of the entire movement.

"In contrast to this Spanish fashion was the cool, deliberate Yankee work. The American squadron was without sentiment, apparently. The ships went at their Spanish opponents and literally tore them to pieces. But the moment the Spanish flag came down it must have been evident that the sentiment was among the Americans, not the Spaniards.

"I took Admiral Cervera aboard the *Iowa* from the *Gloucester*, which had rescued him from the dead, and received him with a full admiral's guard. The crew of the *Iowa* crowded aft over the turrets, half-naked and black with powder, as Cervera stepped over the side, bareheaded. Over his undershirt he wore a thin suit of flannel, borrowed from Lieutenant Commander Wainwright of the *Gloucester*. The crew cheered vociferously. Cervera was every inch an admiral, even if he had not any hat. He submitted to the fortunes of war with a grace that proclaimed him a thoroughbred."

Captain Evans is intensely proud of his ship and her men. The *Iowa* fired thirty-one twelve-inch, forty-eight eight-inch, 270 four-inch, 1,060 six-pound and 1,020 one-pound shots.

The officers of the *Vizcaya* said they simply could not hold their crews at the guns on account of the rapid fire poured upon them. The decks were flooded with water from the fire hose, mingled with blood from the wounded—a dark red tide of human hate and misery, fearful to behold, in which gruesome fragments of bodies floated along the gun deck. Every instant the crack of exploding shells told of new havoc. One of the twelve-inch shells from the *Iowa* exploded a torpedo in the *Vizcaya's* bow, blowing twenty men against the deck above and dropping them dead and mangled into the fire which at once started below.

The torpedo boat *Ericsson* was sent by the flagship to help the *Iowa* rescue the *Vizcaya's* crew. Her men saw a terrible sight. The flames leaping out from the huge shot holes in the *Vizcaya's* sides licked up the decks, sizzling the flesh of the wounded who were lying there shrieking for help. Between the frequent explosions there came awful cries and groans from the men penned in below. This carnage was chiefly due to the rapidity of the Americans' fire.

Corporal Smith, on the *Iowa*, fired 135 aimed shots in fifty minutes from a four-inch gun. Two shells struck within ten feet of Smith and started a small fire; but the corporal went on pumping shots into the enemy, only stopping to say, "They've got it in for this gun, sir."

From two six-pounders, 440 shots were fired in fifty minutes. Up in the tops, the marines banged away with one-pounders, too excited to stop to duck as the shells whistled over them. One gunner of a secondary battery, under a twelve-inch gun, was blinded by smoke and saltpetre from the turret, and his crew were driven off; but sticking a wet handkerchief over his face, with holes cut for his eyes, he stuck to his gun. Finally, as the six-pounders were so close to the eight-inch turret as to make it impossible to stay there with safety, the men were ordered away whenever the big gun was fired; but they refused to leave.

When the eight-inch gun was fired the concussion blew two men of the smaller guns' crews ten feet from their guns and threw them to the deck as deaf as posts. Back they went again, however, and were again blown away, and finally had to be dragged away from their stations. Such bravery and such dogged determination under the heavy fire was of frequent occurrence on all the ships engaged.

During his stay on the *Iowa*, Admiral Cervera endeared himself to all. After Blanco's order was issued, he wanted

to come out on the night of July 2, but General Linares said, "Wait till to-morrow morning. You will catch them at divine service then." The Spaniards say that no torpedo boats ever came out to attack Admiral Sampson's fleet. The *Pluton* and *Terror*, they say, kept guard every night inside the harbor.

The following account is given by an eye-witness on board the *Brooklyn*, as seen from the conning tower, alongside of Commodore Schley. The *Brooklyn* being in the fight from start to finish, and continually in the thickest of it, this story is very interesting :

It is a custom on ships, regulated by the rules, that there shall be a general muster at least once each three months and that the articles of war shall be read. First call had been sounded at 9.15 A.M., and the men were assembling on the decks. The lookout in the masthead of the *Brooklyn* had, some time before, reported smoke in the harbor, but as the same thing had been noticed several times, no special attention was paid to it. The *Brooklyn* and the *Vixen* were the only ships to the west of the entrance, the other ships having drifted well to the east.

On the bridge, Navigator Hodgson, of the *Brooklyn*, said sharply to the lookout: "Isn't that smoke moving?" and the lookout, after a minute's inspection with the long glass, dropped it excitedly and fairly yelled: "There's a big ship coming out of the harbor, sir." Hodgson, who is a particularly cool man, looked once himself and then, grasping the megaphone, shouted: "After bridge, there! Tell the commodore the enemy's fleet is coming out."

Commodore Schley was sitting under the awning on the quarter deck. Going to the bridge he said: "Raise the signal to the fleet," and turning to Captain Cook, who stood near, he said: "Clear the ship for action." Then

he went forward and took his place on a little platform of wood running on the outside of the conning tower, which had been built for him.

He was dressed in blue trousers, a black alpaca jacket and the regulation cap, without the broad band of gold braid. The men, with a yell, went to their guns, and the rapid preliminary orders were given. Schley, glass in hand, watched the first ship turn out and saw her start for the west. Still he gave no signal to fire or move.

The *Oregon* opened with her thirteen-inch shells, and the *Indiana* and *Texas* followed suit. But the range was a long one. Still the *Brooklyn* waited. But down below, the coal was being forced into the furnaces, every boiler was being worked, and every gun made ready to fire. Schley wanted to know which way they were all going, or whether they would scatter. In the meantime the *Oregon* began to turn to the west, and the *Texas* had moved in closer and was damaging the leading ship, the *Infanta Maria Teresa*.

"They are coming west, sir," shouted Lieutenant Sears. And just then the western batteries opened up. "Full speed ahead, open fire," shouted the commodore. "Fire deliberately and don't waste shot," he added, and the orderlies carried the word to the turrets. In an instant the *Brooklyn's* terrific eight- and five-inch batteries on her port side opened, and the cruiser headed for a point in front of the first escaping ship, firing at and receiving the fire from two of them.

Then Commodore Schley saw that the first ship was coming out from the shore, headed directly for the *Brooklyn*, with the evident intention of ramming her. A clever manoeuvre was here accomplished. "Hard aport with your helm," shouted Schley, and the cruiser began to go around, the smoke coming from her funnels in huge volumes.

Quickly she turned and quickly her big steel ram was pointed at the first ship. The *Infanta Maria Teresa* had to work inshore to avoid being rammed. The shells of the *Texas* and the *Oregon*, with the terrible storms of shell from the *Brooklyn*, had done their work, and the smoke began to appear pouring from the decks of the doomed Spanish flagship.

In the meantime the converted yacht, *Gloucester*, could be seen, with the help of the *Iowa*, destroying the two torpedo boat destroyers that had followed the last ship out. At 10 o'clock the entire Cape Verde squadron was outside the harbor and going rapidly westward.

The *Iowa* and the *Indiana* could not keep up the pace, but the *Oregon* was coming across to the assistance of the *Brooklyn*, which at 10.05 was engaging the first three ships, the *Infanta Maria Teresa*, the *Cristobal Colon* and the *Vizcaya*.

At 10.11 the Spanish ships had all concentrated their shots on the *Brooklyn*, and she was in a perfect rain of shells, most of which went over her.

Standing in this hail of shells, Commodore Schley asked a young man named Ellis, who stood near him with a stadiometer, "What is the distance to the *Vizcaya*?" The man took the observation. "Twenty-two hundred yards, sir," he said, and there was a whistle followed by a splash, as Ellis's head was literally torn from his shoulders by an eight-inch shell.

"Too bad," said Commodore Schley, as the body fell at his feet; and then, with his glasses to his eyes, he added, "The first ship is done for; she is running ashore."

The *Maria Teresa* was running her nose on the beach, and in an instant was a mass of flames. The *Brooklyn* was ordered to concentrate her fire on the *Almirante Oquendo*, and, with the *Oregon's* assistance, in ten minutes more the

Oquendo was sent ashore a burning wreck, but a short distance from Santiago. The *Iowa*, in the meantime, had sunk one torpedo-boat destroyer, and the other one had been driven ashore by the *Gloucester's* terrific rapid fire.

At 10.49 the *Brooklyn* turned her attention to the *Vizcaya*, the *Cristobal Colon* having passed the latter and now being in the lead well up the coast. At the time the only vessels in sight from the *Brooklyn* were the *Oregon*, about a mile and a half astern, and the *Texas*, about three miles astern.

At 11.15 the *Brooklyn*, slightly injured by the hail of Spanish shells, stopped firing and the chase began. The men came up on deck and began to cheer, never heeding the whistle of the Spanish shells. They cheered for Schley and Cook and for the *Oregon*; and the *Oregon's* men returned the cheer.

Up to the masthead of the *Oregon* fluttered a line of flags. "Remember the *Maine*," read the *Brooklyn's* signal officer. "Tell them we have," said Schley, and there was a roar as the answer went up.

The chase was in full force at 11.55 o'clock, the men out on the decks watching with great interest and happy as larks. The *Colon*, at a distance of five miles, hugged the shore, but Schley ordered the *Oregon* to follow her, and then, with the *Brooklyn*, he made a straight course for Cape Cruz, around which the Spaniard would have to steer on a long detour to get away.

All three ships were rushing along at great speed, the smoke pouring out of their funnels. In an hour the *Brooklyn* had gained appreciably, and so had the *Oregon*; and Captain Clark, of the latter ship, signaled over, "A strange ship looking like an Italian in the distance." He alluded to the fact that the *Cristobal Colon* was bought

from Italy. Schley, sitting on the edge of the forward 8-inch turret, swinging his legs and happy, said: "Tell the *Oregon* she can try one of those 13-inch railroad trains on her."

There was a terrible roar as the big shell went by the *Brooklyn*, a moment of suspense and watching and then a hearty cheer as the big missile struck the water close astern of the *Colon*, four miles away. Another was tried, which reached the mark, and there were more cheers. Then the *Brooklyn* opened her forward and starboard eight-inch guns and one shell was seen to go through the *Colon* at the top of her armored belt.

At 1.05 P. M., both the *Brooklyn* and the *Oregon* were pounding away at the *Colon* and, in another ten minutes, after returning the fire in a desultory sort of way and rapidly losing ground, she hauled down her flag. With yells of delight the men poured out of the turrets of the two ships, and, when a boom went up at the mainmast of the *Brooklyn*, they began to cheer and did not stop for ten minutes.

At this time the only ships in sight were the *Vixen*, about five miles away, and the *Texas*, about seven miles away. The *New York* was not in sight. As the big ships moved in on the quarry, the smoke of the *New York* could be seen coming over the horizon from the east, but she was fully twelve miles away. A boat was lowered from the *Brooklyn*, and Captain Cook went aboard to receive the surrender. The officer in charge said, with tears in his eyes, "I surrender unconditionally to Commodore Schley. We were badly hurt and could not get away."

While Captain Cook's boat was coming alongside, the Spanish captives shouted, "Bravo Americano," and the crew responded, "Bravo Spaniardo."

While Captain Cook was returning to the *Brooklyn*, the *New York*, with Admiral Sampson, came along, ran in between the *Brooklyn* and the prize, and ordered Captain Cook to send the prisoners on board the *New York*.

Commodore Schley, seeing this, megaphoned over: "I request the honor of receiving the surrender of the officers of the *Cristobal Colon*."

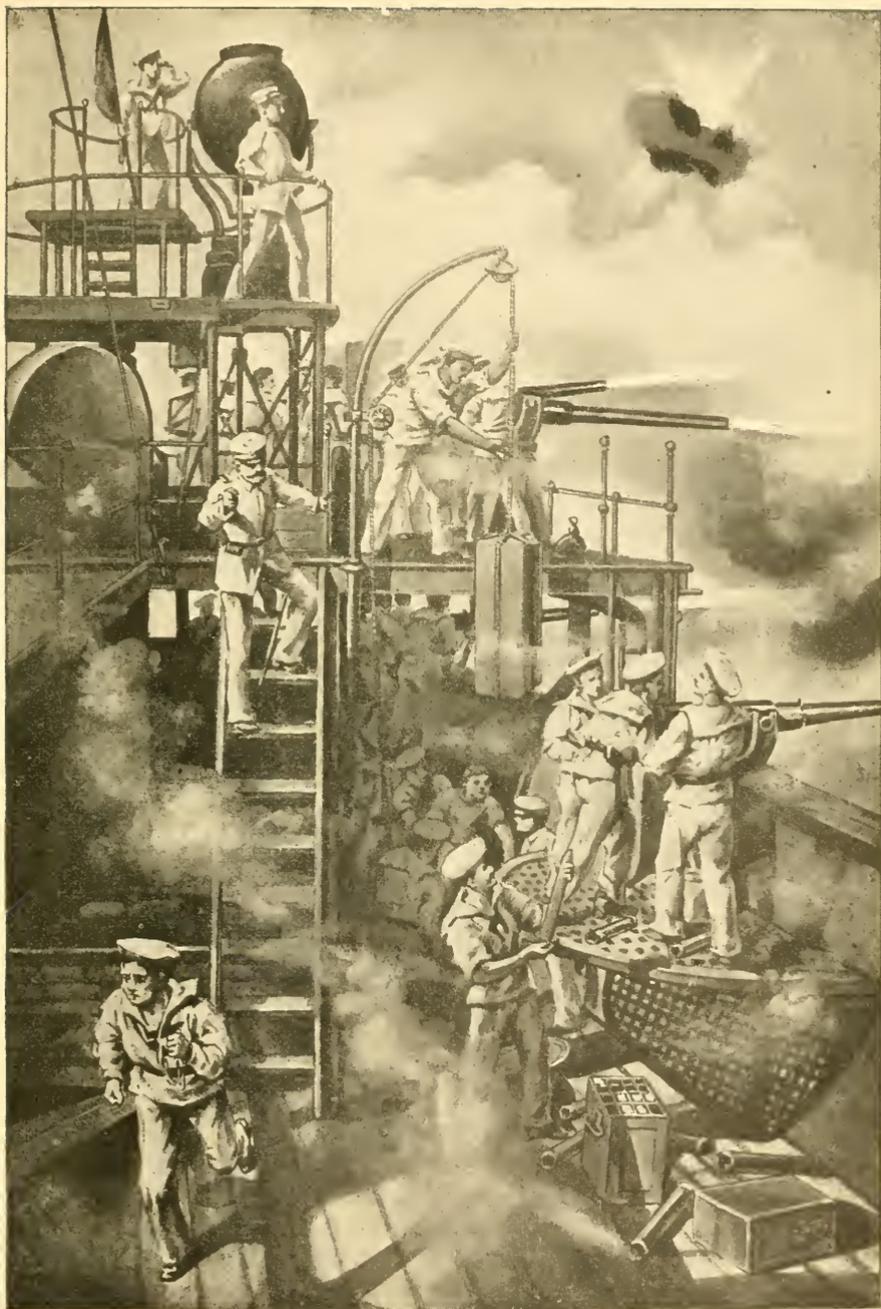
No answer was vouchsafed him from the *New York*, and the ship that had not fired an effective shot took the honors. Commodore Schley then raised the pennant "A glorious victory has been won, details later." The answer from the *New York* was "Report your casualties."

The *Brooklyn* was hit twenty-six times, but only one man, G. H. Ellis, was killed, and only one man, J. H. Burns, fireman, wounded.

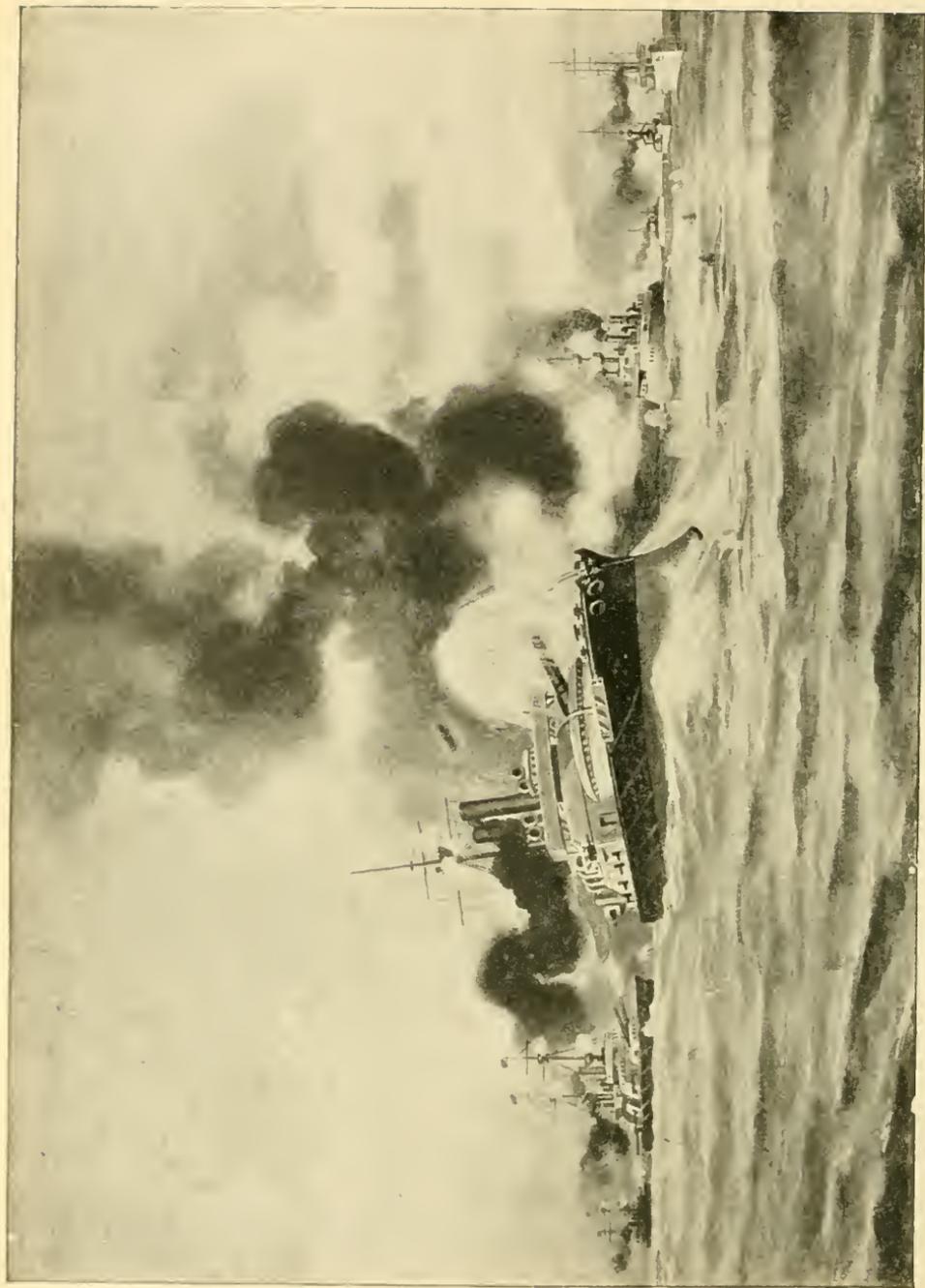
The *Colon* went ashore at the place where the *Virginus* expedition tried to land and was captured, years ago. The chase had lasted four hours, and the *Brooklyn*, *Oregon*, *Texas* and *Gloucester* had saved the United States fleet from the stain of allowing the Spanish vessels to escape—the *Oregon* and the *Brooklyn*, by their splendid chase and gunnery, the *Texas* by her great work on the first two ships, and the *Gloucester* by her marvelous attack on the destroyers.

"Don't cheer, the poor fellows are dying," was the way in which Captain "Jack" Philip, commanding the *Texas*, called his men's attention to the impropriety of cheering on such an occasion. It was the same officer who said to his men after the victory:

"I want to make public acknowledgment here that I believe in God, the Father Almighty. I want all you officers and men to lift your hats and from your hearts to give silent thanks."



ON BOARD THE "BROOKLYN" AT SANTIAGO.

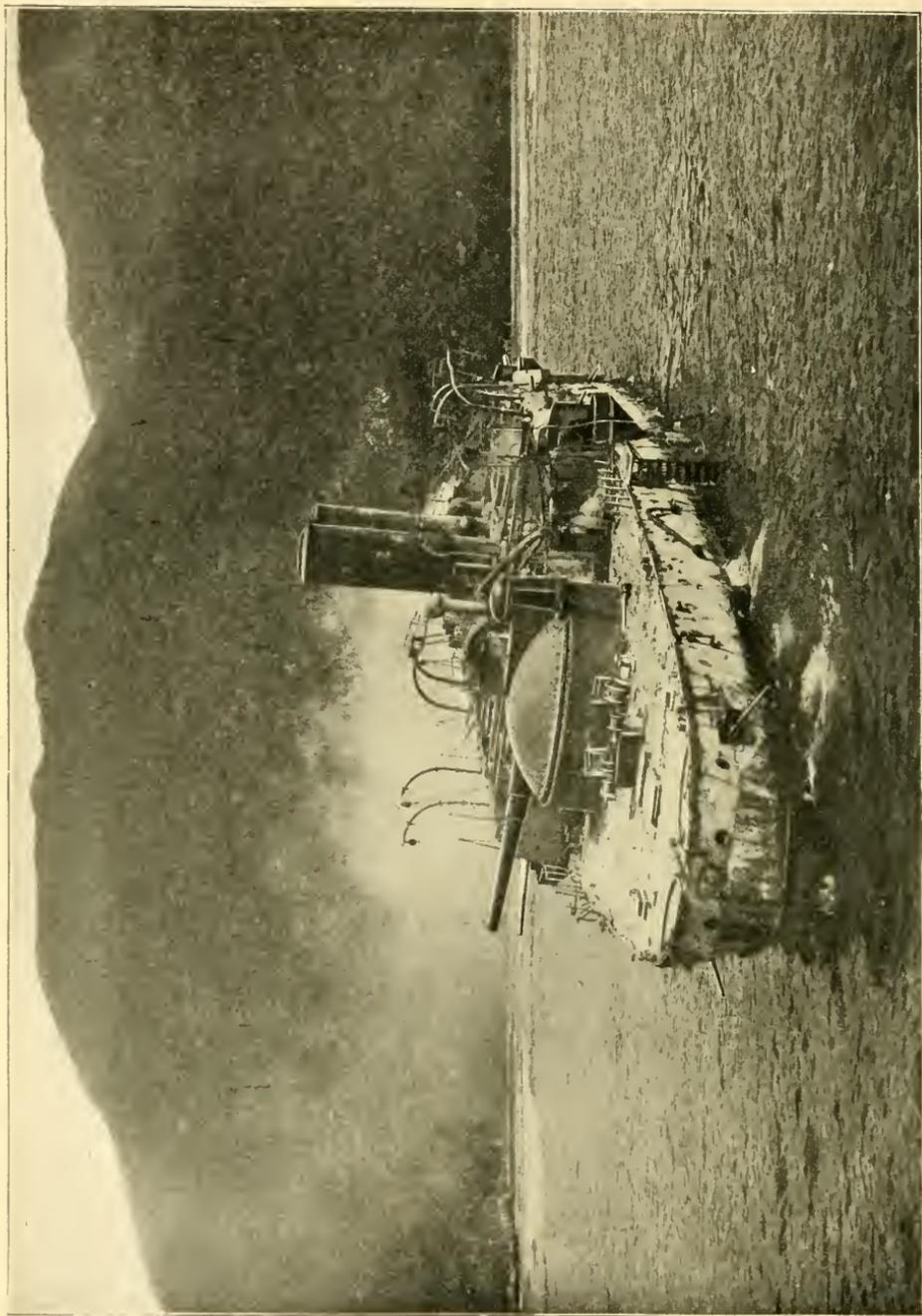


CERVERA'S CRUISERS,—RUNNING UP THE COAST FROM SANTIAGO.



Copyrighted by W. R. Hearst, 1898.

"MARIA TERESA."—STILL BURNING. PHOTOGRAPHED A FEW HOURS AFTER THE BATTLE.



Copyrighted by W. R. Hearst, 1898.
ALMIRANTE OQUENDO.—PHOTOGRAPHED JULY 4TH, 1898. WRECK STILL BURNING.

It is of such men that our navy is made.

Admiral Cervera, through the courtesy of the United States Government, informed General Blanco of the catastrophe in this language :

“ To the Commanding General of Habana :

“ Acting on your instructions, I left Santiago de Cuba yesterday and encountered an American force three times the strength of mine. The *Infanta Maria Teresa*, the *Almirante Oquendo*, and the *Vizcaya* were beached and burned ; according to an American report, the *Cristobal Colon* was beached further west of Santiago. The *Pluton* and the *Furor* foundered. The men behaved so bravely that they won praise from the Americans. About six hundred were killed and large numbers were wounded. The rest were taken prisoners. All is lost and we need money.

“ Villamil was killed, and probably Lazaya ; Cancas, and Eulate were wounded.”

Though this naval action proved decisive, the land attack having been begun, it had to be continued. The victory added immeasurably to the prestige of the American fleet. It destroyed the apprehensions that had been caused by two days' hard fighting, in the heat, against strong intrenchments, and made it certain that Santiago must soon fall before the superior American forces.

During this fight Lieutenant Hobson was in Santiago with his brave companions. The fighting before Santiago, in which our army captured many prisoners, and the catastrophe to Cervera made the Spanish authorities more willing to exchange Hobson and his companions. By two o'clock on the afternoon of July 6th, the preliminaries were arranged, and a Spanish lieutenant and fourteen men were exchanged for Hobson and the crew of the *Merrimac*. As they entered the American lines they were cheered. Men

rushed from the trenches to grasp their hands and to cheer them. It was an ovation from brave men to brave men. They understood each other. The release of the gallant naval constructor made it possible to learn why he had not succeeded in blocking the channel. The *Merrimac* had been struck by shells, submarine mines had been exploded around her, and when it came to placing her in the channel it was found that her rudder had been shot away. Though the harbor had not been blocked, the exploit of Hobson and the crew of the *Merrimac* lost nothing of its heroism.

The battle of July 1st and 2d really ended the fighting before Santiago. There was desultory firing on Sunday, the 3d, but that was all. Both sides occupied themselves in strengthening their positions. Intrenchments were thrown up, and better positions taken, the line of the army being drawn closer around the city. Rifle pits were dug, and, with the artillery that was coming up, the Spanish position was made steadily less tenable.

On Monday, July 5th, the Spanish cruiser *Reina Mercedes*, which had been disabled by our warships earlier in the blockade, was seen drifting out of the harbor. In a moment the American fleet opened fire and sank the vessel. Admiral Sampson, before Cervera's fleet was destroyed, had planned to countermine Santiago harbor, and enter and give battle to the enemy's ships. When Cervera's ships had been whipped the plan was temporarily dispensed with.

The battles of July 1 and 2, and the fearful havoc wrought by our ships on July 3, made the Spanish position hopeless. General Shafter demanded their surrender. The Spanish commander, General Toral, asked that the English cable operators be permitted to return to Santiago—they having left before the bombardment—and when this was granted he communicated with Captain-General Blanco, in

Havana, asking authority to surrender. This was refused. At the request of the foreign consuls, General Toral was given until noon, July 6th, to surrender. The delay was utilized by the American army in getting its siege guns and other artillery from the landing places and in pressing forward further, General Lawton's division moving westward slowly so as to more completely surround the city. At noon, July 6th, General Shafter extended the time to 4 o'clock Saturday afternoon, July 9th, as General Toral had not had sufficient opportunity to consult his government.

In the meantime, refugees came out in great numbers from Santiago, crowded the roads, suffered, spread disease, and embarrassed military movements. General Shafter's army was still receiving reinforcements, the First and Eighth Ohio, Eighth Massachusetts, First and Sixth Illinois, and First District of Columbia having been sent to Santiago, and bringing General Shafter's effective force up to some 23,000 men.

It became evident when General Toral offered, instead of a general surrender, to capitulate and march his troops to Havana, that his situation was desperate. To this President McKinley positively refused to agree, despite the fact that Generals Shafter and Wheeler looked favorably upon it. On Sunday, July 10th, the artillery that had been placed in position before Santiago, and the warships, began a bombardment. On Monday it was repeated. The same day General Miles arrived, not to succeed General Shafter, but to study the ground.

To General Shafter's second demand for unconditional surrender, which was made on Monday, the 11th, General Toral replied on Tuesday, the 12th, that, if Shafter wanted Santiago, he must take it. That day saw Santiago completely invested by American troops. The

next day General Shafter met the Spanish commander between the lines and told him plainly that he must surrender by noon of July 14th, or fire would be opened on the city.

It was on the 14th that Toral, in a second interview, at which General Miles was present, agreed to surrender. Commissioners were appointed to negotiate terms. General Escariel, Colonel Fontaine and Mr. Mason, the British Vice-Consul, representing Spain, and General Wheeler, General Lawton and Lieutenant Miley, the United States. The commissioners parleyed, the Spaniards trying to gain by delay, until the conditions of capitulation were signed. General Shafter informed the war department in this bulletin :

“HEADQUARTERS NEAR SANTIAGO, July 16.

“Adjutant-General U. S. Army, Washington.

“The conditions of capitulation include all forces and war material in described territory. The United States agrees, with as little delay as possible, to transport all Spanish troops in district to Kingdom of Spain, the troops, as far as possible, to embark near to the garrison they now occupy. Officers to retain their side arms, and officers and men to retain their personal property. Spanish authorized to take military archives belonging to surrendered district. All Spanish forces known as volunteers, Moirilizadves, and guerillas who wish to remain in Cuba may do so under parole during present war, giving up their arms. Spanish forces march out of Santiago with honors of war, depositing their arms at a point mutually agreed upon, to await disposition of the United States Government, it being understood United States Commissioners will recommend that the Spanish soldiers return to Spain with arms so bravely defended. This leaves the question of return of arms entirely in the hands of the Government. I invite attention to the fact that several thousand surrendered, said by General Toral to be about 12,000, against whom a shot has not been fired. The return to Spain of the troops in this district amounts to above 24,000, according to General Toral.

“W. R. SHAFTER, Major General.”

President McKinley therefore congratulated the victorious army as follows :

“To General Shafter, Commanding, Front, near Santiago, Playa.

“The President of the United States sends to you and your brave army the profound thanks of the American people for the brilliant achievements at Santiago, resulting in the surrender of the city and all of the Spanish troops and territory under General Toral. Your splendid command has endured not only

the hardships and sacrifices incident to the campaign and battle, but, in stress of heat and weather, has triumphed over obstacles which would have overcome men less brave and determined. One and all have displayed the most conspicuous gallantry and earned the gratitude of the Nation. The hearts of the people turn with tender sympathy to the sick and the wounded. May the Father of Mercies protect and comfort them. WILLIAM MCKINLEY."

To that General Shafter replied in this manner :

"CAMP NEAR SANTIAGO, July 16.

"To the President.

"I thank you, and my army thank you, for your congratulatory telegram of to-day. I am proud to say every one in it performed his duty gallantly. Your message will be read to every regiment in the army at noon to-morrow.

"SHAFTER, Major-General."

On Sunday, July 17th, General Shafter announced the occupation of Santiago as follows :

"SANTIAGO DE CUBA, July 17.

"Adjutant-General U. S. A., Washington :

"I have the honor to announce that the American flag has been this instant, 12 o'clock noon, hoisted over the house of the civil government in the city of Santiago. An immense concourse of people present. A squadron of cavalry and a regiment of infantry presenting arms and band playing national airs. Light battery fired salute twenty-one guns. Perfect order is being maintained by municipal government. Distress is very great, but little sickness in town. Scarcely any yellow fever. A small gunboat and about two hundred seamen left by Cervera have surrendered to me. Obstructions are being removed from the mouth of harbor. Upon coming into the city I discovered a perfect entanglement of defence. Fighting as the Spaniards did the first day it would have cost five thousand lives to have taken it. Battalion of Spanish troops depositing arms since daylight in armory, over which I have a guard. General Toral formally surrendered the Plaza and all stores at 9 A. M.

"W. R. SHAFTER, Major-General."

Thus, a month and three days after the army sailed from the Florida coast, the city of Santiago, twenty-four thousand prisoners, and the eastern end of Cuba, from Acerradero on the south, to Sagua de Tunamo on the north, were in American hands ; the great Spanish fleet was destroyed, and Spain's power on sea and land broken. The result was worth all the cost in men and money. The campaign against Santiago was a most remarkable one because of the

intrepid fighting of the American troops practically unsupported by artillery. It showed the bravery of the volunteers as well as the regulars. It made more apparent the superior gunnery and discipline of our navy. It was one of the most notable surrenders in history, due as much to President McKinley as to any American general, for it was the President who insisted on a surrender practically without conditions. The campaign added new lustre to American arms and gave the world an important lesson in the fighting qualities of the American soldiers.

A great victory had been won against an enemy strongly entrenched, in a tropical climate, during the rainy season and the hottest time of year. The sun baked those who went under its rays, and the cold nights chilled them. The hardships suffered by our troops were of the severest, but the men stormed El Caney and San Juan and did every duty bravely and uncomplainingly.

After the surrender of Santiago the work of the blockading squadron was not yet completed. There were several strategic points to be reduced to submission.

On the morning of July 18th, seven American warships appeared before Manzanillo, on the western coast of the Province of Santiago de Cuba. They were the following vessels of the blockading squadron: The *Wilmington*, *Helena*, *Scorpion*, *Hist*, *Hornet*, *Wampatuck* and *Osceola*.

At half-past 7 the *Wilmington* and *Helena* entered the northern channel, toward the city; the *Scorpion* and the *Osceola* the mid-channel, and the *Hist*, *Hornet* and *Wampatuck* the south channel, the movements of the vessels being so timed as to bring them all within effective range of the shipping at about the same moment.

There was a large force of Spanish troops stationed

there, and among other shipping in the harbor there were three transports: the *El Gloria*, *Jose Garcia* and *La Purissima Concepcion*.

At 7.50 fire was opened on the shipping. After a deliberate cannonade, lasting about two and a half hours, the three transports were sunk, and the storehouses and magazines were blown up. The Spanish troops, on shore, opened a lively fire with their artillery.

Commander Todd, of the *Wilmington*, in the following words, tells of the attack which quickly brought the place to terms:

"The firing was maintained at a range which is believed to be beyond the range of the shore artillery. It was continued until, after a gradual closing in, the shore batteries opened fire at a comparatively short range, when the ships were recalled, the object of the expedition having been accomplished, and the ideas of the commander-in-chief carried out as I understood them—that is, to destroy the enemy's shipping, but not to engage the field batteries or forts.

"No casualties occurred on board any of our vessels. Great care was taken in directing the fire that as little damage as possible should be done to the city itself, and so far as could be observed, little, if any, was done."

The *Pontoon*, which was the harbor guard and store-shop, probably for ammunition, was burned.

On the northern coast, another expedition had been sent to destroy the Spanish defences at Nipe. The following despatch, from Admiral Sampson, July 22d, show the result of that expedition:

"PLAYA DEL ESTE, July 22.

"Expedition to Nipe (northern coast of Cuba) has been entirely successful, although the mines have not been removed for want of time.

"The Spanish cruiser, *Jorge Juan*, defending the place, was destroyed without loss on our part.

"The *Annapolis* and *Wasp* afterward proceeded from Nipe to assist in the landing of the commanding general of the army on arrival at Porto Rico.

"SAMPSON."

AN IMPORTANT POINT CARRIED.

The Bay of Nipe lies on the north coast of Cuba, in the province of Santiago, almost directly across the island from Santiago, and west and outside of the territory surrounded. It is purposed to establish a base there, which will save at least two days' time in getting supplies into Cuba as compared with the Santiago route.

It will also form a good point of operation against Holguin, not far distant, and if it should develop, unfortunately, that a restraining hand must be laid upon the Cubans themselves, Nipe, in connection with Santiago, would afford effective means of doing this.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

OUR NATIONAL DEFENCE AND HEROISM.

The Power of Our Country Lies in the Intelligence of Our Citizens and Our Great Wealth—The Quality of our Fighting Stock Made up Largely of Raw Recruits, Shows a Remarkable Development of Heroism—The Battle of Manila, and the Sinking of the *Merrimac* at Santiago are Samples of American Strategy—Europe again Recognizes Our Almost Forgotten Fighting Qualities.

On the 8th of March Congress appropriated \$50,000,000 for the National Defence, and on the 25th of May Adjutant-General Corbin stated, that when the army of the United States was fully organized under existing authority, including the last call for 75,000 volunteers, it would consist of 278,500 men, divided as follows :

Regular army	62,000
Volunteers from States and Territories	200,000
Three cavalry regiments at large	3,000
Ten infantry regiments of United States volunteers (immunes),	10,000
Engineers at large	<u>3,500</u>
Total	278,500

Public opinion in the United States undervalued the power of Spain in a defensive struggle, and did not, for some time, realize the fact stated by General Fitzhugh Lee, that the Spanish army in Cuba was larger than any ever sent so far from home to carry on war. Spain had shipped more than two hundred thousand of her young men, conscripted to conquer the Cuban rebellion, and there is not included, in this estimate, the Spanish Volunteers, sent to Cuba to hold situations and find exemption, in three years' volunteer service as Cuban Militia, from five years

regular military duty. There were not less than forty thousand of the Cuban Volunteers, as they are called. They chose to be home guards in the cities of Cuba, rather than in the regular army, and were the most radical and relentless of the Spaniards. They had the peculiarity of being better drilled than the regulars, and as they carried their guns and cartridges home, they could not be disarmed without searching from house to house. As a rule they had the physical strength to be masters of Havana, and the one organization feared by the Governor-General. Add them to the regular Spanish Army sent to Cuba, and also include the seamen serving in the Navy, and there was a force of more than a quarter of a million men, phenomenally incompetent in aggressive warfare, but of a brave and pugnacious race, and no doubt, armed as they were with excellent rifles, and sustained by numerous field batteries—one hundred and eighty guns is the latest report accessible—they were expected to be formidable as defenders of positions. The Cuban insurgents have seemed, to the world, much stronger than they were in reality, because they had kept the field in the face of the immense forces of the Spaniards. They had inherited the art of guerrilla warfare, and the wonderful vegetation of Cuba, the almost impenetrable forests and swamps, and inaccessible mountains, had made nine-tenths of the island a vast fortress. The fame of the agricultural products of Cuba has been deceptive as to the extent of the areas of cultivation, for less than one-fifteenth of the surface has been included in the fields. It is fortunate that the President was cautious and deliberative, for there was the possibility of rash precipitations into grave dangers, or the adoption of the plans of campaign upon false impressions, inflamed imaginations, and miscalculations.

The startling victory won on the other side of the world

by Admiral Dewey, kindled the blood, and its glorious magic exalted the nation. The people largely, in the magnetic and inspiring illumination of triumph, were forgetful that we might search the records of a thousand years of wars on the seas, without finding the story of another such glory, and there was again required the solid qualities of sober judgment to labor and wait for the army to be, as the army men say, "set up."

Often during our controversies with Spain about Cuba, attention was drawn to the risings against Spanish rule in the Philippine Islands, but it did not occur to the average citizen that we should ever be very gravely concerned about that Asiatic archipelago. Within a day or two after the declaration of war against Spain, it became vaguely known that important orders had been sent to our fleet at Hong-Kong, which had been assembled there to represent our interests during the progress of the partition of China; Russia practically insisting upon acquiring an important strip of territory; England, France, and Germany urging that they must have compensation, England's position being the more legitimate, on account of her very extensive commercial relations with the people of China, and her attitude favoring the freedom of the ports. The German Emperor manifested his great solicitude by sending his brother to China and using the evident ambition of other nations, and his own imperial concern to arouse German sentiment in favor of the increase of his navy. Though there had been many shadows of coming events cast before, in that part of the globe, Americans had not realized that they were to be chief actors in the great drama played in the Orient—it is Oriental if we look upon it from our Atlantic coast, or Occidental if we look at it from the Pacific shore—until our war with Spain opened with a clap

of thunder at Manila, within a week after the order had been despatched by the President, to Admiral Dewey, to attack and destroy the Spanish fleet. Primarily this was to protect our commerce—politically it is the beginning of great things, the opening of an era of revolutionary progress. We were not prepared at home for such rapid strokes as those delivered on the other side of the world by Admiral Dewey. The Spaniards in Cuba, upon the abandonment of their alleged offensive operations, were able, by giving up a multitude of minor points, to assemble forces on the lines of the railroads and by the sea in western provinces, not far from one hundred thousand strong. This takes into account the volunteers, who were a better drilled and equipped body of troops than the regulars. It did not seem to be a reasonable movement to make, even in the light of our Manila experience, to depend upon an available force of fifteen thousand regulars to attack from five to seven times as many Spaniards with a superior array of artillery behind breastworks. Neither did it seem well to throw our volunteers, however admirable their individual characteristics, into a campaign of invasion before they had been hardened into a compact organization. It was the opinion of our consuls in Cuba, including General Lee, that the Spanish army, having been sustained chiefly on imported food, had not succeeded in gathering stores of supplies that would enable them to endure a blockade for more than a month. Evidently the Spaniards had been more thoughtful and active in gathering rations than our consuls believed, and not sufficient account had been taken of the extraordinary fertility of the soil of the island, which can be made to yield three crops a year, all sorts of food, except that which is preferred for army use. A diet of Cuban fruit and vegetables is, according to experience, productive of fevers.

The first war business was to apply rigorously the blockade, and there was this compensation for the passing time—each week perceptibly, and in the judgment of military men, both at home and abroad, essentially improved our troops. The first instances of the state of hostilities was the capture of Spanish prizes. Then a French steamer insisted upon breaking the blockade at Havana, and owing to the lack of intelligent politeness in her commander, she was taken to Key West, and released by order of our Government, as she had official permission to enter the harbor. The first guns fired by Spain at the flag of the United States, in defence of colonial rights in the island, was from the famous Morro Castle, and they were harmless. No reply was made at the time. Hence the unwarrantable phrase, “a pacific blockade.” Until we knew the ability of Spain’s fleet, and whether her policy was to make the fight for Cuba a naval one, it would have been an unwise act to have met the popular demand for a bombardment of Havana, by testing the comparative strength of our battleships against the batteries that guard that city. We could hardly have destroyed the fortifications without serious injuries to some of our vessels, and the loss of a few ships or their temporary disability might have given the Spanish squadrons, had they been united, a dangerous preponderance, especially as the Oregon had not yet arrived. One of the events that has attracted the attention of the seamen of the world has been the voyage of that ship from California to Florida, passing around Cape Horn and all the West India islands, more than fourteen thousand miles, at good speed and without accident. American mechanics have reason to take pride in the work of their hands upon this noble boat. As our squadrons were feeling along the shores of Cuba, they were fired upon occasionally, and the first marked case of return-

ing the compliment was at Matanzas, where a furious cannonade, for some time, served a good purpose as target practice—gave our battleships a baptism of fire without doing them any harm, and was of value to the officers and crew as an experience. There is a natural anxiety in the men enlisted for war to smell gunpowder that is burned in earnest, and hear the humming of cannon balls. It should soothe the nerves and teach composure.

On May 12th two telegrams were received by the Secretary of the Navy, one from Admiral Dewey, stating there was little change in the situation, and he was "transferring to transports, steel breech-loading rifles from sunken Spanish men-of-war;" also, stores from the arsenal in his possession, and maintaining strict blockade. The other despatch was from Key West, announcing that in an action in Cardenas harbor five of the crew of the torpedo boat *Winslow* were killed and three wounded. *Killed*: Worth Bagley, ensign, U. S. N.; John Varveres, oiler; John Duffee, fireman, first-class; George B. Meek, fireman, first-class; Elijah B. Tunnell, cabin cook. *Wounded*: J. S. Bernadou, lieutenant, commanding *Winslow*; William Patterson, seriously, but not fatally; Daniel McKeown, quartermaster, first-class, slightly.

The *Winslow* was badly damaged, and would have been captured if it had not been for the heroic handling of the auxiliary tug *Hudson*. Ensign Worth Bagley, of North Carolina, killed in this affair, was the first of our countrymen to fall in the war. The shell that killed him gave his name to the roll of immortals. It may be said of him, as Longfellow said of Burns: "That early death gave him immortal youth." Ensign Bagley's letters to his mother, written a few days before his death, have been published, and are described as brave, true, and tender. The extracts

following are warrant for this characterization. They are worthy to touch all hearts through all time. He wrote :

“I will not run into any danger I don't think proper, but can't promise you anything else ; don't you know what I mean, dear ? Still, I will think of you all the time.

“It was so sweet of you to remember me on my birthday. I was so busy that day that I didn't know it was my birthday till three in the afternoon. The pipe is a beauty ; being your present, it will make many a peaceful, happy smoke for me, whenever I smoke it.

“The little yellow buds you put in your last letter made me think of our front porch at home, and of how beautiful it must be now with its wealth of them.

“You need have no fears about me, for there is no danger for us now. There may be when the Spanish fleet comes, but I am sorry to say that I fear that will never be. A war comes only once in a generation, and it will be very hard if I can get no chance, to do some unusual service, so it is very disappointing to have no tangible enemy to meet. You are a brave mother, so you must feel like I do whenever we are engaged in any thing at all dangerous—enjoy the excitement: feel that, but nothing more. Thank Heaven I have found that I have no fear, for I have analyzed all my feelings in danger. Don't repeat that ; it would be a boast to any one but you. Your last letter made me feel so happy, and I am so proud to receive your praise, to feel that never have I 'given you an hour's trouble or unhappiness.' To hear you say that, dear angel, is more to me than any ambition in this world.

“Do you ever think that I have no heart to love because I follow a profession that keeps me nearly always from you ? I know that you never do feel so, for you know I love you.

Sometimes I remember and think of how you always love to have us children tell you how much we love you.

"Good-by for a short space. This letter is hurried, for there is a great deal that I must do. Love to every one. Good-by for a few days. Devotedly."

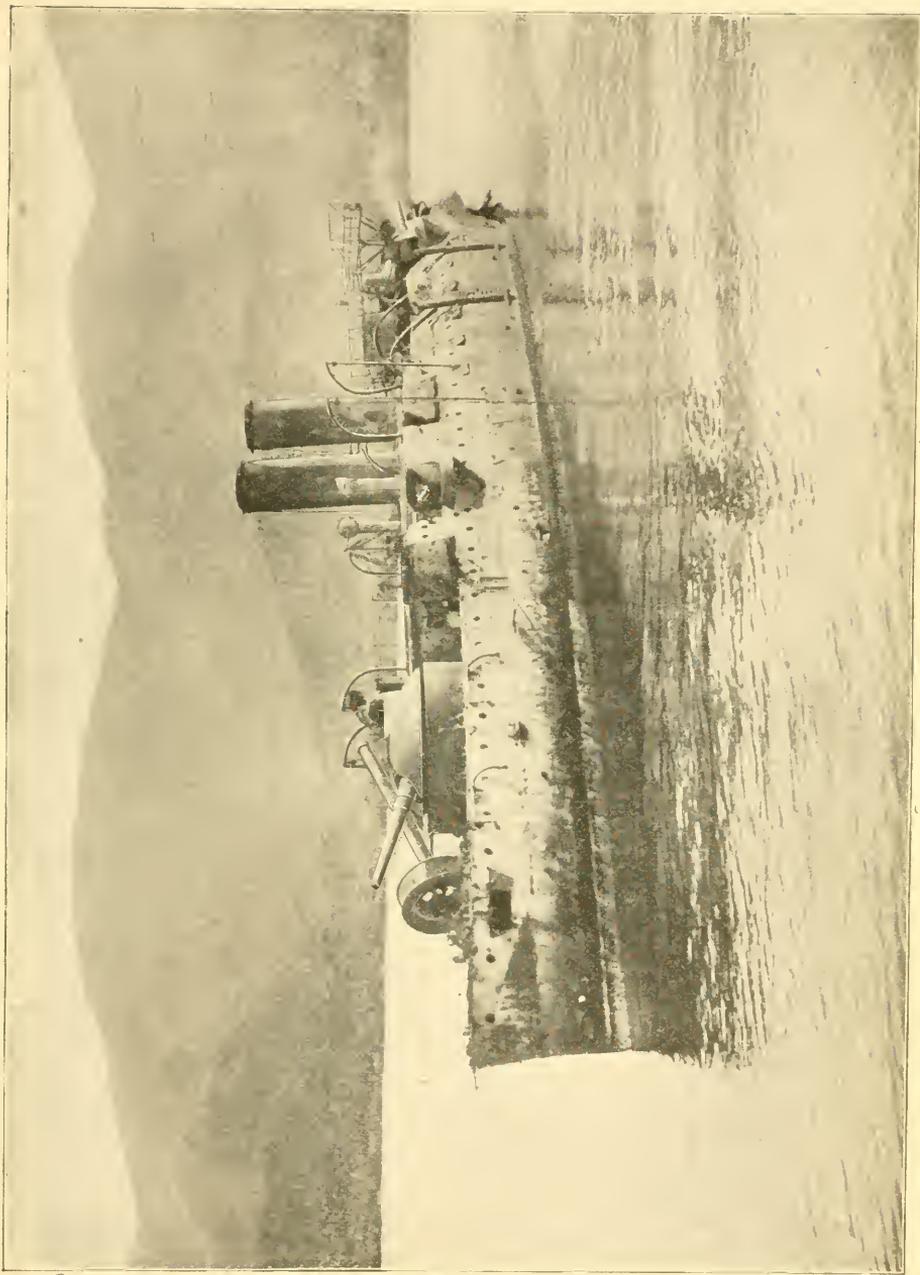
Porto Rico has more and more commended itself to those students of the situation who have serious responsibility and cool judgment, as a place where it would be well to strike a blow. The island is about two-thirds the size of the State of Connecticut, and is more extensively cultivated and largely populated, in proportion to its extent, than Cuba, which is the same size as the State of New York. Commodore Sampson visited the principal port, San Juan, and indulged in a thunderous target practice, giving the people to understand that the American navy was not on a pacific mission, and trying thoroughly the substantial qualities of our battleships to withstand the shock of firing their tremendous guns. It was for a time held by many of the organs of public opinion, that it could hardly be claimed war existed without the sound of cannonading in the West Indies, however ineffectual the noise; but the people are getting over those phases of imaginary interest, and are able to discover that war is not a gay festivity but a grave and bitter business. There has been dissatisfaction because the Spanish Admiral Cervera, who appeared so suddenly in the West Indies after he was believed to be in Cadiz, was able, for a time, to elude our superior fleets. There is nothing novel, in naval experience, in losing an enemy on the wide wastes of the ocean. Lord Nelson missed the French fleet in the Mediterranean until it anchored at Aboukir, and running across the Atlantic from Gibraltar to the Windward Islands, he sought and failed to find another French fleet. Perhaps the Spanish Admiral



MEN OF SPAIN.



THE FIGHTING "OREGON" AT SANTIAGO.



Copyrighted by W. K. Hearst, 1898.

VIZCAYA.—PHOTOGRAPHED A FEW HOURS AFTER BEING WRECKED.



Copyrighted by W. R. Hearst, 1898.

"CRISTOBAL COLON."—THE DAY AFTER THE BATTLE OF JULY 3D.

was serviceable to us if he delayed us in the embarkation of troops, for when he appeared at the scenes of warfare, the American army certainly was not in as good condition to move as was desirable. Each day's delay told for us. The bottoms of his ships became grassy; his coal-bunkers and his food supply scanty; the Cadiz fleet didn't come. He had to retreat or meet his fate on the high seas, and so ran into that deep pocket, the harbor of Santiago, the old capital of Cuba, the home now of the head of the church on the island, the scene of the Virginius massacre, situated in the eastern province of Cuba, where the insurgents are most numerous. The capacity of the Admiral to conceal himself was so clever that he was able, for some days, to make a mystery of his disappearance, and the fact that he could perplex the American people seems to have been a comfort to the Spaniards at large.

We have some occasion to be under obligation to this wandering Spaniard who may, some day, be as famous as the "Flying Dutchman."

The war came on between the United States and Spain, finding both nations unprepared, though they had been, for a generation, aware that the current of events was carrying them slowly but certainly into conditions of collision. For three years they have been bound to "shoot Niagara," as Thomas Carlyle phrased it. The unpreparedness of Spain for a conflict with a greater power was in the exhaustion of her energies. She had attempted, about a year ago, to cut in two the interest on her national debt and was obliged to put up collateral in order to raise money for war expenses. Her soldiers were unpaid, and her ships unready. She had sent the masses of her army across the Atlantic. She had changed premiers and captain-generals, but not her character or her system. She had lost Cuba, but had not the courage

to confess the fact, or the strength or address to rid herself of the colony that consumed her vital forces. The sole preparation she was able to make for war, so far as has appeared, was in sending to Cuba a considerable number of pieces of artillery of German manufacture, some English mines for the defence of harbors, and a considerable supply of fixed ammunition and Mauser rifles, and she had also managed an accumulation of provisions in the shipment of meats and a variety of canned vegetables, especially beans, from New York. Her navy contained but one first-class battleship and that not ready to put to sea, a few heavily armed cruisers of good speed and fairly well provided, and a swarm of lighter vessels held in high estimation, not justified by efficiency in guarding the coast of Cuba against filibusters, and that has not appeared in the furtive dashes made in tentative rushes out of their harbors.

We of the United States had been interested, according to our public intelligence, for several years, in the improvement of our navy. This seems to have occurred because about the time of the conclusion of our war of states and sections the building of navies was in a transition state, and the old ships with which the southern ports were blockaded during the period of the confederacy, so entirely out of date, that we were compelled to apply ourselves to the construction of modern vessels or be utterly unarmed for the simplest defensive purposes, as opposed even to second and third rate powers. We had the advantage of highly educated naval officers, many of whom had instructive experiences of war, and a series of secretaries of the navy, enlightened gentlemen who took a business and patriotic interest in the affairs of the department. This combination was enabled to enjoy the advantage of costly experiments made in the building of ships of war by all the great powers

of Europe; and the object lesson of the war between Japan and China was not lost. The country was greatly pleased with the *White Squadron*, which made a striking display and excellent impression in foreign waters. The recollections of the people of the glories of the navy in our successive wars were revived—an interest both historic and romantic aroused in the enterprises and adventures on the seas in other days. Healthy public opinion was formed that supported a liberal line of expenditure in ship-building. The common sense of the nation required that we should not only build ships of war, but give attention to coast defences, at least to mark out the fortifications that must be, in case we should offend some armed nation that might care to take advantage of our exposure to the ravages of the sea-board. A great deal of work was cut out and very little done, but our capacity for self-government manifested itself in an imperative mood of the people for the extensive manufacture of high-power guns. We had waited, with an enormous stock of the old cast-iron artillery on hand when our war of the north and south closed, and our experts, educated at West Point and Annapolis, kept watch upon the productions of foreign foundries until, when we set about making provision of modern artillery, we knew what to do and had the men to do it, and got, in various stages of readiness, a supply of the best guns in the world—some of them on our ships and others in coast defences—the greater number in the course of painstaking construction. When we came to blows with Spain we had half-a-dozen first rate battleships, a score of cruisers in good form, excellent specimens of their class, and were behind in war-boats of exceptional swiftness and lacking in the torpedo-destroyers, with which Spain was believed to be well provided. We made a few fortunate purchases of fighting ships abroad

and of yachts at home, readily convertible into light and searching craft, certainly equal, as they are manned, to anything in the Spanish navy, while our four splendid trans-Atlantic liners were quickly put in order to answer, in association with our battleships and cruisers, the purpose assigned in the navies of the last centuries and generation, to the frigates—that of being “the eyes” of fleets of ships of the line. Some of the old monitors with new guns aboard commended themselves to the general judgment, and we have some of a later pattern from which, no doubt, there will be good reports. It was not the opinion of Europe at first that our navy out-classed that of Spain, but that it did so, became conspicuous before the world in the battle of Manila.

We had sadly neglected the army. There had been many reports of an official character showing that it ought to be re-organized and enlarged—not that we want a great standing army, but that we might have the nucleus of a competent force of defenders. There had been vain efforts to provide additional batteries of artillery, and the demagoguery of the country had largely taken ground against the increase of military forces. Fortunately, the character of the army had steadily improved for more than ten years. The material of the regulars was much better than formerly. Desertions, once the sin and shame of the army, were reduced to a very small percentage. A greater proportion than ever of soldiers were Americans—thoroughly so—and their drill up to the highest standard. These facts were not prominent in the minds of the people, and those who knew them did not rate them as of a high degree of importance. It was a common saying that war was not our business; we could depend on volunteers, if we had a war; we did not want soldiers for police purposes, and it was not public policy to employ United States regulars

for the suppression of disorders unless they extended over several States and interfered with the rights of the people at large. As for such causes of necessity, to employ regular rifles and bayonets and batteries, our history, for more than a century, was proof that cases warranting the interference of the arms of the nation in controlling mobs were rare, and not likely to become abundant. The army had not the place it deserved in the public confidence and affectionate regard. It was of the best material, thoroughly disciplined, trained in marksmanship, armed with the Krag-Jorgensen rifle, but very small. The first stirring testimony given that the army was a weapon of good temper and might be handled to strike telling blows, was in the speedy concentration of the regulars when the orders were given. The posts occupied by the troops were scattered throughout an area of territory as great as continental Europe, but in less than a week every regiment was in the place to which it had been ordered, fully equipped—prepared in every respect for the field. The ammunition and provisions, the field guns, the tents and the wagons, were, by the magic of our vast railroad system, picked up from the remotest parts of the country and put down where they were wanted. We could have thrown fifteen thousand regulars into Cuba, but no more; and there was not a volunteer regiment ready to go into service, as an invading force, to meet regular troops for several weeks. We had not lost the military spirit of the country—that never burned higher or clearer, or was more fervid and formidable than we found it at once—but there was need of organization and an incredible number of details to determine. Constant complaints have been coming from the camps, of lack of food, water, proper clothing, and shelter. There has been a basis of fact for what has been said of deficiencies. It has taken some time to

realize that a war camp is not a picnic. We did not have, at the start, field artillery to cope with Blanco's one hundred and eighty guns. It took some time to make up a siege train, an indispensable prerequisite to besieging cities. There was little clothing of a character suitable to be worn by soldiers in the tropics, and a small quantity of material on hand of the kind wanted. The nation had not, of course, lost the art of war, but the new generation had no experience of it, and of the crack regiments of volunteers in camp, an astonishing number were unfamiliar with the weapons they were called upon to handle. In one body of a thousand men, more than three hundred and fifty were found who never had fired a gun. Men suffered for lack of food because the officers, whose duty it was to make requisitions for it, did not know how to do it. Men of the best intelligence, entirely inexperienced in camp life, did not know how to parch coffee, and make that beverage for themselves, neither did they know what to do with raw beef, issued in rations; that would astonish the soldiers of other nations. Old soldiers know what to do with a handful of green coffee and a slice of fat pork or raw beef. However rude their cooking utensils, none of the food is allowed to get away. There has been a lack of water supply, bitterly complained of. Dismal stories have come from the camp at Chickamauga, and there are the famous Crawfish Springs pouring out fifty millions of gallons per day, and twenty-one artesian wells from eighty to one hundred and forty feet deep, the water rising to within four feet of the surface, and each fitted with a force pump. It was necessary to haul water. The first obvious need was wagons; the second was horses; the third was harness; the fourth was barrels, and thirst had to be endured for a week, in some of the camps, before these things could be got together.

When war was declared, we were fearfully and wonderfully unprepared for it.

The remarkable good fighting stock of our country was not, however, in the least, demoralized by the eventualities preceding the more perfect organization, and it was soon shown that, though they were slow, to an extent, in organizing, they were quick fighters.

At Manila, Santiago de Cuba, Porto Rico and at Havana they would soon show their fighting qualities. It is the old cool-headed race, deliberate, full of energy, and destined to be the victors, though the blood of some of their comrades must enrich the soil of the lands contested.

It was supposed that the first point of attack on Cuba would be made in the vicinity of Havana, and that troops would be landed principally at Matanzas, but the movements of Cervera's fleet and its final location at Santiago de Cuba, changed the situation. The squadrons of Sampson and Schley were concentrated at the extremely south-eastern coast of Cuba, and instead of an attack on Havana, Santiago de Cuba became the objective point of our military and naval energies. The most heroic event in connection with the attack on the harbor of Santiago was the blocking of the channel by the sinking of the *Merrimac*.

Lieutenant Hobson's dash into Santiago harbor on the *Merrimac* was as daringly planned, as it was heroically executed. The brave young naval constructor succeeded in sinking the steamer in the channel, and he and his brave companions are no less heroes, though they did not completely block the harbor entrance.

Hobson sailed into the harbor at full speed, and when well past the batteries, in the narrowest part of the channel, he exploded the torpedoes on board, thereby sinking his

vessel and escaped on a raft, with his heroic crew. The torpedoes were placed on her side against her bulk-heads and vital spots, connected with each other by a wire under the ship's keel. Each torpedo contained over eighty-two pounds of gunpowder. Four men and Lieutenant Hobson were on deck, while two of the crew had charge of the engine. This was the total crew, and all of the men were in their underclothing, with revolvers and ammunition in water-tight packing, strapped around their waists. Forward stood one man on deck with a line attached around his waist, the end of which was made fast to the bridge where stood the lieutenant. This man, acting as lookout, also had with him an axe. When Hobson ordered the engines stopped he jerked this cord, thus giving a signal to the man in the bow to cut the lashing which held the forward anchor. This man then jumped overboard, swimming to the four-oared dingy. The dingy was full of life-buoys, and unsinkable. In it were rifles. The first man to reach her was to pull out to the starboard. This he did, and the rest of the crew left the ship, the quartermaster, at the wheel, after having put it hard aport and lashed it so. The two men in charge of the engine broke open the sea connection with a sledge hammer, and then, rushing on deck, they jumped overboard. This last step insured the sinking of the *Merrimac* whether the torpedoes worked or not. By this time the six men were in the dingy and the *Merrimac* swung athwart the channel at her full length. Then all that was left to do was to touch the button and get off to the boat without delay. There was an explosion and a splash; Hobson was making for the dingy, and the *Merrimac* went to the bottom.

Ensign Powell was the last man to see Lieutenant Hobson before his start. He had charge of the launch that

followed the *Merrimac* during her perilous trip, and tells the following story :

“On the night before this daring event, Lieutenant Hobson took a short sleep for a few hours. At quarter of two he came on deck and made a final inspection. At 2.30 o'clock I took the men who were not going on the trip into the launch. I shook hands with Hobson last of all. He said : ‘Powell, watch the boat's crew when we pull out of the harbor. We will be cracks, rowing thirty strokes to the minute.’ After landing the men on board the *Texas*, I saw the *Merrimac* steaming slowly. It was only fairly dark then. We followed about three quarters of a mile astern. The *Merrimac* was a mile to the westward of the harbor and seemed to be a bit mixed. Turning completely around and finally heading to the east, she ran down and then turned in. We were then chasing them because we thought Hobson had lost his bearings. When Hobson was about two hundred yards from the harbor the first gun was fired. We were then about half a mile off shore and near the batteries. We steamed in slowly and lost sight of the *Merrimac* in the smoke which the wind carried off shore. Before Hobson could have blown up the *Merrimac*, the western battery picked us up and commenced fire. They shot wild, however, and we ran in still closer to the shore. The gunners finally lost sight of us. Then we heard the explosion of the *Merrimac*. Until daylight we waited just outside of the breakers, half a mile to the westward of Morro, keeping a sharp lookout for the boat or swimmers, but saw nothing. Hobson had arranged to meet us at that point, but thinking that some one might have drifted out, we crossed in front of Morro at the mouth of the harbor to the westward. At about five o'clock, we crossed the harbor again within one quarter of a mile and

stood to the westward. In passing we saw one spar of the *Merrimac* sticking out of the harbor. We held the shore just outside the breakers for a mile, and then turned toward the *Texas*, when the batteries saw us and opened fire. We drove the launch for all she was worth, finally making the *New York* without a mishap." It developed that, with great bravery, Ensign Powell had gone right under the batteries when all hope of taking on board the crew of the *Merrimac* had to be abandoned.

The official report of this event is here given :

MOLE, HAYTI, June 4.

LONG, Washington :

Succeeded in sinking *Merrimac* in the channel of Santiago at 4 A. M., June 3. This was carried out most gallantly under the command of Naval Constructor Hobson and six men. By a flag of truce from the Spanish Admiral, Cervera, sent in recognition of their bravery, I am informed all are prisoners of war, two slightly wounded. Request authority to approve exchange, if possible, between these and the prisoners at Atlanta. Six of the Spanish squadron in the Harbor of Santiago, unable to avoid being captured or destroyed.

SAMPSON.

The men with Hobson were George Charette, Oscar Deignan, John Kelly, Daniel Montague, J. E. Murphy, John P. Phillips. The *Merrimac* was a steel single screw steamer, built at Newcastle, England, in 1894; rebuilt in New York last year, the work completed in November. She was a staunch ship of the highest class in the British Lloyds and in the American record—330 feet long, beam 44 feet, displacement 7,500 tons with two complete steel decks. The last seen of her, one of her spars was sticking out of the water. Her depth, from deck to keel, is 30 feet, and she rests in the narrowest part of the channel, broad-side on.

One of the reasons why the *Merrimac* did not block the channel may be taken from the statement of Admiral

Dewey in relation to the Spanish naval charts, which he reports very unreliable, having found a greater depth by sixteen feet in the harbor of Manila than the Spanish official survey reported.

The courtesy of Admiral Cervera in sending his chief of staff to Commodore Sampson to assure him of the safety of naval-constructor Hobson and his party—this, as an expression of admiration for the bravery of the young Americans—will do more for the honor of the arms of Spain in the good opinion of the enlightened nations, than she could have gained from a military or naval success, and soften the expression of the just animosity of millions offended by her barbarous and ruinous colonial policy. The American navy has recorded two splendid victories at Manila and Santiago, to be always contrasted with the tragedy at Cardenas. The war has already given the nation, through its fleets, riches of glory worth infinitely more than its cost, for that which has been is but a sign of the greater things to be; and the reputation America has gained in this war has brightened her fame around the globe, and will make for peace with honor, in ages to come.

In the letter of Raymond Carranza, late of the Spanish legation, we have the advantage of reading the inner consciousness of an intelligent enemy. He tells that the Spaniards have nothing to gain, and may lose their three great colonies and be ruined for half a century. He is so anxious about the financial situation that he criticises severely the Bank of Spain, saying, "it is the nation," and has grown rich by lending paper money, while now, when it should have bought four hundred millions of gold, it issued five hundred millions of paper. We have only to quote the official figures of the condition of the United States Treasury on the first of June as a contrast.

CHAPTER XXIX.

THE PORTO RICAN CAMPAIGN.

The Invasion of Porto Rico by General Miles—Surprise of the American Troops at their Friendly Reception—Very Little Fighting but much Cheering—Queer Conception of American Liberty—The Revenge of the Persecuted Porto Ricans—The People of Porto Rico Forewarned of our Coming by Sampson's Bombardment of San Juan.

IN the history of conquest there is no story to equal that of the capture of Porto Rican territory by the United States army under command of General Nelson A. Miles. His troops were thirsting for fight and anxious for the exhilarating experience of burnt powder. There could not have been a more aggressive army. From the private to the general-in-chief, the invaders were looking for fight.

Guanica, on the southwest coast of Porto Rico, was the scene of the landing of the American troops. There were twelve warships in the expedition. The vessels and transports, conveying four thousand troops, artillery, horses, etc., arrived off the coast of Porto Rico on July 26th; and, in accordance with the plan agreed upon at a council of war held at sea on board the *Yale* (General Miles' headquarters), proceeded to Guanica, at which place there is an excellent beach for the landing of troops and munitions of war. The harbor was known to be the best in the island, though not of large commercial importance.

At the council, which all of the commanding officers attended, it was decided that Guanica offered a much better landing-place than the port of Ponce, which is fifteen miles east, and that the troops could be put ashore there

without meeting with any serious resistance; and it was believed that a landing at Ponce might mean the sacrifice of too many lives.

When General Miles and his transports appeared off Guanica, an attempt was made to resist the landing, but a few well directed shells from the *Massachusetts* and *Columbia* put the enemy to flight. These two ships steamed in shore, and there dropped their big missiles among the Spaniards. At the same time the *Gloucester*, whose lesser draught enabled her to approach close in shore, opened fire with her three- and six-pounders, pouring a hot fire into the Spaniards, whose reply was feeble.

The *Gloucester* then sent a party ashore, which pulled down the Spanish flag from a blockhouse near the beach. As the red and yellow emblem was about to be lowered, a large number of Spanish troops fired on the landing party, who replied with their rifles and a machine gun. The Spaniards immediately retired, and the Spanish flag came down, no more to float over Guanica. Not an American had been hurt.

The landing of the troops began in the afternoon, and all were ashore shortly after nightfall. The soldiers took up a position on an elevation close to the shore, where they were under the protection of the guns of the warships.

The sailors had adopted a Spanish trick, and protected their position, in the village, by barbed wire barriers, to pass which, the enemy, lacking wire-cutters, would find great difficulty. The gratifying news of the successful landing of the forces of General Miles was sent to Washington in the following characteristic dispatch from the general-in-command.

“ST. THOMAS, July 26, 1898—9:35 P. M.

“*Secretary War, Washington:*

“Circumstances were such that I deemed it advisable to take the harbor of Guanica first, fifteen miles west of Ponce, which was successfully accomplished

between daylight and 11 o'clock. Spaniards surprised. The *Gloucester*, Commander Wainwright, first entered the harbor, met with slight resistance; fired a few shots. All the transports are now in the harbor, and infantry and artillery rapidly going ashore. This is a well protected harbor; water sufficiently deep for all transports; the heavy vessels can anchor within a few hundred feet of shore. The Spanish flag was lowered and the American flag raised at 11 o'clock to-day. Capt. Higginson, with his fleet, has rendered able and earnest assistance. Troops in good health and best spirits. No casualties.

“MILES,

“Major-General, Commanding Army.”

This occasioned considerable surprise at Washington, since General Miles had been instructed by the War Department to land at Fajarvo; however the administration was not disappointed, but rather pleased that it had a general whose keen foresight enabled him to know that wise men change their plans.

Having been cooped up in the training and acclimating camps, and afterwards on the transports, the troops landed, eager for fight.

General Miles had thoroughly planned the campaign against Porto Rico and his soldiers were just as eager as he for battle. But to the great surprise of the General and his army the Porto Ricans raised the Stars and Stripes at every available point, and would have floated “Old Glory” from every tree-top had they had enough of the bunting that has always waved victorious in battle.

The men who had come to fight were certainly amazed and amused at their reception. To be hugged and kissed by the inhabitants, and welcomed as saviours, made it seem strange that the enemy did not, at once, surrender and lay down their arms. Met with the olive branch, it would not have been surprising, to the Americans, had they also been confronted by the enemy with the white flag.) Suspicious of Spanish treachery, however, prevented them

from accepting the idea that the occupation of the island would not require the shedding of some blood; and General Miles and his soldiers continued their military operations with the same aggressiveness that they would have displayed, had the Spaniards been hidden behind every bush and intrenched on every hill-top.

Never had a hostile nation landed on foreign territory to be received as the American army was. The ugly features of war were all missing, and the people saw, in the invaders, heroes, bearing with them the teachings of the equality of mankind and the principles of the great Republic. The enemy were all friends and eager to learn the lesson of liberty. The general-in-chief of the United States army, his officers and men had met with a disconcerting surprise. They had gone to Porto Rico to fight, and there found that the warrior's way was strewn with roses, and that the path to victory was free from thorns.

The taking of the beautiful island, instead of proving a terrible tragedy, where many brave men would lose their lives turned into a hilarious comedy of warfare. There were men lost on both sides, and bravery was exhibited by each army; yet the losses proved trifling. Easy conquest was made possible because the Porto Ricans wanted to be Americans, and the Spanish soldiers were not inspired by any local sentiment. They were as strangers and enemies in the last of the western lands remaining tributary to the discoverers of the New World. "Viva los Americanos!" was the singular cry that greeted the invading army.

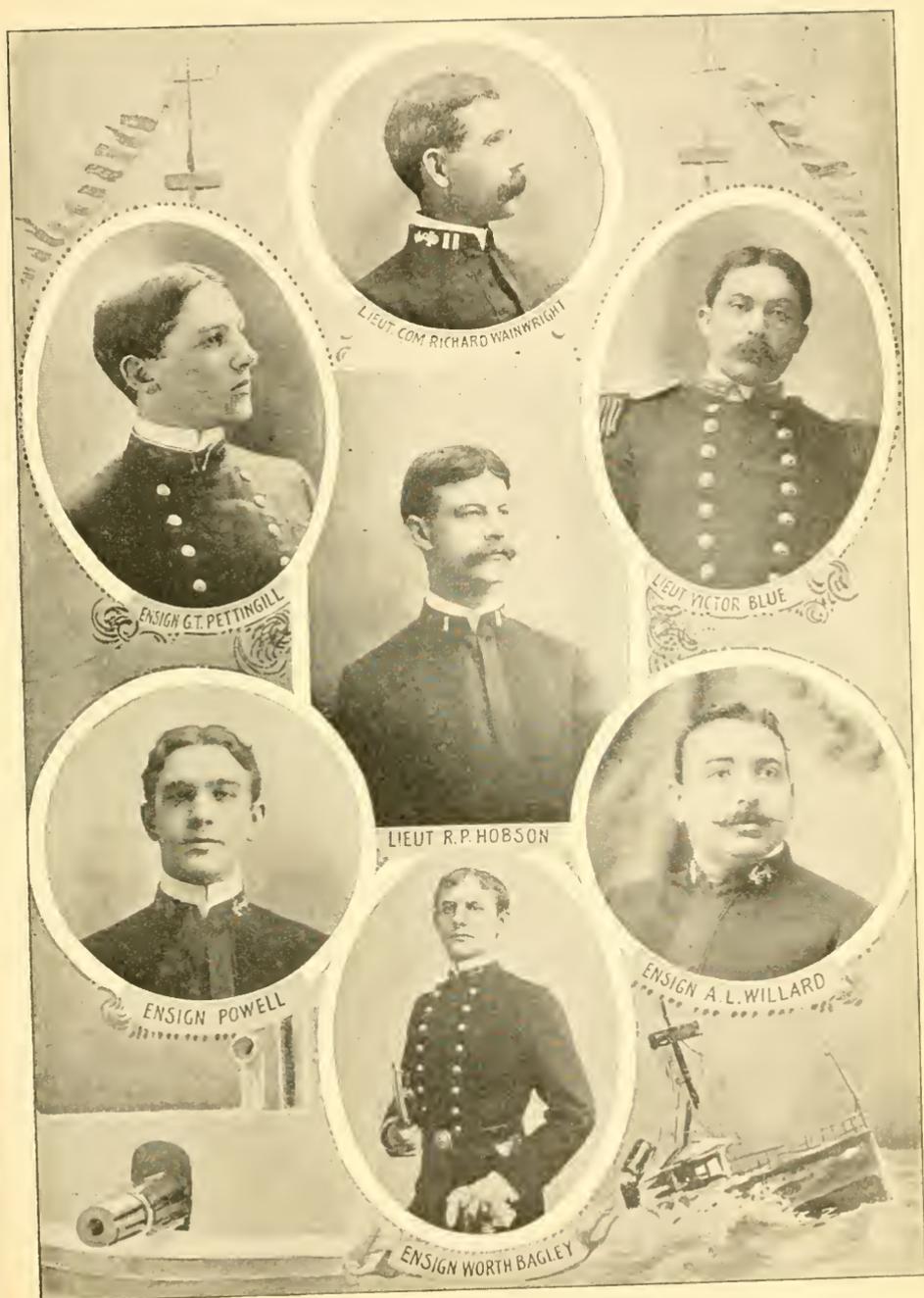
As the great Lord of Battle had saved the American navy from any great disaster, so the United States troops invading Porto Rico still found His favor, and very few were slain. There was some little fighting with the Span-

iards and an incident or two that gave the American troops a chance to show of what metal they were made. Ambushed and fired at from four points at the same time, they nevertheless defeated the enemy, and there were several cases of gallantry which we will make mention of in the course of our story of the comedy of the conquest of the Island of Porto Rico.

The landing of the American troops was followed by a wildly rejoicing reception by the Porto Ricans, the Spanish troops having been driven off, Porto Rico turned American. The American army pushed on from Guanica rapidly, and it was not long before the Stars and Stripes were floating over Ponce, the largest city in Porto Rico. The evacuation of the city, by the Spanish troops, was forced without the loss of a single life on the American side.

The surrender was made to Commander Davis, of the auxiliary cruiser *Dixie*, who had been sent, from Guanica the preceding day, by Captain Higginson, under orders from General Miles to blockade the port. The *Dixie* was accompanied by the *Annapolis* and *Gloucester*. When they appeared off shore, in the early morning, the inhabitants of the city feared that it was about to be bombarded, and a delegation was sent aboard to announce that there would be no resistance to the Americans taking possession. This was followed by a formal surrender, and the *Dixie* entered port. The *Massachusetts*, *Cincinnati*, and *Wasp* arrived, with the transports, soon after the surrender, and the troops were landed rapidly. There was not a single mishap. As soon as General Miles reached the city he issued the following proclamation :

“In the prosecution of the war against the Kingdom of Spain by the people of the United States, in the cause of liberty, justice and humanity, its military forces have come



LIEUT. COM RICHARD MAINWRIGHT

LIEUT. VICTOR BLUE

ENSIGN G.T. PETTINGILL

LIEUT. R.P. HOBSON

ENSIGN A.L. WILLARD

ENSIGN POWELL

ENSIGN WORTH BAGLEY

OUR YOUNG NAVAL HEROES.



THE LAST OF CERVERA'S CRUISERS.



MEN OF THE ARMY.



GENERAL MILES IN PORTO RICO.

to occupy the island of Porto Rico. They come bearing the banner of freedom, inspired by noble purpose to seek the enemy of our Government and of yours, and to destroy or capture all in armed resistance.

“They bring you the fostering arms of a free people, whose greatest power is justice and humanity to all living within their fold. Hence they release you from your former political relations, and it is hoped this will be followed by the cheerful acceptance of the Government of the United States.

“The chief object of the American forces will be to overthrow the armed authority of Spain and give the people of your beautiful island the largest measure of liberty consistent with this military occupation.

“They have not come to make war on the people of the country, who, for centuries, have been oppressed; on the contrary, they bring protection not only to yourselves, but to your property. They have come to promote your prosperity and bestow the immunities and blessings of our enlightened and liberal institutions and government. It is not their purpose to interfere with existing laws and customs, which are wholesome and beneficial to the people, so long as they conform to the rules of the military administration, order and justice. This is not a war of devastation and dissolution, but one to give all within the control of the military and naval forces the advantages and blessings of enlightened civilization.”

A few days before the surrender of Ponce, the American troops, under General Garretson, had a lively skirmish with the Spanish soldiers, who were forced to retreat with a loss of twenty killed and wounded. The American loss was four wounded, none of them, however, being seriously hurt.

The Spanish garrison abandoned much military property, including arms, ammunition and stores. The entry of our troops called forth an ovation, the Porto Ricans welcoming them as friends rather than hostile invaders. They cheered our soldiers, and proclaimed their satisfaction at the raising of the Stars and Stripes over the city. Indeed, many of them attempted to join the army, that they might advance with it against San Juan.

The provisional articles of surrender were four, and were characteristic of American chivalry in waging war. The first was that the garrison should be allowed to retreat; the second, that the civil government should remain in force; the third, that the police and fire brigade were to be maintained without arms; and the fourth, that the captain of the port was not to be made a prisoner.

The Americans did not have to hunt the Spaniards; the citizens did that for them. In a city of nearly fifty thousand inhabitants, four-fifths of the citizens went out hunting for the other one-fifth, and brought them in by the nape of the neck or wherever they could get hold of them, dragging them into the city and handing them over to the American troops. An eye witness gives the following description of the way the Porto Ricans captured the Spaniards.

“Spread over miles of country here and there, at frequent intervals, may be seen a body of from twenty to fifty excited persons dancing around a house, shouting and yelling at the top of their lungs. After awhile some of them dash off, and presently come back to the American soldiers. Then the whole crowd yell:”

“He is there, he is there; catch him.”

“The soldiers then go in and pull out a miserable, shaking, under-sized person and make off with him to the military headquarters. The poor wretch gets to chattering expres-

sions of his conviction that he is going to be killed, and the excited crowd follows so closely that the soldiers have to walk backward and point their bayonets to protect the prisoner."

"The crowd yells, and some draw their fingers across their throats threateningly, which does not have a very reassuring effect upon the trembling prisoner. Arriving at headquarters, the shivering person instead of being put to death, as he fears, is only asked to sign a parole agreement, which he does with all the alacrity his shaking hand will permit, and he is let go to join the crowd in yelling, "Viva los Americanos," and there you have the city of Ponce to-day."

The inhabitants of Porto Rico embraced liberty without fully comprehending what it meant. To them it meant first deliverance from oppression. Yet there are unmistakable signs to indicate that years will pass before the average Porto Rican will be able to detect the shadow of liberty from the substance.

On the second and third day after our occupation of Ponce, the Porto Ricans' misconception of liberty began to crop out. General Wilson's headquarters were beset from morning to night by an Anti-Spanish mob, clamoring for permission to persecute Spanish sympathizers. General Wilson was compelled to rely upon many of these men, to a certain extent, in the selection of guides and interpreters, and in making certain disposition of his troops; so, for a time, a certain measure of political power fell into their hands.

One of the first acts of General Wilson was to release political prisoners, many of whom had been confined since the Rebellion in 1887. In that year occurred the last unsuccessful attempt of the Porto Ricans to throw off the Spanish yoke. Some of these men had, at that time, been

made to suffer terrible physical agony, it being a well established fact that, during the Rebellion, the Spanish authorities renewed the cruelties of the Inquisition for the punishment and the detection of political offenders. Some of their torturing chambers still stand within a few miles of Ponce.

The thoughts of these men, on being released from their imprisonment and again beholding the light of freedom, were first of thankfulness and then of revenge. Imbued with the notion that liberty meant license to arrest, maltreat and abuse any Spanish resident, they organized bands from among their relatives and friends, and went out to seek those known to be loyal to Spain.

During the days immediately following the occupation of Ponce, scores of unfortunate Spaniards, who had retired to their homes, and remained there quietly, when the soldiers of their country had departed, were roughly dragged away from their families by these revengeful mobs and hurried through the streets. Pursued by a howling rabble they were brought before General Wilson, or the Provost-Marshal, where they were triumphantly produced with the evident expectation that if not immediately shot, they would, at least, be committed to prison for life.

General Wilson, after learning the circumstances, ordered the release of these unfortunates, and strictly enjoined that such arrests should immediately cease, under severe penalty. The Porto Rican patriots then first felt the poignant arrow of doubt pierce his idea of liberty. The revengeful Porto Ricans were ordered to go to their homes, and were informed that American liberty protected the Spaniard under its dominion, as well as the Porto Rican, as long as he obeyed the law of the land.

For several days a guard was placed about the residences of the Spaniards who were considered to be most

in danger. The thirst for vengeance, though checked, had not been quenched, however. Iniquities were committed secretly.

The more intelligent class of Porto Rican residents, comprising a small part of the population, did not share in these expressions of hatred. Although checked in Ponce, these abuses extended into the country with more serious results. Before the landing of the American troops, the Spanish forces were augmented by about six thousand volunteers, armed with inferior rifles. The majority of these served unwillingly and were eager to lay down their arms at the first opportunity. Although hundreds remained in Ponce and surrendered, many were uncertain as to the treatment they would receive and fled into the country and to the small towns. They were forced to accompany the Spanish garrison on its retirement, and deserted at the first chance. In this way it happened that hundreds of these volunteers were hiding among the sugar plantations and unused mills and buildings, when the 16th Pennsylvania pushed forward to San Diaz.

No sooner had Colonel Hulings established his headquarters in the Municipal Buildings, than enthusiastic Porto Rican workers in the cause of liberty began to drag unfortunate volunteers before him. The natives hunted these wretched men as if they were wild beasts, and, having captured them, treated them as such. A group of Porto Rican horsemen rushed up in a cloud of dust, halting in front of headquarters. As the dust cleared away it was noticed that they had attached to a rope, the other end of which was securely fastened to one of the saddles, a man, or what was left of one, held by a slip noose. His feet were bleeding, his clothing torn, and when his captor's horse stopped, he fell exhausted to the ground. The

noose had been drawn so tight about his throat, that speech was impossible. He could only groan and roll his eyes imploringly toward the group of Americans. The Porto Ricans talked excitedly in Spanish, and an interpreter explained that the prisoner was a Spanish volunteer who had been caught four miles beyond Juan Diaz, while attempting to hide in an old sugarhouse. His hands had been tied and the rope placed about his neck, and he had been forced to keep pace with the horses. This explanation being given, the Porto Ricans sat on their perspiring animals, expecting to be highly commended. Instead, they were ordered to release the prisoner who was paroled, as all who surrendered had been, and protected on his return to his home near Ponce. The captors were cautioned not to molest any Spanish residents, and to deal humanely with the volunteers who fell into their hands. Thus was dealt another severe blow at the Porto Rican idea of liberty.

Complaints were made by the wealthy Spanish planters, of indignities heaped upon them by the Porto Ricans, and here again many of them received a guard of American soldiers to protect their residences and mills from being burned by the natives. They were prevented, however, from working their plantations and a great many valuable crops were ruined. The majority of the wealthy Spaniards were glad at heart to see the American occupation, though their sympathies were with Spain, and they did not wish her possessions to pass from her dishonorably. They believe that the United States will give Porto Rico a good government, and thereby bring prosperity and happiness to that most beautiful of tropical islands.

Juan Diaz, twelve miles from Ponce by the military road, was the fourth town taken by the Americans, Guanica being the first then Yauco, and then Ponce. When the

troops took possession of Yauco, the mayor of that town promptly issued this interesting proclamation:

"*Citizens* : To-day the citizens of Porto Rico assist in one of her most beautiful festivals. The sun of America shines upon our mountains and valleys this day of July, 1898. It is a day of glorious remembrance for each son of this beloved isle, because for the first time there waves over it the flag of the Stars, planted in the name of the Government of the United States of America by the Major-General of the American Army, General Miles.

"Porto Ricans, we are by the miraculous intervention of the God of the Just, given back to the bosom of our mother America, in whose waters nature placed us as a people of America. To her we are given back in the name of her Government by General Miles, and we must send her our most expressive salutation of generous affection through our conduct toward the valiant troops represented by distinguished officers and commanded by the illustrious General Miles.

"*Citizens*: Long live the Government of the United States of America! Hail to their valiant troops! Hail Porto Rico, always American!

"YAUCO, Porto Rico, United States of America.

"El Alcalde, FRANCISCO MEGIA."

The citizens of Juan Diaz hugged the American soldiers many of them falling on their knees and embracing the legs of the troopers, much to their astonishment and inconvenience. It was certainly the most remarkable reception that was ever given to an invading army. The mayor placarded his town with posters proclaiming peace, and an order from General Wilson, the Military Governor, commanding the surrender of all arms. Even the Spanish local newspapers professed loyalty to the Americans, and welcomed them with columns of editorial greeting, praising them as the bravest and the fairest men of the world. The following telegram from General Miles is well worth reproducing, as it tells of the situation in a few words, and just as it was:

"PONCE, Porto Rico, July 31, 1898.

"*Secretary of War, Washington, D. C.* :

"Your telegram 27th received and answered by letter. Volunteers are surrendering themselves with arms and ammunition; four-fifths of the people are

overjoyed at the arrival of the army. Two thousand from one place have volunteered to serve with it. They are bringing in transportation, beef, cattle, and other needed supplies.

"The Custom House has already yielded \$14,000.

"As soon as all the troops are disembarked they will be in readiness to move.

"Please send any national colors that can be spared, to be given to the different municipalities. | |

"I request that the question of the tariff rates to be charged in the parts of Porto Rico occupied by our forces be submitted to the President for his action, the previously existing tariff remaining meanwhile in force. As to the government under military occupation, I have already given instructions based upon the instructions issued by the President in the case of the Philippine Islands, and similar to those issued at Santiago de Cuba. MILES."

The Americans found very few loyal Spaniards in Porto Rico. It is true that the troops, as a rule, showed Spanish bravery and inability to shoot straight, but they were too few and too much handicapped. An incident demonstrating the easy capture of Juan Diaz occurred when four companies of the 16th Pennsylvania were sent out to find some Spaniards who were reported to be intrenched near that town. Couriers had announced the advent of the Americans to the people of Juan Diaz, and a brass band came out to meet them. All the citizens were assembled on the outskirts of the town; and, as the Yankee volunteers appeared up the road, the band played "Yankee Doodle" and other patriotic American airs, while the people cried "*Viva los Americanos!*"

Many brought with them cigars, cigarettes, tobacco, bananas and other fruits, with which they presented the soldiers; and many insisted on taking the warrior-visitors to their homes, where they were made welcome, the houses being decorated with American flags. In the public square the mayor made a speech of welcome, in which he said that all the people of Juan Diaz were Americans now, while the crowds shouted, "Death to the Spaniards!" It

was not long before the mayors of many other towns sent word to the Americans that all they needed to become Americanized were a few flags to float over their public buildings.

It was reported that the town of Guayama had a large garrison, and that the soldiers there would fight. Two companies of regulars were sent to find out the intention of the Spaniards. They were met on the way by a delegation of citizens, who said that they had driven the Spaniards out of the town, and had already hoisted the American flag. The soldiers thought that this was a trick, and observed the greatest caution in approaching the place; but, coming near, they saw the flag waving in the distance, and marched into the town without hesitation. Here they found even a more cordial reception than that which was given them at Juan Diaz. The bands were playing American airs, and the men and women fell upon their knees and worshipped our soldiers. The mayor made a speech in which he said the day of the deliverance of Porto Rico had come. The enthusiasm of the people was unbounded.

On August 2d, the steamers *St. Paul* and *St. Louis* landed a large expedition of American troops at Arroyo, the town having surrendered to the *Wasp* and *Gloucester*. The two vessels entered the harbor early in the morning, and a crowd of townspeople, headed by the mayor and the padre, came from the town to the shore to greet them, cheering lustily before the ships came to anchor. First a small boat was sent ashore with a flag of truce. The people welcomed the captains, and the mayor and the priests delivered the city over to them. The surrender of Arroyo was important, the town having quite a number of manufacturing enterprises. The Spanish volunteers laid down their arms and refused to fight.

The *Wasp* was the first to arrive at Arroyo, where the people were waiting for her. They had been waiting five days; in fact nobody had worked since the news arrived that Miles was coming. The Spanish garrison, three hundred and fifty strong, was paralyzed with fear, and wanted to surrender or leave. Colonel Samuel Martin, who was in command, declared that he could not surrender, and that he did not know what to do. The foreign consul advised him to take his men and get out. He was in a quandary; but when the *Wasp* was sighted there was no doubt among the people. They crowded to the harbor front, and when the *Wasp* came into the port she saw a great, enthusiastic throng instead of the Spanish troops. She steamed up close to shore, with all her guns bearing on the port. There being no sign of hostilities, Ensign Rowland Curtin was sent ashore, with four men, bearing a flag of truce. They suspected treachery on the part of the Spaniards, and the gunners of the *Wasp* stood ready to fire at a second's warning. Ensign Curtin is a little man, but he has plenty of sand. He put for the beach as though he had no suspicion of treachery. As the boat approached the shore, the people crowded down to the water's edge with their hands filled with cigars, tobacco, cigarettes, bananas, and other articles, which they threw to the Americans when the boats came within range.

As the ensign stepped out from his boat on the beach, the people crowded around him, forcing cigars and other things upon him and his men, while others further away threw their offerings to the sailors. Then they gave three rousing cheers. Ensign Curtin then introduced himself to his remarkable enemy, and said that he had come to demand the surrender of the port and city. The people declared that they were glad to see him and pleased to

surrender to him. He asked to see the civil or military authorities. Some of the civil executives were present and said that they could not surrender the city. That must be done by the military. He was told that the commander could be reached by telephone.

Ensign Curtin pulled his watch from his pocket and said to one of the spokesmen: "Go to the telephone, and tell your general that I say to him that if he is not here, and does not surrender within half an hour, I will bombard the city."

It was, however, not necessary to bombard the place, as the citizens had long before learned to respect our demands. In the early days of this war, when the idea of gaining the beautiful island of Porto Rico was unthought of by the general public, and the place was interesting only in connection with the mysterious movements of Cervera's fleet, it became necessary that there should be a demonstration at San Juan that it might have a moral effect upon the inhabitants, and clear their conception of the power with which their Home Government was at variance.

The boldness of General Miles, in spreading the forces over so many lines of defence, is a conclusive proof of the friendly disposition of the natives. There were but few encounters, and as early as August 9th, General Miles sent the following dispatch to Washington:

PONCE, PORTO RICO, August 9, 1898.

'Secretary of War, Washington:

"Please do not send any more troops. No more required. MILES."

Dispatches were sent to General Coppinger at Tampa, and General Breckenridge at Chickamauga, saying that no more troops would be sent to Porto Rico.

The forces under General Miles had been reinforced by troops under General Wilson and General Brooke. The

whole southern part of the island was practically in the hands of the Americans, who were pressing forward to capture San Juan, when the news of the armistice was received from Washington and all military operations ceased. The vessel which had been sunk in the harbor to prevent the entrance of the American fleet was removed and commerce reopened.

CHAPTER XXX.

THE FALL OF MANILA.

General Merritt Arrives in the Philippines—Manila, Refusing to Surrender, is Taken by Force—Bombardment of the Fortifications, and Operations of the Land Forces—Mutiny of the Natives—Terms of Surrender—Military Government Established.

THOUGH Admiral Dewey destroyed the Spanish fleet on May 1st, it was not until August 13th that Manila fell into the hands of the Americans. Without a sufficient land force it was impossible for Admiral Dewey to demand the surrender of Manila, as the responsibility of protecting the lives and property of the citizens would thereby devolve upon him.

General Merritt had arrived at Cavite on the 25th of July, after a quick passage from Honolulu, where he left the third expedition of about four thousand men, under General McArthur. This detachment was expected to arrive at Manila about August 1st, and decisive operations were not to be commenced until all of the troops had arrived there.

The immediate result of General Merritt's arrival and examination of the situation, was a request, from him, that his forces be at once increased to 50,000 men. The troops he had with him were sufficient to capture and hold Manila, but it was apparent that the pretensions of Aguinaldo made it necessary to prepare for unforeseen events.

On the 31st of July a sharp night attack was commenced by the Spaniards, which, for a time, was very serious, but was finally repulsed. On the 29th of July our forces, under

General Greene, had occupied an old trench, relinquished by the insurgents, which was found untenable, and our troops advanced about one hundred yards, and threw up a new line of breastworks, two hundred and fifty yards long, extending from the Manila road to the beach, and about seven hundred and fifty yards distant from the Spanish position at Malate, a suburb of Manila. This was accomplished by the 1st Nebraska. On the next day the 1st Colorado relieved it, and on July 31st the 10th Pennsylvania relieved the Colorado Regiment. The Utah Artillery was also part of this force. No opposition was made by the enemy, while the construction of the work was in progress. The arrival, that day, of General McArthur, however, seems to have stimulated the enemy to make an attack to overpower General Greene, before the newly arrived troops could be landed. The insurgents, who should have prolonged our line to the right, had withdrawn to celebrate some feast, and the Spanish forces, 3,000 strong, attacked both our front and right flanks, and, securing a cross-fire, somewhat demoralized the Pennsylvanians. The Utah Battery seems to have been cooler. In endeavoring to reinforce our right, by moving across an open field between the old trench and our new line, four companies of the Pennsylvanians suffered most of their loss. Matters were getting ticklish. Dispatches were sent to General Greene for reinforcements and ammunition. The courier bearing them met on the road, Captain O'Hara, commanding a battery of the 3d Artillery, who had, at the sound of the firing, started ahead to learn what was going on. Captain O'Hara, being informed that the Americans were hard pressed, immediately ordered his command, Battery H, 3d Artillery, Captain Hobbs, forward at the doublequick, and rushing into the trenches, put a new phase on the matter. He

found there Lieutenant Krayenguhl and Lieutenant Kessler, with Battery K, 3d Artillery, who, at the sound of firing, had hastened from their positions on the Pasai Road. These two officers had arrived just in time, and by their decisive action, soon restored confidence. The regulars went in with a cheer, and, with a rapid and effective fire, caused the Spaniards to retreat.

In the meantime, General Greene, who accepted the situation very coolly, sent forward the First Battalion of the 1st California Volunteers, and plenty of ammunition. The Californians at first rushed into the abandoned insurgent trenches, and, in the darkness, opened on our own men, firing three volleys before they were stopped and brought up to a position on the right. The engagement lasted about four hours. Our losses were reported as fourteen men killed, and eight officers and thirty-eight men wounded.

When it is considered that this attack was made at night, with all the accompaniments of a severe storm, that it was the first time our troops had ever been under fire and that the enemy was superior in strength and knowledge of the locality, the conduct of our officers and men is deserving of the highest praise.

The following night there was more fighting, but of no special gravity. The Spanish loss was very heavy. This sharp action, demonstrating the intention of the Spanish commander to fight, resulted in General Merritt and Admiral Dewey pushing matters to a conclusion, and, on August 7th, the following letter was sent to General Jaudenes :

" To the General in Chief commanding the Spanish forces at Manila :

"SIR: We have the honor to notify your Excellency that operations of the land and naval forces of the United States against the defences of Manila may begin at any time after the expiration of forty-eight hours from the receipt by

you of this communication, or sooner, if made necessary by attack on your part. This notice is given to afford you an opportunity to remove all non-combatants from the city.

“Yours respectfully,

“WESLEY MERRITT,

“Major-General, U. S. A., Commanding.

“GEORGE DEWEY,

“Rear Admiral, U. S. N., Commanding.”

To this letter General Jaudenes replied as follows:

“MANILA, August 7.

“GENTLEMEN: I have the honor to inform your Excellencies that at half-past 12 to-day I received the notice with which you favored me, that after forty-eight hours have elapsed you may begin operations against this fortified city, or at an earlier hour if the forces under your command are attacked by mine. As your notice was sent for the purpose of providing safety for non-combatants, I give thanks to your Excellencies for the humane sentiments you show, and state that, finding myself surrounded by insurrectionary forces, I am without a place of refuge for the increased number of wounded, sick, women and children now lodged within these walls.

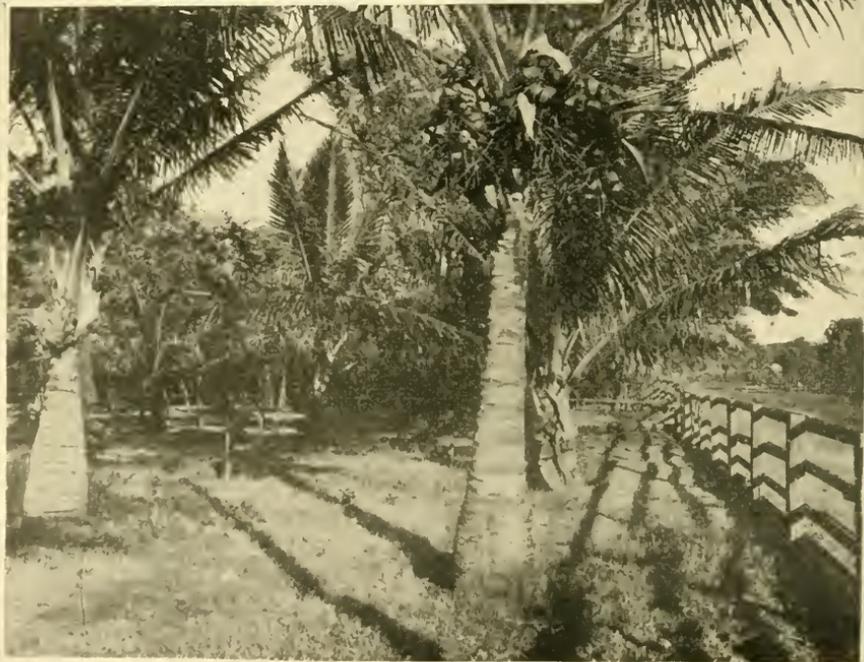
“Respectfully, and kissing the hands of your Excellencies,

“FEROIN JAUDENES.”

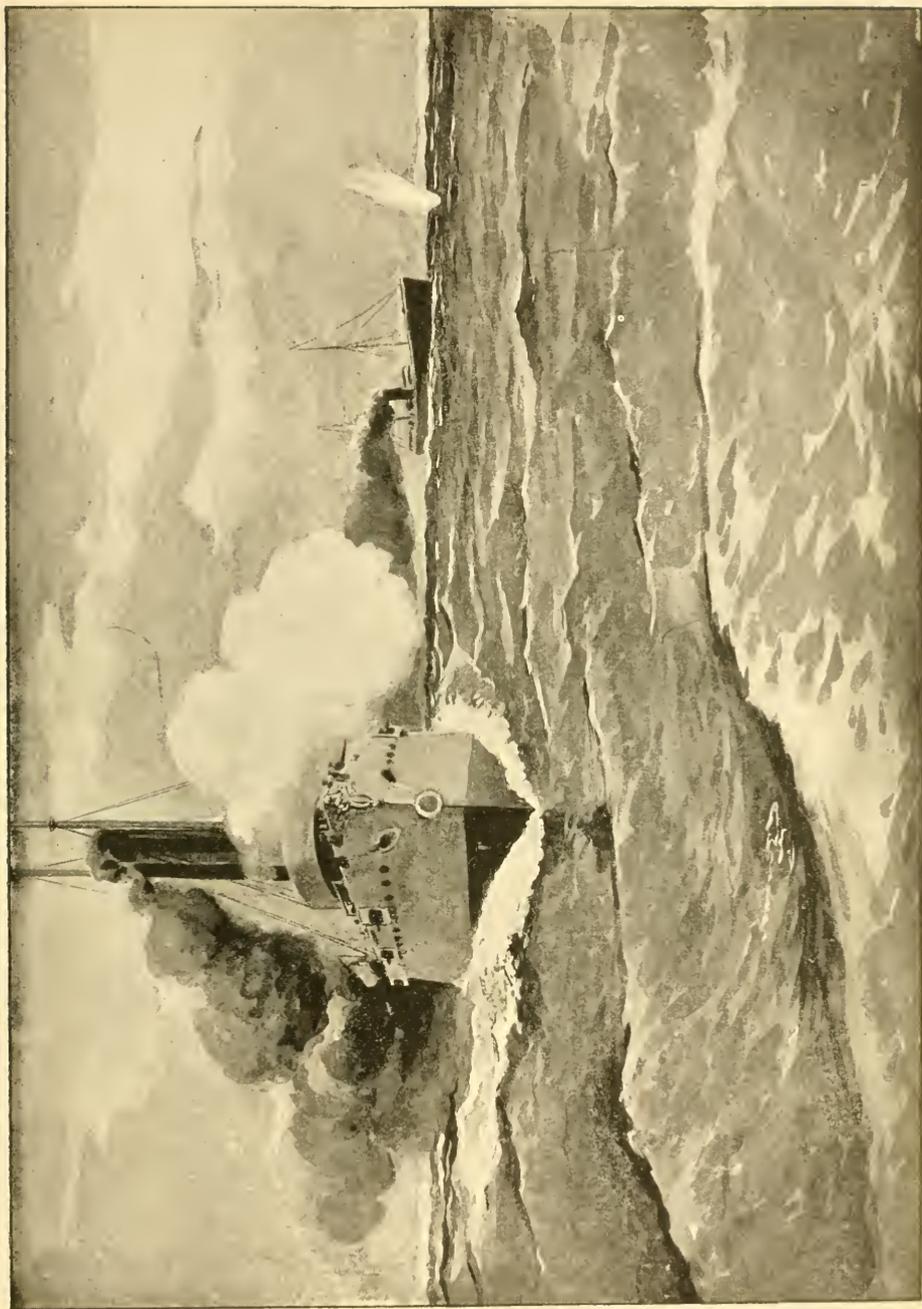
On the 9th another joint note was sent to the commander of the Spanish forces, pointing out to him his hopeless condition, surrounded on all sides, with no prospects of reinforcements, our fleet being in front of the city; also inviting his attention to the sufferings in store for the sick and non-combatants in case it should become necessary to reduce the defences. An immediate surrender was demanded as due to every consideration of humanity. On the same day a reply was received, admitting the situation, but stating that the council for defence declared that the request for surrender could not be granted unless sanctioned by the Spanish Government, and had offered to consult the government at Madrid if time were granted necessary for communication *via* Hong Kong. To this an answer was sent declining to grant further delays. Time was allowed, however, for the removal of the sick and



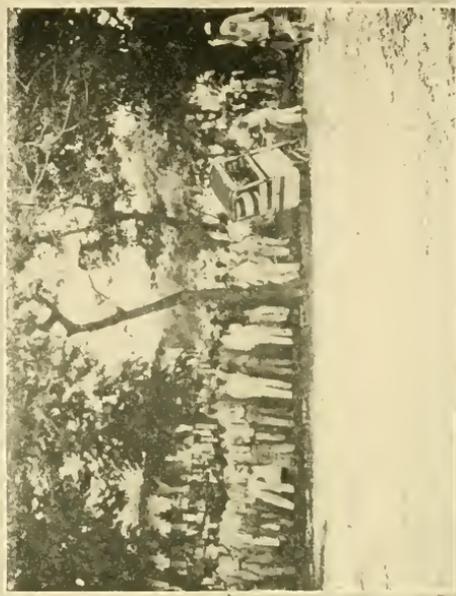
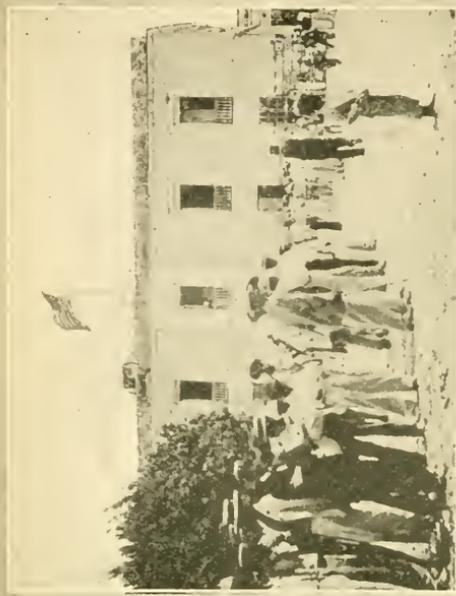
HAWAIIAN COMMERCE.—PAST AND PRESENT.



THE ROYAL PALMS.—HAWAII.



THE "GLOUCESTER" RUNNING INTO THE HARBOR OF PONCE.



IN PORTO RICO — OUTPOST OF THE SIXTEENTH PENNA. VOIS — RAISING "OLD GLORY." AT PONCE.

wounded and non-combatants from the vicinity of the fortifications. The bombardment was not begun until the Spaniards had twice refused to capitulate.

At nine o'clock, on the morning of the 13th, Rear-Admiral Dewey advanced with his squadron, again signalling a demand for surrender. The Spaniards still refused to capitulate, and the *Olympia* commenced the bombardment of the forts with her eight-inch guns. Simultaneously with the bombardment of the forts, the American land forces advanced on the city. The bombardment lasted two hours, and after the defences were almost totally destroyed, they were stormed by the American troops.

The 1st Colorado Volunteers stormed the outer trenches and drove the enemy into the second line of defence. The combined American forces, sweeping on, drove all of the Spaniards into the inner fortifications, where the Spanish commander, seeing that further resistance was useless, hoisted the white flag and surrendered. Nothing could have been more humane than the American capture of the town. The plan of General Merritt and Admiral Dewey being to spare everything but the armed defences and the trenches. The Spanish intrenchments varied, in point of distance, from two to four miles from the centre of Old Manila. They extended around the city forming a circle twelve miles in circumference, and it was impossible for the small Spanish forces to hold these defences against the attacking line. There were less than five thousand Spanish Regular troops, Volunteers and natives available, and about half that number were in the hospitals. The attacking force numbered from ten to twenty thousand natives, and ten thousand Americans. In every respect the advantage was on the side of the attack. The American field guns threw heavier metal and had longer range than the

Spanish, and the men were stronger and in better condition. The Spaniards are a small race compared with their stalwart opponents, and worn out by the hundred days' siege, and disappointed by the failure, to arrive, of the promised Spanish relief squadron, they had lost heart. It was a hopeless struggle; the *Olympia* had fired the first shot and a continuous cannonade was kept up until about twelve o'clock. By that time the Malate Fort was silenced. The Spanish commander, convinced that further resistance was hopeless, hoisted a white flag at 1.30 and an order to cease firing was issued, but in the outskirts of the city, fighting continued for some time between the rebels and Spaniards. The only fear felt, in the city, was in regard to the conduct of the insurgents. On account of the various restrictions placed, by General Merritt, upon the insurgents, not permitting them to have any share in the surrender of Manila, caused them to mutiny, and it is said that they attacked the American troops in various places during the siege.

After the surrender, General Jaudenes was found after considerable difficulty. He was discovered in the security of a church filled with women and children. Subsequent proceedings, regarding terms, were conducted in the Municipal Building, the governor-general consenting to leave the church after a brief conference. The terms of capitulation were as follows:

The surrender of the Philippines.

Officers to be allowed to retain their swords and personal effects, but not their horses.

Prisoners of war surrendering their arms, to have necessary supplies provided from the treasury, and when that is exhausted, the Americans are to make provisions.

All public property is to be surrendered, and future dis-

position of the Spanish troops to be determined by negotiation between the respective governments.

Arms may be returned at General Merritt's discretion.

Banks to continue operation under existing regulations, subject to change by the United States Government.

Flag-Lieutenant Brumby, immediately after the terms of capitulation had been signed, hurried off to lower the Spanish flag in the Philippines. He was accompanied by two signal men from the *Olympia*. This little party found its way, after considerable difficulty, into the fort in the northern portion of the city. There a large Spanish flag was flying; grouped about it were many Spanish officers. Brumby's presence there, in uniform, attracted a crowd from the city. They hissed as he approached to haul down the flag. Then the Stars and Stripes went up in place of the other. Many of those present wept bitterly as the flag of the victorious stranger climbed into place above the fort. Fearing that the crowd might lower "Old Glory," Brumby asked an American Infantry officer to move up a detachment to guard it. Fortunately he met a company coming up with a band. The Infantrymen presented arms, and the band played "The Star Spangled Banner."

The day after the surrender the insurgents entered the Spanish trenches on the outskirts of the city, but were driven off. General Merritt notified them that they would not be permitted to come inside of the city.

The prestige of the white population, in the Philippines, has been almost entirely destroyed by the war.

If an attempt were made to give the Islands autonomy, it could only be effected gradually, under strict benevolent tutelage. Any other regime would bring back barbarism.

The following order, sent to General Merritt, will show what an impression the situation made on the War Department:

"ADJUTANT GENERAL'S OFFICE, WASHINGTON, AUGUST 17, 1898.

"*Major General Merritt, Manila, Philippines* : The President directs that there must be no joint occupation with the insurgents. The United States, in the possession of Manila City, Manila bay and harbor, must preserve the peace and protect persons and property within the territory occupied by their military and naval forces. The insurgents and all others must recognize the military occupation and authority of the United States and the cessation of hostilities proclaimed by the President. Use whatever means in your judgment are necessary to this end. All law-abiding people must be treated alike.

"By order, Secretary War,

"H. C. CORBIN,

"Adjutant-General."

The excitement among the natives had to be met with determination, and General Merritt issued a proclamation which provided a temporary form of government for Manila and the surrounding territory. Rigid protection to all. Municipal laws, tribunals, and local institutions for punishment of crime. Open trade for neutral nations. Rigorous protection to public property, etc.

This fair and generous policy has been unwaveringly carried out. The departure of General Merritt, for Paris, left the military power—the administration of martial law—in the able and firm hands of Major-General Otis, who had preserved perfect order on the land, in the spirit that Admiral Dewey commanded the bay and enforced the supremacy of the American Flag on the water. It is well known to those most competent as witnesses that the Spaniards themselves, in Manila, were as well satisfied as a beaten army and deposed government could be ; to go home—or staying, submit cheerfully to American lawgiving and rule. Their demand for the Philippines, so vehemently pressed by them in the sessions of the Commissioners in Paris, was perfectly understood by them to be impracticable, and made merely with the hope of securing a money consideration.

CHAPTER XXXI.

PEACE NEGOTIATIONS.

The Turning of Events Changes the Motives of the Contest—Spain Sues for Peace—President McKinley's Response—The Philippine Question—The Terms of the Protocol—McKinley's Proclamation—Hostilities Ceased—Peace Commissioners Appointed—Paris Conference.

THE war, originally undertaken to give a stable government to Cuba, by the logic of events changed from one of mere humanitarian motives to a contest involving the commercial interests of the world. Our successes and the unforeseen conditions of the natives of the Spanish possessions which come under our control, very materially altered the course to be pursued by our government in the disposition of the territory thus occupied by force of arms, and it became a question as to what would be the legitimate result of our success in the war. It was certain that the Cubans were incapable of organizing an independent government; and a stable government, owing to the course of events, could only come through the United States, and would require a long period of occupation on our part, in connection with the establishment of such a government.

Porto Rico we decided to annex, and the inhabitants were from the beginning perfectly in harmony with us in that respect, but with the Philippines the question was more difficult, not so much on account of the natives, as on account of the jealousies of the various great powers that are interested in the Orient. It may be desirable, on our part, that the Philippines become an American colony, but it will require a large military and naval force to maintain

law and order until the natives have been won over to the advantages and benefits of our form of government.

To return the Islands to Spain would mean a continuation of the rebellion which has existed there for many years. We have, therefore, outside of our own commercial interests, and to indemnify ourselves for the cost of the war, a twofold duty to perform in the Philippine Islands: to maintain peace and to establish a substantial government there.

On Tuesday, July 26th, the Spanish government, through the French Ambassador in Washington, M. Jules Cambon, made a formal proposal to the United States for ending the war, and arranging terms of peace. The Spanish proposition contained no reference to an armistice. At the same time it was framed on the idea that if peace negotiations were entered upon there would be a suspension of hostilities, pending an agreement upon the exact terms of peace. In this there appears to have been a distinction made between the word "armistice" and "suspension of hostilities." It was taken for granted that a suspension of hostilities would be essential to carrying forward the peace negotiations. The Spanish proposition was clothed with all the solemnity and formality of a government act. It bore the signature of Duke Almadovar de Rio, the Spanish Minister of Foreign Affairs, and besides expressing the desire of the Spanish Cabinet and Government that the peace negotiations be opened, it was given the additional solemnity of approval and earnest personal request by Queen Regent Maria Cristina. The instructions bore the date of Madrid, July 25th. This application placed the President in a position which compelled him to determine to what ends the war was to be further prosecuted, and what should be the limit of our demands upon Spain. We could not bind

ourselves by any pledges as to what we would do in a given contingency; however, President McKinley on July 30th, through the French Ambassador, made known to Spain the following terms under which we would begin negotiations tending toward peace:

“The United States does not now put forward any claim for pecuniary indemnity, but requires the relinquishment of all claim of sovereignty over, or title to, the Island of Cuba, as well as the immediate evacuation by Spain of the Island; the cession to the United States and immediate evacuation of Porto Rico and other Islands under Spanish sovereignty in the West Indies, and the like cession of an Island in the Ladrones.

“The United States will occupy and hold the city, bay and harbor of Manila, pending the conclusion of a Treaty of Peace which shall determine the control, disposition and government of the Philippines. If these terms are accepted by Spain in their entirety, commissioners will be named by the United States to meet commissioners on the part of Spain for the purpose of concluding a Treaty of Peace on the basis above indicated.”

After repeated and prolonged consultation, the Spanish Cabinet sent for further information. Objection was raised, on behalf of Spain, to the following:

“That Spain assume the municipal debt of Cuba and Porto Rico.

“That Spain pay indemnities to American citizens for damages suffered at the hands of the Spanish officers and authorities in Cuba.”

At the conclusion of the Mexican War the United States assumed all such claims in behalf of American citizens, and established a special tribunal for their adjudication and payment. The same course was pursued in 1819, in effecting a settlement of the Florida troubles with Spain, though the decisions announced by the special tribunal have been a source of litigation and negotiations down to the present time.

The amount of claims against Spain in behalf of American citizens who suffered in Cuba was, up to the day of the

destruction of the *Maine*, \$15,000,000. Since then have been added claims amounting to about \$5,000,000.

It was the opinion of the Spanish cabinet that the United States should assume the liability for these claims. President McKinley refused to reconsider the terms, and the Spanish cabinet was either to accept or reject the proposition.

On August 9th the French Ambassador received the reply from Spain accepting our proposition. The President, having determined that the answer was an acceptance of our terms, directed the formulation of a protocol which embraced all of the points in the American proposition.

This document, when completed, was submitted to M. Cambon, Spain's representative, and the Spanish government was notified to that effect. The terms of the protocol were as follows:

1. Spain will relinquish all claim of sovereignty over and title to Cuba.
2. Porto Rico and other Spanish islands in the West Indies and an island in the Ladrones, to be selected by the United States, shall be ceded to the latter.
3. The United States will occupy and hold the city, bay and harbor of Manila pending the conclusion of a treaty of peace, which shall determine the control, disposition and government of the Philippines.
4. Cuba, Porto Rico and other Spanish islands in the West Indies shall be immediately evacuated, and Commissioners, to be appointed within ten days, shall, within thirty days from the signing of the protocol, meet at Havana and San Juan, respectively, to arrange and execute the details of the evacuation.
5. The United States and Spain will each appoint not more than five Commissioners to negotiate and conclude a Treaty of Peace. The Commissioners are to meet at Paris not later than the 1st of October.
6. On the signing of the protocol hostilities will be suspended, and notice to that effect will be given as soon as possible by each Government to the commanders of its military and naval forces.

On the following day the French Ambassador received instructions from Madrid to adjust the terms of the protocol on behalf of Spain, and giving him authority to modify

or withdraw such representations as should prove unacceptable to the United States. The preliminaries were then arranged between Secretary Day and M. Cambon, at the State Department. On August 12th, the Spanish Government notified the French Minister of Foreign Affairs, M. Delcasse, at Paris, of its acceptance of the protocol, and asked the French Government to transmit to their ambassador, at Washington, such power as, in conformity with President McKinley's expressly formulated desire, would authorize him, as ambassador of France, at Washington, to sign the protocol, and on the same day the signatures were attached.

While this particular document is properly described as a protocol, it was still technically something more than that. It was an agreement midway between that of an armistice, which usually intervenes between active war and final peace. So far as it goes, a protocol is absolutely a peace treaty.

Thus having provided for disposing of Cuba, Porto Rico and one of the Ladrone Islands, there is nothing more for any peace commission to do in relation to those subjects. Their fate is sealed and the protocol is, in that respect, as binding as any definite treaty of peace.

It was such a protocol as this that was signed by President Thiers and Prince Bismarck to terminate the Franco-Prussian War, and the conditions therein laid down were not even subject to revision at the hands of the peace commission that followed.

The protocol was signed on behalf of the United States by Secretary Day and on behalf of Spain by M. Cambon. Thereupon President McKinley issued the following proclamation :

WHEREAS, By a protocol concluded and signed August 12, 1898, by William R. Day, Secretary of State of the United States, and his Excellency

Jules Cambon, Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary of the Republic of France at Washington, respectively representing for this purpose the Governments of the United States and Spain, have formally agreed upon the terms on which negotiations for the establishment of peace between the two countries shall be undertaken; and,

Whereas, It is in said protocol agreed that upon its conclusion and signature hostilities between the two countries shall be suspended, and that notice to that effect shall be given as soon as possible by each Government to the commanders of its military and naval forces;

Now, therefore, I, William McKinley, President of the United States, do, in accordance with the stipulations of the protocol, declare and proclaim, on the part of the United States, a suspension of hostilities, and do hereby command that orders be immediately given through the proper channels to the commanders of the military and naval forces of the United States to abstain from all acts inconsistent with this proclamation.

In witness whereof I have hereunto set my hand and caused the seal of the United States to be affixed.

Done at the City of Washington, this 12th day of August, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and ninety-eight, and of the independence of the United States the one hundred and twenty-third.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

By the President, WILLIAM R. DAY, Secretary of State.

In accordance with the proclamation issued by the President, orders were issued to the naval commanders at the several stations in the United States, Cuba and the Philippines, carrying into effect the directions of the proclamation. The navy department not only transmitted the President's proclamation in full to the several commanders in chief, but also directions as to the disposition of their vessels.

WASHINGTON, AUG. 12.

Sampson, Santiago: Suspend all hostilities. Blockade of Cuba and Porto Rico is raised. Howell ordered to assemble vessels at Key West. Proceed with the *New York, Brooklyn, Indiana, Oregon, Iowa* and *Massachusetts* to Tompkinsville, Staten Island. Place monitors in safe harbor in Porto Rico. Watson transfers his flag to *Newark*, and will remain at Guantanamo. Assemble all cruisers in safe harbors. Order marines North on *Resolute*.

ALLEN, Acting Secretary.

WASHINGTON, AUG. 12.

Remy, Key West: In accordance with the President's proclamation telegraphed you, suspend immediately all hostilities. Commence withdrawal of vessels from blockade. Order blockading vessels in Cuban waters to assemble at Key West.

ALLEN, Acting Secretary.

WASHINGTON, AUG. 12, 1898.

Dewey, Manila: Peace protocol signed by President. Suspend all hostilities and blockade. President's proclamation is as follows. (Here followed the text of the proclamation).

WASHINGTON, AUG. 12, 1898.

Merritt, Manila: The President directs that all military operations against the enemy be suspended. Peace negotiations are nearing completion, a protocol having just been signed by representatives of the two countries. You will inform the commanders of the Spanish forces in the Philippines of these instructions. Further orders will follow. Acknowledge receipt. CORBIN.

The order to General Miles was in the same words as the above, excepting the names of the officers and places.

The order to Shafter was somewhat different, directing him to do everything possible to prevent further bloodshed. This was on account of the continued activity of the insurgents.

By the signing of the protocol, Spain's last foothold in the Western Hemisphere disappeared. In thus retiring from the new world, Spain has left behind her those vast dominions which once constituted her greatness. She has departed forever from the Hemisphere of Freedom, and her departure indicates that Freedom has triumphed. The only evidence of her former presence in the new world henceforth will be the language spoken by the millions of Americans of Spanish descent, who are ruling themselves as a free people in the various Spanish-American Republics in Central and South America. Spain was, at one time, in possession of the greater part of the Americas,—in fact, nearly all of the rich lands were part of her possessions. Through misgovernment she has lost a greater empire than that of Rome, and as great as that of the British.

On August 16th, the President appointed the two commissions to adjust the evacuation of Cuba and Porto Rico.

For Cuba, Major-General James F. Wade, Rear-Admiral William T. Sampson, Major-General Marion C. Butler.

For Porto Rico, Major-General John R. Brooke, Rear-Admiral William S. Schley, Brigadier-General William W. Gordon.

The instructions to these military commissions were :

To meet in Havana, Cuba, and San Juan, Porto Rico, and there to examine all real estate records, custom-house returns, public papers relating to receipts of revenue, and the ownership of property.

These records to be turned over to the American commissioners together with all public documents necessary to the establishment of a new government in Cuba and Porto Rico.

The terms of evacuation, by the Spanish forces also to be arranged by these commissioners.

The following American peace commissioners, to arrange for a final treaty of peace at the Paris conference, and to settle the future of the Philippine Islands, were appointed by President McKinley :

William R. Day, of Canton, Ohio, Secretary of State, formerly a member of the Ohio Bar.

Cushman K. Davis, United States Senator from Minnesota, Chairman of the Foreign Relations Committee.

William P. Frye, United States Senator from Maine, member of the Foreign Relations Committee.

George Gray, United States Senator from Delaware.

Whitelaw Reid, of New York.

On the 25th of August these commissioners held their first meeting in Washington. At this meeting the plans of the commission, as to the proceedings at Paris, were talked over, and arrangements made to meet the Spanish Commissioners at the Paris Peace Conference.

The Spanish Commissioners were Senor Montero Rios,

Chairman; General Cerero Senor Abarzuza, Senor Villarrutia, and Senor Garnica.

On September 17th the American Peace Commissioners sailed from New York, on board the *Campania*, in order to meet the Spanish Commissioners on or before October 1st, which had been specified, in the Protocol, as the date of the opening of the Peace Conference.

The American Peace Commissioners were joined at Paris on the 3d of October by General Merritt, who had taken the route of the Indian Ocean from Manila.

The very able Spanish Commissioners maintained a policy of objection, and especially persisting in putting forward questions of indemnity, that we should buy their debts or supplement conquest with a money remuneration.

Our Commissioners have maintained the rights of conquest; the Spaniards, as during the war, were solicitous of European sympathy and hoped for some form of intervention by the Powers that were leagued during the Greco-Turkish struggle.

The Paris Peace Conference, which held its first session in the French Foreign Office on the Quai d'Orsay, Paris, October 1st, practically completed the peace negotiations on November 28th, and the Spanish Commissioners accepted and signed the American Peace Terms, Dec. 10th.

The first decisive point in the settlement was not reached, however, until October 27th, when the Spanish Commissioners finally became convinced that the United States would not withdraw from her determination not to assume or guarantee the so-called Cuban Debt, and thereupon they agreed to relinquish sovereignty over and claim to Cuba, without either terms or conditions.

On the same day, all differences regarding the cession of Porto Rico and the Island of Guam, in the Ladrones,

under the terms of the Peace Protocol, were also arranged.

The disposition of the Philippines was then brought under discussion, and on October 31st the American Commissioners notified their Spanish colleagues of the purpose of the United States to take the entire group, and to assume such portion only of the debt charged to the Islands as had been spent for the benefit of them or their inhabitants. Four weeks were occupied in arguing this point before a final decision was reached; the Spanish Commissioners making their first stand on the assumption that the Protocol did not provide for questioning Spanish sovereignty in the Islands. They further tried to retain Spanish sovereignty over part of the Philippine Group. The United States Government, however, through its representatives, demanded the cession of the entire Philippine Archipelago, including the Sulu Islands, offering a compensation of \$20,000,000. It was further declared that it is the purpose of the United States to maintain the Philippine Islands as an open door to the world's commerce.

On the terms named the United States proposed a mutual relinquishment of all claims for indemnity, national or personal, subsequent to the outbreak of the last Cuban insurrection. It was also declared that the United States desired to treat: on the religious freedom of the Caroline Islands, as agreed upon between the United States and Spain in 1886; on the acquisition of one of the Caroline Islands for an American naval station; on cable-landing rights at other places in Spanish jurisdiction, and on the revival of certain Spanish-American treaties as heretofore enforced.

After wrangling over various minor points, and offering numerous counter-propositions, the Spanish Commissioners finally consented to accept the American terms.

CHAPTER XXXII.

THE RED CROSS IN OUR WAR WITH SPAIN.

The Red Cross Society and the Cuban Reconcetrados—Beneficial Results of the Work in Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines—The Origin of the Society—Its International Recognition—Its Founders and its Great Benefits—Life Sketch of Clara Barton.

LONG before there was any idea of a war with Spain for the freedom of struggling Cuba, the Red Cross Societies of the United States were carrying on their humanitarian relief work in the interest of the starving reconcentrados of that sorrow-stricken Island. Provisions, medicines, and clothing were collected and sent for the relief of the suffering inhabitants. A steamer was chartered by the Red Cross Societies to convey a relief expedition to Cuba, and through the humane efforts and wise direction of this great organization, the first humanitarian work in Cuba was accomplished.

This was before the war. After the war broke out the Red Cross Society, redoubling its energies, came to the aid of the War and Navy Departments of the United States, in extending medical and sanitary aid to the American forces in Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines, and it is largely due this organization there was not a greater loss of life in the various camps and battlefields.

The Red Cross Society is a confederation of relief societies in different countries, acting under the Geneva Convention, carrying on its work under the sign of the Red Cross. The aim of these societies is to ameliorate the condition of wounded soldiers in the armies, in campaign,

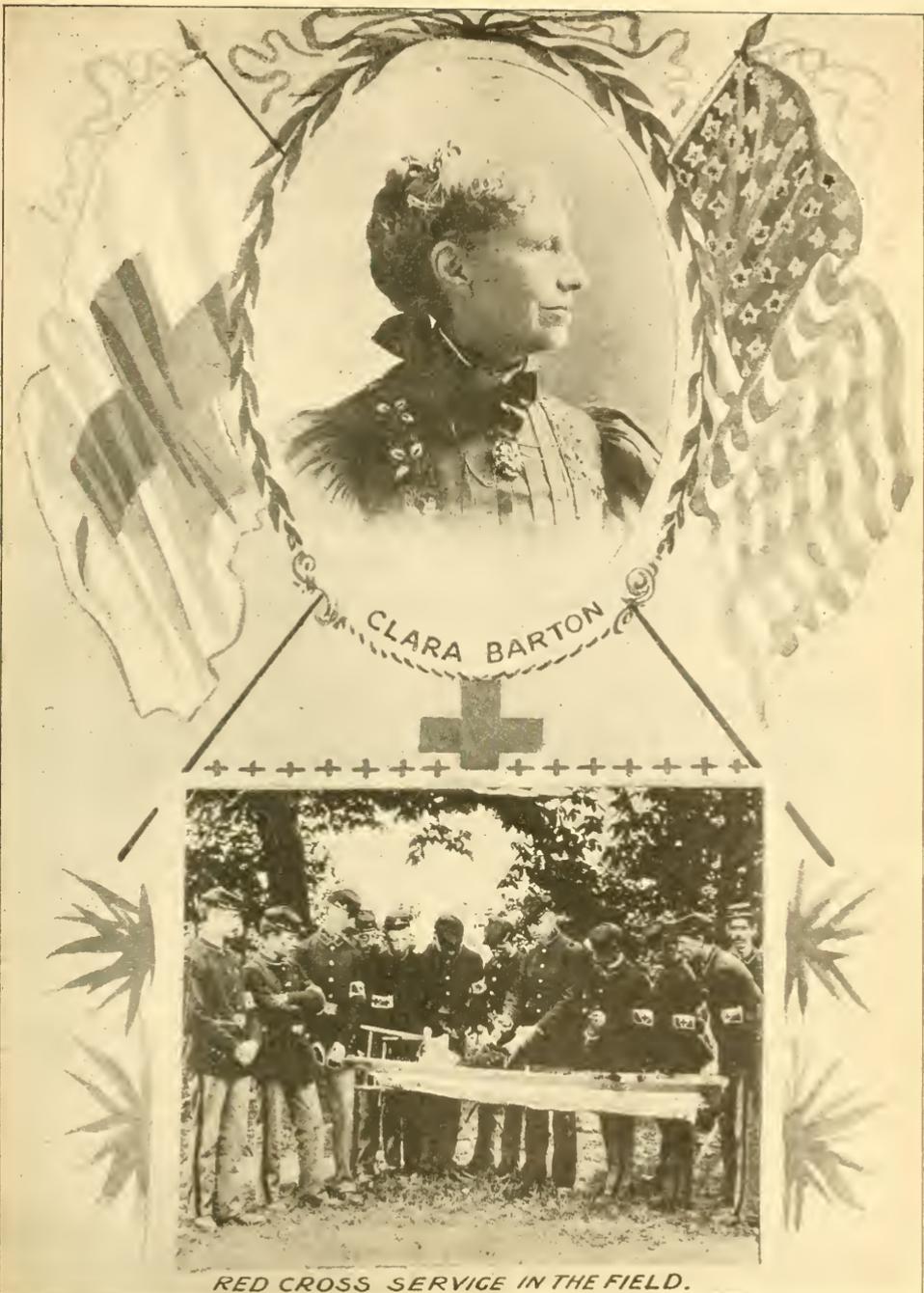
on land or sea. The societies had their rise in the conviction of certain philanthropic men that the official sanitary service in wars is usually insufficient, and that the charity of the people, which at such times exhibits itself munificently, should be organized for the best possible utilization.

An international public conference was called at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1863, which, though it had not an official character, brought together representatives from a number of governments. At this conference a treaty was drawn up, afterwards remodeled and improved, which twenty-five governments have signed. Although the convention which originated the organization was necessarily international, the relief societies themselves are entirely national and independent, each one governing itself and making its own laws according to the genius of its nationality and needs.

It was necessary for recognizance and safety, and for carrying out the general provisions of the treaty, that a uniform badge should be agreed upon. The Red Cross was chosen out of compliment to the Swiss Republic, where the first convention was held, and in which the Central Commission has its headquarters. The Swiss colors being a white cross on a red ground, the badge chosen was these colors reversed.

There are no "members of the Red Cross," but only members of societies whose sign it is. There is no order of the Red Cross.

The Relief Societies use, according to their convenience, whatever methods seem best suited to prepare in times of peace for the necessities of sanitary service in times of war. They gather and store gifts of money and supplies, arrange hospitals, ambulances, methods of transportation of wounded men, bureaus of information, correspondence, etc. All that the most ingenious philanthropy could de-



RED CROSS SERVICE IN THE FIELD.

THE RED CROSS IN OUR WAR WITH SPAIN.



THE "Y. M. C. A." IN OUR ARMY AND NAVY.

wise and execute has been attempted in this direction. In the Franco-Prussian War this was abundantly tested. That Prussia acknowledged its beneficence is proven by the fact that the Emperor of Germany affixed the Red Cross to the Iron Cross of Merit.

Although the societies are not international, there is a tacit compact between them, arising from their common origin, identity of aim, and mutual relation to the treaty. This compact embraces four principles, viz. : centralization, preparation, impartiality, and solidarity.

First, centralization.—The efficiency of relief in time of war depends on unity of direction ; therefore, in every country the relief societies have a common central head, to which they send their supplies, and which communicates for them with the seat of war or with the surgical military authorities, and it is through this central commission they have governmental recognition.

Second, preparation.—It is understood that societies⁴ working under the Red Cross shall occupy themselves with preparatory work in times of peace. This gives them a permanence they could not otherwise have.

Third, impartiality.—The societies of belligerent nations cannot always carry aid to their wounded countrymen who are captured by the enemy. This is counterbalanced by the regulation that the aid of the Red Cross Societies shall be extended alike to friend and foe.

Fourth, solidarity.—This provides that the societies of nations not engaged in war may afford aid to the sick and wounded of belligerent nations without effecting any principle of non-interference to which their governments may be pledged. Such aid must come through the Central Commission, and not through either of the belligerent parties, thus insuring impartiality of relief.

That these principles are practical has been tested during the time that the Red Cross has existed. The Convention of Geneva does not exist as a society, but is simply a treaty under which all the relief societies of the Red Cross are enabled to carry on their work effectually.

In time of war, the members and agents of the societies to go to the seat of war are obliged to have their badges vized by the Central Commission, and by one of the belligerents; this is in order to prevent fraud. Thus the societies and the treaty compliment each other. The societies find and execute the relief, the treaty affords them the immunities which enable them to execute.

The society had its inception in the mind of Monsieur Henri Dumant, a Swiss gentleman, who was ably seconded in his views by Monsieur Gustave Moynier and Dr. Louis Appia, of Geneva. Monsieur Dumant, being present at the battle of Solferino, was deeply impressed with a conviction of the need of more extended and efficient means than any which yet existed for ameliorating conditions consequent upon war, and subsequently published a work entitled "A Souvenir of Solferino," in which he strongly advocated more humane and extensive appliances of aid to wounded soldiers.

As a result of their thoughts and consultations, M. Moynier, who was at that time President of the Society of Public Utility of Switzerland, called a meeting of this society to consider "a proposition relative to the formation of permanent societies for the relief of wounded soldiers." This meeting took place on the 9th of February, 1863. The matter was laid fully before the society, was heartily received and acted upon, and a committee appointed, with M. Moynier at its head, to examine into methods by which the desired results might be obtained.

So fully did this committee realize its responsibility and the magnitude, grandeur, and labor of the undertaking that its first steps were made even with timidity, but, overcoming all obstacles, it decided upon a plan which seemed possible, and announced for the 26th of the following October a reunion, to which were invited from all countries men sympathizing with its views or able to assist in its discussions.

This international conference was held at the appointed time, continuing four days. The resolutions adopted contained the fundamental principles of the work since accomplished. Upon this basis was commenced and wrought out the Geneva Treaty, and the plan of all the national permanent relief societies. Upon this the Red Cross was founded.

The society during the war with Spain and the distress in Cuba, which preceded the outbreak of hostilities, had been actively engaged in its humanitarian work of ministering to the necessities of the men in the field and of the suffering Cubans. It had sent many articles of comfort, even of life-saving importance, to our troops in their various camps, sometimes in response to most touching appeals. It had besides made a large number of shipments of goods, clothing, and medicines to the Cubans.

During the blockade and siege of Santiago, one branch of its ministrations, the relief of the suffering Cubans in that province, was necessarily suspended, but the society was not idle, stores continued to be received and money to be collected. Among other things the equipment of an ambulance and hospital service was accomplished and the society put into the field ambulances, with their proper appurtenances and properly equipped field hospitals.

The fall of Santiago reopened the opportunity of merci-

ful work in Cuba, and tons of provisions were sent to relieve the suffering.

Shortly after the war broke out the following letter was sent to President McKinley, and was sent out, through the War Department, with General Order No. 64, to every army headquarters in the battlefield and camp:

HEADQUARTERS OF THE ARMY,
Adjutant-General's Office.

WASHINGTON, June 7, 1898.

By direction of the Secretary of War, the following letter of the American National Red Cross Relief Committee is published to the Army for the information of all concerned, and announcement is made that the War Department recognizes, for any appropriate co-operative purposes, the American National Red Cross as the civil central American Committee in correspondence with the International Committee for the relief of the sick and wounded in war:

AMERICAN NATIONAL RED CROSS RELIEF COMMITTEE.

Secretary's Office, Room 312,
Central Bank Building, 320 Broadway.
NEW YORK, May 20, 1898.

To the President:

Sir:—In accordance with the request made by you to the Special Committee appointed by the American National Red Cross Relief Committee, during its recent visit to you, the undersigned members of said Special Committee beg leave to submit the following statements for your consideration:

The American National Red Cross Relief Committee of New York, organized with an unlimited number of co-operating and auxiliary bodies throughout the country, for the purpose of providing financial and material support to the work of the American National Red Cross, Miss Clara Barton, President, begs leave to represent to the Government of the United States as follows, viz.:

1. That the American National Red Cross is the duly incorporated committee representing the work of the Red Cross in its civil capacity, and is recognized as such by the Government of the United States, the governments of other countries, and the International Committee at Geneva.

2. That we are informed that the said American National Red Cross has given formal notice to the Departments of State, War, and Navy, and the Surgeon-Generals of the Army and Navy, of its readiness to respond to any call for civil aid to supplement the hospital work of the Army and Navy, in accordance with the provisions of the resolutions of the Geneva Conference of 1863 and the Geneva Convention of 1864, and its amendments.

3. That in order to guarantee the fullest effectiveness of the aid thus offered by the Civil Red Cross, this committee hereby gives you official notice that it stands ready, together with other co-operating committees, to furnish all necessary money and material

to support the work of the said American National Red Cross as hereinbefore outlined.

We beg to request, Mr. President, that you take the necessary action to have the several Departments of the Government duly notified of this financial guarantee of the assistance tendered by the American National Red Cross, to the end that the fullest reliance may be placed upon its offer.

Please favor us with a prompt acknowledgment of this letter and information as to your action thereon.

Respectfully,

LEVI P. MORTON,
HENRY C. POTTER., D.D., LL.D.,
WM. T. WARDWELL,
GEO. F. SHRADY, M.D.,
A. MONAE LESSER, M.D.,

Committee.

By command of MAJOR-GENERAL MILES.

H. C. CORBIN, Adjutant-General.

The insignia of this Society has for thirty years figured on European battlefields in the midst of contending armies, designating neutral grounds where the suffering wounded could be ministered to and relieved. But by reason of our geographical location and the neutral tendency of the American people to maintain peaceful relations with the world, the war between Spain and the United States has offered to the American branches the first opportunity for actual work.

A life sketch of Clara Barton, President of the American National Red Cross Society, is inseparable from the story of the Red Cross work. This most noted of all humanitarians was born in North Oxford, Mass., in 1826. She is of Puritan ancestry, and was carefully educated. When quite young she founded a seminary for girls at Elizabethtown, N. J. She next became a clerk in the Patent Office at Washington, being the first woman to hold a regular clerical position under the Government.

During the Rebellion she gave her time and energies to caring for the sick and wounded. She led in forming the

famous Sanitary Commission, and was present at Bull Run, Antietam, Spottsylvania, and a number of other engagements of the war. She also aided the Andersonville prisoners upon their release, and organized at Washington the Bureau of Records, which traced the fate of over 30,000 missing men.

In 1867 she visited Europe, being at Geneva when the Franco-Prussian war broke out. She at once joined in the work of the Red Cross Society and nursed the sick and wounded at Strasburg and Metz. Entering Paris during the days of the Commune, she distributed food and clothing to the needy.

"Mon Dieu, she is an angel," were the words of the French mob when she came to the door of her lodgings and spoke to them after they had overcome the police. This voices the sentiment of many thousands of the unfortunate and suffering in this and other lands, who have received timely relief and succor at the hand of Clara Barton.

Returning to the United States in 1873, she inaugurated the movement for the recognition of the Red Cross Society by the Government, and her labors were rewarded by the desired recognition during President Arthur's administration.

When the society was organized, in 1882, she naturally became its first President. In this capacity she superintended the work of succoring those afflicted by the great Michigan forest fires and the disastrous earthquake at Charleston. The disbursement of vast sums of money to sufferers by floods on the Ohio and Mississippi, in 1884, was given into her charge, and likewise at the terrible halocaust at Johnstown, Pa., in 1889.

When the Cuban sufferings appalled the civilized world, Clara Barton, forgetful of her own comforts, hurried to Cuba to direct the work of the Red Cross Society.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

OUR WEST INDIES.

Our First West Indian Possessions—The Annexation of Porto Rico—Centre of the West Indian Commerce—Surprising Density of Population—Beautiful Scenery—Resources and Trade—The Tremendous Possibilities of the Cuban Soil if Put Under Cultivation—Opportunities for Capitalists—The Danish West Indies and How We Came Near Possessing Them.

THE Stars and Stripes were raised over Porto Rico, October 18th, and on that day we added to our population over 800,000 people, and to our territory 3,670 square miles. It was called Expansion Day. There was a parade at San Juan. General Brooke marched into the city, from Rio Pedras, with a guard of honor. The natives were pleased with the ceremonial, and, when the flag went up, it was greeted with cheers and the forts in the harbor fired their first round of American salutes.

Porto Rico, by its geographical position, is peculiarly adapted to become the center of an extensive and flourishing commerce. It is the fourth in size of the Greater Antilles, and lies to the eastward of Cuba, Santo Domingo, and Jamaica, and directly in the path of the new commercial routes from the Old World, that will pass through the Nicaragua Canal. It is within a few hours' sail of any of the Lesser Antilles, and only five hundred miles from Caracas, Venezuela.

This Island is more cultivated than Cuba, as may be seen from the greater density of her population. Cuba has thirty-five inhabitants to the square mile, while Porto Rico

has 228. The Island is only one-thirteenth the size of Cuba, yet the population of Cuba is only twice that of Porto Rico.

Among the inhabitants there are two classes in Porto Rico: the merchant and planter class, and the peasants. The former are mostly well to do, while the latter are, as a rule, very poor.

The negroes number 300,000.

The climate is considered the healthiest of the Antilles. The scenery is beautiful. The Island is well watered and well timbered.

It is very mountainous, but is surrounded by a border of lowland from two to four miles wide. This is used for growing sugar-cane, while coffee is chiefly grown on the hills and mountain sides. There are also numerous orange groves. The orange, lemon, and lime are found, here and there, growing wild along the roadside. Cocoanuts grow principally along the coast.

Zinc, coal, and salt, and deposits of gold, silver, and copper, have been located, and there are also valuable marble quarries on the Island.

The export trade of the Island averages about \$12,000,000, while the imports amount, annually, to about \$15,000,000.

Its entire length is about 107 miles, while the greatest breadth is almost 50 miles. A range of mountains runs from east to west, its loftiest peak being 3,678 feet high.

In the interior are extensive savannas or elevated plains on which numerous herds of cattle are pastured.

Nearly the whole of the northern coast is lined with navigable lagoons, and many of the rivers are of such astonishing breadth and depth that it is difficult to realize how such large bodies of water could gather in so short a course. Many of these rivers can be navigated for a considerable

distance, and this facility of water carriage is of great importance to the natives, who can thus safely and cheaply export the products of their fertile hills and valleys.

The unusual abundance of water in this Island is invaluable during the dry season for irrigation purposes.

The total exports in 1895 were almost \$16,000,000. Imports, \$18,000,000.

In 1895, 1,077 vessels entered the ports of Porto Rico, representing a tonnage of 1,079,036.

In Porto Rico there are 470 miles of telegraph and 137 miles of railway, besides 170 miles under construction.

Cuba is superior to the rest of the tropical lands in this Hemisphere, with the possible exception of Porto Rico. It has but a small proportion of untillable areas, such as are found in some of the northeastern States. There are no such sterile lands as occur in Central America; no such arid wastes as occur in a large portion of Mexico and our far western States. No stretches of barren sandy lands, like those of Florida and other coastal southern States. Its proportion of swamp lands is less than that of the average American seaboard State. The whole Island is mantled with rich soils which yield, in abundance, every form of useful vegetation of the tropical and temperate climes.

Cuba is divided into six provinces, each with a capital of the same name. Only 10 per cent. of the total area is cultivated. There are large tracts of country still unexplored.

Four per cent. is in forest land and the remainder, for the most part, unreclaimed wilderness. Its area is slightly less than that of the State of New York.

Although Cuba is the oldest settlement in America, it is one of the most undeveloped portions of the Western Hemisphere, and there will be a great opportunity for American enterprise, in the direction of building railroads,

public highways, bridges, telegraph lines, harbors and docks; of improving the water supply, and sanitary facilities of the cities, and through these improvements make it more possible to develop the great resources of this beautiful Island.

The population of the Island, according to the most recent census, was 1,631,696, of which 45 per cent. are negroes.

The number of landed estates on the Island, before the outbreak of the last rebellion, was estimated at 91,000, valued at \$44,000,000, drawing a rental of \$3,400,000.

The live-stock consisted of 584,725 horses and mules; 2,485,766 cattle; 78,494 sheep, and 570,194 pigs.

The chief productions are sugar and tobacco. The quantity of sugar produced in the year 1894-95 was 1,004,264 tons. The rebellion has destroyed a large part of the sugar cultivation, and the above production will not be duplicated for some years.

The tobacco crop is estimated at 560,000 bales annually, an average of 340,000 bales being exported, and the remainder used in the manufacture of cigars and cigarettes in Havana.

The cigars exported, in 1896, numbered 185,914,000.

Tobacco leaf exported, in 1895, was 30,466,000 pounds; in 1896, 16,823,000 pounds.

The districts where fine leaf tobacco is grown suffered so severely from the rebellion that the tobacco crop is only about one-tenth of the ordinary yield. Nearly all of the tobacco and nearly one-half of the cigars go to the United States.

Mahogany and other timbers are exported, as are also honey, wax, and fruit.

The chief imports are rice, jerked beef, and flour.

The total number of mining titles issued was 296. Of

the mines reported and claimed, 138 were iron, 88 manganese, and 53 copper. Iron mines are worked at the eastern end of the Island near Santiago de Cuba, by two American Companies. There are about 1,000 miles of railway operated by various companies, and the larger sugar estates have private lines connecting them with the main railroads. There are 2,300 miles of telegraph lines.

To guard the new possessions that have come to us, directly or indirectly, from the War with Spain, it will be necessary not only to increase our Army and Navy, and send troops and warships for their defense, but we must also fortify the harbors and cities of the Islands that will be under our protection. Many of these Islands are already supplied with strong defenses, which can easily be made efficient for defense against modern war machines. Some, however, are lacking protection of any kind, and these we must prepare to defend with strong fortresses.

It will be interesting to a great many to know that, at one time, we were seriously considering the question of purchasing the Danish West India Islands.

In 1866, Secretary of State Seward visited the Danish West Indies, and became convinced of their desirability as an acquisition to the United States for national defense purposes.

After returning to the United States he immediately turned his attention to the acquisition of these Islands, by purchase from Denmark. The Danish Government at first declined to part with her West Indian possessions, but, prompted by a sincere desire to favor the wishes of the United States, Denmark finally consented to entertain a proposition to sell a part of her possessions, but refused to dispose of more than two Islands. Denmark had the sympathy of the people of America in her disastrous strug-

gle with the Allied Powers in 1864, and there was little wonder that the Danes consented to enter into a treaty with the United States for the transfer of those Islands to our country. The only condition under which the little monarchy would transfer the Islands, however, was that the inhabitants should agree, by ballot, to the transfer of allegiance. The vote was taken on January 9, 1868, and resulted, almost unanimously, in favor of annexation to the United States.

The failure of the United States Senate to ratify the treaty thus solemnly entered into by the governments of Denmark and the United States marks one of the saddest pages in the history of American diplomacy, as it was the United States that had made the offer to Denmark, and when that country finally consented to part with her Islands, refused to accept them.

In a report to President Lincoln, on the question of establishing a naval station in the West Indies, Admiral Porter wrote as follows :

“St. Thomas lies right in the track of all vessels from Europe, Brazil, the East Indies, and the Pacific Ocean, bound to the West India Islands or to the United States. It is the point where all vessels touch for supplies, when needed, coming from any of the above stations. It is a central point from which any or all of the West India Islands can be assailed, while it is impervious to attack from landing parties and can be fortified to any extent. The bay on which lies the town of St. Thomas is almost circular, the entrance being by a neck guarded by two heavy forts, which can be so strengthened and protected that no foreign power can ever hope to take it. St. Thomas is a small Gibraltar by itself, and could not be attacked by a naval force. There would be no possibility of landing troops

there, as the island is surrounded by reefs and breakers, and every point near which a vessel or boat could approach is a natural fortification, and only requires guns with little labor expended on fortified works. There is no harbor in the West Indies better fitted than St. Thomas for a naval station. Its harbor and that of St. John, and the harbor formed by the Water Island, would contain all the vessels of the largest navy in the world, where they would be protected at all times from bad weather and be secure against an enemy. In fine, St. Thomas is the keystone to the arch of the West Indies. It commands them all. It is of more importance to us than to any other nation."

CHAPTER XXXIV.

THE STORY OF THE PHILIPPINE ISLANDS.

The Picturesqueness, Commercial Value and Historic Interest of the Philippine Islands—The Agricultural Industry as Manipulated by the Natives—Manila one of the Greatest Commercial Centres of the Orient—The Siege of Manila by the English in the Year 1762—A Historical Coincidence.

THE most populous and prosperous province of the Philippines takes its name from the fortification of Manila; and the port of Manila is among the best-known and most frequented harbors of the Eastern world. The capital is renowned for the splendor of its religious processions, for the excellence of its cheroots, which, to the east of the Cape of Good Hope, are generally preferred to the cigars of Havana; while the less honorable characteristics of the people are known to be a universal love of gambling, which is exhibited among the Indian races by a passion for cock-fighting, an amusement, made a productive source of revenue to the state. Artists usually introduce a Philippine Indian with a game-cock under his arm, to which he seems as much attached as a Bedouin Arab to his horse. It is said that many a time an Indian has allowed his wife and children to perish in the flames, when his house has taken fire, but was never known to fail in securing his favorite *gallo* from danger.

The bay of Manila, one of the finest in the world, and the river Pasig which flows into it, were, no doubt, the great recommendations of the position chosen for the capital of the Philippines. During the four months of March, April, May and June, the heat and dust are very oppressive, and

the mosquitoes a fearful annoyance. These months are followed by a rainy season, but on the whole the climate is good, and the general mortality not great. The average temperature through the year is 81° Fahrenheit.

There is a quarantine station at Cavite, a town of considerable importance on the other side of the harbor. It has a large manufacturing establishment of cigars, and gives its name to the surrounding province, which has about 57,000 inhabitants, among whom are about 7,000 mestizos (mixed race).

The life at Manila is said to be intolerably monotonous, and Sir John Bowring, in "A Visit to the Philippine Islands," says: "In my short stay it appeared to me full of interest and animation, but I was perhaps privileged. The city is certainly not lively, and the Spaniard is generally grave, but he is warm-hearted and hospitable, and must not be studied at a distance nor condemned with precipitancy. He is, no doubt, susceptible and *pundonoroso*, but is rich in noble qualities. Confined, as is the population of Manila within the fortification walls, the neighboring country is full of attractions. To me, the villages, the beautiful tropical vegetation, the banks of the rivers, and the streams adorned with scenery so picturesque and pleasing, were more inviting than the gayety of the public parade. Every day afforded some variety, and most of the pueblos have their characteristic distinctions. Malate is filled with public offices, and women employed in ornamenting slippers with gold and silver embroidery. Santa Ana is a favorite *Villagiatura* for the merchants and opulent inhabitants. Near Paco, is the cemetery, 'where dwell the multitude,' in which are interred the remains of many of the once distinguished who have ceased to be. Guadalupe is illustrious for its miraculous image, and Paco, for that of the

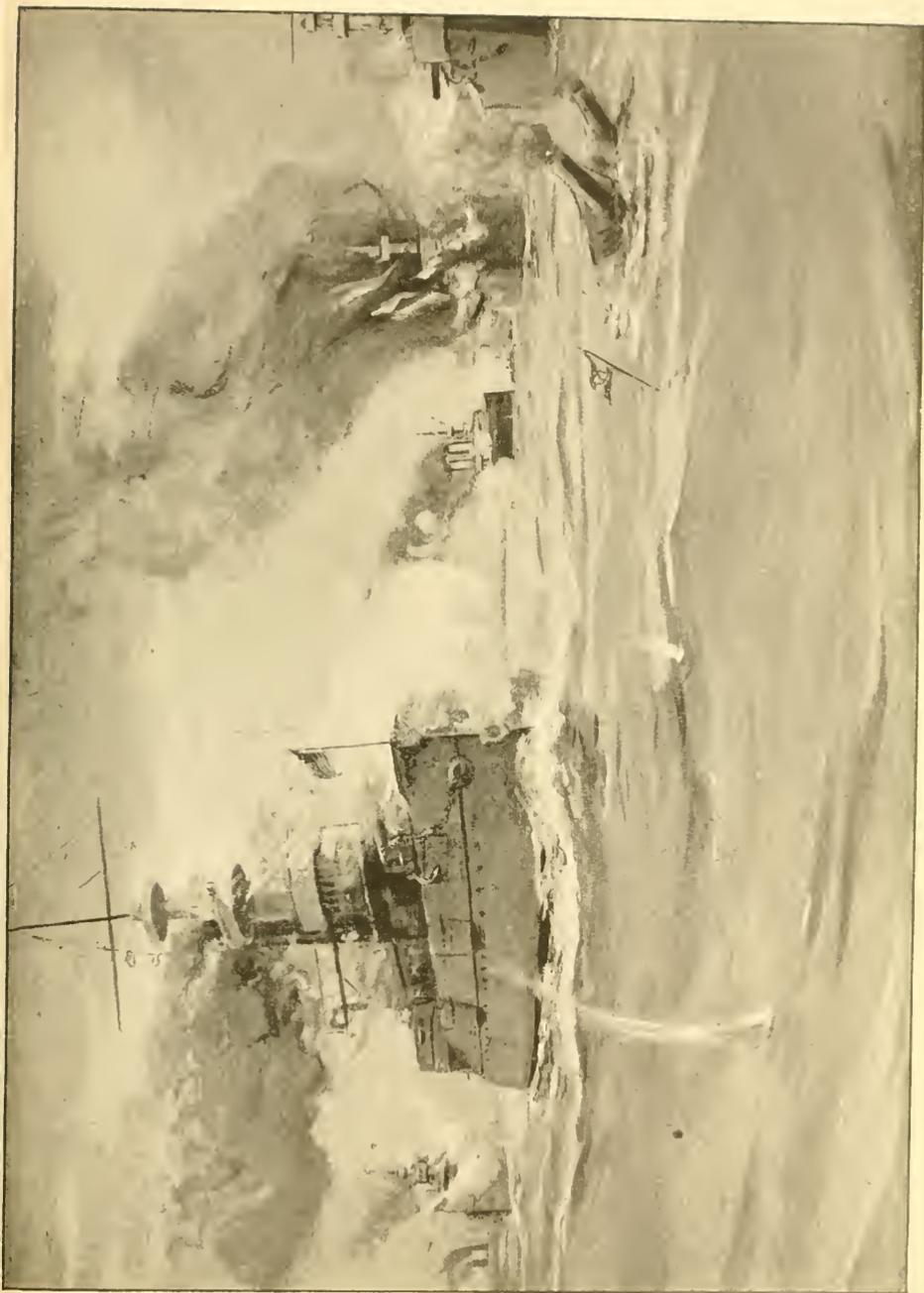
Saviour. The Lake of Arroceros (as its name implies) is one of the principal gathering places for boats laden with rice; near it, too, are large manufactories of paper cigars. Edifices of superior construction are generally the abodes of the mestizos, or of the *gobnadorcillos* belonging to the different pueblos.

“Philip the Third gave armorial bearings to the capital, and conferred on it the title of the ‘Very Noble City of Manila,’ and attached the dignity of ‘Excellency’ to the *Ayuntamiento* (municipality).

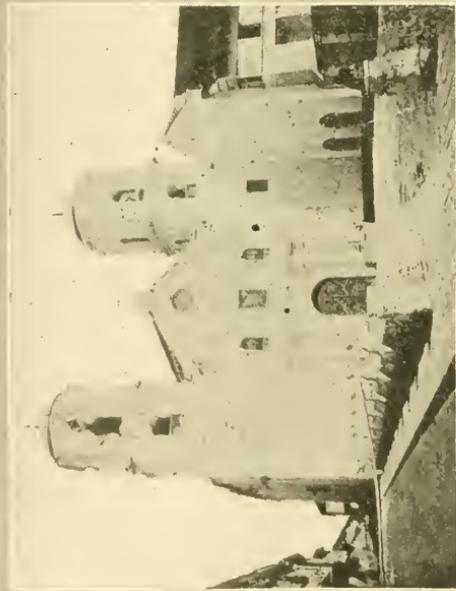
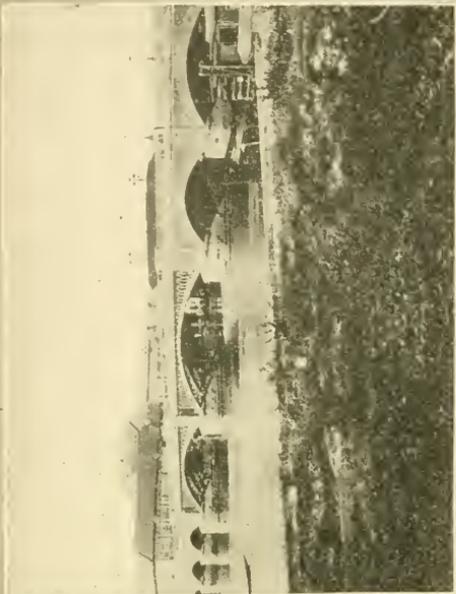
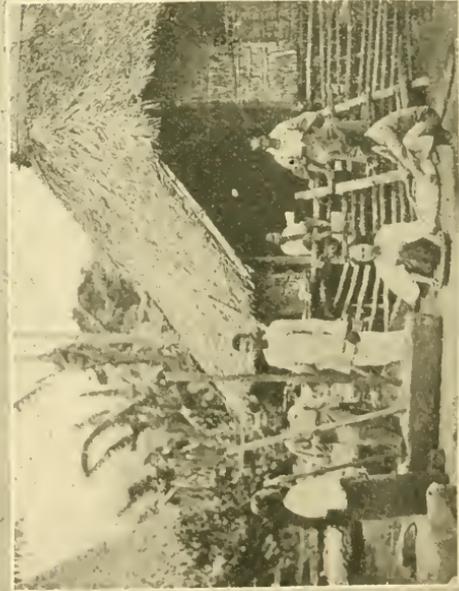
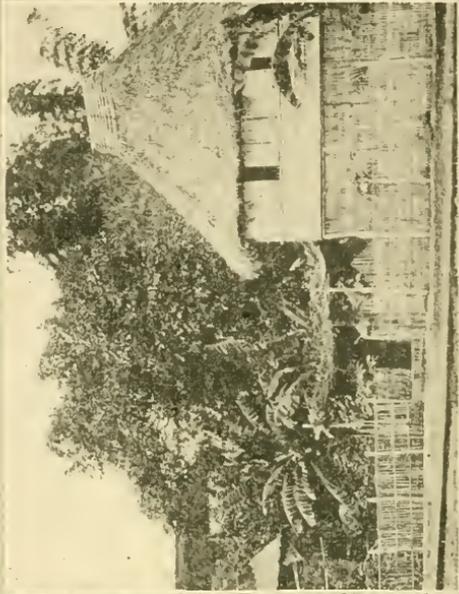
“During my stay at Manila, every afternoon, at five or six o’clock, the Governor-General called for me at my apartments, and escorted by cavalry lancers we were conveyed in a carriage and four to different parts of the neighborhood, the rides lasting from one to two hours. We seldom took the same road, and thus visited, not only all the villages in the vicinity, but passed through much beautiful country, in which the attention was constantly arrested by the groups of graceful bamboos, the tall coconut trees, the large-leafed plantains, the sugar-cane, the papaya, the green paddy-fields, in which many people were fishing—and who knows when the fields are dry what becomes of the fish, for they never fail to appear again when irrigation has taken place—and that wonderful variety and magnificence of tropical vegetation—leaves and flowers so rich and gorgeous, on which one never becomes tired of gazing.”

Charles Wilkes, U. S. N., in his description of the exploring expedition of 1838–42, writes :

“So far as our information and observations went, the whole of the Philippine Islands are of similar geological formation. In some of the islands the volcanic rock prevails, while in others coal and the metalliferous deposits



DEWEY'S SQUADRON AT MANILA.



predominate. On some of them the coal-beds form part of the cliffs along the shore ; on others copper is found in a chlorite and talcose state. The latter is more particularly the case with Luzon, and the same formation extends to Mindoro. Much iron occurs on the mountains. Thus, among the Tagala natives, who are as yet unsubdued by the Spaniards, and who inhabit these mountains, it is found, by them, of so pure a quality that it is manufactured into swords and cleavers. These are occasionally obtained by the Spaniards in their excursions into the interior against these bands.

“The country around Manila is composed of tufa of a light grey color, which, being soft and easily worked, is employed as the common building material in the city. It contains, sometimes, scoria and pumice, in pieces of various sizes, besides occasional impressions of plants, with petrified woods. These are confined to recent species, and include palms, etc.

“This tufa forms one of the remarkable features of the volcanoes of the Philippine Islands, showing a strong contrast between them and those of the Pacific Islands which have ejected little else than lava and scoria.

“Few portions of the globe seem to be so much the seat of internal fires, or to exhibit the effects of volcanic action so strongly as the Philippines. During our visit it was not known that any of the volcanoes were in action ; but many of them were smoking, particularly that in the district of Albay, called Isaroc. Its latest eruption was in the year 1839 ; but this did little damage compared with that of 1814, which covered several villages, and the country for a great distance around, with ashes. This mountain is situated to the southeast of Manila one hundred and fifty miles, and is said to be a perfect cone, with a crater at its apex.

“It does not appear that the islands are much affected by earthquakes, although some have occasionally occurred that have done damage to the churches at Manila.

“The coal, which we have spoken of, is deemed of value; it has a strong resemblance to the bituminous coal of our own country, possesses a bright lustre, and appears very free from all woody texture when fractured. It is found associated with sandstone, which contains many fossils. Lead and copper are reported as being very abundant; gypsum and limestone occur in some districts. From this it will be seen that these islands have everything in the mineral way to constitute them desirable possessions.

“With such mineral resources and a soil capable of producing the most varied vegetation of the tropics, a liberal policy is all that the country lacks. The products of the Philippine Islands consist of sugar, coffee, hemp, indigo, rice, tortoise-shells, hides, ebony, saffron-wood, sulphur, cotton, cordage, silk, pepper, cocoa, wax, and many other articles. In their agricultural operations the people are industrious, although much labor is lost by the use of defective implements. The plough, of very simple construction, has been adopted from the Chinese; it has no coulter, the share is flat, and being turned partly to one side, answers in a certain degree to the purpose of a mould board. This rude implement is sufficient for the rich soils, where the tillage depends chiefly upon the harrow, in constructing which, a thorny species of bamboo is used. The harrow is formed of five or six pieces of this material, on which the thorns are left, firmly fastened together. It answers its purpose well, and is seldom out of order. A wrought-iron harrow, that was introduced by the Jesuits, is used for clearing the ground more effectually, and more particularly for the purpose of extirpating a troublesome grass, that is

known by the name of cogon (a species of *Andropogon*), of which it is very difficult to rid the fields. The bolo, or long-knife, a basket and hoe, complete the list of implements, and answer all the purposes of our spades, etc."

The buffalo is, perhaps, the most useful of Philippine quadrupeds. Immense herds of wild buffaloes are found in the interior, but the tamed animal is employed in the labors of the fields and the transport of commodities, whether on its back or in wagons. Its enjoyment is to be merged in water or mud.

The buffalo was used, until within a few years, exclusively in their agriculture, and they have lately taken to the use of the ox; but horses are never used. The buffalo, from the slowness of his motions and exceeding restlessness under the heat of the climate, is ill adapted to agricultural labor, but the natives are very partial to them, notwithstanding they occasion them much trouble in bathing them during the great heat. This is absolutely necessary, or the animal becomes so fretful as to be unfit for use. If it were not for this, the buffalo would, notwithstanding his slow pace, be a most effective animal in agricultural operations; he requires little food, and that of the coarsest kind; his strength surpasses that of the stoutest ox, and he is admirably adapted for the rice or paddy-fields. They are very docile when used by the natives, and even children can manage them, but it is said they have a great antipathy to the whites, and all strangers. The usual mode of guiding them is by a small cord attached to the cartilage of the nose. The yoke rests on the neck before the shoulders, and is of simple construction. To this is attached whatever it may be necessary to draw, either by traces, shafts, or other fastenings. Frequently this animal may be seen with large bundles of bamboo lashed to it on each side. Buffaloes are to be

met with on the lake, with no more than their noses and eyes out of the water, and are not visible until they are approached within a few feet, when they cause alarm to the passengers by raising their large forms close to the boat. It is said that they resort to the lake to feed on a favorite grass that grows on its bottom in shallow water, and which they dive for. Their flesh is not eaten, except that of the young ones, for it is tough and tasteless. The milk is nutritious, and of a character between that of the goat and cow.

The general appearance of the buffalo is that of a hybrid of the bull and rhinoceros. Its horns do not rise upwards, are very close at the roots, bent backwards, and of a triangular form, with a flat side above. One of the peculiarities of the buffalo is its voice, which is quite low, and in the minor key, resembling that of a young colt. It is as fond of mire as swine, and shows the consequence of recent wallowing, in being crusted over with mud. The skin is visible, being but thinly covered with hair; its color is usually that of a mouse, or occasionally darker.

Rice is the principal agricultural product, the article upon which the inhabitants of the Philippine Islands depend most for food and profit; of this they have several different varieties, which the natives distinguish by their size and the shape of the grain.

Being of far more general production it is estimated to give an average yearly profit of from 12 to 20 per cent.; cocoanuts may be considered at about equal to rice in the yearly benefits they leave, but the conditions are so various that it may be difficult to generalize. It may, however, be asserted, with tolerable certainty, that money, employed with ordinary prudence, in agricultural investments will give an interest of from 20 to 30 per cent.

The consumption of rice is universal, and the superfluity of the harvests is taken to the Chinese markets. The varieties of rice may be classed under the two general heads of water and mountain rice. The aquatic rice is cultivated in Europe and America; the sowing of the dry rice usually precedes that of the water rice, and takes place at the end of May. It is usually sown broadcast on the hills, requires to be hoed and weeded, and is ripened in from three to five months.

There are four species of water-cultivated, and five of mountain-produced rice. Of the first-class, the *lamuyo* is principally cultivated, especially in Batangas. The barbed rice grows in Ilocos. Of the mountain rice, that called *quinanda* is the most esteemed. The cultivation of the water rice begins by the preparation of the seed deposits into which, at the beginning of the rainy season, the seed is thrown, after a thorough impregnation of the ground with water, of which several inches remain on the surface. Ploughing and harrowing produce a mass of humid mud. During the growth of the seed, irrigation is continued, and after six weeks the crops are ready for transplanting to the rice-fields. Men generally pull up the plants and convey them to the fields, where women, up to their knees in mire separate the plants and place them in holes at a regular distance of about five inches from one another. They are left for some days to take root, when the grounds are again irrigated. The rice grows to the height of somewhat more than a yard, and after four months is ready for harvest. It is a common usage to cut every ear separately with an instrument whose Indian name is *yatap*. In some parts a sickle called a *lilit* is used. The *lilit* has a crook by which a number of ears are collected, and, being grasped with the left hand, are cut by the serrated blade of the sickle held

in the right hand. The crops of aquatic rice vary from thirty to eighty fold.

The mountain rice is sown broadcast after ploughing and harrowing, and buffaloes are employed to trample the seed into the ground. More care is sometimes taken, and holes made at regular distances, into which three or four grains of rice are dropped. Careful cultivation and great attention to the removal of weeds will produce hundred-fold crops.

It is said that a third of the rice harvest has been known to perish in consequence of the dilatory and lazy way in which the reaping is conducted.

The sugar cane thrives well here. It is planted after the French fashion, by sticking the piece diagonally into the ground. Some, finding the cane has suffered in times of drought, have adopted other modes. It comes to perfection in a year, and they seldom have two crops from the same piece of land, unless the season is very favorable.

There are several varieties of the sugar-cane. The planting of the sprouts takes place between February and May. Weeds are removed by ploughing, and the plants ripen in ten or twelve months. In some provinces crops are cultivated for three successive years; in others, the soil is allowed to rest an intermediate year, and maize or other produce grown. When cut, the canes are carried to mills by the natives to be crushed. The mills consist of two cylindrical stones with teeth of the *molave* wood; a buffalo turns the wheel and the juice is conveyed to the boilers. The improvements of the West are being slowly introduced, and sundry economical processes have been adopted. Increasing demand, extended cultivation, and, above all, the application of larger capital and greater activity, will, undoubtedly, make the Philippines one of the great producing

countries. A variety of tables have been printed, showing that the average annual profits on coffee cultivation are from 20 to 30 per cent. ; in some provinces considerably more.

The coffee plant is well adapted to these islands. A few plants were introduced into the gardens of Manila, during the end of the 18th Century, since which time it has been spread all over the island, as it is supposed, by the civet-cats, which, after swallowing the seeds, carry them to a distance before they are voided.

The coffee of commerce is obtained from the wild plant, and is of an excellent quality. Upwards of two thousand tons of coffee are now exported, of which one-sixth goes to the United States.

Manila hemp is also a great article of commerce, especially between these Islands and the United States. That which comes to the United States is principally manufactured into rope. A large quantity is also manufactured into mats. The exports of hemp in 1896 valued at \$7,500,000, amounted to over 100,000 tons.

It will be merely necessary to give the prices at which laborers are paid, to show how low the compensation is, in comparison with those in our own country. In the vicinity of Manila, twelve and a half cents per day is the usual wages ; this, in the provinces, falls to nine and even as low as six cents. A man with two buffaloes is paid about thirty cents. The amount of labor performed by the latter, in a day, would be the plowing of a soane, about two-tenths of an acre. The most profitable way of employing laborers is by the task, when, it is said, the natives work well, and are industrious.

The manner in which the sugar and other produce is brought to market at Manila is peculiar, and deserves to be

mentioned. In some of the villages the chief men unite to build a vessel, generally a pirogue, in which they embark their produce, under the conduct of a few persons who go to navigate it and dispose of the cargo. In due time they make their voyage, and when the accounts are settled, the returns are distributed to each according to his share. Festivities are then held, the saints thanked for their kindness, and blessings invoked for another year. After this is over the vessel is taken carefully to pieces and distributed among the owners to be preserved for the next season.

The profits in the crops, according to estimates, vary from sixty to one hundred per cent., but it was thought, as a general average, that this was, notwithstanding the great productiveness of the soil, far beyond the usual profits accruing from agricultural operations. In some provinces this estimate would hold good, and probably be exceeded.

Indigo would probably be a lucrative crop, for that raised here is said to be of a quality equal to the best, and the crop is not subject to so many uncertainties as in India; the capital and attention required in vats, etc., prevent it from being raised in any quantities. Among the productions the bamboo and rattan ought to claim a particular notice, from their great utility; they enter into almost everything. Of the former their houses are built, including frames, floors, sides and roof; fences are made of the same material, as well as every article of household use.

The total export trade of the Philippine Islands during 1896 was over \$21,000,000, while the imports amounted to a little over \$11,000,000.

The occupation of the Philippine Islands and the capture of Manila by our Asiatic Squadron calls to mind a coincidence in the history of these Islands. They were visited by the English almost in the same way, and with the same

result as in our case during the war with Spain. The account of the seige of Manila by the English which is here given, will be found very interesting. It has been taken from the historical writing of an eye-witness, Martinez De Zuniga.

“The courts of England and Spain had declared war in the month of November, 1761, but nothing of this was known at Manila, although there were reasons for our being, in some degree, on our guard. A priest, who held a correspondence with the English on the coast, received information of an expedition which was preparing there. On the 14th of September, 1762, an English vessel appeared in the bay, which would not admit our officers on board, and having made soundings all over the bay, sailed again by the point of Mariveles.

“The Mahicas Indians informed us they had seen a large ship of two tiers of guns, and manned with white men, the captain of which had put many questions to them respecting the ships which traded to New Spain. It afterwards appeared that an English fleet had sailed from Madras the beginning of August for the express purpose of taking Manila.

“On the 22d of September, at half past five in the afternoon, a fleet was discovered consisting of thirteen sail, and notwithstanding that he was taken by surprise, the governor immediately adopted every needful measure of defence, and sent reinforcements to Cavite. On the morning of the following day two English officers landed, and brought the message of Admiral Cornish, who commanded the squadron, and Brigadier General Draper, who commanded the troops, stating that they had orders from the King of Great Britain to take possession of these islands, and they demanded an immediate surrender, for if any resistance

were made, having a force sufficiently formidable to attain the object in view, they should commence hostilities as soon as they received an unfavorable reply. The governor answered, that the proposition they had made could not be accepted by subjects faithful to their allegiance, and that they were ready to lose their lives in the defence of the honor of their sovereign. The squadron, in consequence, approached near the south front of the powder manufactory, and about six in the afternoon they took possession of that redoubt, in which our people had left some saltpetre, and other effects, having only had time to remove the powder. Supported by the fire of the squadron, they took possession successively of the churches of Malate, La Hermita, San Juan de Bagunbayan, and Santiago, and of all the houses in those suburbs of Manila.

“The whole force in Manila consisted of the King’s regiment, which was so reduced by death and desertion, and by different detachments in the galleons and garrisons, that they could scarcely muster five hundred and fifty men, of which the artillery consisted of eighty, most of them Indians, very little accustomed to the use of great guns.

“On the morning of the 27th, at eight o’clock, some Indians and Mestizos, without having any orders to that effect, presented themselves before the advanced guard of the English camp, fell upon them, and drove them from their posts, but a reinforcement of three hundred men arriving, the advantage was lost and the Indians repulsed, to whom a signal was made to leave the field open, in order that the artillery might play upon the enemy.

“The bombardment now continued with vigor. The enemy had, in the commencement of the siege, placed three mortars behind the church of Santiago, to which they added another battery of three more mortars, which threw the

whole city into consternation. On the 29th, they fired against the houses of the governor and admiral, but without effect; the shots which were fired horizontally, reaching only to the beach, and those which they threw by elevation passing over the fort to the other side.

“On the second of October, at day-break, a battery of eight twenty-four pounders opened against the angle of the foundry bulwark, and by ten in the morning the whole of the parapet was a ruin. The enemy, at the same time, directed their shells against that battery from nine mortars of various calibres, assisted by the fire of two ships in front; and so hot was the fire that we picked up four thousand balls of twenty-four pounds. But what incommoded the place most was the fusileers, who could see, from the tower and church of Santiago all that passed in the city, and they could fire as they pleased against its defenders. Notwithstanding such a heavy fire directed against a bulwark without a parapet, only seven men were killed and about twenty wounded. Our people endeavored to get possession of the church of Santiago, and the artillery, but could not succeed. The ships discontinued their fire about sunset, but the fire from the camp continued all night, and dismounted the artillery of our bastion, so that it became necessary to abandon it; the same night, or rather in the morning of the 3d, it was resolved that a sortie should be made from the fort. About five thousand Indians had arrived from the provinces, of which two thousand Pampangos were selected for the undertaking; they were divided into three columns to advance by different routes: the first, under command of Don Francisco Rodriguez, was to attack the church of Santiago; the second, commanded by Don Santiago Orendain, was ordered to throw itself upon Malate and Hermita; the third, was to attack the troops on the beach, and was

commanded by Eslava y Bastos; the whole to be supported by two piquets of fusileers. The Indians were no sooner on the outside of the fort than they began a loud outcry, which prepared the enemy for their reception; and when the column, commanded by Rodriguez, arrived near the English camp, the Indians hesitated to advance; but being urged on by the famous Manalastas, their chief, they proceeded and finding the church of Santiago abandoned, they ascended the tower and began to ring the bells; but the peals were of very short duration, for the English fell upon them and scarcely allowed them time to retreat.

“The other column, which was ordered to advance on Hermita, marched with the utmost silence until Orendain gave them orders to attack, when they began with their accustomed howlings and beating of their drums, and thus threw the English camp into complete disorder. The English general put his troops under arms and commenced a fire on the Pampangos, who were speedily put to flight, and their confusion was so great that every shot told. Two hundred were left dead on the field, and Orendain, clapping spurs to his horse, was very soon out of all personal danger. From this time forward he was considered as a traitor, and after Manila was delivered up to the English, many were even more inclined to believe this, as he was much seen with the English, although nothing was actually proven against him. The third column was more fortunate, as, without having done or received any damage they returned with more honor than the rest. This action, however, so intimidated the Indians that they almost all retreated to their towns. The fire from the battery did not cease during all this time, and demolished the whole face and platform of the works of the foundry, whose ruins filled up the fosse; but what caused the greatest uneasiness was a battery which the

enemy had constructed, and which, at twelve o'clock at noon, was opened against the works of San Andres and San Eugenio, and so hot was the fire, that in two hours, the guns were dismounted from their carriages, the parapets thrown down and several fusileers and workmen killed, and though new parapets were twice replaced with timber and bags of sand, they were immediately demolished. The Governor held a council of war that same evening, at which were present the staff officers, the Royal Audience, the deputies of the city and the prelates. The military men gave their opinion for a capitulation, the rest were for obstinately continuing the defence, availing themselves of the usual methods of repairing the works. Orders were accordingly given to this effect, but they could not be put in execution, as the few Indians, who remained, would not undertake such dangerous work, and the Spaniards could not support the fatigue.

“On the morning of the 4th, the enemy began to throw carcasses into the fort; they set fire to some buildings, and the soldiers and inhabitants of Manila were in the greatest consternation. At one o'clock in the afternoon of this day, the English troops presented themselves before the lines, showing a very extensive front. The grenadiers were somewhat advanced and in position to make the assault. The town was thrown into complete confusion, and many inhabitants, with the clergy, seeing that no capitulation was in agitation, determined to quit the city, which they could easily do, as the guard of the Parian gate was composed of the townspeople of Manila. The English maintained their threatening position for some time, and retiring without making any further attempt, the inhabitants resumed their tranquillity, and thought no more of capitulation. On the night of the 4th, the fire of the enemy's

artillery was resumed with terrible effect and continued until two o'clock in the morning when it ceased. From the commencement of the siege they had thrown more than twenty thousand balls, five thousand shells, and twenty-five carcasses. In the city they ruined a great many buildings, and set it on fire in five different places. We cannot account for this otherwise than that the English, to give more splendor and value to their conquest, resolved on such an enormous expenditure of powder and ball, for much less would have sufficed to take a place which was only in a state to defend itself against Asiatic nations, and not against Europeans.

“General Draper advanced through the Calle Real as far as the palace, with considerable risk, for in Fort Santiago there was a field piece which commanded the whole street, and being loaded with canister shot might have swept down immense numbers; but the Archbishop, who had retired to this fort with the Oidores, would not allow them to fire it, apprehending that the English would afterwards revenge themselves on the inhabitants of Manila. Colonel Monson, despatched by Draper, presented himself at the fort, intimating, on the part of his general, that the surrender of the place was expected. The Archbishop presented him a paper containing the terms of capitulation which he proposed, and requested him to be the bearer of them to his commanding officer for his approbation. The Colonel declined so doing, having no orders to that effect, and threatened that hostilities should proceed if he did not immediately surrender. The Archbishop, seeing no other remedy, and taking the word of honor of the Colonel for his personal safety, resolved to leave the fort, accompanied by the colonel of the Spanish troops, to present himself to the English general, who was by this time in the

palace. On his arrival there, he was about to kneel, but General Draper would not permit him. He then delivered himself up as a prisoner, and presented the paper, which contained the terms of capitulation, and which chiefly consisted in the free exercise of our religion, the security of private property, a free trade to all the inhabitants of the islands, and the continuation of the powers of the Royal Audience to keep order among the ill-disposed.

“The English general retired to consult on these points, and very shortly returned with an answer accordingly, to all of them, with certain restrictions and additions, which were suggested on the part of his Britannic Majesty, and the capitulation, thus arranged, was signed by General Draper and his Excellency, the Archbishop. The colonel took it to the fort in order to have it countersigned by the Oidores, which, being done, they immediately delivered up the fort to the English, and retired to the palace to pay their respects to the conqueror.

“The principal feature in the capitulation was the surrender of the whole of these islands to the English, an article in it which the Archbishop and Oidores were compelled, by circumstances, to accede to, though reluctantly; but this was not so easily accomplished, as Senor Anda was charged with the defense of them, and he was not disposed to submit without an appeal to arms. General Draper, being informed of this, thought himself justified in availing himself of stratagem. He issued a proclamation in which he commiserated the fate of the Indians on account of the tribute which they paid to the Spaniards, giving the assurance that the king of Great Britain would not exact it of them, and thus endeavoring to excite them to open rebellion. He then persuaded the Archbishop that he was the proper governor, and as such

got him to despatch an escort, to induce the Spanish families, who had taken refuge in the provinces, to return to Manila, and to appoint an Englishman as Corregidor of Tondo, who had been some time married and established in Manila. General Draper treated the religious orders with much respect, and granted permission to the monks to return to their convents, in order to draw over to his interest this body, which, from what the Franciscans had done, he judged must have great influence in the interior of the country. He ordered the Archbishop to assemble a congress of the principal people of the city, and to propose to them the cession of all these islands to his Britannic Majesty, but Senor Viana, the royal fiscal, opposed it most strenuously. The day following, however, in consequence of threats held out by the English, the Spaniards had the weakness to sign this cession. Monsieur Fallar, who had been suspected of treason, conducted himself more honorably, as he would, on no account, accept the government of Zamboanga, where the English commander wished to send him with a sufficiency of troops to take possession, in case they were unwilling to receive him, and a similar conduct was observed by a poor, but honorable Spaniard, named Don Louis Sandobal.

“On the day before the capture of Manila, Senor Anda quitted the city, with the title of visitor and lieutenant-governor, in order to maintain the islands in obedience to the King of Spain. He arrived at Bulacan with forty orders under the royal seal, which were the only supply of arms and money with which he was furnished, as the treasure had been sent to Lake Bay. As soon as it was known in Bulacan that the English were in possession of Manila, he summoned a meeting at which were present Father Hernandez, who filled the office of provincial of St. Augustins,



PHILIPPINOS IN EUROPEAN COSTUME



BELLES OF MANILA

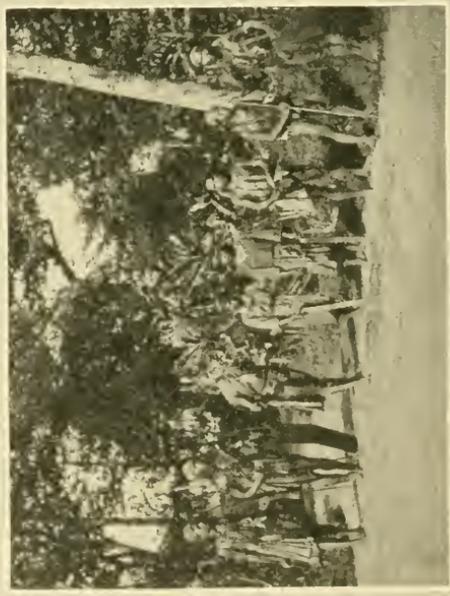
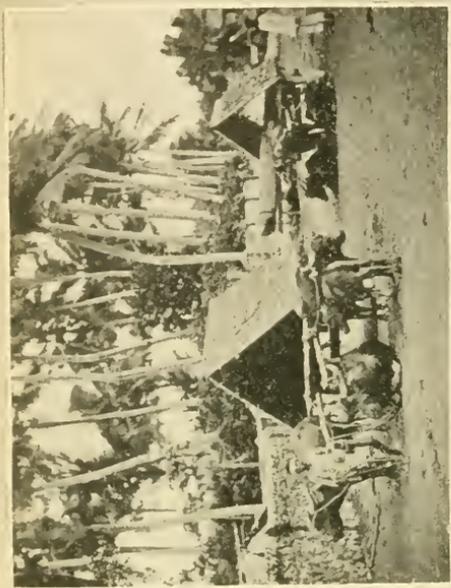


CHIEFS OF MINDANAO.



PHILIPPINOS IN NATIVE COSTUME





THE FILIPINOS.—IN OUR EAST INDIA POSSESSIONS.

the chief magistrates of the province, and other Spaniards and Augustine friars, and laying before them the resolutions of the royal audience and the authority with which he was furnished by the governor to defend the islands, he at the same time adverted to the insufficiency of their force to make resistance to the English. They highly praised the measures of the royal audience, and the governor of Manila, and promised to spill the last drop of their blood rather than forsake him. The monks offered to raise troops in the towns for the service and conduct them to the field. He gave them thanks for their loyalty, and thinking that the title of visitor appeared of too little importance for the undertaking he was upon, he declared himself under the necessity of having recourse to certain old-established regulations, which ordain that the royal audience may be preserved in the person of one Oidor, and in case of a vacancy in the government seat, that the royal audience may take the government and the oldest Oidor, command the military, unless any other arrangement should be made by his Majesty. And on this occasion, the Oidores and Governor, being prisoners of war and dead in the eyes of the law, all these offices fell of necessity on him. He, accordingly, got himself acknowledged as governor of the islands, in which capacity, joined to the office of royal audience, he circulated his orders to the different alcaldes and ecclesiastical superintendents of missions; no one, in the smallest degree, questioning his authority.

“The English, perceiving that decrees were of very little service, and that it was necessary to have recourse to force, determined to take possession of a position on the Pasig in order to open a passage for provisions from the Lake Bay, and Thomas Backhouse, whom the Spaniards called Becus, for that purpose, filed off with five hundred men to

the left of the river. He arrived in front of Maybonga, where the famous Bustos was stationed with his Cagayans, ready to defend the passage of the river. He fired upon the first English party that advanced, but as soon as they returned it he retired to Maraquina with his people. The enemy passed the river without hesitation, and sent an officer with a white flag to summon the Indians to surrender. The boasting little Governor answered that the Pasig was not Manila, and if the Spaniards had given that up to them in a treacherous manner, he would defend his post to the last; adding, that should the officer return with the white flag (a trick he might deceive children with), he would hang him on the first tree. This reply being reported to Backhouse, he immediately ordered the troops to march, and the two field-pieces he had with him beginning to play, the Indians became alarmed to such a degree that they fled precipitately. Such, indeed, was their hurry and confusion at the bridge near the convent, that numbers of them were drowned.

“The English got possession of the convent without resistance, and pursued the Indians as if they had been a flock of goats as far as the river Bamban, which they swam over, at least all who had the good fortune to escape the enemy’s bullets. The King of Jolo, attempting to defend a place occupied by his family, was obliged to surrender. The English fortified the post, and maintained it themselves until peace was declared between England and Spain.”

The Sulu Archipelago, which, in recent years, was declared officially as a part of the Philippine Group, was, prior to 1877, claimed by both England and Germany, and by a treaty signed in 1877, between England, Germany, and Spain, the two claimants, in consideration of the acknowledgment of Spain’s sovereignty over the Sulus, received certain

and special trading and fisheries privileges, which practically placed them on a par with Spain.

The extent of the Sulu Archipelago is defined in a protocol signed at Madrid, March 7, 1885, by representatives of Great Britain, Germany, and Spain, as including all of the Islands lying between the western extremity of the Island of Mindanao, on the one side, and the Islands of Borneo and Aragua, on the other; excluding all parts of Borneo and the islands within a zone of three maritime leagues of the coast.

These Islands were ceded to the United States at the Paris Peace Conference as a part of the Philippine Archipelago, making the total area of the Asiatic possessions of the United States 115,276 square miles.

CHAPTER XXXV.

THE REMAINING SPANISH POSSESSIONS.

The Canary Islands—Area and Inhabitants—Ancient Traditions and Histories—The Soil and Climate—The Productions and the Beauty of the Scenery—A Retreat for Invalids and Paradise of Artists—Water is Precious—Love-making and Fleas—Fernando Po, a Spanish Penal Colony—The Islands off the Coast of the French Congo—Other Islands on the West Coast of Africa and the Gold River Territory—The Presidios in Morocco and the Mediterranean Islands—The Islands of the Thieves or the Ladrones and the Caroline Islands, in Micronesia—The Island of Guam now a Colony of the United States—And the Pelew Islands, where the United States may Establish a Coaling Station.

The Canary Islands lie in the North Atlantic Ocean. The following are the seven principal islands: Teneriffe, Grand Canary, Palma, Lanzarote, Fuerteventura, Gomera, Hierro. Their area in English square miles is about 2,980, and their population about 320,000.

There is ground for supposing that the Phœnicians were not ignorant of the Canaries. The Romans, in the time of Augustus, received intelligence of them through Juba, king of Mauritania, whose account has been transmitted to us by the elder Pliny. He mentions "Canaria, so called from the multitude of dogs of great size," and "Nivaria, taking its name from perpetual snow, and covered with clouds," doubtless Teneriffe. Canaria was said to abound in palms and pine trees. Both Plutarch and Ptolemy speak of the Fortune Islands, but their description is so imperfect that it is not clear whether the Madeiras or the Canaries are referred to. There is no further mention of them until we read of their re-discovery about 1334, by a French vessel driven amongst them by a storm. A Spanish nobleman

thereupon obtained a grant of them with the title of king, from Clement VI., but want of means prevented him from carrying out his project of conquest. Two expeditions subsequently set out from Spanish ports, and returned without having taken possession. At length three vessels, equipped by Jean de Bethencourt, a gentleman of Normandy, sailed from Rochelle in 1400, and bent their course to the Canaries. He landed at Lanzarote and Fuerteventura, but being opposed by the natives, and finding himself deficient in means to effect his purpose, he repaired to the court of Castile, and obtained from Henry III. a grant of the islands, with the title of king. He sailed in 1404 with a strong force, which mastered Lanzarote, Fuerteventura, Gomera and Hierro without bloodshed. Being repulsed in his attempts on Palma and Canary, he returned to Europe in 1408 to obtain further assistance. He was well received at the Castilian court, where he was promised aid; but he died shortly afterwards in France. Bethencourt's nephew had been left governor of the islands, and claimed to succeed his uncle's rights. Being charged with many acts of misgovernment, he went to Spain to clear himself, and whilst there sold his rights to Don Enrique de Guzman, who, after expending large sums in fruitless endeavors to reduce the unconquered islands, sold them to another Spaniard named Paraza. His successor, about 1441, took nominal possession of Canary and Teneriffe, but the natives effectually resisted their occupation of them. Meantime it appeared that Jean de Bethencourt's nephew had fraudulently made a second sale of the islands to Portugal, and the difference thus arising between the crowns of Spain and Portugal was ended by the cession of the islands to the former. Grand Canary, Teneriffe, and Palma remaining unsubdued in 1476, Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain com-

pelled Paraza's successors to sell those islands to the crown; and the following year one thousand men were despatched to reduce them. After much bloodshed, and with reinforcements from the mother country, the Spaniards, under Pedro de Vera, became masters of Grand Canary in 1483. Palma was conquered in 1491, and Teneriffe in 1495, by Alonzo de Lugo. All the islands still continue in the possession of Spain.

Santa Cruz de Santiago, on the south coast, is the residence of the governor-general of the Canaries, the civil lieutenant-governor of the Teneriffe district, and the military governor of the island. It is a well-built and tolerably clean town of 10,830 inhabitants, lying on a small plain bounded by bare and rugged volcanic rocks, amongst which lie narrow valleys called barrancas.

The Rev. Thomas Debary, M. A., in "Notes of a Residence in the Canary Islands," 1851, gives a pleasing combination of ancient and modern history, as follows :

"The generic name of the ancient inhabitants of these islands was Guanchees. They appear to have been a particularly hardy and high-minded race. Whence they came, there have been various conjectures, and a difference of opinion wholly, as it seems to me, uncalled for. From Teneriffe the island of Canary is seen very plainly; and on a clear day Fuerteventura is seen from Canary; and from Fuerteventura the coast of Africa is visible; it seems, therefore, next to impossible that these islands should not have been visited and peopled by the Libyans; besides which, many of the customs recorded of the ancient inhabitants are similar to those found in various parts of Africa. In proportion as countries are little advanced in civilization, it is easy to trace their origin or connection with one another. It would not be impossible to show a sort of fellowship

existing between the various races and tribes of Africa, vast as that continent is.

“The dry and sandy character of the soil has afforded facilities for a custom that seems to have prevailed in every part of Africa—namely, that of living in caves. The Africans, from Ethiopia to Libya, were, and still are, to some extent, troglodites, or livers in holes, and the ancient inhabitants of these islands depended almost entirely upon the rocks for their habitation. The custom of shaving the head is very prevalent throughout Africa, which, under certain circumstances, the Guanches did. The disposition to embalm or make mummies of the dead is another African custom; and the ancient inhabitants of these islands rolled their dead in goat skins. The preparation of *goffo* or *goffu*, which was their main support, and is still eaten by the poor people of the island of Teneriffe, is similar to the *cuscusu* eaten in Barbary and on the shores of the Gambia. All these arguments, for the fact, would scarcely be necessary, but that some have asserted the aborigines to be Americans, from the shape of the skull; indeed, I have seen a statement that the lost tribes of Israel found their way here—thus, as they so often have been, being pressed into the service of a despairing antiquarian.

“The sentiments of the aborigines were of an heroic character; they had orders of nobility as well as kings amongst them, and any ill treatment of women and children was enough to exclude them from the rank of nobility; they are said not to have been much given to navigation, so that it is difficult to understand how they got from one island to another.

“Proceeding in our route to Orotava, for a long way, we passed through fields of maize, flax and lupin, which latter is sown here in great abundance for manure. My mind

was prepared to admire the beauties of Teneriffe; accordingly, as we journeyed on, I allowed myself to fall into raptures at the beauty of those tints that the mountains and all above the peak assumed under the influence of the setting sun. Clear outlines and bright colors are not what an artistic eye generally delights in; yet the artist who would represent tropical landscapes must be prepared for these. The peak, which appeared to us a minute ago entirely white, now exhibited every hue of purple, from pink to indigo; and no sooner had the sun vanished than the stars came out with a degree of brilliancy I had never seen before.

“I was quite taken aback by the prospect, as I beheld the peak quite clear from the extreme summit to its ocean-washed base. It is not, in outline, by any means a picturesque mountain. The upper part is of the ogee shape; yet it is an object calculated to fill the mind with wonder and amazement. It certainly looks like one of the landmarks of the creation, and must have filled the Carthaginian navigators with great surprise when they saw it, as it is probable they did, in all the glories of an active volcano.

“We now entered what may be described as the palm district of Teneriffe. Many of the trees were very much disfigured, being tied up that the inner leaves might whiten for Palm Sunday, being then used to adorn the churches; but on looking up the barrancas, or deep valleys, we saw forests of them; and the kind of shock, which a strange vegetation, when first seen, gives the mind, began to yield to admiration. After passing a defile where the rays of the sun called for umbrellas as much almost as a hailstorm in England, we emerged upon that, which is doubtless the grandest and finest feature in the island of Teneriffe—the Valley of Orotava. The sloping plain, which is circum-

scribed by the mountains and the sea, is literally like a bed in a green-house; the soil is excellent, and produces everything; however, for the most part the vine covers it like a net. In the middle of the plain stands the Villa of Orotava, surrounded as it is by such remarkable natural objects. Many of the buildings are built in a stately style, evidently the creation of the best days of Spanish history. Three or four miles from La Villa is the port, or as it is called, Port-Orotava; and the country intervening is dotted with quintas and various kinds of detached residences. In the garden of one of the palaces at Orotava stands the celebrated dragon tree, the largest, I believe, and oldest tree in the world. Five hundred years ago it was seen by the first invaders of the island, and was then venerated by the natives for its great size and antiquity; a great part of it now has become a species of touch-wood, and it has pretty well lost its characteristic features, and must have undergone some diminution since it was last figured.

“Teneriffe is an extinct volcano, and if I may compare it with an active one, I should say it presented many features similar to those of Vesuvius. I should have judged that where we were sitting was once in a state of active eruption, and that then there was no peak as we now saw it; but that, after this had subsided, another eruption broke out in the middle of the bed, and continued in a state of activity for many, many years, and the present mountain was, as it were, gradually accumulated—just as now, in the middle of the black crater of Vesuvius, rises a small cone, from the apex of which vapor and scoriæ are perpetually being ejected, and dropping down, continually increase the heap of the cone.

“The character of the scenery on this side of the peak, as you descend, is very different from the other. Here we

found, in a very unmistakable manner, the ravaging effects of some former eruption, and everything about us much wilder than on the side of Orotava. The descent is, in reality, over vast steps of black lava, such as Herculaneum lies buried under. The first indications of real vegetation we came to was a wood of fir trees. Some distance below, and after passing over a wild region, we entered a wood of what in England would be called exotics; gigantic arbuta, and heath-like plants waved over our heads, having an appearance very different from anything I have ever seen before. On leaving the wood we looked down upon rich and cultivated fields.

“The town of Las Palmas has a population of about 10,000; it is built on either side of a ravine, which divides it, in the bottom of which flows a narrow stream, spanned by rather an elegant bridge, built by a former bishop of the place. On looking up the ravine from the bridge, you see many palm trees, and the whole prospect is crowned by the pale blue Pexos ridge of mountains, which are 6,500 feet high. The valley itself is exceedingly fertile, and is so well irrigated that it produces two crops of Indian corn in the year, besides a crop of potatoes.

“Canary is the richest of the seven islands in water, an element only properly valued in such places as these; every drop of which, come how it may, from the mountains or from the sky, is collected into tanks and reservoirs; and where several families have a claim upon it, it is doled out with jealous impartiality; it is by witnessing the immediate importance of water in a naturally arid country that the full tyranny of that Persian monarch can be appreciated, who, shutting up the gorges of the mountains which surrounded the plain where the river Acis took its rise, blessed or cursed the different provinces of his kingdom, as they fur-

nished him with tribute. He who should possess the keys of such a reservoir would be all-powerful; for upon it depends everything."

Mrs. Elizabeth Murray, in "Sixteen Years of an Artist's Life in Morocco, Spain, and the Canary Islands" (1859), gives this instructive and charming picture of the Canaries:

"In the years 1812 and 1815, Port Orotava may be said to have been at the height of its commercial activity. The wines of the island were in high favor, and between the two years last mentioned, from eight to twelve thousand pipes were annually shipped from it to Great Britain and America, the East and West Indies, and other places. Orchilla weed and other articles of Island produce, were exported in considerable quantities. The value of the imports from the various countries that traded with the Canary Islands was also very considerable.

"The declaration of peace in Europe, in 1815, gave a severe blow to the trade of Teneriffe, from which it can hardly be said to have ever recovered. After that period the wine-trade gradually fell to a very low figure, and with the appearance of a fatal disease in the vines, which had been experienced for four successive years, the average annual production fell from twenty-four or twenty-five thousand to barely a twentieth part of that quantity. Besides, in more recent times, Santa Cruz became a serious rival to Orotava; various large mercantile establishments, doing a considerable amount of business, having been established, one after another, in the capital. The few remaining merchants in Orotava soon lost all their former commercial spirit, and one mercantile disaster was followed by another, until El Puerto sank almost to its former insignificance, and the era of its activity was brought to an end.

"The peasantry are extremely ignorant of the most ele-

mentary branches of knowledge, the instances in which they are able to read and write being very rare. If necessity were not the mother of invention, this would be rather awkward in their love-communings, which would, of necessity, be confined to personal interviews, which are not always convenient. In their ignorance, therefore of one of the three important R's, indeed all of them, they have invented a kind of flower language, by which they can express most eloquently every secret thought and every tender feeling, the utterances of these beautiful symbols being perfectly comprehended by the one to whom they are addressed. Specific feelings are ascribed to different flowers, to their various arrangements, to leaves, to buds and blossoms; a complete alphabet and vocabulary of love being thus made up, which must be, at least, a more romantic method of communicating the feelings of the heart than our direct and matter-of-fact way.

“On the “ferias” and other merry meetings of a similar nature, of which there are very many, the lover has excellent opportunities, of which he generally takes care to avail himself, of presenting his ‘moza’ with a sprig of thyme, to the Spanish name of which, ‘tomillo,’ a certain meaning is made to jingle in rhyme in the established phrase, ‘a tus pies me humillo,’ the simple interpretation of which is, ‘I humble myself at your feet.’ If a piece of rosemary, called by the people ‘romero,’ is returned, it is taken as an unfavorable answer to the poor lover’s suit, for ‘romero,’ rhyming with ‘mojadero,’ means in plain language, ‘You are a bore, sir.’ But if a flower with a more compassionate meaning is returned, the suit is considered to have made a good commencement, and the gratified lover seeks such opportunities as he can find of holding light chat with the fair one at her window as he

passes to and fro from his daily labor. The conversation, it must be confessed, is not quite of such a nature as one would imagine likely to be indulged in by the victims of the tender passion. If one were to listen to a dialogue between two young persons in such a Romeo and Juliet-like position, he would be astonished to hear that the deepest sighs of an ardent passion were breathed forth as the accompaniment to questions about the price of potatoes, the appearance of the crops, the labor of the farm, the work of the household, and indeed, anything but the great, the all-important subject that brings them together. That, in fact, which is nearest their hearts is never once alluded to. It must not be supposed, however, that this domestic and agricultural conversation serves no good purpose. By such interviews, repeated as often as possible, the love-smitten Lothario is enabled to form a very adequate judgment of the domestic capacities of the lady, and of her fitness to be a useful helpmate to him in the daily business of life, for they know there is little or no honeymoon of listless indolence for them. Having satisfied himself as to her qualifications, and, after all the reflection that so important a step demands, having made up his own mind, he goes, one evening, to their accustomed interview with a green sprig or flower, which, during the conversation, he fixes in some chink of the window, in full view of his inamorata, to whom it conveys an important question. This operation is much facilitated by the circumstance that all the houses of the peasantry consist only of a ground floor. The lady is allowed time for consideration and takes the night to consider what reply she shall make to the proposal.

“The next morning, the anxious lover, who has doubtless passed a sleepless night, at least we may imagine so, proceeds to learn his fate, eagerly fixing his eye upon the

window as he approaches. If the symbol of his affection has been taken in, great is his joy, for he knows that he is an accepted lover, and that matters may now proceed *en regle* to their legitimate issue. If, on the contrary, the symbol of his affection has been disregarded, and allowed to wither on the outside, it is understood as an unequivocal announcement that his suit is not acceptable, and that he may carry his love to some other market. If the lady jilts her suitor, she is said, in a style of similar imagery, "to have given him pumpkins," *Da le calabazas*, a phrase not uncommon even among the higher and more educated classes.

"The fleas of Laguna are said to be so famous for their size, strength and activity, that they are regarded with universal interest, and incidents relating to them are introduced even into the love-songs of the country, accompanied, in lieu of castanets, with expressive snappings of the fingers. Such a verse, for instance, as the following, is popular among the lower classes, and is intended to give a zest to the monotony of love-making :

"Last night I passed your window,
And saw you catching fleas,
Surely, you might have said to me,
'Come and catch some, if you please.'"

"But our poor matter-of-fact 'Uncle Sam' will have none of those literary associations to comfort him should he take it upon himself to act as guardian to this group of beautiful islands.

"The laboring classes of the population enjoy but a limited variety of amusements. Of athletic sports the men practice none but those of pitching the crowbar and wrestling, exercises for which they are very famous. Although their manner of conducting these sports might surprise and

puzzle a Cornishman, he would probably find them tough customers to deal with. There is great rivalry, in these trials of strength and skill, between the several islands, as well as between the several districts, and a festival rarely takes place without a good-natured contest between the different parties."

"Cock-fighting is another amusement in which the inhabitants of the Canary Islands are fond of indulging, and in which large sums of money are frequently won and lost. To gambling of all kinds they are passionately addicted. Wherever half a score of them are congregated, a greasy pack of cards is sure to be produced by some one of the company, and the game of *monté*, which is the most popular here, is played by all with the greatest animation.

"All the amusements of the people are carried on in the most orderly, decorous, and cordial spirit, without quarrels or disturbance. This favorable feature in their character is, no doubt, owing chiefly to their abstemious and sober habits, for it is a most unusual thing to witness a single instance of intoxication among them. They have one peculiar custom, however, to which women, as well as men, are addicted, but it never leads to the slightest extra-indulgence in the pernicious habit of dram-drinking. Every one takes a small glass of the country brandy the first thing in the morning, 'para espantar el diablo,' to frighten away the devil, alleging, as an excuse for this moderate indulgence, the bad effects which the morning cold and the rarefied mountain air at or before daydawn would produce on their stomachs unfortified by such a preservative. Their toil generally commences at this early period of the day, and for the remainder of the twenty-four hours they rarely touch anything else but water. Every country, however, has its peculiar vices; and if, in this almost tropical climate, intoxi-

cation is not one of them, there is a laxity in their morals and a carelessness in their conduct, that will bear anything but a favorable comparison even with those other fair lands that are most famed for vices of this kind.

“The African custom of embalming the dead was universally practiced among the Guanchees. A tribe of priests was maintained for the sacred office of cleansing the body. After repeated washings with salt and water, which was also the habits of the Egyptians, they anointed it with aromatic herbs and butter made from goats’ milk. The body was opened with sharp stones made of opsidian, called ‘tabonas,’ analogous to the Ethiopian stone employed to open bodies at the side—an incision which has also been remarked in the sides of some Guanchee mummies. They were then left to dry in the sun, and afterwards rubbed with herbs, powder of wood, pumice-stone and other absorbent substances. This preparation lasted a fortnight, which time the relations of the deceased celebrated with great pomp, singing the praises of the defunct, and giving themselves up to grief. When the body was very dry, and as light as charcoal, it was wrapped in several goatskins, either tanned or raw, and impressed with a distinguishing mark. The kings and principal dignitaries were enveloped in finer skins, and, being put into a ‘Sabino,’ or coffin of pine-wood, were carried to the most inaccessible caverns, where they were placed vertically against the walls, or in great order upon shelves.

“Some of the native Grand Canarian laws and customs were barbarous in the extreme. Though the island contained so disproportionately large a population as fourteen thousand souls, it was very imperfectly cultivated, and its productions not sufficient for the wants of its numerous population. As the number of births, notwithstanding,



A SPANISH SPY IN CAMP.

greatly exceeded that of deaths, the inhabitants were kept in a constant dread of famine through the failure of any of their crops. They had no means of supplying their wants from any other source, for their knowledge of any kind of navigation was so small that not even the rudest kind of canoe or raft was ever known in any of the islands. It was this dread of famine that led them to establish the inhuman law that all but the first-born child of every woman should be destroyed at the moment of its birth. The feelings of natural affection, however, ere long triumphed over so barbarous an enactment, and it was abolished before the time of the Spanish conquest.

“ Their women, as in Teneriffe, enjoyed the legal privilege of having three husbands, each of whom acted in his turn as lord and master for one month, the other two being in the condition of servants during that time. Many, however, preferred to have only one partner through life, in which case the bride, as in Morocco, was required to remain as quiet as possible in a cavern, in a reclining posture, for a period of thirty days, eating abundantly of *gofio*. At the expiration of that period she was expected to have attained the degree of *emboupoint* that fitted her for the marriage state. The marriage could not take place until the lady was declared to be in a fit condition by the *Faycan*, or High Priest, or by the temporal chief, one of which individuals not only gave away the bride, but likewise claimed the same sort of tribute that was once exacted in many of the French and other continental *seigneurages*.

“ The Canarians were remarkable for their good government, and for their strict administration of justice. When a man committed a crime which they deemed worthy of death, he was at once apprehended and committed to prison. He was then tried, and, if found guilty, led to the

place of execution, which was also the scene of their feasts, wrestling-matches, and duels. The delinquent being stretched on the ground, and his head placed on a large stone, the executioner, who was a man set apart for the office, taking up another heavy stone, and lifting it as high as he could, suddenly let it fall upon the culprit's head. For crimes that were not considered worthy of death, they proceeded on the principle of *Lex Talionis*—an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth.

“The people of Canary had several public festivals, as, for example, at the period of gathering in their crops of barley, which may be considered their harvest home. Most public events, such as the accession of a new local chief, were celebrated with great rejoicing. During the periods of their festivals, all internal wars were suspended, the belligerents on both sides fraternizing as long as the ceremonies lasted, and at the termination renewing the fight with even greater ardor than before.”

OTHER ISLANDS, COLONIES, AND PRESIDIOS.

Fernando Po is an Island on the western coast of Africa, twenty miles from the German Colony of Kamerun. It is of volcanic origin, thirty-five miles long and twenty-two miles wide. On it is a ridge of mountains terminating in Clarence Peak, 10,190 feet high. The whole appearance of this beautiful Island is picturesque in the extreme, being covered, to its highest elevations, with dense forests and luxuriant vegetation, consisting chiefly of palms and magnificent bambax.

The Island was discovered, in 1471, by the Portuguese, who, in 1778, ceded it to Spain. It is now a Spanish penal colony; a place of exile for political offenders.

Aunobon, Coriso, and the Elobey Islands are off the

coast of the French Congo. The latter group of Islands is claimed by Spain, but the native chiefs have acknowledged French sovereignty. In 1891, Spain relinquished her claim to Coriso Bay, but retained Cape San Juan, and the right of navigation over the rivers Benito and Muni.

The country on the banks of the rivers Muni and Campo is claimed by Spain, but disputed by France. It has an area of 69,000 square miles and a population of over 500,000.

On the western coast of Africa, Spain claims a protectorate over territory covering 150,000 square miles, known as Rio de Oro, meaning "Gold River." Rio de Oro and the oasis Adrar are under the governorship of the Canary Islands, with a sub-governor resident at Rio de Oro.

In Morocco, Spain has several presidios or garrison settlements, including Ifni, near Cape Non, covering an area of twenty-seven square miles, with a population of 6,000; Ceuta, opposite Gibraltar, covering an area of thirty square miles, with a population of 13,000.

Gomera, Penon de Velez, Malilla, Alhucemas Island, Alboran Island, and the Chafarinas Islands off the coast of Morocco are all under Spanish rule.

The Caroline Islands, another large group in the Pacific Ocean, contains hundreds of small Islands. The whole archipelago is known, on account of the smallness of the Islands, as Micronesia. They are divided into forty-eight recognized groups, principal of which are the Pelew Islands. These Islands cover an area of 560 square miles and have 36,000 inhabitants.

The United States will establish a naval station in the Carolines.

The Balearic Islands, a group in the Mediterranean off

the west coast of Spain, have a total area of 1,860 square miles and a population of 312,593.

They form an administrative province of Spain. The climate of these Islands is delightful, and to an extent they are considered a health resort. They are also very fertile and produce an abundance of tropical fruits and sweet wines.

In Oceania Spain still retains the Ladrões, or Las Marianas, a group of twenty islands, of which only five are inhabited.

The United States has, however, taken possession of the Island of Guam, the southernmost and largest Island of this group.

These Islands are of volcanic origin, densely wooded, and very fertile. They were discovered by Magellan in 1521, and called *Las Islas de Los La Drones*; that is, "The Islands of the Thieves," from the thievish disposition of the natives.

They cover an area of 420 square miles and have a population of over 10,000.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE CONQUEST OF THE PACIFIC.

Two Great Enterprises to be Undertaken, the Completion of the Nicaragua Canal and the Laying of a Cable to Honolulu, the Ladrones, and Manila—We Must Be in Touch with Our New Possessions and Have a Direct Route for our Ships of War from Havana and the Mouth of the Mississippi to Hawaii and the Philippines—Commerce will Follow the Flag—The Suez Canal as an Illustration.

THE Pacific Ocean is not to remain much longer, in the language of Senator Thomas Ewing, "a solitude of waters." It is the last ocean in the zones that are spheres of civilization to be utilized for the benefit of mankind, and have taken from it the lonesomeness that seems like a haunting shadow in the clouds and on the waves. On the slopes of its tremendous curves even the birds and the fish are discouraged, and seek with wing and fin the remote shadows; and, for a thousand leagues in the midst of the majestic waste, there is not to be seen so much as the white speck of a sail or the penciling, on the golden blue of the arch of air, of a steamer's smoke.

Africa is the latest of the continents to yield its mysteries to explorers, and the nations of Europe are contending for the spoil of nature, making provisions for the generations who will crowd the hereafter and find, in all the soil that is fertile, the forests that are the reserves of riches, and the rivers and lakes stocked with food fishes for man's subsistence. We, of America, have only just now put forth our hands to grasp the most beautifully and bountifully endowed islands that have fallen to us like ripe fruit in an autumnal orchard. We are the only mighty nation, with

the exception of Russia, with a broad front on the Pacific. The Russian possessions in that quarter are fettered with frosts, while we have the climate of England in the State of Washington, that of France in Oregon, and that of Italy in California. The English, it is true, have a choice bit of the western American coast, but it is not comparable with the three American States that confront Asia, across the Greater Ocean, with a post two thousand miles out at Hawaii in the tropics; not considering the huge corner of the continent that was the gift of Russia for the nominal sum of \$7,200,000, and the Aleutian Islands that extend to within easy reach and striking distance of Japan. Irrespective of the Philippines, we have Pacific possessions surpassing in scope and value those of any other nation, while the positions we hold are fortunate and commanding. The East and the West Indies are coming our way. Porto Rico, one of the most charming of the gems of the sea, is ours wholly and indisputably. Cuba will, of necessity, belong to us, for the Cuban Republic is a phantom of fever, and will vanish as the ghosts do when spoken to. Already we see the tendency of other islands to drift to us. There will be no West India League unless of our territories, and the people will have to accept our protection, which means the sovereignty of the Republic. The Gulf of Mexico is the American Mediterranean. Into it flows the Mississippi, draining half our States. Away off, two thousand miles and more west of the continent, on a line with the city of Mexico, is Hawaii, ours to have and hold, to cherish and keep forever; and a thousand leagues farther west and south we find the Philippines, an archipelago a thousand miles from north to south, and three hundred miles in breadth—two thousand islands, counting the rocks that are ringed with surf—one thousand inhabited—and there are

floating into our harbor the islands that are fugitives from tyranny. There is fascination for the people of them, in the flag, that exceeds the potentiality of our fleets and armies. The flag attracting, the power of arms assuring the defense of friends and the punishment of foes.

We all remember how long we waited with anxiety, but pride and confidence, the coming of the speedy battleship *Oregon* around South America; how we anticipated that she, by herself, would have to destroy Cervera's fleet; and how, at the call of Admiral Dewey, who wanted two more battleships, the *Oregon* and the *Iowa* were sent from New York to Manila. It is within the immediate experience of the country that our people, at Honolulu, get their news from the world only by weekly installments, and that it takes a month for the soldiers of the American army, at Manila, to get news from home. Consequently we must undertake two colossal enterprises to make a conquest of the Pacific.

They are: a cable at once from San Francisco to Honolulu, to be soon extended, by way of the Ladrões, to Luzon and Manila, and the construction of the much-needed Nicaragua Ship Canal; a channel to connect the Mediterranean of America with the Pacific; and if the English want to take part in it and help with capital, according to treaty provisions, there is no objection so long as we hold the controlling interest.

Some idea of the surrounding country will be of interest, and we therefore give from "The Nicaragua Canal and The Monroe Doctrine" a succinct statement of the Nicaragua Canal route and a most intelligible account of the country contiguous to the Canal.

The plateau formation of central Honduras is continued along the left bank of the Goascoran, and around the southerly shores of the Gulf of Fonseca, in the lower plains

of Conejo and Leon. It is from amid these latter tablelands that the main range of the Cordillera now bifurcates, originates ; one branch continuing along the Pacific coast to unite in the south with the higher volcanic peaks of Costa Rica, the other cutting Nicaragua in a southerly direction and terminating, finally, on the Caribbean coast just north of the outlet of the Rio San Juan. From this latter branch again great wooded spurs stretch out toward the eastern sea-coast, leaving between them but narrow defiles, through which countless streams flow down to mingle in the lagoons of the Mosquito coast. Ensnoced, as it were, between these two great branches of the Cordillera lies a truly remarkable depression, about seventy miles wide, which slopes off gradually from the plains of Conejo and Leon, in the extreme northwest, to the level of the sea along the lower valley of the San Juan. Through this depression runs a series of isolated volcanic peaks, while in its centre, and for the most part filling it up, lie the two great inland seas of the district, Lake Managua and Lake Nicaragua, which are united by a narrow channel. In this depression, the bottom of which is below the sea-level, are gathered the waters which flow from the mountains and plains on either hand, the surplus of which is discharged by a single outlet, the San Juan River, which traverses a valley between low and densely wooded hills, flows through the break in the Cordillera, and then through the lowlands of the coast into the Atlantic Ocean. Thus a natural water-course extends through Nicaragua, in a northwesterly direction, from the Atlantic on the one side to within a few miles of the Pacific on the other ; but here again the Cordillera interpose their persistent barrier between the seas. Lake Managua is cut off from the Gulf of Fonseca by the elevated plains of Leon and Conejo ; while along the narrow strip of land, separating

Lake Nicaragua from the Pacific, there extends the western branch of these mountains, commonly designated as the Coast Range.

Inasmuch as the elevation of the northwestern plateaux is comparatively slight, and as the ridge of the low Coast Range is indented here and there with easy passes, numerous opportunities are here afforded by extending this natural water-way of Nicaragua, to the Pacific, by the excavation of a canal through the remaining strip of land. From the northwestern shores of Lake Managua, for example, a canal might be cut through the plain of Conejo and thence downward along the valley of the Estero Real to the Gulf of Fonseca. Or, to take a shorter course, an excavation could be made from Lake Managua directly across the plain Leon, to emerge upon the Pacific shore, either along the valley of the tiny rivulet Tamarinda, or else farther north in the harbor of Corinto. Or, again, having located the depressions in the Coast Range, and having selected those from among them whose concomitant hydrographic features seem favorable, other canal lines could be drawn through these points from the western shores of Lake Nicaragua to the Pacific. Of the several routes that might be laid out, according to this last method, the three following are those most worthy of consideration: (1) Up the Rio Lajas, across the lowest divide of the great Cordillera Range and thence down the Rio Grande to Brito on the Pacific. (2) Leaving the lake level at Virgin Bay, across the next lowest depression to the south, to reach the Pacific by the very shortest line of all, at San Juan del Sur. (3) Up the valley of the Rio Sapoa and across the more elevated divide at this point, to descend again to the Pacific at the Bay of Salinas. Such are the varied possibilities of what, in general, may be called the Nicaragua Routes.

Lake Nicaragua, known also as the Lake of Granada, is the largest body of fresh water between Lake Michigan in North America and Lake Titicaca in Peru, and on its surface could be floated the combined navies of the whole world. It is 110 miles in length and 40 miles in width. According to recent soundings it has a depth, at some points, of 240 feet. In most parts its margins are shoal, but occasionally there is deep water close along shore. Its outlet, the river San Juan, draining a watershed of some 8,000 square miles, which has an average annual rainfall of at least 80 inches, is a stream of large volume, and in its upper reaches without flats or shoals. It is 121 miles long and from 100 to 400 yards broad, and in the upper half of its course has a depth of from ten to twenty feet, but is interrupted by several rapids which interfere with its navigation. These rapids are traversed at all times by the canoes or "bungos" of the natives, and, during the rainy season, all except the Castillo Rapids, are passed by steamers of light draught with engines of moderate power. A glance at any general map will suffice to show why such vast importance has been attached to it, in the past, by such men as David, Nelson, Humboldt, and Napoleon III., and by the leading American statesmen and naval authorities of the present day. In view of the importance of the subject, the opinions of some of these, comprising a range of distinguished men, of various nationalities and of widely different types of character and training, are passed in review.

After his expedition of 1665, which revealed the value of the lake route to the British, David, who for a buccaneer was a singularly far-sighted man, is reported to have said that "he valued the treasure captured in Granada no more than a barrel of wine, in comparison to the knowledge he

had obtained of the lakes and the country between the two oceans," and he intended to return and occupy the island of Ometepe, in Lake Nicaragua, "to open the communication between the northern and southern seas, and control it therefrom."

More than a hundred years later, in 1780, Dalling attempted to carry out this project, to obtain mastery of the lakes and the river San Juan, and thus to control the chief line of communication between the two oceans. "Here a canal between them could be most easily formed," he thought, and "this work would be more important in its consequences," he was firmly persuaded, "than any which had ever yet been effected by human powers." And Nelson realized its importance when, in helping to put into execution Dalling's plan in the above year, he conveyed a force of 2,000 men to San Juan de Nicaragua, to effect a conquest of the country. "In order," he wrote to the Admiralty, "to give facility to the great object of Government, I intend to possess the great lake of Nicaragua, which I regard as the inland Gibraltar of Spanish America."

The life-long interest of Humboldt, in the question of inter-oceanic communication, finds ample mention elsewhere. One fact, however, deserves to be emphasized. On account of the insufficiency of data—on which fact he so frequently comments—throughout his whole life he prudently preserved an open mind as to the choice of any particular route, though he had a preference for Cupica and Nicaragua.

"It appears somewhat probable," he says in his "Personal Narrative of Travels," "that the province of Nicaragua will be fixed upon for the great work of the junction of the two oceans," and thirty years later, shortly

before his death: "Ma predilection pour Cupica ne m'a pas rendu indifférent aux avantages que fournit la belle contrée du Nicaragua."

Deeply interested and largely influenced by the opinions of Humboldt, the great Goethe saw clearly the immense advantages to be gained by the command of such an inter-oceanic water-way. "But I should wonder if the United States were to let such an opportunity escape of getting such a work into their own hands," he said, and, after vividly foretelling the marvelous growth of the Pacific States, and indicating the intercourse likely to spring up between the Far East and the United States: "in such a case it would not only be desirable, but almost necessary, that a more rapid communication should be maintained between the eastern and western shores of North America, both by merchant ships and men-of-war, than has hitherto been possible with the tedious, disagreeable, and expensive voyage round Cape Horn. I therefore repeat that it is absolutely indispensable for the United States to effect a passage from the Mexican Gulf to the Pacific Ocean, and I am certain that they will do it."

In February, 1825, Senor Don Antonio Jose Canaz, Minister of the United States from the new republic of Central America, which consisted of the states of Guatemala, Honduras, Salvador, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica, then recently liberated from the rule of Spain, addressed a note to the Secretary of State calling the attention of the United States Government to the subject of uniting the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans by a canal through the republic of which he was the representative, and inviting participation in the enterprise.

Even at that early time the superiority of the route by Lake Nicaragua was acknowledged, as will be seen by the

following extract from Mr. Clay's reply, dated April 18, 1825:

"The idea has been conceived of uniting the two oceans by a canal navigation. The execution of it will form a great epoch in the commercial affairs of the whole world. The practicability of it can scarcely be doubted. Various lines for the proposed canal have been suggested, and have divided public opinion. The evidence, tending to show the superiority of the advantage of that which would traverse the province of Nicaragua, seems to have entirely settled the question in favor of that route."

On the 10th of February, 1826, Mr. Clay, in compliance with a promise given Senor Canaz, instructed Mr. Williamson, then Charge d'Affaires in Central America, to make an investigation. He thus writes: "It will at once occur to you to ascertain if surveys have been made of the proposed route of the canal, and if entire confidence may be placed in their accuracy. What is its length, what the nature of the country, and of the ground through which it is to pass? Can the supply of water for feeders be drawn from Lake Nicaragua, or other adequate sources? In short, what facilities do the country and the state of its population afford for making the canal, and what are the estimates of its cost? It is not intended that you should inspire the Government of the Republic of Guatemala with any confident expectation that the United States will contribute, by pecuniary or other means, to the execution of the work, because it is not yet known what views Congress might take of it. What the President desires is to be put into possession of such full informaton as will serve to guide the judgment of the constituted authorities of the United States in determining, in regard to it, what belongs to their interests and duties."

On the 16th of June, 1826, a contract was entered into between the Central American Government and Mr. A. H. Palmer, of New York, for the construction of a canal through Nicaragua with a capacity "for vessels of the largest burden possible." With Mr. Palmer was associated the Hon. De Witt Clinton, the builder of the Erie Canal and at that time Governor of the State of New York; the Hon. Stephen Van Rensselaer, of New York; Monroe Robinson, Esq., President of the Bank of the United States; the Hon. Edward Forsyth, of Louisiana; C. J. Catlett, Esq., District of Columbia, and others. Their surveys and estimates were evidently very inadequate, for they proposed to do the work with a capital of only \$5,000,000. Their scheme failed because of their inability to raise the amount proposed, but the merits of the project were so evident that the King of the Netherlands, on his individual account, and as patron of an association of capitalists, took up the matter, and sent his envoy, General Ver Veer, to Nicaragua, in March, 1829, with full power to treat with the Central American Government. When he arrived political affairs were in a disturbed state, and nothing was accomplished until the Congress of Central America was convened in 1830, when a decree was issued authorizing the construction of the canal, and with full provisions for all financial and political relations, this with a view to offering the concession to the association already organized in the Netherlands. The negotiations with the King of the Netherlands were, however, fruitless of results, because of the political disturbance in his own country, which resulted in the separation and subsequent independence of the kingdom of Belgium.

That the public eye turns with unprecedented interest to the Nicaragua Canal enterprise, feeling that its construc-

tion has become one of the duties of destiny, is seen in the fact that it is one of the leading themes of discussion in the magazines that, in the most potent and dignified way, handle the great questions in the world's progress.

Mr. Emory R. Johnson contributed to the "Review of Reviews," November, '98, a paper on "The Nicaragua Canal and Our Commercial Interests," that commands attention, for it is full of information, given forcible application. He says the canal would help us to increase existing traffic by widening the area, and create new business by giving a shorter and cheaper transportation route. Details are given that support this view. All sections of our country would share in the benefits of the canal, helping both agriculture and manufactures. We quote Mr. Johnson:

"The land masses of the world lie mostly in the northern hemisphere, and the chief industrial countries are situated in the north temperate zone. For centuries the most highly developed countries industrially have been those of southern and western Europe; from those countries, as a center, the commerce of the world has proceeded to the east and west to establish trade with Asia and America. The trade with the equatorial and south temperate portions of South America and Africa and with Australia constitutes a north-and-south commercial movement of secondary importance. The volume of trade which moves with the lines of longitude is increasing, and will continue to grow with the development of the countries lying south of the equator, but it will always be small in comparison with the international traffic which follows the parallels of latitude.

"Although the world's commerce tends primarily to follow the parallels of latitude, all the water-borne traffic between the north Atlantic and north Pacific countries has been, until recently, diverted far to the south by the interposing con-

tinents. The natural land barrier, in each hemisphere, was uninterrupted from the Arctic Ocean to thirty-five degrees south latitude in the eastern hemisphere, and is still continuous to over fifty degrees south in the American hemisphere. A glance at the map, however, shows that in the vicinity of the Tropic of Cancer in each hemisphere the land barrier becomes very narrow. The oceans and the Caribbean and Mediterranean seas form an almost complete and nearly direct water-girdle around the earth. Europe broke through the land barrier which diverted her commerce far out of its natural course when she opened the Suez Canal in 1869. The isthmian barrier that nature imposed across the natural path of American commerce still exists, and until it is pierced the industries of the United States will be seriously handicapped in their competition with Europe.

“The most zealous advocates of the Nicaragua Canal, at the present time, are the people of the South. The industries of the South are still primarily extractive. Her staple product is cotton, and the output has become larger than the European and American mills require. She is anxious to increase her sales in the Eastern countries, where there is a large and increasing demand both for raw cotton and cotton goods. The mining of coal and iron, the manufacture of iron, and the production of cotton textiles are all important and rapidly growing industries in the South, and the people of that section realize that the home markets are inadequate. Foreign trade is essential to the development of both her extractive and manufacturing industries.”

The following tables, with annexed comment, are also offered as an argument in favor of the Canal, combining the veracity of mathematics with the precision of a diagram :



LANDING AMMUNITION FOR THE INSURGENTS, UNDER FIRE.



NICARAGUA CANAL.—NEAR SAN JUAN DEL NORTE.—AT THE HEAD OF SAN JUAN RIVER

DISTANCES IN STATUTE MILES FROM SAN FRANCISCO TO NEW ORLEANS, NEW YORK, AND LIVERPOOL BY EXISTING WATER ROUTES AND BY WAY OF A NICARAGUAN CANAL.

From San Francisco to—	Via Cape Horn.	Via Nicaragua Canal.	Distance Saved.
New Orleans.....	15,052	4,047	11,005
New York.....	14,840	4,760	10,080
Liverpool.....	14,690	7,508	7,182

The Nicaragua Canal will shorten the ocean routes connecting our Pacific cities with those of the Gulf and Atlantic more than any other routes through the water-way. In the above table distances around the Horn are given. Sailing vessels are obliged to take this course; steamers pass through the Straits of Magellan and shorten the distance over two thousand miles. Passing through the straits shortens each route by nearly the same distance.

DISTANCES WHICH THE NICARAGUA CANAL WILL GIVE AMERICAN GULF AND ATLANTIC PORTS OVER EUROPEAN PORTS IN THE TRADE WITH WESTERN SOUTH AMERICA.

Between Valparaiso and—	Distance Saved.	
	Nicaragua vs. the Horn.	Nicaragua vs. Straits of Magellan.
Liverpool.....	1,646	1,026
New Orleans.....	5,708	4,551
New York.....	4,736	3,426

The Nicaragua Canal will bring European ports over one thousand miles nearer to Valparaiso than they now are. The distances to more northern ports are shortened still more. Steamers from Europe to points as far south as Valparaiso will make use of the canal. Sailing vessels

bound for ports as far north as Valparaiso will probably round the Horn in order to escape the canal tolls and to avoid taking an unfavorable course across the doldrum belt. American ports, however, will be brought three thousand miles nearer to the western ports of South America than European cities will be. It is not surprising that under existing conditions over three-fourths of the trade of western South America is with Europe; but with the advantages which the Nicaragua Canal will give us we ought to secure control over the larger portion of that commerce.

The Hon. Warner Miller, ex-United States Senator, contributes a masterful article to "The Forum" of November, on "The Nicaragua Canal," and mentions the discovery of the Pacific Ocean by Balboa in 1513, since which there has been an ever-increasing desire to cut through the narrow strip of the Isthmus of Darien. Mr. Miller makes this luminous statement, covering a history of nearly four centuries:

"Spain, then at the height of her glory and power, directed all her captains, sailing to the New World, to seek for the strait (which they believed existed somewhere) connecting the two oceans.

"The discovery, in 1522, of a great lake situated at the summit, nearly in the centre of the Isthmus, together with a great river, the outlet of the lake, flowing to the east—which made it possible to approach in small vessels from the Atlantic to within twelve miles of the Pacific—seemed to indicate that at this point the Isthmus could be cut, and a free water-channel established. This lake is now known as Lake Nicaragua, and its outlet as the San Juan River.

"From that day to the beginning of the present century many examinations of the Isthmus were made, and various

schemes devised for the construction of a canal; but the difficulties were too great for the engineers of the period.

“The completion of the Suez Canal, in 1870, led to a revival of the interest in a canal across Central America. The unfortunate failure of Count de Lesseps and his company at Panama, where many millions were squandered and stolen, has retarded movements looking to the construction of the canal. American engineers have always favored a canal by the way of the San Juan River and Lake Nicaragua; and that route has come to be known as the American route. One-half of the money wasted at Panama would have built the Nicaragua Canal. Whilst the failure at Panama has prevented great capitalists from taking up the Nicaragua plan, the American people have never, for a moment, doubted the practicability of that route; nor has their determination that the canal should be constructed there under American auspices been lessened. Repeated surveys of this route, made by the United States Government and by private parties, have demonstrated its practicability, and at a cost which would make the enterprise a commercial success.

“The events of the Spanish-American War have so demonstrated the necessity of the canal, from a military as well as from a commercial standpoint, that the American people are substantially a unit, to-day, in demanding the immediate undertaking of the enterprise, and its accomplishment at the earliest possible moment. The wonderful voyage of the battleship *Oregon* round Cape Horn, and the return trip of the same vessel, accompanied by the *Iowa*, were object lessons so striking that every unprejudiced mind must at once admit the necessity of the canal as a means of defense of our harbors and cities on both the

Atlantic and Pacific coasts, as well as of our new outlying possessions and dependencies.”

Mr. Miller adds :

“The Pacific Coast is a great empire by itself. It has been estimated that it is capable of producing food enough to support one hundred millions of people. The fertility of its soil and the salubrity of its climate cannot be surpassed. Yet, at the present time, upon the entire coast from San Diego to the line of British Columbia in the North, and running back to the mountains, there are fewer people, all told, by several hundred thousands, than are to-day contained in the city of New York. The failure of the Pacific Coast to make a great growth since the discovery of gold in 1849 has been a great disappointment to its early settlers. The reason is found in the fact that there is not sufficient profit in the pursuit of agriculture or lumbering to attract the surplus population of the East. Once the canal is opened, the population of the Pacific Coast will rapidly increase ; and before a decade has passed it will have more than doubled. This increased population will of necessity bring largely increased business to the railroads. The annual reports of several of the transcontinental railroads show that their through business is less than 10 per cent. of the entire business of the roads, and that their profits are made upon short haul and not upon the freight carried from ocean to ocean.

“After all these years of waiting, I am satisfied that the position in which this enterprise stands to-day, not only before the American people, but before the whole commercial world, is such that its speedy accomplishment is assured, either by the Government of the United States or by private capital.”

A few words on the Panama Canal will be of interest

here. This canal was begun in September, 1884, the plans showing excavations of 160 million cubic yards. This included a tunnel of four miles or 7,000 yards, 100 feet wide and 160 feet in height, to cost \$4,000 per lineal yard. The whole was to be finished in 1892, at an estimated cost of about \$140,000,000.

In December, 1885, Baron de Lesseps had at work 10,000 men, 169 locomotives, 12,000 wagons and seven dredges. Each of the dredges was capable of excavating 100,000 cubic yards monthly.

In March, 1888, after forty-two months of work, the total excavations reached only 53,000,000 cubic yards, or one-third of the total, and had cost \$200,000,000. The work remaining to be excavated was 36,000,000 tons of stone and 54,000,000 tons of clay. In all 82,000,000 cubic yards. The works were suspended in January, 1889, the Company having expended \$300,000,000. This, however, was the nominal amount of stock. It is thought the actual cost of the work accomplished was less than \$200,000,000.

The Suez Canal was begun by De Lesseps in 1856 and completed in 1869, at a cost of \$85,000,000. The length is 92 miles, depth 26 feet. The toll, per vessel, averages \$4,000, or \$2 per ton of net tonnage. Tugs are provided for sailing vessels at a charge of \$1,000. The saving to commerce, by reason of the canal, is about \$25,000,000 per annum. Electric light is used for passage by night. The mean duration of passage is about 27 hours. The use of the Suez Canal shortens the voyage between England and the East by one-third; that is, it enables two vessels to do the same work that would require three by the way of the Cape of Good Hope.

The gross receipts of the Suez Canal, in 1891, were \$16,843,000, and the dividends have been from 18 to 20 per

cent. The shares of the canal held by the British Government cost \$20,000,000; they are worth to-day, at the market price, \$95,000,000. So much for Disraeli's Oriental politics.

In relation to the Nicaragua Canal the question that has seemed, for some years, very difficult and pressing, has been not whether the canal shall be built, but whether it shall be ultimately or immediately constructed by Americans and under the control of the United States. In our present relation to the world the canal is needed for self-defense, and the policy of American Expansion makes the demand for the canal imperative and urgent.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

AMERICAN EXPANSION.

The Fathers of the Republic included the Father of His Country, who was "First in War, First in Peace, and First in the Hearts of His Countrymen," and an Expander of the Colonies, the States, and the Nation—Thomas Jefferson was the Great Annexationist—Andrew Jackson was an Expander—So were James Polk, Andrew Johnson, William H. Seward, Charles Sumner—Expansion is the Policy of the People—There is Magic in the Flag of Freedom and Glory to Americanize the Inhabitants of Our Possessions.

THE footsteps of the Fathers of the Republic, from the time when the French floated down the Mississippi and St. Lawrence Rivers, pointed West and South—expanding the area of the English settlements—and this early manifestation of destiny continued to the southern and western lands of the Continent, when the British in their turn sailed with the Gulf stream to Halifax and beyond.

When a boy, George Washington visited the Bermudas with his elder brother, who had served with Admiral Vernon in the West Indies. Returning to Virginia he began to explore the Ohio country before he was twenty-one years of age upon a mission to oust the French, and was expanding his landed possessions in that direction as long as he lived. Thus is linked in the life of the Father of his Country the West Indies and the lands beyond the Alleghenies, to which, in his crowded and busy life, he found time to pay six visits.*

* *Mount Vernon in Virginia, July 15, 1773.*

The Subscriber having obtained Patents for upwards of TWENTY THOUSAND Acres of LAND on the *Ohio* and *Great Kanhawa* (Ten Thousand of which are situated on the banks of the first-mentioned river, between the mouths of the two *Kanhawas*, and the remainder on the *Great Kanhawa*, or *New River*, from the mouth, or near it, upwards, in one continued survey) proposes to divide the same into any sized tenements that may be desired, and lease them upon moderate terms, allowing a reasonable number

Alexander Hamilton, the true friend and trusted confidant of Washington, was born at Nevis, in the West Indies, and in his boyhood had a marvelous intelligence, the inspiration of a statesmanship that was impressed profoundly upon our country; and he with "Light-Horse Harry," the father of the Lees, were with Washington when he marched 10,000 men to put down the whiskey insurrection in the West, and

of years' rent free, provided, within the space of two years from next October, three acres for every fifty contained in each lot, and proportionably for a lesser quantity, shall be cleared, fenced, and tilled; and that, by or before the time limited for the commencement of the first rent, five acres for every hundred, and proportionably, as above, shall be enclosed and laid down in good grass for meadow; and, moreover, that at least fifty good fruit trees for every like quantity of land shall be planted on the Premises. Any persons inclinable to settle on these lands may be more fully informed of the terms by applying to the subscriber, near *Alexandria*, or, in his absence, to Mr. LUND WASHINGTON; and would do well in communicating their intentions before the 1st of October next, in order that a sufficient number of lots may be laid off to answer the demand.

As these lands are among the first which have been surveyed in the part of the country they lie in, it is almost needless to premise that none can exceed them in luxuriance of soil, or convenience of situation, all of them lying upon the banks either of the *Ohio* or *Kanhawa*, and abounding with fine fish and wild fowl of various kinds, as also in most excellent meadows, many of which (by the bountiful hand of nature) are, in their present state, almost fit for the scythe. From every part of these lands water carriage is now had to *Fort Pitt*, by an easy communication; and from *Fort Pitt*, up the *Monongahela*, to *Redstone*, vessels of convenient burthen may and do pass continually; from whence, by means of *Cheat River*, and other navigable branches of the *Monongahela*, it is thought the portage to *Potowmack* may, and will, be reduced within the compass of a few miles, to the great ease and convenience of the settlers in transporting the produce of their lands to market. To which may be added, that as patents have now actually passed the seals for the several tracts here offered to be leased, settlers on them may cultivate and enjoy the lands in peace and safety, notwithstanding the unsettled counsels respecting a new colony on the *Ohio*; and as no right money is to be paid for these lands, and quitrent of two shillings sterling a hundred, demandable some years hence only, it is highly presumable that they will always be held upon a more desirable footing than where both these are laid on with a very heavy hand. And it may not be amiss further to observe, that if the scheme for establishing a new government on the *Ohio*, in the manner talked of, should ever be effected, these must be among the most valuable lands in it, not only on account of the goodness of soil, and the other advantages above enumerated, but from their contiguity to the seat of government, which more than probable will be fixed at the mouth of the *Great Kanhawa*.

GEORGE WASHINGTON.

got so far, when the anarchists of the Monongahela Valley disappeared, as to dine with James Gillespie, Blaine's grandfather, when the august Washington spoke of his wife as "My Patsy." Thus with the port wine and the hickory nuts was ended our first war after the Revolution.

John Adams sturdily refused a proposition to give up the Ohio, Wabash, and Illinois country to the English, preferring to continue the war rather than yield an inch of soil; though even Benjamin Franklin favored yielding to the pretensions of England, in the Northwest, for the sake of peace; but Franklin was old and weary, and this episode has been forgiven in forgetfulness.

Fortunately George Rogers Clark, born in the same country with Jefferson, had a friend in Governor Patrick Henry, and was authorized by him to raise men, and given a lot of paper money to undertake a secret expedition, which was to dispossess the English at Vincennes and Kaskaskia, and he did it with surprisingly stinted means, giving Virginia a title to the Northwest under the usages of military law. George Rogers Clark, "the Hannibal of the West," in spite of failures, mistakes, and sorrows, is a name written on the roll of the immortals.

Thomas Jefferson surpassed in glorious achievement the authorship of the Declaration of Independence, in purchasing twice the amount of land we got from England, by the concession of the treaty with her, when she surrendered her thirteen colonies to self-government. Beginning, in 1783, with 827,844 square miles, we have, not counting our recent acquisitions of islands, 3,603,884 square miles. Jefferson's purchase was 1,171,931 square miles. Thus his greater glory came from a conscious violation of his own interpretation of the Constitution, in buying land from Napoleon Bonaparte, who had no title to

it, save that he had taken it red-handed and high-handed from Spain, whose abuse of her colonies made it a public virtue to capture them, and England was getting ready to despoil the robber.

Notwithstanding the violation of the Constitution and the deficiency of the land title, the bargain stuck, and was one of the greatest events in the making of our nation. Andrew Jackson confirmed the purchase with a quit-claim deed—the Battle of New Orleans, fought after the treaty had been signed—a precedent to be cited in the case of the Philippines, along with Kaskaskia and Vincennes—if some of the monarchs want to see our papers for real-estate holdings. We shall adhere, certainly, to our precedents and principles.

It is strange that in the second third of the first century of the Republic, the greater political leaders of that era should have lost the lesson of the Jeffersonian Expansion. Webster and Clay faltered on the high-road when America moved on, and we gained Texas by annexation; and New Mexico, Colorado (in part), Arizona, and California, by the sword. It was Andrew Jackson's influence, in his last days, that overwhelmingly carried the acceptance of imperial Texas; and James K. Polk and Andrew Johnson—the other two of the Tennessee Presidents—gave us our Pacific front, with the aid of an Oregon missionary, including Golden-Gated and Golden-Walled California; and Alaska, crowded with riches in reserve, and the Aleutian Islands.

In the latter third of our first century there was an evidence of a broadening of statesmanship in recognizing the destiny of the country, that, instead of crumbling through civil war and consenting to weakness because the brethren of the several States shed each other's blood,

grew strong in warfare and became a majestic nation. William H. Seward and Charles Sumner joined hands with Andrew Johnson in securing the magnificent bargain with Russia that gave us footing on the shores of the Behring Sea and to our flag in the summer days—from sunrise in Maine to sunset on our archipelago in the shadow of Siberia—six additional hours of sunshine.

We may remark a parallel between the policy of Thomas Jefferson when he sent his private secretary, at the head of Lewis and Clark's Expedition, up the Missouri, and down the Oregon to the Pacific, because he said he did not know enough about the lands beyond the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains to make recommendations concerning them to Congress; and the policy of President McKinley, who was not sure enough of his information about the Philippines, when the protocol of peace was written, to take all responsibility upon himself in deciding the fate of those islands, and, wisely guided, wrote the words that referred the profound problem not to the Commission at Paris, not to the army at Manila, not to Admiral Dewey's fleet, not to Congress, but to the people of the United States; and upon this act he might have invoked, as Abraham Lincoln did when he prepared the proclamation of Emancipation, "The considerate judgment of mankind and the gracious favor of Almighty God." At the same time the President, as Commander-in-Chief of the Army and Navy, sent an additional division of troops to Manila, and prepared the *Oregon* and the *Iowa* to join Admiral Dewey. Admiral Dewey wanted two battleships, and two were sent, plowing the waters around South America; they were the most famous fighting-ships in the navies of the world. In this there was something more than harmony—there was consensus of good judgment and common inspiration of patriotism.

The paths by which the Fathers marked out this country for greatness prevented the Continent from dismemberment in European and Spanish-American fashion. The footsteps of the nation-builders are there. Benignant providence, sound statesmanship, history, tradition, the instructed judgment of Americanism, are not failing to guide our steps aright.

The name of William H. Seward belongs in the role of honor of the promoters of American Expansion because in his maturity he outgrew the leaders he followed in his youth, and closed with Russia when her good-will offering of Alaska came, and, going further, sought to purchase the Danish Islands in the West Indies and to include Iceland and Greenland. With this object he had compiled, in 1868, a report of the resources of Iceland and Greenland, but public opinion then regarded his ideas as romantic.

Shall we permit to go unchallenged the feebleness of the folly that especially opposes the acquisition of islands because they are surrounded by water, and say that we never did such a thing as cross the waves to get land, until it was done in the annexation of Hawaii? Why, we must put to sea to find a free road to Alaska, and it is worth remembering that the art of navigation is so far perfected that the seas are the cheapest roads on the globe, and open to endless competition. The oceans are free with the islands thereof. Salt water does not damage land, and with all our experience in the policy of Expansion we have never added an acre to our national domain that was not good for us. It is not likely that we shall ever do so. Perhaps we talk so much about our flag that our words cease to have fullness of meaning, and we forget to remember and have faith that the story of the Nation, in history, testifies there is redeeming magic in the Stars and Stripes. Neither

Gomez in Cuba, nor Aguinaldo in Luzon, can keep insurgents in the field against us, because the breeze that unfurls our banner wafts the grievances of the people away.

We keep the Philippines because we must. It is a duty of State. We have destroyed the Spanish government there and are responsible to civilization for the result. The announcement that we shall permanently possess the islands is a proclamation of peace and prosperity. Anything else is war, chaos, poverty, and ruin. How can an American think seriously of yielding to any power the fruits of Dewey's victory? When he destroyed the Spanish fleet, according to orders issued on the first day of the war with Spain, he did not abandon the scene of his conquest, but, animated by the spirit of the Fathers, he followed their footsteps and held on to the great prize he had won. The Philippines are equal to all the West Indies, the victorious Admiral is there, and declares he will stay until ordered away or "all is settled;" and his "settled," three times repeated, means what our Commissioners in Paris have said and done.

Organized Labor should look carefully at both sides of the Labor Question in the Philippines, as it arises in the adjustments of annexation, and consider whether Americans in control of an Asian population of eight millions cannot be missionaries in the cause of Labor, so that there shall be rather emulation than competition between the laboring people of America and Asia, leveling the latter up rather than the former down. There is a stupendous problem here, and thoughtfulness regarding it should begin with the sincere admission that there may be honest and radical differences of opinion; and there is too much at stake for hasty decisions.

The question that towers above all is, How shall the

American people be affected by the expansion of their possessions? We wish all the peoples of all the continents and islands well, but our first care must be for the folks at home. It does not follow that if we conquer islands, drive out Spaniards or other oppressors, and spread the flag that is our popular and national symbol over people who are strangers, that we shall of necessity go on multiplying states. We must safeguard Americanism, and the effective way to do it is to stand firm on the bed-rock principle that we want more territory for the great hereafter of our Country, but not more states now or soon. Certainly we can hold territory as territory forever. Contact with us and our institutions will Americanize the population of our possessions. We have a graver race question at home than we can find abroad. It is most difficult because imbedded in the structure of the states.

There will not be and should not be manhood suffrage in the sense of indiscriminate male suffrage in Porto Rico, Cuba, Hawaii, or the Philippines, until some time has passed and there are many changes. Immediate manhood suffrage in our new possessions is as impracticable, as impossible, as the re-establishment of American slavery in the states. The alleged insurgent governments in Cuba and Luzon must be brushed aside, for they are not of the people. We do not want a government of Cuban bond-holders or any exclusive prerogatives in the hands of the Tagalo tribe of Malays, of whom Aguinaldo is representative. He is the head of one tribe, not of the people.

Americanism will work wonders in the tropical islands, as on the North American Continent. We shall overcome insurgents in the Indies, West and East, by the irresistible attraction of gravitation of the overshadowing power of the mighty Republic, that is too great to be longer over-

looked by others, and would shirk duties by overlooking herself.

The Spanish authorities, when surrendering their army at Manila, 5,000 in number, stronger than that of the Americans, proposed to insert many stipulations in the articles of capitulation, for the protection of personal rights and various claims to public property, but at last consented to the sufficiency of the proudly significant words, first used in the capitulation of the City of Mexico, confiding all things, not particularized, to "the faith and honor of the Army of the United States." Let all the people know and set ringing and re-echoing the music of that lofty phrase of melody and glory; and whether the flag, which is the signal of it all, is exalted and advanced over the land or the sea, we may safely trust that we, the people of the United States, walking in the footsteps of the Fathers, will still find new land for the people and maintain in "faith and honor" the arms and trophies of the reunited country, and, after the examples they venerate, magnify the common inheritance and increase the influences that make for liberty the world around, until the sun shall never cease to shine on the flag, and the flag in every star and fold protects the people who have been cast down, and is radiant with the most precious part of righteousness—the rights of man.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

OUR INTERNATIONAL POLICY.

We must go up and to the Front—All the Land we have Annexed has been Good for the People—We have Reached the Limit on this Continent and Need Islands—The Duties Belonging to our Growth and Destiny.

THE progress of mankind summons the nation of the United States of North America to exercise the influence belonging to a great people, and participate, as a power, in the affairs of the world.

The century, whose closing years we have reached, has been, in human advancement, equal to a thousand years of other times, and we have been exceptional in growth in all that increases resources and responsibilities.

The citizens of this republic revere the memory of the fathers, and have so affectionate a regard for their precepts, and respect for that which they accomplished, it seems unfaithful not to recognize the limitations of those who fought out the Revolution, framed the Constitution, converted the colonies into states, and formed a "more perfect union" than the confederation.

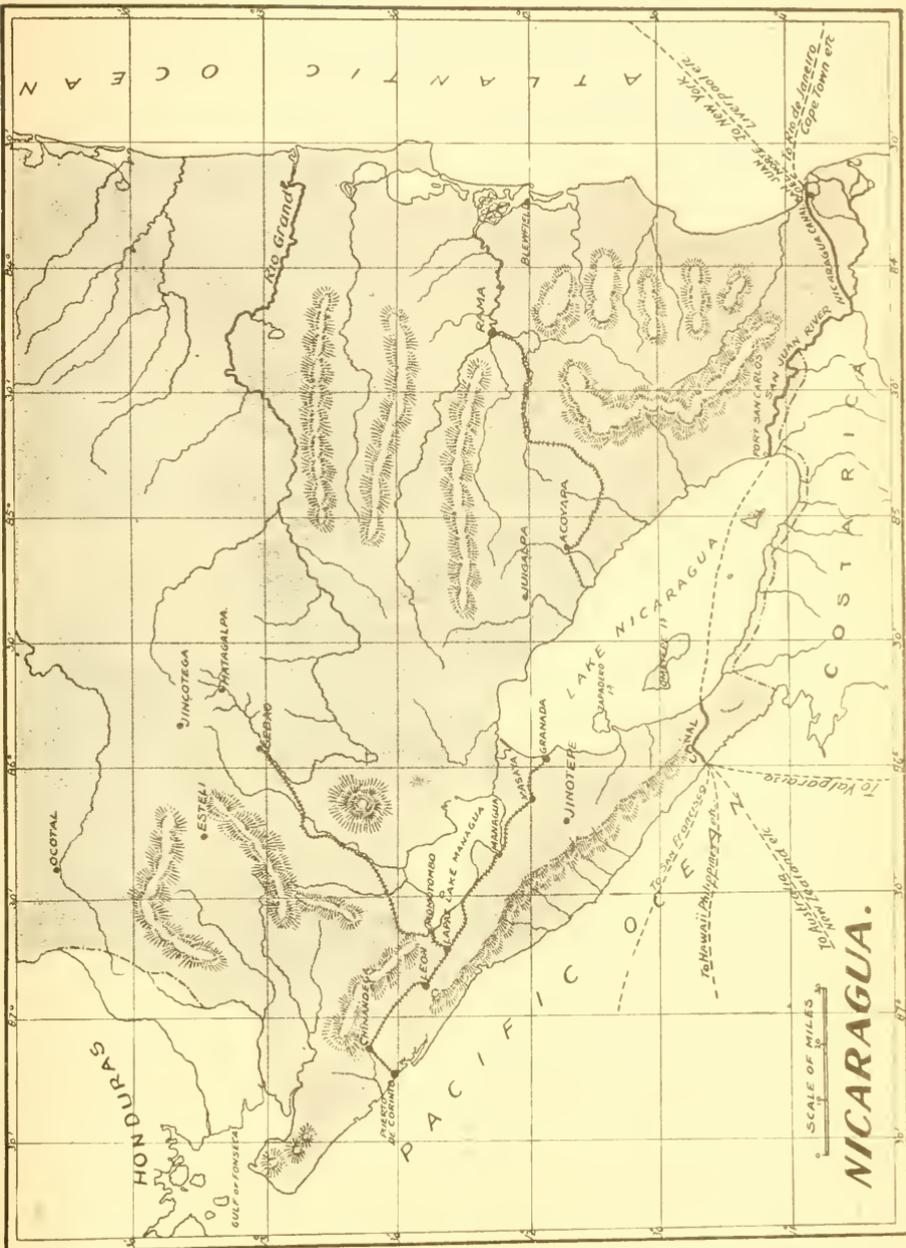
However, it is clear to the students of our country's expansion and consolidation that the men of the Revolution had but an imperfect idea of the immensity of the fabric of which they laid the deep foundations. Washington and Jefferson were the men who, more than others of their day, had foresight of the stupendous destiny of the people who absorbed, to themselves, the splendid name of America, and gave the word a glorious, national character, though geographically it comprehended two vast continents. Washington, whose appreciation of the West exceeded that of



LAKE NICARAGUA.



NICARAGUAN CANAL—IN THE MOUNTAINS OF NICARAGUA—AT LA VIRGEN.



THE NICARAGUA CANAL.

NICARAGUA.

his generation, did not understand that we had a future beyond the Mississippi, and Jefferson had not, in his superb and searching foresight, beheld the Pacific as a boundary of the republic, until Washington was in his grave, and the Louisiana Purchase made a vast reality out of a vision few dreamers had dared to dream.

The first necessities in founding a nation are people of integrity and capacity, active in good works, bravery and enterprise, rich in vital force, and land upon which they can increase in population, and thrive through productive industry.

We, of the United States have had unexampled happy fortune in gaining the territory indispensable to our imperial development.

In this volume is recorded the story of the Conquest of the North-western Territory by George Rogers Clark. There is perpetual surprise that there was so enormous a gain by ways so rude, and means so scanty.

Including all that Clark occupied and possessed for Virginia, through the capture of Kaskaskia and Vincennes, we started where the boundaries were formed between our premises and those of Great Britain, with less than one-fourth the area of the landed estate that is our unchallenged dominion.

The territory of the United States was acquired in cessions by foreign nations as follows :

NATION.	DATE OF TREATY.	AMOUNT PAID.	AREA SQ. MILES.
1. Great Britain,	Sept. 3, 1783	827,844
2. France,	Apr. 30, 1803	\$15,000,000	1,171,931
3. Spain,	Feb. 22, 1819	6,500,000	59,268
4. Texas,	March 2, 1845	10,000,000	376,133
5. Mexico,	Feb. 2, 1848	15,000,000	545,783
6. "	Dec. 30, 1853	10,000,000	45,535
7. Russia,	March 30, 1867	7,200,000	577,390

Total area of the United States. 3,603,884

It should be remembered that the whole area of the United States was given away by patents or grants. In 1609, for instance, King James I., of England, granted a charter to the so-called Virginia Companies of a strip of country four hundred miles wide, extending from the Atlantic westward. It was to be measured from Old Point Comfort, two hundred miles north and two hundred miles south. In 1620 the Plymouth Company obtained a charter to the so-called "Great Patent," comprising the country between the fortieth and forty-eighth parallel of latitude, extending from the Atlantic Ocean westward. Under this grant all the earliest settlements in New England were made, the Plymouth Company making sub-grants for this purpose. One of the first of these was the grant to the Massachusetts Bay Company of the lands lying between the lines drawn three miles north of all parts of the Merrimac, and three miles south of the Charles River and of Massachusetts Bay. This grant was made in 1629.

The territory of Connecticut was granted in 1631 by the Plymouth Company to Lords Say-and-Seal, Brooke and others. Its limits were defined as follows: "All of that part of New England west of the Narragansett, extending the space of forty leagues upon a straight line near the seashore, towards the south and west, as the coast lieth towards Virginia, accounting three English miles to the league; and also all and singular lands and hereditaments whatsoever, lying and being within the lands aforesaid, north and south in latitude, and in breadth and length, a longitude of, and within all the breadth aforesaid, throughout all the mainlands there from the western to the South Sea."

The first charter of the Carolinas was granted to Sir Walter Raleigh in 1584, and as the attempts at colonization under the original grant failed, Connecticut made a

grant of the Carolinas to Earl Clarendon in 1663, including in it the territory lying between the thirty-first and thirty-sixth parallels and the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

The lines of the original grants mark, in a great many instances, the boundary lines between our States. The original limits of the United States at the close of the Revolution extended as far west as the Mississippi, and as far south as the boundary line between Georgia and Florida. The Treaty of Peace between the United States and Great Britain, concluded September 3d, 1783, conceded this boundary; but no sooner had the treaty been ratified when the northern boundary line became a source of contention between the two countries, which was not settled until 1872. In the Treaty of London, signed November 19, 1794, provision was made for ascertaining whether a line drawn due west from the northwest point of the Lake of the Woods would strike the Mississippi. This question was not settled, however, until 1818. The same treaty made provision for the settlement of the identity of the River St. Croix. The line was established along this stream, and a monument was erected at the head of its northern branch, the Cheputneticook, for the purpose of defining that branch.

By the Treaty of Ghent, December 24, 1815, provision was made for a final adjustment of the northern boundary, but no definite agreement was reached. In 1818 it was agreed that the boundary line should be extended westward on the 47th parallel of latitude from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains, and that the country west of the Rocky Mountains should be free and open to the citizens of both countries for a period of ten years.

In 1824-26 negotiations were again opened for the settlement of the boundary west of the Rocky Mountains, but

again no agreement was reached, as both parties insisted on the legality of their claim. In 1827 the points of difference between the two countries, with regard to the northern boundary of Maine, were referred to the King of the Netherlands as an arbitrator. The decision of the King was a compromise, making the course of St. John's River the boundary line.

This was agreed to by Great Britain, but was strongly opposed by the citizens of Maine. It at one time threatened to be the cause of war.

By the Webster-Ashburton Treaty, concluded in 1842, the boundary was established finally, very nearly as decided by the royal arbitrator. This treaty also finally established the boundary as far West as the Rocky Mountains.

By the treaty with Great Britain in 1846, the northern boundary was continued from the Rocky Mountains westward to the straits of Juan de Fuca, along the 49th parallel, and down through the main channel of the above straits to the Pacific. The question immediately arose, however, as to the definition of the "main ship channel," in the straits of Juan de Fuca. The English claimed the Rosario Strait, while the United States claimed that it should follow the Canal Haro. This dispute was settled by arbitration of the Emperor of Germany, who decided in favor of the United States on the 21st day of October, 1872, thus disposing of the last remaining point at issue.

Concerning the Southern boundary, the boundaries between the Thirteen Original States were, at the organization of the United States Government, established very nearly as they are at present, with the exception of the western lands owned or claimed by several of the States. Maine was a province of Massachusetts; Vermont was part of New York State; Massachusetts had very nearly its

present boundaries and area, but also laid claim to all of the country lying west of a meridian, passing twenty miles west of Niagara River, extending south to latitude 42.2, and west to the Mississippi River, an area some seventy or eighty miles in breadth, and comprising the southern part of Michigan and Wisconsin, and the northern part of Illinois. Connecticut also laid claim to the country west of the western boundary of Pennsylvania to the Mississippi, between latitude 41 and 42.2, being the northern part of Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois, and the southern part of Michigan.

New York state laid claim, under an old charter, to all of the lands between the source of the Great Lakes and the Cumberland mountains. Pennsylvania did not originally extend to Lake Erie; that area has been since added and previously belonged to the state of New York. Virginia laid claim to the area covered by West Virginia, Kentucky, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin and that part of Minnesota lying east of the Mississippi. North Carolina claimed the territory covered by the state of Tennessee; South Carolina laid claim to a narrow strip of country, fourteen miles wide, south of the 35th parallel of latitude, also extending to the Mississippi.

Georgia had, with the exception of the latter strip, an undoubted title, in addition to its own area, to the portion of Alabama and Mississippi then owned by the United States. The organization of territories, the admission of states, and the principal changes in the boundary lines of states and territories will be here briefly stated.

In 1788 what was known as the North-west Territory, comprising the present states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin and that part of Minnesota east of the Mississippi River, was organized.

March 4, 1791, Vermont was admitted as a state.

March 30, 1791, the District of Columbia, comprising one hundred square miles, was ceded to the United States by the states of Maryland and Virginia. June 1, 1792, Kentucky was admitted to the Union. June 1, 1796, Tennessee became one of the states.

April 7, 1798, Mississippi Territory was organized from a portion of the lands ceded by Georgia, comprising about one-half of the southern area of the states of Alabama and Mississippi. Jurisdiction over this area, however, remained with the state of Georgia.

May 7, 1800, Indiana Territory was organized. It was constituted from that portion of the North-west Territory lying west of the present eastern boundary line of Indiana and extending due north to the Great Lakes.

April 30, 1802, that part of the state of Michigan east of the eastern boundary of Indiana was added to Indiana Territory. The state of Ohio attained its present boundary, also a narrow strip in the northernmost part.

On November 29, 1802, Ohio was admitted to the Union as a state.

1804, Mississippi Territory was enlarged by the addition of the remainder of the present areas of Alabama and Mississippi, with the exception of those portions to the south of the 31st parallel extending to the Gulf of Mexico.

1804, the Territory of Orleans was organized, comprising the present area of Louisiana, with the exception of the portion between the Amite river, and Lakes Mourepas and Pontchartrain and the Pearl river. The remainder of the Louisiana Purchase continued to bear the name of Louisiana Territory.

June 30, 1805, Michigan Territory was organized from

the northern part of Indiana Territory, between Lake Superior, Lake Michigan and Lake Huron.

February 3, 1809, the Territory of Illinois was formed.

April 30, 1812, Orleans Territory was admitted as a state under the name of Louisiana, and Louisiana Territory was changed to Missouri Territory.

1812, Mississippi Territory was enlarged by the addition of the portions extending to the Gulf of Mexico, below the 21st parallel.

December 11, 1816, Indiana was admitted as a state, with its present boundaries.

March 3, 1817, Alabama Territory was created from a part of Mississippi Territory, excepting that portion below the 31st parallel.

December 10, 1817, Mississippi was admitted to the Union as a state.

December 3, 1818, Illinois was admitted to the Union.

March 2, 1819, Arkansas Territory was created from a part of Missouri Territory, its western boundary extending to the Spanish possessions, afterwards ceded to the United States.

December 14, 1819, Alabama was admitted to statehood with its present limits.

March 15, 1820, Maine was detached from Massachusetts and admitted to the Union. August 10, 1821, the state of Missouri was formed from part of Missouri Territory and was admitted as a state.

March 30, 1822, Florida Territory was organized, comprising the area purchased from Spain in 1819.

In 1828 the western boundary of Arkansas Territory was reduced to its present area.

June 15, 1836, Arkansas was admitted to statehood.

July 30, 1836, Wisconsin Territory was organized from

parts of Michigan and Missouri Territories. In 1836, the western boundary of Missouri was changed, establishing the present area of that state.

In 1836 the northern boundary of Ohio was readjusted, giving the state its present area.

January 26, 1837, Michigan was admitted to the Union.

July 3, 1838, Iowa Territory was created.

March 3, 1845, Iowa was admitted to statehood. March 3, 1845, Florida was admitted to the Union.

December 29, 1845, Texas, which had declared her independence of Mexico in 1836, joined the United States.

July 9, 1846, that portion of the District of Columbia which had been ceded to the general government by Virginia, was retroceded to that state.

December 28th, 1846, the boundary of the state of Iowa was readjusted, giving it its present limits. May 29, 1848, Wisconsin was admitted as a state. August 14, 1848, the Territory of Oregon was created, comprising the present states of Washington, Oregon, Idaho and part of Montana.

March 3, 1849, Minnesota Territory was created, comprising that part of the former Territory of Iowa now included in the State of Iowa, and extending east to the western boundary of Wisconsin.

In 1850, Texas sold to the general government, all of her original area not included in her present limits, for \$10,000,000.

September 9, 1850, California was admitted as a state. September 9, 1850, Utah Territory was created. It extended as far west as California, and east to the Rocky Mountains, south to the 37th parallel and north to the 42d parallel.

December 13, 1850, the Territory of New Mexico was created; its area being composed of the remainder of the

land acquired from Mexico, and a part of the land sold to the United States by Texas.

On March 2, 1853, Washington Territory was organized, extending east to the Rocky Mountains.

December 30, 1853, the area of New Mexico Territory was increased by the Gadsden purchase.

May 30, 1854, Nebraska Territory was created. It comprised all of the region between the 40th and 49th parallels from the Missouri to the Rocky Mountains.

May 30, 1854, Kansas Territory was created. It extended from the southern boundary of Nebraska Territory to the 37th parallel, and from the Missouri to the Rocky Mountains.

May 11, 1858, Minnesota was admitted to statehood.

February 14, 1859, Oregon was admitted to the Union. The remaining part of Oregon Territory was added to Washington Territory.

January 29, 1861, Kansas was admitted as a state.

February 28, 1861, Colorado Territory was created from portions of Utah, New Mexico, Kansas and Nebraska Territory.

March 21, 1861, Dakota Territory was formed from part of Minnesota and Nebraska Territory. It extended from its present eastern boundary to the summit of the Rocky Mountains.

March 2, 1861, Nevada Territory was created from part of Utah Territory.

February 24, 1863, Arizona Territory was formed from portions of New Mexico Territory.

March 3, 1863, Idaho Territory was formed from portions of Washington, Dakota, and Nebraska Territory. Its original limits comprised the present States of Idaho, Montana, Wyoming, and part of Utah.

June 19, 1863, West Virginia was admitted to statehood.

May 26, 1864, Montana Territory was created.

October 31, 1864, Nevada was admitted to statehood. Its boundary was moved one degree of longitude further east.

In 1866 the eastern boundary of Nevada was moved a second degree further east.

March 1, 1867, Nebraska was admitted to statehood.

July 25, 1868, Wyoming Territory was created.

February 17, 1873, Congress, under the erroneous impression that by a mistake in defining boundaries, a part of Dakota had been left detached, near the point where Idaho, Montana and Wyoming joined, passed an Act adding such area to Montana.

August 1, 1876, Colorado was admitted to the Union.

November 2, 1889, North and South Dakota were admitted to statehood.

November 11, 1889, Washington became a state.

July 3, 1890, Idaho was admitted to the Union. July 11, 1890, Wyoming was added to the Union of states. January 4, 1896, Utah was admitted.

Cession of the Province of Louisiana.—This province was granted by Louis XIV., September 14, 1712, to Anthony Crozart for fifteen years. It was afterwards granted for twenty-five years to the "Western Company," or, as afterward called, "Company of the Indies," of which John Law was principal mover. The grant was surrendered to the Crown in 1730. The province was ceded by France to Spain, February 10, 1763. Formal possession was given, August 18, 1769. Spain re-ceded the province to France, October 1, 1800. France ceded it to the United States by treaty, April 30, 1803.

Its western boundary, as finally adjusted by treaty with

Spain, February 22, 1819, was as follows: Up the Sabine River, to and along the 94th meridian, to and along the Red River, and to and along the 100th meridian, to and along the Arkansas river to its source, thence due north to and along the 42d parallel to the Pacific Ocean.

Its northern boundary has conformed to the boundary established between the British possessions and the United States.

Its eastern boundary was regarded as the Mississippi River, as far south as the 31st parallel, where different boundaries were claimed.

Spain claimed, that by her cession to France in 1800, she ceded no territory east of the Mississippi River, except the Island of New Orleans; and also claimed that her province of West Florida included the territory south of the 31st parallel, and between the Perdido and Mississippi Rivers, except the Island of New Orleans.

The United States construed the cession of France to include this disputed territory.

The Province of Louisiana, as claimed by the United States, included the area of the present states of Alabama and Mississippi, below the 31st parallel; all of Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri and Iowa; that part of Minnesota west of the Mississippi River, and a line drawn from its source to the international boundary line; all of Dakota, Nebraska and Indian Country; all of Kansas, except a small southwestern portion, bounded north by the Arkansas River, west of the 100th meridian; all of Colorado north of the Arkansas River, and east of the Rocky Mountains; all of Wyoming east of the 106th meridian, and north of the 42d parallel, and all of Montana, Idaho, Washington and Oregon.

When the American Colonies of England became free, they were war-worn, and the thought of resumption of hos-

tilities with the British, for the sake of wild land, was distressing. Besides there was a party then, as now, favorable to a select sort of country, a conveniently compact territory, and especially a homogeneous people. It was feared a Republican form of government could not be maintained unless the people were much alike and well acquainted. There was, as now, a sense of alarm about foreigners coming across the Atlantic and endowed with as many rights as those born on the soil, and it was held to be disturbing that we expanded so rapidly as not to allow the older parts of the country to be perfected before going further to fare better or worse. There was, indeed, opposition not merely to immigration from Europe, but to emigration that had a tendency to found new cities rather than improve old ones, and clear fresh fields rather than go on with old ones. There was, altogether, a strong public opinion against the United States becoming a Great Country, because it was too much trouble, and Republicanism was so far untried that it was extra-hazardous to attempt too much. Hence the Ohio Valley might have been sacrificed—indeed, was in danger for a time, because the area of the then west, now the heart of the country, was so astounding that the people would be so widely scattered, it could not be possible to look after them. It took some time to find out that the people could manage themselves very well, and that thinly settled regions were, as a rule, those in which the spirit of unconquerable liberty and popular independence was as intense and intrepid as it was invincible. It is apparent, when we look on the map of North America, that we did not capture all the continent, and as we glance at the British possessions, we perceive that the narrowness of the margins, by which we were enabled to cover that which we have, might have become too narrow for the broad base of the

structure that is our country, and the mouth of the Mississippi might have eluded us as the mouth of the St. Lawrence has done. The lesson of our experience in annexing territory "adding farm to farm" is never to omit the improvement of an opportunity to "enlarge the area of freedom"—our freedom.

We never had occasion to regret the acquisition of land that we have annexed. In the Louisiana purchase we got more than twice as many square miles as we took with us from England when we organized ourselves to attend to our own affairs.

The rapidity of our growth, the unbounded provision thus far abundant for people, and the volume of immigration that poured riches, both of labor and capital, upon our shores, is displayed in a startling manner in the letter of Daniel Webster, Secretary of State, to Baron Hulsemann, in which the grand, old Secretary boasted that we had twenty-five millions of citizens, and that we should soon surpass the Austrian Empire in population!

Now we have three times the number Daniel Webster took pride in, and the foreigners who have landed here and made their homes with us and become Americanized by the mighty chemistry of the political atmosphere, joined to the potency of our soil and climate and institutions, so that the nativism that has occasionally been conspicuously ultra and active, providing instructive episodes, loses strength as the percentage of the native-born increases.

It is the annexation of continental land that has made the United States of to-day possible. Without this policy of prophecy and materialization of ambition, as traced through the chapters of this "Book of the Episodes of American History," and that too closely related to our affairs to be ignored, we would not be in the front-line position we have

attained among the nations, but cornered between the Alleghenies and the Atlantic, with Florida as Spanish as Cuba was; the mouth of the Mississippi and the vast valley itself the possession of some European power; the slope to the Pacific Mexican or British, and Texas, the France of America, dominating the Gulf of Mexico, the American Mediterranean, an independent republic or an invaluable colony under the protection of some sovereign beyond the seas, our place must have been, at best, that of a very respectable second-class power. We would not have been bounded west and east by oceans, and north and south by the Greater Lakes, and the most excellently envired Gulf of the globe. The masterful position we hold was hardly within the range of our own vision until, forced into war with Spain, to relieve the greatest, richest and fairest of American islands from the corrupt, cruel, and barbarous oppression, most inhuman, perverse, and remorseless, we sent a fleet from Hong Kong to add glory to our arms at Manila, and reinforced our pioneer ships from our shore of the Pacific, at the same time mustering squadrons in the ports of the peninsula and keys of Florida to blockade contested Cuba, the trap, baited with sugar, tobacco and customs-houses, in which the Spanish army was beleaguered. We have gone as far as we can on the continent, without unduly crowding our neighbors, whose friendliness we are profoundly interested in preserving and making more cordial, and fuller of sympathy than it has been. We have gained, partly in war and partly in peace, the land once belonging to Mexico that is most convenient and profitable to us and of least importance to Mexicans. Her bulk was in the way of our march of destiny, and it was no dishonor for her to part with a portion of her patrimony not vital to her nationality, and we bought

a great deal of it, paying a fair price. We can hardly say that our gain was her loss, for while unquestionably we were great gainers, her loss was not considerable, did not abate the energy or break the spirit of her people. Indeed, we seem, through the adjustments of battles and treaties, to have found the natural boundaries of the two nations, and we should dwell side by side, sister republics, with mutual good will. It would be something more than unkindly or ungenerous, it would be unprincipled, for us to covet more land from Mexico. Some day soon we shall have occasion, as our railroad systems are already united, to pool, with Mexico, our common interests in a railroad that will be grander as an accomplishment of Americans of North and South and Central Americas than the Russian road through Siberia, connecting with a highway of steel northern Europe and Asia, from the Baltic to the Yellow Sea.

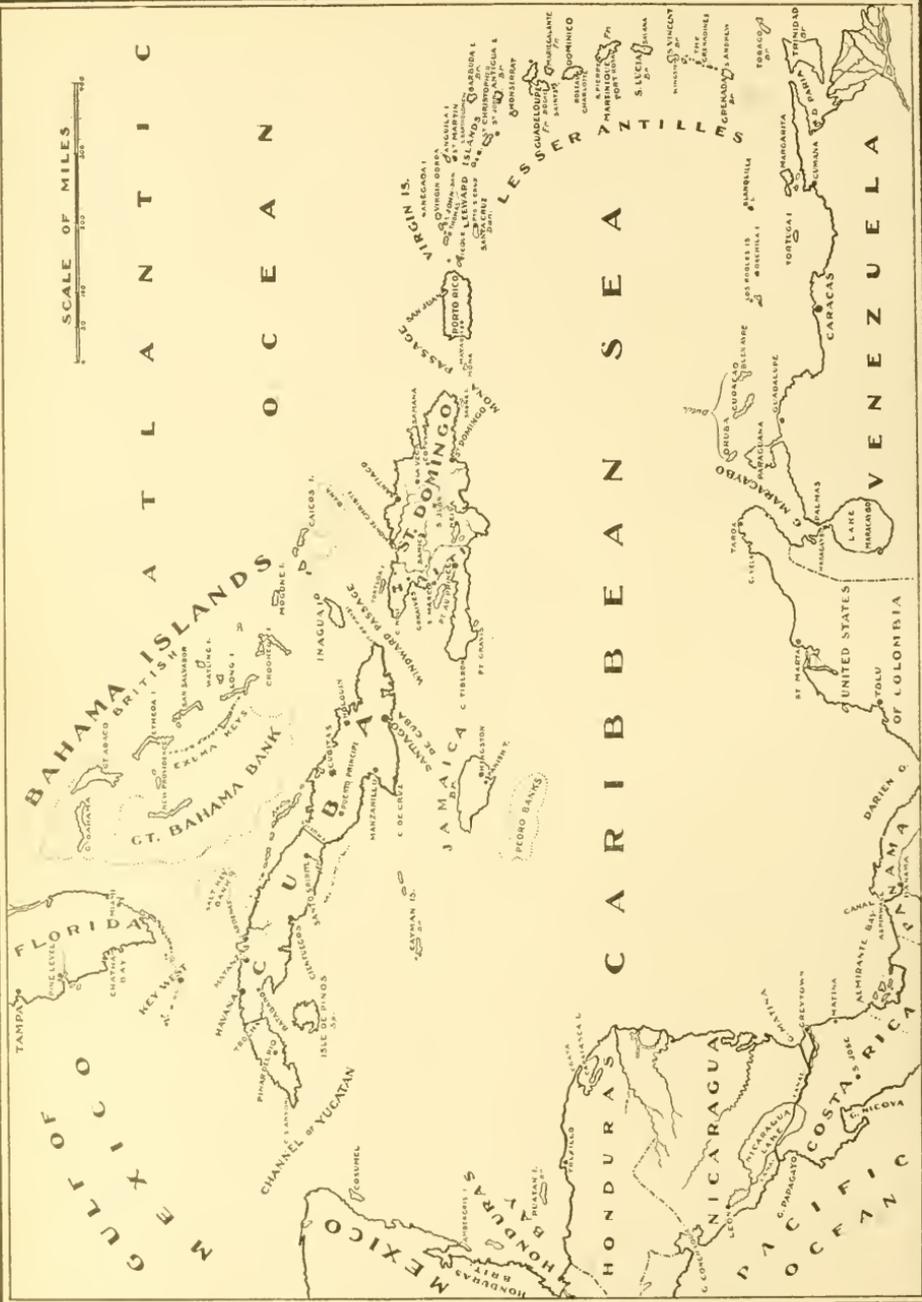
We mean a road that, beginning in Alaska, shall pass through British Columbia and our Pacific States and Mexico, and the more Central American States—the Isthmus of Darien—and penetrate the Andes, and fork in the heart of South America, strike the two oceans at Valparaiso and Montevideo.

This road is the missing link in the union of the American nations, and will prove of advantage to all in the relations of commerce and political association. We cannot, with a sense of justice or a calculation of profit, count upon further Southern aggrandizement in continental land. We look to the cultivation of amicable understandings and a better appreciation of obligations that are coincident and reciprocal with other American republics. Looking northward, we find, that in spite of the establishment of our nationality, the accumulation of landed resources by the generalship and statesmanship of George Washington and

George Rogers Clark; the commanding genius for accumulation by Thomas Jefferson, Andrew Jackson, and James K. Polk; the saving journey of the missionary from Oregon, who crossed the continent on one of the grandest missions any citizen has conceived and performed—the British Empire holds, in a firm grasp, a gigantic share of the continents, and we more and more highly estimate the value of those northern fields on which the sun makes up for long absence in winter with long shining in summer; the long, far-slanting, living sunlight, doing the work in weeks, that in lower latitudes requires the ripening rays of lingering months; and we put also in the catalogue of possessions, as the earth grows smaller and is flattened faster towards the poles, not only the golden wheat-fields, but the forests that are the timber resources of ancient peoples, brought at last within reach by the marvels of modern transportation.

The rivers, lakes and bays, peopled with incredible swarms of countless millions of food-fishes, the game that gives hunters the reputation of heroes, and the mines that are stored with almost all the minerals found essential to civilization, including gold that has made the Klondike a word that has the significance of California half a century ago, and guarantees the labor of mankind and the capital whose activity aids in industrial enterprise, against the scarcity of the metal that is most approved in money centres as the money that has the better qualifications. England's enormous American empire is our northern border land; but the thought of it no longer oppresses enlightened Americans, and we have ceased to regard, as menacing, the military and naval stations of Great Britain on the North Pacific, the north and south Atlantic and the Caribbean sea. England is our friend, if we care to take

SCALE OF MILES
 0 100 200 300 400 500



THE NICARAGUA CANAL AND THE WEST INDIES.



GOV. BLACK REVIEWING NEW YORK TROOPS.



GOV. HASTINGS ADMINISTERING OATH TO THE SIXTEENTH PENNA. VOLS.

BRYAN AND LEE WAITING ORDERS



THE RED CROSS IN CAMP



HOW THE BOYS LIVED



FIVE MINUTES FOR HARD TACK AT THE FRONT.



GETTING READY TO LEAVE FOR THE PHILIPPINES.

up the sword and scepter of empire. She has asked our sympathy in the issue raised in China by the order of military possession in the slowly declining and crumbling Chinese empire, displayed by Russia, Germany and France. The British sentiment as to China is legitimately based upon commercial supremacy. American statesmanship will not fail to respond to the friendliness of Great Britain. It comes opportunely. Our politics will lack statesmanship if it misses the comprehension of the auspicious conditions that prevail. We could hardly find, if we had our choice among nations, neighbors better disposed than Canada and Mexico. England has respected our claim upon Hawaii, and has given the potency of her ponderous inertia in opposition to the intervention—by the powers that countenanced and promoted the recent crushing of Greece by Turkey—in the war between our country and Spain. Lord Salisbury characterizes the nations of the earth, with reference apparently to our relations with Spain, as the living and the dead. The progressive development and decay of peoples and powers goes on with the regularity of the processions of the seasons and the planets. There are those that live and prosper, and those that perish. Spain was great and has declined by and because of, her colonies, and if she has a future of better days, it will be because the system so fatal through centuries, for her children and herself, is no more. Her health will be found in home rule and industries, and the application within the peninsula of the labors of her people on their native soil. She may be wise enough, some day, to take pride in the republics whose language, literature and traditions are her own. That is her best hope. The Spain that was arrogant in colonization, cruel in conquest and fierce in bigotry, must be no more before there can happen the benign

change of brighter temper and better times. We may, with confidence, anticipate that England will welcome us to Eastern Asia. With the Philippines in our possession, we must have sympathy with England in her contention for open ports in China; and Japan will see in us, since we added Hawaii, with these archipelagoes in the Pacific, the Aleutian, Hawaiian and the Philippines at our side, that we have become, as Lord Beaconsfield said England was, "a great Asiatic power."

When William H. Seward and Charles Sumner became responsible for the public opinion of their country for the purchase of Alaska, they were advancing on the right line, and in the lofty spirit of John Adams, who refused to give up the Ohio country to Great Britain, and they should share in the honors, forever due, those who have added land to the republic. They invaded the Arctic Zone and found there wealth for the generations of Americans to come, rivalling the endowment of the Indies, and gifted, too, with a stern beauty, not fatal as that of softer airs and fairer skies, but swelling to majesty with the opulence that nature yields to the hardy tribes of the sea and the mountains, and mighty streams that flow like Alf, the sacred river that ran "through channels measureless by man."

The American leaders of to-day will be equal to the occasion of accepting the opportunity of the age for the enlargement of the house the fathers built. The wings that have been added exceed, by far, the original plans, but the architecture is the same. If we should find islands in the tropics of America—according to the attractions of our institutions, energetic with liberty and radiant with glory, as they are, the taking of the goods the gods have provided would be in accord with the constitution and the higher laws that harmonize the universe, and the stately prece-

cedents that are the monumental testimony of the statesmanship that through the generations of American citizens has enlarged the domain of the republic, and expanded the area of the freedom that is the fruitfulness of orderly liberty.

One of the groups of islands still belonging to Spain, is the Canaries, on the north-western coast of Africa, and it would be an excellent position for us to hold near the entrance to the Mediterranean of the Old World. We have, in the Gulf of Mexico, our own central sea, and Cuba is the commanding island, intruding between Florida and Yucatan, and whether the waters of the Mississippi go to the ocean by the gulf stream or the Caribbean sea, they wash the shores of the beautiful island. As we add Cuba and Porto Rico to our annexed territories, we give Spain the one thing needful for her, the long-lost privilege of taking care of herself unembarrassed by colonies, that under her horrible system must be her enemies, and we make provision for the future Americans, of islands in African and Asiatic waters, and all the continents and zones north of the equator will yield us tribute. The American people will now have the beauties of all the climates and fruits of every tree that blooms for man, and the oceans will be reservoirs stored with fishes and highways for our ships, the Arctic and tropical forests flourishing on our own soil will yield their treasures of timber for our handiwork. The mountains, from Hawaii to the Philippines, and from Cuba and Hawaii to Alaska, will be as warehouses for the minerals for the coming time, which the drills shall reveal at depths hitherto unapproachable, and high explosives shall cleave the rocks that were once invulnerable, and reveal the amazing possession, the abounding globe contains for transformation by the science and labor of our race for ele-

vation and advancement. This is the ample promise that the seed of the righteous shall not want. Already the railroads have opened new and immeasurable wheatfields that white bread shall be the food of mankind. Once it was the sublimity of boastfulness to say, "No pent up Utica contracts our powers. The whole boundless continent is ours." We have not the whole continent under our feet, but the grandest breadth of goodland on earth, the property of our people. Imperial as is the domain, we have discovered that there are lines that limit us, and that if we have inherited the forethought of the fathers we must seek our share of the islands that are embraced by the seas, traversed now by swift steamers and made familiar, while there are wires spun through the mighty waters, from capital to capital. In the annexation of islands we are but conforming to the customs of the days in which we live. The whole world is wakeful to the voice of the millions calling for more land, for the enlightened nations, that the banners of civilization shall be borne forward triumphantly. The darkness that has brooded so long is chased away by the morning light, to which we must turn our faces uplifted to the exalted ideas that are the guiding stars of humanity.

The deep interests of the living nations, that are the greater people organized, in their colonies, is not phenomenal. It is evolved that the conquest of the barbarism, that still shadows so great a proportion of the earth, will be completed with the aid of the inventions that have more and more made man the master of nature and penetrated the mysteries of the regions that have so long awaited exploration. Only the fallen empires now fail to seek colonies. The instinct of the expansion of nations is evidence of vitality. Russia is subjugating Siberia with a railroad and seeking open gates to all the seas. Ports below the iron

line of frost, on the Pacific ; on the Persian Gulf, that opens upon the eastern Indies ; in the Mediterranean ; in the ocean that reaches from her northern border to the coast, where the rocks of Norway loom above the waste of waves, where the narrowing parallels of longitude define the contracting shape of our planet, and Asia, Europe and America are contracted upon a common centre. England has already surrounded the earth with her lands and her navy rides all the seas. Germany and France are eager for the absorption of Africa. China, Spain and Turkey are in decadence, and, as their fragments fall, they drift to the living nations and are vitalized. These are times of changes of transition. What have we, of the United States, to do, and what are we to be? Shall we emulate the fathers whose principles declared in precept and by example are the sources of our greatness? Shall we pause and accept the doom of the inert? Shall we be submissive to the theory that we shall grow no more? If we do, that day we commence to decline. It is not true that there is, in our system of government, no place for perpetual territories ; that we must be all states. The proposition that we are states or nothing might stand if we were a confederacy. We are a nation. Not one of the colonizing nations has a system for the government of colonies equal, for that purpose, to our territorial form of rule and regulation. "We may," as Ex-President Harrison says in his book, 'This Country of Ours' "give consideration to the quality as well as the quantity of the inhabitants of a territory." We may add that this is something we not only may, but must do. There is no reason assignable and satisfactory why we should not have, and hold forever, Hawaii, Cuba, Porto Rico, the Ladrões, the Philippines, perpetually as territories, admitting them as states if ever, only when evidence of compe-

tent Americanization would guarantee this course. Foremost in entering into statehood under this condition would be Cuba. As for the islands coming to us they would be, to our young men, what India is to the young men of Great Britain, lands of adventure, of enterprise, of promise of the supreme happiness that inspires, prepares and broadens manhood, gives us a new mission to walk abroad throughout the earth and preach our gospel to every people. We are of the mighty nations. Destiny has assigned duties. Our place is in the history that is to be, as it is on the map of the world, that of the Dominant power in the Americas, and if there are islands that belong to, and are protected by us over the seas and far away, there is the proclamation that a republic can be, in the greatest meaning of the word, imperial, and in height, significance, beneficent, glorious and potential beyond the scope of monarchies;—Rulers, exceeding kings in prerogative, as government by the people has a strength exceeding monarchies for no dynasty is so defended as that of the sovereignty of the majority, and no diviner right than the rights of man.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THE PARIS CONFERENCE AND THE TREATY OF PEACE.

Provisions of the Peace Protocol—Object of the War—America's Alternative—Spain Protests to our Occupation of the Philippines—Instructions to the Commissioners—Opening of the Peace Conference—Message of President McKinley to the President of France—Spanish Commissioners Staggered by our Demands—Threaten to Break Off Negotiations—Arbitration Proposed—Final Demands of the American Commissioners—Spain's Last Appeal to Europe—The Acceptance of Our Terms Under Protest—The Treaty of Peace—The Work of Our Commissioners—Other Peace Treaties—The President's Message—Its Effect on the Spaniards.

The Peace Protocol under which hostilities between the United States and Spain came to an end, provided for the immediate withdrawal of the Spanish troops from Cuba, Porto Rico, and the other Spanish Islands in the West Indies.

By the surrender of Santiago earlier arrangements had been made for the transportation, to Spain, of the Spanish Army stationed there. Santiago had already become, *de facto*, an American possession.

President McKinley promptly appointed the American members of the two evacuation boards, to meet the Spanish members, and arrange for the prompt delivery of Porto Rico and Cuba to the United States military authorities.

In Porto Rico it was only a question of a few weeks, occupied in transporting back to the Peninsula the Spanish troops located there, before the American flag could be raised on the Island. This occurred on October 18th.

At Havana the case was decidedly different. Spain

showed a tendency to hold on to the Island of Cuba until after the Peace Commissioners, at Paris, had completed their work and signed the Treaty.

The distinct object of the war from the beginning was to expel the Spaniards from Cuba. They, of course, expected to lose the Island, but they also knew that if they chose to make resistance they could involve the United States in a bloody and costly campaign. They apparently had no intention of provoking a renewal of hostilities, yet they undoubtedly instructed General Blanco and their other high officials, in Cuba, to yield little or no ground until the Paris Treaty had been signed, expecting thereby to bring pressure on the United States to possibly force a few concessions.

One of the main points on which the Spanish Commissioners insisted most strenuously was the Cuban Debt. There was also a controversy over the disposition of artillery and other munitions of war, in Cuba, and of the floating dock in the Harbor of Havana. Other contentions were over Spanish Property rights in public buildings in Cuba. The most serious and difficult contention, however, was the question of the disposition of the Philippine Islands. The Spanish fleet being annihilated, and the Philippine insurgents being determined, under no circumstances, to submit to a re-establishment of Spanish rule, there was nothing left to the juridical question of sovereignty rights. The argument on the part of the Spanish Commissioners was that Spain had lost none of her prestige in the Philippines. The Spaniards were seriously opposed to relinquishing sovereignty, and several times threatened to break off the negotiations.

If the United States Government could have been assured that the remaining islands of the Philippine group

would be properly governed, our Peace Commissioners would not have insisted on the retention of more than the Island of Luzon, including the City of Manila. There was not a sufficient guarantee, however, to assure a safe and stable government over any part of the Philippines not yet under American protection, and it was therefore impossible to take any other course than to annex the whole group.

The Spanish Government had given its Commissioners very precise instructions. They were to do their utmost to have it admitted that there could be no disputing the rights of Spanish sovereignty over Manila, the Island of Luzon, the whole of the Philippine group and the rest of her Oriental possessions, outside of the naval station which Spain would cede to the United States in the Ladrões.

The American Commissioners, however, received from President McKinley instructions from which they could not depart. They were as follows :

1. Spain must cede absolute sovereignty over the whole Island of Luzon.
2. The other Islands of the Archipelago will be replaced under the Dominion of Spain, on condition that a liberal government is accorded to the inhabitants.
3. Complete separation of Church and State in the Philippines.
4. Spain cannot cede any other Islands in the group to any foreign power without the consent of the United States.
5. The United States shall enjoy, for all time, the same commercial privileges as the most favored nations, not excepting Spain herself.

The American Commissioners arrived at Paris Sep-

tember 26th, and on the following day held a private meeting to arrange all matters of detail.

On the same day the Commissioners of Spain put in an appearance at the gay Metropolis, and preparations were made for the prompt opening of the Peace Conference October 1st.

On the occasion of the presentation of the American Peace Commissioners to the President of France, the following friendly message from President McKinley was presented to the French Executive:

"On this occasion when the Commissions of the United States and Spain are about to assemble at the capital of France to negotiate Peace, and when the Representatives of this Government are receiving the hospitality and good will of the Republic, I beg to tender you my most friendly and personal greeting, and the assurance of my grateful appreciation of your kind courtesies to the American Commissioners.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY."

The first, second and third meeting of the Commissioners scarcely penetrated the surface of the proposed negotiations that were to be undertaken.

The fourth session, however, marked the Spanish presentment regarding the Cuban Debt.

The Spanish Peace Commissioners also attempted to wheedle the American Commissioners into an agreement to declare against our sovereignty over Cuba.

The American Commissioners expressed the purpose of the United States to take the entire group of the Philippine Islands; and to assume such proportion of the Philippine debt as had been spent for the benefit of the Islands or their inhabitants, in public works, improvements and permanent betterments; and that the United States would not assume any part of the Philippine debt incurred by Spain for the furtherance of military or naval operations to quell the insurrections of the natives.

The Spanish Commissioners were staggered by our demand for the retention of the Philippines. They asked for time to weigh the proposition. They were coldly courteous and seemingly unflinching in their non-surrender attitude respecting these Islands.

During the Peace Conference the President of the Spanish Commission, Senor Montero Rios, became seriously ill, which threatened at one time an indefinite adjournment.

The Spanish Commissioners' reply to our demands for the cession of the Philippines pointed out that Spain would strenuously resist any infringement of her rights without compensation.

The American Commissioners expressed their readiness to allow Spain the retention of the minor Islands of the Archipelago.

The Spanish Commissioners positively declined to entertain any such proposition.

It was said that the Spanish plenipotentiaries had made up their minds, in the event of the United States adverting to the Philippine proposition, to decline signing the Act of Peace, to break off negotiations, and to call upon the civilized nations to witness the abuse of force to which they would be subjected, and the violation of the provisions set forth in the Washington Protocol. Unless some changes were made in the terms advanced by America, Spain would refuse to sign a Treaty, thus allowing the United States to seize the Archipelago by force; and would then lay before the Great Powers the statement of her powerlessness to resist the ruthless actions of the Americans.

Senator Gray protested against the attitude of his colleagues in the Commission. It was said that he was seriously opposed to the retention of the whole Philippine

group, and to the proceedings in general, and that his open objection was prevented only by his reluctance to be the cause of a division of opinion on the American side.

The Spanish Commissioners had insisted on their own interpretation of the Peace Protocol, and objected to the discussion of Spain's sovereignty in the Philippines, claiming that the Protocol only referred to "the control, disposition and government."

Following is the official text of the Article in the Protocol relating to this subject :

"The United States will occupy and hold the City, Bay and Harbor of Manila, pending the conclusion of a Treaty of Peace which shall determine the control, disposition and government of the Philippines."

The Spanish Commissioners held that this did not cede absolute sovereignty over the entire Archipelago ; while the American Commissioners maintained that the word "disposition," in the Protocol, fully expressed the claim and right to a total cession.

Up to this time there had been no money compensation offered. The clerical force of the American Peace Commission was often kept busy during a whole night translating and preparing the Spanish memorandums. While the translators and typewriters were rendering the Spanish argument into printed English, the counsel for the American Commission studied it sheet by sheet, making notes of records, to be examined, and of law points bearing on the questions in hand ; and when the American Commissioners gathered for their daily session the Spanish documents lay before them in English, ready for consideration, and accompanied by data bearing upon them. No unofficial person could get knowledge of the contents of the documents presented by the Spanish Commissioners until after the sessions were closed.

The Spanish Commissioners proposed to submit the Philippine clause of the Protocol to the interpretation of arbitration. The American Commissioners declined to entertain such a proposition.

On November 21st, the President of the Spanish Peace Commission, Senor Montero Rios, refused to continue negotiations. At two o'clock on the afternoon of the same day the Peace Commissioners again met, and the final demands were given to the Spanish Commissioners. This note declared that the United States must have the entire Philippine Archipelago. For a Treaty cession of the Islands the Americans offered to Spain \$20,000,000. It was further declared that it was the purpose of the United States to maintain the Philippine Islands as an "open door" to the world's commerce. On the terms named the United States proposed a mutual relinquishment for all claims for indemnity, national or personal, subsequent to the outbreak of the last Cuban insurrection. It also was declared that the United States desired to treat on the religious freedom of the Caroline Islands, as agreed upon between the United States and Spain in 1886; to acquire, by purchase, one of the Caroline Islands for an American naval station; and to receive the privilege of cable-landing rights at other places in Spanish jurisdiction; and to revive certain Spanish-American Treaties, as heretofore enforced.

November 28th was fixed as the date on which the United States Commissioners desired a definite response to these propositions and all other subjects at issue.

President Rios became indignantly angry at these new proposals, and he protested vehemently against greedy aggressions and the "dominant power policy" of the United States' demands.

Spain's pride and debts made her formal acceptance

difficult. She did not want to openly repudiate her obligations in signing away that which did not belong to her and which she had mortgaged. Spain was in great fear regarding the future of the Canaries and the Balearic Islands. It was at one time thought probable that the United States would make a demand for at least the Canaries.

As to the American proposition, the Spanish Commissioners wanted more definite information: "Whether, if the Philippines are ceded, America takes them free of all subsisting rights and obligations or not ; whether the American offer, to give Spanish ships and goods the same privileges in the Philippines to which American ships and goods are entitled, covers the vessels and goods of other nations in accordance with the "open door" policy; whether in return for the release, by Spain, of prisoners charged with political offences connected with the insurrections in Cuba and Porto Rico, the United States would liberate the Spanish prisoners held by General Tozallo and the Cubans; what previous treaties referred to in the American Note are to be revived, and where does the United States want landing rights for cable stations, whether in the Spanish Colonies or in the Peninsula ?

Whether the American suggestion, that if Spain will finally and definitely accept the propositions, conference on other points would follow, meant, that if not accepted the conference would not continue.

Regarding the second question the American Commissioners replied that, while America will admit general commerce free, Spain alone would have the privilege of inter-coasting trade.

In relation to the cable-landing rights, America had no intention of asking for a cable station on the Peninsula.

On November 25th the Spanish Commissioners asked the Americans whether a proposal to the terms suggested would be considered. The propositions read as follows :

1. Spain will relinquish sovereignty over Cuba, and cede Porto Rico and the other Islands of the Spanish West Indies, the whole of the Ladrone Islands, and the whole of the Philippine Archipelago, for \$100,000,000.

2. Spain will cede a strong island in the Caroline Group, giving the United States the right to lay cables on any of those Islands or any of the Ladrone Islands, and will also cede the Philippine Archipelago, except the southernmost island for \$50,000,000.

3. Spain will relinquish sovereignty over Cuba, cede the Philippines, Porto Rico and other West India Islands, and Guam, as indemnity for the War expenses of the United States and the losses to American citizens, and the two countries shall agree to submit to arbitration what debts and obligations of a colonial character ought to be assumed by the receiving country.

Spain further proposed a joint sovereignty in the Carolines, the Canaries and the Philippines, or she would cede certain territory in the Carolines and the Canaries, and the control of the Philippines to the United States under a nominal Spanish sovereignty. The United States to pay no money on account of such cession.

The Spanish Government through M. Cambon, the French Ambassador at Washington, had protested against the capitulation of Manila, before the Peace Conference opened, contending that it was invalid because it occurred two days after the signing of the Peace Protocol. Spain also requested that the customs receipts, at Manila, be devoted as heretofore to the payment of interest and the amortization of the Philippine Loan of 1897. It further

insisted that the United States should compel Aguinaldo to release his Spanish prisoners.

It was thought at one time that Spain would decline to continue negotiations and accept the inevitable, the United States taking the Philippines by conquest and thus terminating the differences between the two countries, without the signing of a treaty of peace.

The proposed visit of the German Emperor to Cadiz, on his return from the Holy Land, was grasped by Spain as an opportunity to bring some pressure to bear in her favor. It was the last straw.

On Monday November 28th, Spain accepted our Terms of Peace. It was the last day of the time limit set by the American ultimatum.

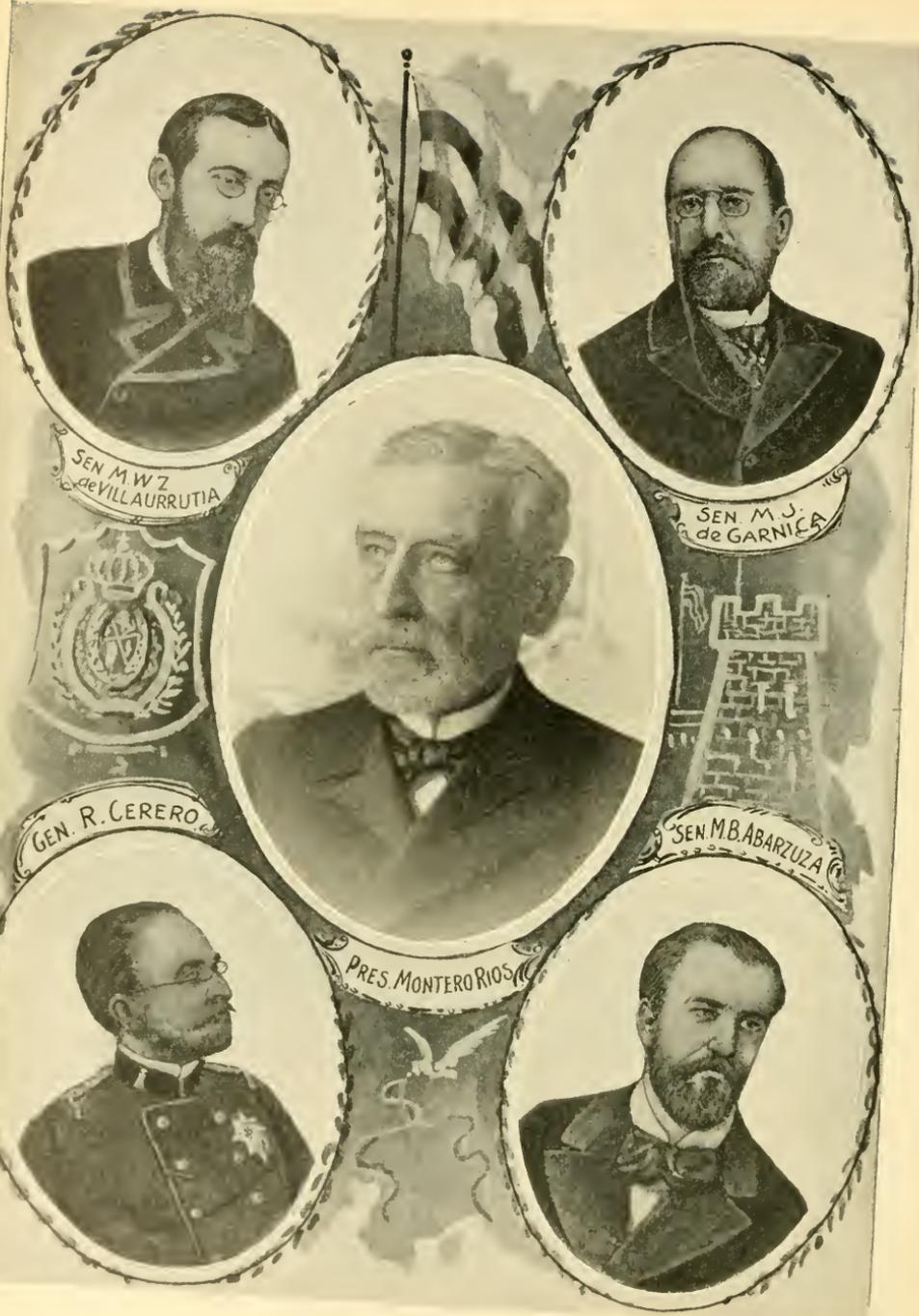
The joint Peace Commission met promptly at two o'clock in the afternoon. The Spanish Commissioners immediately announced the acceptance of the American demands for a settlement of Peace as provided by the Protocol.

The Spanish Commissioners declared, that they had been advised by their government to reply that the American propositions were inadmissible on legal principles, and were not a proper compromise, but that all diplomatic resources, on the Spanish part being exhausted, and the Spanish Commission asked to accept or reject the propositions, Spain, inspired by reasons of patriotism and humanity, and to avoid the horrors of war, resigns herself to the power of the victor. She accepts the offered conditions in order to conclude a treaty of peace.

The American demands included the acquisition of the whole of the Philippines and the Sulu group for \$20,000,000, and it was also understood that the United States should have the first option on the Caroline Islands.



THE AMERICAN PEACE COMMISSIONERS.



SEN M. W. Z.
de VILLALBA

SEN M. J.
de GARNICA

GEN. R. CERERO

PRES. MONTERO RIOS

SEN. M. B. BARBUZA

THE SPANISH PEACE COMMISSIONERS.

When Senor Montero Rios, President of the Spanish Commission handed the reply to the interpreter, the document was so short that less than ten minutes were consumed in rendering it into English. This document concluded with the statement, that throughout the controversy Spain had the strongest argument, and that as between positions so diametrically opposed the American offer of \$20,000,000 was not a fair sum; nevertheless Spain desired to avoid any further effusion of blood and further disorder and had, therefore, concluded to accept the American offer unconditionally, and thus bow to the superior power of the victor.

The secretaries were then empowered to prepare the Treaty Articles, embodying the cession of Cuba, Porto Rico and the Philippines, and the payment by the United States, of \$20,000,000, for submission to the meeting to be held November 30th.

A good deal of annoyance had been caused the State Department by the publication, in the Paris papers, of a report that the American Commissioners had largely increased their final demands, and had added the Sulu Islands as a part of the eastern territory to be ceded to the United States. As a matter of fact there had been no extension of our demands, but the Sulu group was recognized to be a part of the Philippine system, and was therefore specifically included in the original demand.

Following is a copy of the Treaty of Peace as signed at Paris by the representatives of the United States and Spain.

The preamble is formal and brief. The Treaty itself follows :

ARTICLE I.—Spain renounces all right of sovereignty over Cuba. Whereas said isle when evacuated by Spain is to be occupied by the United States, the

United States, while the occupation continues, shall take upon themselves and fulfill the obligations which, by the fact of occupation, international law imposes on them for the protection of life and property.

ARTICLE II.—Spain cedes to the United States the island of Porto Rico and the other islands now under her sovereignty in the West Indies and the Isle of Guam in the archipelago of the Marianas or Ladrones.

ARTICLE III.—Spain cedes to the United States the archipelago known as the Philippine Islands, which comprise the islands situated between the following lines. A line which runs west to east near the twentieth parallel of north latitude across the centre of the navigable channel of Bashee, from the 118th to the 127th degrees of longitude east of Greenwich. From here to the width of the 127th degree of longitude east to the parallel of 4 degrees 45 minutes of north latitude. From here following the parallel of north latitude 4 degrees 45 minutes to its intersection with the meridian of longitude 119 degrees 35 minutes east from Greenwich. From here following the meridian of 119 degrees 35 minutes east to the parallel of latitude of 7 degrees 40 minutes north. From here following the parallel of 7 degrees 40 minutes north to its intersection with 116 degrees longitude east. From here along a straight line to the intersection of the tenth parallel of latitude north with the 118th meridian east, and from here following the 118th meridian to the point whence began this demarcation. The United States shall pay to Spain the sum of \$20,000,000 within three months after the interchange of the ratifications of the present treaty.

ARTICLE IV.—The United States shall, during the term of ten years, counting from the interchange of the ratifications of the treaty, admit to the ports of the Philippine Islands Spanish ships and merchandise under the same conditions as the ships and merchandise of the United States.

ARTICLE V.—The United States, on the signing of the present treaty, shall transport to Spain at their cost the Spanish soldiers whom the American forces made prisoners of war when Manila was captured. The arms of these soldiers shall be returned to them. Spain, on the interchange of the ratifications of the present treaty, shall proceed to evacuate the Philippine Islands, as also Guam, on conditions similar to those agreed to by the commissions named to concert the evacuation of Porto Rico and the other islands in the Western Antilles according to the protocol of August 12, 1898, which shall continue in force until its terms have been completely complied with. The term within which the evacuation of the Philippine Islands and Guam shall be completed shall be fixed by both governments. Spain shall retain the flags and stands of colors of the warships not captured, small arms, cannon of all calibres, with their carriages and accessories, powders, munitions, cattle, material and effects of all kinds belonging to the armies of the sea and land of Spain in the Philippines and Guam. The pieces of heavy calibre which are not field artil-

lery, mounted in fortifications and on the coasts shall remain in their places for a period of six months from the interchange of the ratifications of the present treaty, and the United States may during that period buy from Spain said material if both governments arrive at a satisfactory agreement thereon.

ARTICLE VI.—Spain, on signing the present treaty, shall place at liberty all prisoners of war and all those detained or imprisoned for political offences in consequence of the insurrections in Cuba and the Philippines and of the war with the United States. Reciprocally the United States shall place at liberty all prisoners of war made by the American forces, and shall negotiate for the liberty of all Spanish prisoners in the power of the insurgents in Cuba and the Philippines. The Government of the United States shall transport, at their cost, to Spain, and the Government of Spain shall transport, at its cost, to the United States, Cuba, Porto Rico and the Philippines conformably to the situation of their respective dwellings, the prisoners placed or to be placed at liberty in virtue of this article.

ARTICLE VII.—Spain and the United States mutually renounce by the present treaty all claim to national or private indemnity, of whatever kind, of one government against the other, or of their subjects or citizens against the other government, which may have arisen from the beginning of the last insurrection in Cuba, anterior to the interchange of the ratifications of the present treaty, as also to all indemnity as regards costs occasioned by the war. The United States shall judge and settle the claims of its citizens against Spain, which she renounces in this article.

ARTICLE VIII.—In fulfillment of Articles I, II and III, of this treaty Spain renounces in Cuba and cedes in Porto Rico and the other West Indian Isles, in Guam and the Philippine archipelago, all buildings, moles, barracks, fortresses, establishments, public roads and other real property which by custom or right are of the public domain, and as such belong to the crown of Spain. Nevertheless, it is declared that this renouncement or cession, as the case may be, referred to in the previous paragraph, in no way lessens the property or rights which belong by custom or law to the peaceful possessor of goods of all kinds in the provinces and cities, public or private establishments, civil or ecclesiastical corporations or whatever bodies have judicial personality to acquire and possess goods in the above-mentioned, renounced or ceded territories, and those of private individuals, whatever be their nationality.

The said renouncement or cession includes all those documents which exclusively refer to said renounced or ceded sovereignty which exist in the archives of the peninsula. When these documents existing in said archives only in part refer to said sovereignty, copies of said part shall be supplied, provided they be requested. Similar rules are to be reciprocally observed in favor of Spain with respect to the documents existing in the archives of the

before-mentioned islands. In the above-mentioned renunciation or cession are comprised those rights of the crown of Spain and of its authorities over the archives and official registers, as well administrative as judicial, of said islands which refer to them and to the rights and properties of their inhabitants. Said archives and registers must be carefully preserved, and all individuals, without exception, shall have the right to obtain, conformably to law, authorized copies of contracts, wills and other documents which form part of notarial protocols or which are kept in administrative and judicial archives, whether the same be in Spain or in the islands above mentioned.

ARTICLE IX.—Spanish subjects, natives of the peninsula, dwelling in the territory whose sovereignty Spain renounces or cedes in the present treaty, may remain in said territory or leave it, maintaining in one or the other case all their rights of property, including the right to sell and dispose of said property or its produces; and, moreover, they shall retain the right to exercise their industry, business or profession, submitting themselves in this respect to the laws which are applicable to other foreigners. In case they remain in the territory they may preserve their Spanish nationality by making in a registry office within a year after the interchange of the ratifications of this treaty, a declaration of their intention to preserve said nationality. Failing this declaration, they will be considered as having renounced said nationality and as having adopted that of the territory in which they may reside. The civil rights and political status of the native inhabitants of the territories hereby ceded to the United States shall be determined by Congress. ❧

ARTICLE X.—The inhabitants of the territories whose sovereignty Spain renounces or cedes shall have assured to them the free exercise of their religion.

ARTICLE XI.—Spaniards residing in the territories whose sovereignty Spain cedes or renounces shall be subject in civil and criminal matters to the tribunals of the country in which they reside, conformably with the common laws which regulate their competence, being enabled to appear before them in the same manner and to employ the same proceedings as the citizens of the country to which the tribunal belongs must observe.

ARTICLE XII.—Judicial proceedings pending on the interchange of the ratifications of this treaty in the territories over which Spain renounces or cedes sovereignty shall be determined conformably with the following rules: First, sentences pronounced in civil cases between individuals or in criminal cases before the above-mentioned date, and against which there is no appeal or annulment conformably with the Spanish law, shall be considered as lasting and shall be executed in due form by competent authority in the territory within which said sentences should be carried out. Second, civil actions between individuals which on the aforementioned date have not been decided shall

continue their course before the tribunal in which the lawsuit is proceeding or before that which shall replace it. Third, criminal actions pending on the aforementioned date before the supreme tribunal of Spain against citizens of territory which, according to this treaty, will cease to be Spanish, shall continue under its jurisdiction until definite sentence is pronounced, but once sentence is decreed its execution shall be intrusted to competent authority of the place where the action arose.

ARTICLE XIII.—Literary, artistic and industrial rights of property acquired by Spaniards in Cuba, Porto Rico, the Philippines and other territories ceded on the interchange of ratifications of this treaty shall continue to be respected. Spanish scientific, literary and artistic works which shall not be dangerous to public order in said territories shall continue entering therein with freedom from all customs duties for a period of ten years dating from the interchange of the ratifications of this treaty.

ARTICLE XIV.—Spain may establish consular agents in the ports and places of the territories whose renunciation or cession are the object of this treaty.

ARTICLE XV.—The government of either country shall concede for a term of ten years to the merchant ships of the other the same treatment as regards all port dues, including those of entry and departure, lighthouse and tonnage dues, as it concedes to its own merchant ships not employed in the coasting trade. This article may be repudiated at any time by either government giving previous notice thereof six months beforehand.

ARTICLE XVI.—Be it understood that whatever obligation is accepted under this treaty by the United States with respect to Cuba is limited to the period their occupation of the island shall continue, but at the end of said occupation they will advise the government that may be established in the island that it should accept the same obligations.

ARTICLE XVII.—The present treaty shall be ratified by the Queen Regent of Spain and the President of the United States, in agreement and with the approval of the Senate, and ratifications shall be exchanged in Washington within a period of six months from this date or earlier if possible.

The signing of this Treaty on the 10th of December, 1898, took place two hundred and thirty three days after the ultimatum given Spain was adopted by Congress, on the 19th of April, 1898.

The last act of the war was the surrender of Manila on the 15th of August.

The Peace Commission met October 1st, 1898, and in forty-one days the Treaty of Peace was completed for presentation to the Senate of the United States and the Cortes of Spain for ratification.

There was some uneasiness at the delays of the Peace Negotiations at Paris, but it must be borne in mind that we had to treat with a tardy nation.

"Spain," said Franklin in a letter to Jay "has taken four years to consider whether she should treat with us or not. Give her forty, and in the meantime let us mind our own business."

Neither the President of the United States nor the King of Spain has the power to conclude a Treaty of Peace. They can direct the formulation of a convention based upon a protocol, and the agreement must then be presented to the national legislatures for approval.

The Spanish constitution provides that no territory shall be ceded without the consent of the legislative branch, which must be convened before a treaty can be completed. On the other hand our constitution provides that no treaty shall be binding in this country until it has been ratified by a two-third vote in the Senate.

When the Treaties of Peace were concluded after the Revolutionary War the preliminary articles were signed at Paris, November 30th, 1782. They were ratified by Congress, April 15, 1783. A final or definitive Treaty was not signed until September 3, 1783.

Washington issued his farewell address to the army, November 2, 1783, and the army was formally disbanded on the following day. Nearly a year passed between the signing of the preliminary Peace Treaty and the dissolution of the American army.

The battle of New Orleans was fought two weeks after

the Peace agreement between the United States and Great Britain had been signed at Ghent. The Treaty was signed December 24, 1814. It did not reach New York until February 11, 1815. In the meantime the unnecessary battle of New Orleans had been fought, as well as the naval battle between the United States frigate "President" and four British ships. Such was the slowness of internal communications in those days that desultory hostilities were kept up for several days, even after the arrival of the Treaty of Peace in New York.

In the war with Spain our army, under General Merritt, assisted by Admiral Dewey's squadron, captured the City of Manila after the Peace protocol had been signed and the order for the suspension of hostilities had been issued. There was some fighting in Porto Rico after the armistice had been declared owing to the impossibility of promptly communicating with our Commanders there.

In the Mexican War the granting of an armistice from August 21, to September 7, 1847, by General Scott to the Mexicans after the Battle of Cherubusco, was prophetic of peace, but the formal Peace Treaty was not signed until February 2, 1848, and ratified May 19 of the same year. In this instance there does not appear to have been a preliminary treaty, the purpose of which is to set forth the general terms of peace and to note items to be settled in a final treaty.

In the Civil War there was no Peace Treaty for the reason that there was no recognizable power with which the United States could deal after the collapse of the Confederacy.

Peace Treaties become binding upon the Powers signing them from the day of signing, but it is laid down by authorities on international law that when the war has been

conducted on the sea or in distant regions, the treaty should contain a stipulation, that captures made between the day of signing and actual ratification of the treaty shall be restored. It is a principle of international law that when a Power transfers, in a treaty of peace, some of its territory to the victor, the fealty or allegiance of the inhabitants of the transferred territory to the flag of the conqueror is not guaranteed. Under the law of nations there is nothing to prevent an exodus of all the people of the transferred territory if they choose to go. The modern doctrine is that allegiance is founded wholly on consent.

The President's reference, in his annual message to Congress, to the ill-fated "Maine," greatly irritated the whole Spanish nation, especially the high officials, and the Peace Commissioners; as it was considered an attack on the honor of the whole Spanish nation. And Senor Montero Rios vigorously protested, declaring that Spain had yielded to superior force, and invoking the conscience of the nations against the abuse, of which she was made the victim. This protest was for the purpose of record and consisted of an argument in support of every concession demanded by the Spaniards and which the Americans refused, some of them pre-emptorily and without an opportunity for discussion. The protest concluded as follows:

"But these cessions which we are obliged to make teach us less than the insult which has been inflicted on our nation by President McKinley in his message. We again protest solemnly against the accusation hurled against us in connection with the "Maine," and we intend to again submit the question to an international tribunal comprised of England, France and Germany, to determine who shall bear the responsibility of the catastrophe."

CHAPTER XL.

THE PEACE TREATY RATIFIED.

The Treaty in the Senate—Its Managers Were Three of the Men Who Made It—Considered Secretly in Executive Session—Senatorial Arguments For and Against Expansion—Annexation of the Philippines Pronounced Unconstitutional and Revolutionary—Ratified, Signed by the President, and Sent to Madrid—Rev. Dr. McConnell's Sensible Comments—President McKinley's Defense of the Administration's Foreign Policy.

The Treaty of Peace was sent to the Senate by the President, without comment, on January 4th, upon the re-assembling of that body after the holiday recess. It was referred at once, and without debate, to the Committee on Foreign Relations.

Owing to the absence of Vice-President Hobart, it so happened that Peace Commissioner Frye was presiding over the Senate when the Treaty which he had helped to negotiate was brought in from the White House, while Peace Commissioner Davis, as Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations, first moved for the executive session, and then, after the doors were closed, moved to refer the treaty to the Committee on Foreign Relations and that it be printed with the accompanying documents; and Peace Commissioner Gray stood ready to support him.

Thus the three Senatorial Peace Commissioners managed the reception of the treaty by the Senate, as they afterward managed the campaign for its ratification.

The treaty remained in the hands of the Committee until January 11th, on which date Chairman Davis reported the document favorably and without amendment. A propo-

sition was made to have the discussion in public sessions of the Senate, but Senators Frye, Davis and Gray all opposed this idea, saying that their experience in formulating the treaty had convinced them that much would come up in the discussion that could not properly be given to the public. This united opinion was eventually endorsed by a considerable majority ; and, as a result, the details of the secret deliberations in the Senate Chamber will never be officially made known to the public at large.

In the meantime, upon motion of Senator Hoar, the President was requested to communicate to the Senate all instructions given by him to the Commissioners who negotiated the Treaty at Paris, and all reports made by them, either to the President or to the State Department ; which request was subsequently granted.

Prior to this, various resolutions had been offered in the Senate, looking to the eventual modification of the terms of the Treaty or to the limitation in advance of some of its provisions. One of these resolutions, offered by Senator Vest before the holiday recess, declared that, under the Constitution of the United States, no power exists to acquire territory to be held and governed permanently as colonies, *i. e.*, without the purpose of eventual admission to Statehood. This proposition had been eloquently and forcibly combated by Senator Platt (Conn.) in an elaborate and lengthy speech ; and as vehemently supported by Senator Caffery, who argued that the government of the United States was inhibited from incorporating the recently acquired territory into the United States ; that Congress had power to govern any acquired territory only with the ultimate purpose of erecting it into States ; that people of such territory cannot be held despotically by Congress, and that it would be unwise and dangerous

to incorporate into the United States, as citizens, people who differ widely in their habits, customs and religion from the people of this country. Senator Hoar's notable speech in support of the Vest resolution was made on January 11th, and attracted universal interest.

On January 7th Senator Mason introduced a resolution asserting that "the Government of the United States of America will not attempt to govern the people of any other country in the world without the consent of the people themselves, or subject them by force to our dominion against their will."

Mr. Mason subsequently supported this sentiment in a lengthy speech, but announced from the first his intention to vote for the ratification of the Peace Treaty.

Another resolution, offered by Senator Bacon on January 11th, was as follows :

1. That the government and people of the United States have not waged the recent war with Spain for conquest and for the acquisition of foreign territory, but solely for the purpose set forth in the resolution of Congress making the declaration of said war, the acquisition of such small tracts of land or harbors, as may be necessary for governmental purposes being not deemed inconsistent with the same.

2. That in demanding and in receiving the concession of the Philippine Islands, it is not the purpose of the government of the United States to secure and maintain dominion over the same as a part of the territory of the United States or to incorporate the inhabitants thereof as citizens of the United States or to hold said inhabitants as vassals or subjects of this government.

3. That whereas at the time of the declaration of war by the United States against Spain and prior thereto, the inhabitants of the Philippine Islands were actively engaged in a war with Spain to achieve their independence, and whereas said purpose and the military operations thereunder have not been abandoned, but are still being actively prosecuted thereunder, therefore, in recognition and in obedience to the vital principle announced in the great declaration that "governments derive just powers from the consent of the governed," the government of the United States recognizes that the people of the Philippine Islands of a right ought to be free and independent; that with this view and to give effect to the same, the government of Spain to relinquish its

authority and government in the Philippine Islands, and to withdraw its land and naval forces from the Philippine Islands and from the waters thereof.

4. That the United States hereby disclaim any disposition or intention to exercise sovereignty, jurisdiction or control over said islands, and assert their determination, when an independent government shall have been duly erected therein entitled to recognition as such, to transfer to said government, upon terms which shall be reasonable and just, all rights secured under the cession by Spain, and to thereupon leave the government and control of the islands to the people.

The chief contention of the opponents of the Treaty centered in the principle that "all just powers of government are derived from the consent of the governed;" it being argued therefrom that the assumption of American sovereignty over the Philippines, without the formal consent of a majority of their dusky inhabitants, would be a gross violation of our Constitution and a violent breaking away from established precedents. The fact that the consent of the inhabitants of the Louisiana, California and Alaska territories was never received or even asked, when these possessions came under control of the United States, seemed to have entirely escaped the notice of these well-meaning but probably misguided objectors.

A somewhat different phase of the matter was touched upon by Senator McLaurin when, on January 13th, in his speech supporting the Vest resolution, he deplored the possibility that mongrel and semi-barbarous races might be incorporated into our body politic. He said, in part :

Of one thing I am sure—the American people will never consent for these inferior races to flood our land and add another complication to the labor problem. To permit cheap Asiatic labor to come into competition with our intelligent, well-paid labor will be to degrade and lower our civilization.

If we embark in a colonial system, it means the inauguration of a despotic power in Washington. It means a large standing army that will not only be used to rule outlying territories with an iron hand, but that, sooner or later, will be used at home to overawe and override the popular will. An imperialistic democracy, like an atheistic religion, is an impossible hybrid.

Better than wealth, better than "a territory upon which the sun never sets," is the transmission to our children of a republic built upon the indestructible rock of constitutional government.

On January 14th a resolution was introduced, by Senator Hoar, which called forth much surprised comment. The exact words of that resolution follow :

Resolved, That the people of the Philippine Islands of right ought to be free and independent ; that they are absolved from allegiance to the Spanish crown, and that all political connection between them and Spain is and ought to be totally dissolved, and that they have, therefore, full power to do all acts and things which independent States may do ; that it is their right to institute a new government for themselves, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness ; and that with these rights the people of the United States do not propose to interfere.

This resolution could be considered only as a direct acknowledgment of the independence of the Philippine Islands, although no recognized native government was in existence there, and such pretense of a government as had been organized represented only a small part of the people on a single island. Its adoption would have been logically followed by the withdrawal of all United States military and naval forces, leaving the people of the islands, native and foreign alike, to the horrors of anarchy and pillage. In offering this resolution, however, the venerable Senator distinctly stated that he had put it in the form of a simple resolution, which, if adopted, would not go to the House for concurrence nor to the President, and therefore would not have the force of law.

Determined efforts were made by the anti-expansionists—led by Senators Gorman, Vest and Bacon, from the Democratic side, and Senators Hoar and Hale, Republicans—to induce Chairman Davis to consent to the adoption of some sort of a resolution renouncing all intention

of the permanent occupation of the Philippines by the United States, and promising ultimate sovereignty to the Filipinos. Many of the opposition expressed a willingness to vote for the ratification of the Treaty without amendment, if such a resolution were first adopted.

Senator Davis, however, refused to consent to this plan, asserting that such action would at once set the governments of Europe at work to gain control of the islands, with the result that the sacrifice of life and treasure already made in the Philippines would be in vain, and the \$20,000,000 paid to Spain would be simply thrown away. The Senator further stated that such a resolution, though passed by the Senate, would be in no wise binding upon the United States, but could have nothing more than a moral effect, and that of a character most injurious to our national prestige and permanent welfare.

A crisis was reached on January 24th, when the opposition demanded that a day be set for voting on the ratification, stating that they (the anti-expansionists) were ready and willing to measure strength with their opponents, and did not propose to be charged with delaying the final decision. On the same day Senor Agoncillo made his third attempt to secure official recognition, calling at the State Department and leaving a communication which, though its contents were not then made public, was believed to be a formal demand for a distinct statement as to the intentions of the Administration with respect to the Philippines, and a protest against the assembling there of additional American troops.

The challenge of the anti-expansionists was promptly accepted; and, in due time, it was announced that the vote would be taken on Monday, February 6th. The speech of Senator Lodge, in favor of prompt ratification, made a

strong impression upon all hearers. In the course of his remarks the Senator said :

If the American people were disposed to tyranny, injustice and oppression, a Constitution would offer but a temporary barrier to their ambition ; and the reverence for the Constitution and for law and justice grows out of the fact that the American people believe in freedom and humanity, in equal justice to all men and in equal rights before the law, and while they so believe the great doctrines of the Declaration of Independence and of the Constitution will never be in peril.

There is only one question demanding actual and immediate decision now before Congress and the people, and that is whether the treaty with Spain shall be ratified or not. I have heard no opposition expressed to any part of the treaty except such portion of it as relates to the Philippines, and that, therefore, is the sole point upon which I desire to touch. In our war with Spain we conquered the Philippines, or, to put it more exactly, we destroyed the power of Spain in those islands and took possession of their capital. The treaty cedes the Philippines to us. It is wisely and skillfully drawn. It commits us to no policy, to no course of action whatever in regard to the Philippines.

When that treaty is ratified we have full power and are absolutely free to do with those islands as we please, and the opposition to its ratification may be summed up in a single sentence—that the American people and the American Congress are not to be trusted with that power and with that freedom of action in regard to the inhabitants of those distant islands. Every one of the resolutions thus far offered on this subject is an expression of distrust in the character, ability, honesty and wisdom of the American people and an attempt to make us promise to be good and wise and honest in the future and in our dealings with other people. It is a well-meant effort to make us give bonds to Fate by means of a Congressional resolution.

We must either ratify the treaty or reject it, for I cannot suppose that anyone would seriously advance the proposition that we should amend the treaty in such a way as to make pledges to Spain, and Spain alone, and give bonds to Spain, and Spain alone, for our good conduct in a matter which will be wholly our own to decide. Let us look, then, at the two alternatives. Suppose we ratify the treaty. The islands pass from the possession of Spain into our possession without committing us to any policy. I believe we can be trusted as a people to deal honestly and justly with the islands and their inhabitants thus given to our care. What our precise policy shall be I do not know, because I for one am not sufficiently informed as to the conditions there to be able to say what it will be best to do ; nor, I may add, do I think anyone is. But I believe that we shall have wisdom not to attempt to incorporate those islands with our body politic, or make their inhabitants part

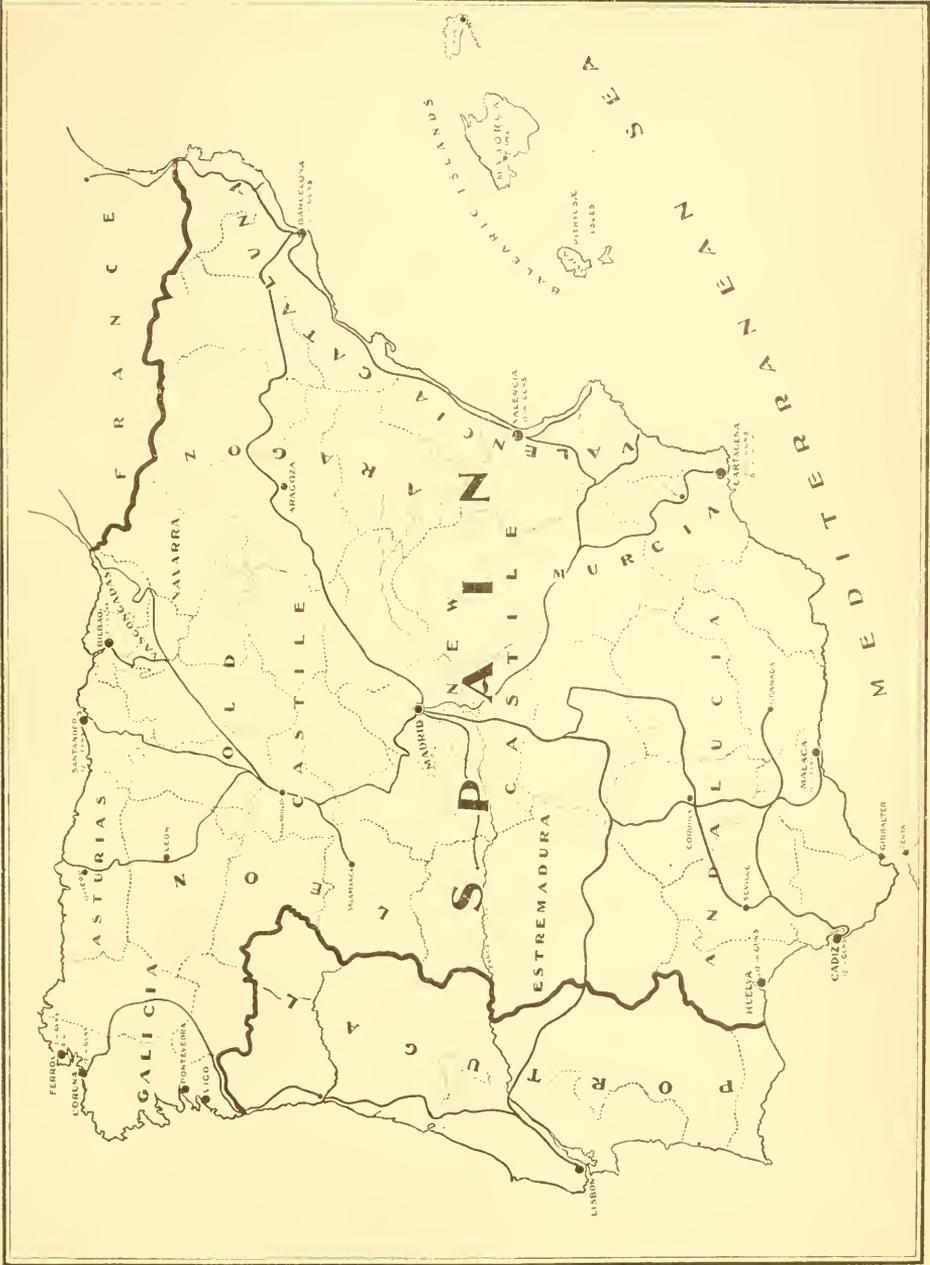
of our citizenship, or set their labor alongside of ours and within our tariff to compete in any industry with American workmen.

It is for us to decide the destiny of the Philippines, not for Europe; and we can do it alone and without assistance.

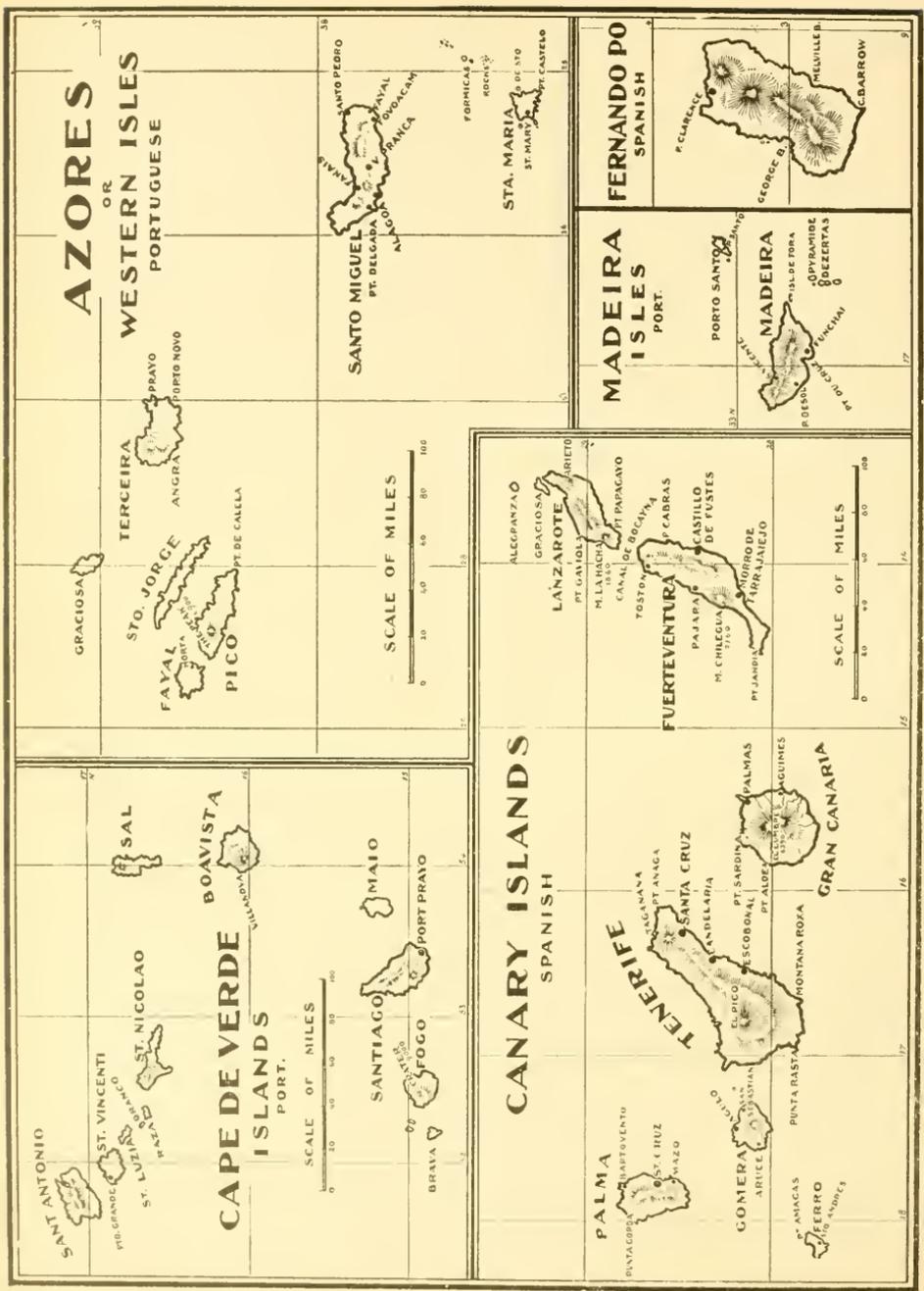
Take, now, the other alternative. Suppose we reject the treaty or strike out the clause relating to the Philippines. That will hand the islands back to Spain, and I cannot conceive that any American should be willing to do that. Suppose we reject the treaty, what follows? Let us look at it practically. We continue the state of war, and every sensible man in the country, every business interest, desires the re-establishment of peace in law as well as in fact. At the same time we repudiate the President and his action before the whole world, and the repudiation of the President in such matter as this is, to my mind, the humiliation of the United States in the eyes of civilized mankind and brands us as a people incapable of great affairs or of taking rank where we belong, as one of the greatest of the great world Powers.

On January 30th, in response to the formal request already noted, the President sent to the Senate the correspondence on file in the State Department bearing upon the Peace Treaty, and it was read in executive session. The documents included numerous telegrams, letters and reports for almost every day the Commissioners were in Paris.

One of the first cablegrams from the President instructed the Commissioners to demand the cession of Luzon Island only, of the Philippines, and he told them that full sovereignty should come with it. The principal interest among the Senators attached to the President's instructions to insist upon the cession of the Island of Luzon, and after that in the decision to take the entire group of Islands. This latter development appeared, from the correspondence, to be a growth, and the suggestion was made by the Commissioners to the President as the result of occurrences at Paris after the arrival there of the Commissioners. In his dispatch concerning Luzon the President said there was but one alternative: The United States must either take the island and assume sovereignty, or return it to

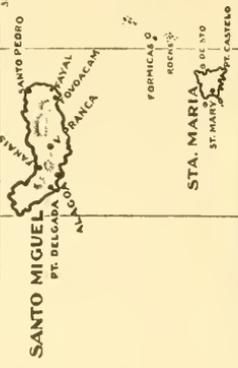
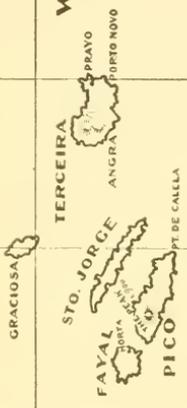


THE SPANISH PENINSULA.



AZORES

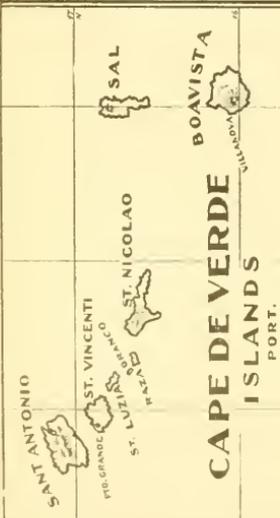
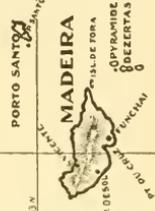
OR
WESTERN ISLES
PORTUGUESE



FERNANDO PO SPANISH



MADEIRA ISLES PORT.



CANARY ISLANDS SPANISH



THE CANARY ISLANDS AND OTHER GROUPS.

Spain ; and of the two courses he preferred the former. Spain was from the first unwilling to cede any of the Philippines, and she made especial objection to letting go of Luzon alone. The documents showed that the American Commissioners, with the exception of Senator Gray, had contended that to take Luzon and leave the other islands of the Archipelago in the hands of the Spaniards would be to invite innumerable complications with other nations, and especially with Europe and with Spain. Much stress was laid upon the probability of future trouble with Spain. With Luzon under American administration, there would soon be such a vast improvement, they wrote, that the other islanders would grow more and more rebellious, and with Spain's oppressive methods of government, we would soon again find that we had another Cuba at another door. Furthermore, there would be constant filibustering, and we should find ourselves spending millions to preserve a state of neutrality, just as we did in the case of Cuba prior to our declaration of war on account of that island. General Merritt's testimony on this point was cited, and was made the reason for much of the argument in favor of taking the entire group.

The President does not appear to have at any time given explicit instructions to consummate the bargain by taking all the Philippines, but rather, after hearing a full explanation, to have left the matter to the discretion of the Commissioners.

Practically, the entire controversy was over the Philippines and the question of assuming responsibility for the payment of the Spanish bonds, for which the Cuban revenues were pledged. The Spaniards from the first insisted upon an indemnity for the Philippines, and the correspondence showed that after the proposition to pay \$20,000,000 was

made, the negotiations proceeded much more smoothly, and were soon brought to a close.

The American Commissioners appear to have been of one mind as to the wisdom of taking over all the Philippines, with the exception of Senator Gray, who, notwithstanding he signed the convention, held out to the last against the policy of acquiring these islands. In one notable dispatch he pleaded zealously against the policy as unpatriotic, un-American and inconsistent with probity and good statesmanship. During this session Senator Gray took occasion to announce that the logic of the situation had induced him to sign the Treaty, and that he was now prepared to defend it as a wise conclusion of a most delicate diplomatic undertaking.

On February 1st Senator Lindsay offered the following joint resolution :

Resolved, That the acquisition by the United States through conquest, treaty or otherwise, of territory not adjacent to and geographically part of the continent of North America carries with it no constitutional or moral obligation to admit said territory or any portion thereof into the Federal Union as a State or States.

That it is against the policy, traditions and interests of the American people to admit States erected out of such non-American territories or portions thereof into our Union of American States, at any time or under any conditions.

That the United States accept from Spain the cession of the Philippine Islands, with the hope that the people of those islands may demonstrate their capacity to establish and maintain a stable government capable of enforcing law and order at home, and of discharging the international obligations resting on separate and independent States, and with no expectation or desire of permanently holding those islands as colonies, or subject provinces, or of compelling their people against their consent to submit to the authority of the United States after they shall demonstrate their capacity of self-government, as herein defined, the government of the United States to be the judge of such capacity.

Senator Sullivan subsequently offered the following as a substitute for the Bacon resolution :

Resolved, That the ratification of the pending treaty of peace with Spain

shall in no wise determine the policy to be pursued by the United States in regard to the Philippines, nor shall it commit this government to a colonial policy ; nor is it intended to embarrass the establishment of a stable, independent government by the people of those islands whenever conditions make such proceedings hopeful of success and desirable results.

The next day, February 2d, Senator Spooner made a brilliant speech in favor of ratification, urging that it was the duty of the Senate to legally end the Spanish war and forever rid the Philippines and Cuba of even nominal Spanish rule, leaving the settlement of all other problems to the wisdom and discretion of Congress and the American people. He said that the inhabitants of those islands should not be treated as subjects of a policy of conquest and subjugation, but guaranteed all the blessings of liberty and independent government, should future conditions make it possible.

On February 3d, Senator Harris offered the following resolution, which he asked might lie on the table :

Resolved, That the United States hereby disclaims any disposition or intention to exercise permanent sovereignty, jurisdiction or control over the Philippine Islands, and assert their determination, when a stable and independent government shall have been erected therein, entitled to recognition as such, to transfer to said government, upon terms which shall be reasonable and just, all rights secured under the cession of Spain, and to thereupon leave the government and control of the islands to their people.

At the beginning of the next day's session, Senator Allen offered the following resolution :

Resolved, That the Senate of the United States, in ratifying and confirming the treaty of Paris, does not commit itself or the Government to the doctrine that the islands acquired by virtue of the war with Spain are to be annexed to or to become a part of the United States, and that the difference in the language of said treaty as respects the island of Cuba and its inhabitants, and the island of Porto Rico and the Philippine Islands and their inhabitants, shall not be construed or be held to be a difference in effect, but that it is the intention and purpose of the Senate in ratifying said treaty to place the inhabitants of the Philippine Islands and Porto Rico in exactly the same position as respects their relations to the United States as are the inhabitants of Cuba.

Later in the day Senator Wolcott made a speech of twenty minutes duration, which exceeded in eloquence and forceful utterance anything that had been said, in the open sessions of the Senate, in favor of ratification of the Treaty. Without mincing words, he called attention to the fact that—barring Great Britain, our brothers in blood and in the enterprise of universal civilization—this Republic has not a friend in any nation of the earth; and that because the government of Great Britain stood shoulder to shoulder and touching elbows with this country, we were saved from complications which might have endangered the national life and prosperity.

The eloquent Senator asserted that every member of the Senate would cheerfully and confidently trust his dearest interest to the calm judgment of their eminent colleagues, Davis, Frye and Gray, and continued :

We all know that the interests of the nation were well intrusted to their wisdom and discretion. If they had brought us a treaty taking only a coaling station in the Philippines, I would have voted to ratify that treaty. If they had brought us a treaty taking none of the Philippines, I would have voted to ratify their work. Since they have brought us a treaty taking all of those islands, I shall vote to ratify the treaty. Our fathers gave to the Senate this important power, with the full belief that there would be no partisans in the Senate when matters affecting the general welfare of the Republic were involved. Within the last week we have been treated to a spectacle which is humiliating to every patriotic citizen. Party politics are invoked here in a matter of gravity affecting our nation. It is disgraceful, and the people of the country will vent their righteous wrath upon the perpetrators of this worse than folly.

Every Senator here knows that the ratification of the treaty leaves to the Congress the final disposition of the Philippines. No intermediary resolutions are necessary. We have a patriotic duty to perform, which can be supplemented with patriotic duties which we can subsequently perform. I appeal, in the name of our common country, for the ratification of this treaty; in order that we may be free from threatened complications, which the rapacious and greedy European enemies of this country are planning and furthering.

On February 6th, all conflicting or emendatory resolu-

tions having been voted down, the Senate ratified the Treaty of Peace, as formulated by the Peace Commissioners and reported by the Senate Committee on Foreign Relations, without amendment. Eighty-four Senators were present and voting. Six were absent or paired. The vote stood 57 for ratification and 27 against, being a plurality of only one over the requisite two-thirds.

The vote in detail was as follows :

FOR THE TREATY.

N. W. ALDRICH (<i>Rep.</i>), Rhode Island.	WM. LINDSAY (<i>Dem.</i>), Kentucky.
W. V. ALLEN (<i>Pop.</i>), Nebraska.	H. C. LODGE (<i>Rep.</i>), Mass.
W. B. ALLISON (<i>Rep.</i>), Iowa.	G. W. MCBRIDE (<i>Rep.</i>), Oregon.
LUCIEN BAKER (<i>Rep.</i>), Kansas.	S. D. MCENERY (<i>Dem.</i>), Louisiana.
J. C. BURROWS (<i>Rep.</i>), Michigan.	J. L. MCLAURIN (<i>Dem.</i>), S. C.
MARION BUTLER (<i>Pop.</i>), N. Carolina.	JAMES McMILLAN (<i>Rep.</i>), Mich.
THOS. H. CARTER (<i>Rep.</i>), Montana.	LEE MANTLE (<i>Rep.</i>), Montana.
W. E. CHANDLER (<i>Rep.</i>), N. H.	W. E. MASON (<i>Rep.</i>), Illinois.
C. D. CLARK (<i>Rep.</i>), Wyoming.	J. T. MORGAN (<i>Dem.</i>), Alabama.
A. S. CLAY (<i>Dem.</i>), Georgia.	KNUTE NELSON (<i>Rep.</i>), Minn.
S. M. CULLOM (<i>Rep.</i>), Illinois.	BOIES PENROSE (<i>Rep.</i>), Penna.
C. K. DAVIS (<i>Rep.</i>), Minnesota.	GEO. C. PERKINS (<i>Rep.</i>), Cal.
W. J. DEBOE (<i>Rep.</i>), Kentucky.	E. W. PETTUS (<i>Dem.</i>), Alabama.
S. B. ELKINS (<i>Rep.</i>), West Virginia.	O. H. PLATT (<i>Rep.</i>), Connecticut.
C. W. FAIRBANKS (<i>Rep.</i>), Indiana.	T. C. PLATT (<i>Rep.</i>), New York.
C. J. FAULKNER (<i>Dem.</i>), W. Va.	J. C. PRITCHARD (<i>Rep.</i>), N. C.
J. B. FORAKER (<i>Rep.</i>), Ohio.	M. S. QUAY (<i>Rep.</i>), Pennsylvania.
W. P. FRYE (<i>Rep.</i>), Maine.	JONATHAN ROSS (<i>Rep.</i>), Vermont.
J. H. GALLINGER (<i>Rep.</i>), N. H.	W. J. SEWELL (<i>Rep.</i>), New Jersey.
J. H. GEAR (<i>Rep.</i>), Iowa.	GEO. L. SHOUP (<i>Rep.</i>), Idaho.
GEORGE GRAY (<i>Dem.</i>), Delaware.	JOSEPH SIMON (<i>Rep.</i>), Oregon.
M. A. HANNA (<i>Rep.</i>), Ohio.	J. C. SPOONER (<i>Rep.</i>), Wisconsin.
H. C. HANSBROUGH (<i>Rep.</i>), N. Dak.	W. M. STEWART (<i>Pop.</i>), Nevada.
W. A. HARRIS (<i>Pop.</i>), Kansas.	W. V. SULLIVAN (<i>Dem.</i>), Miss.
J. R. HAWLEY (<i>Rep.</i>), Connecticut.	H. M. TELLER (<i>Rep.</i>), Colorado.
J. P. JONES (<i>Pop.</i>), Nevada.	J. M. THURSTON (<i>Rep.</i>), Nebraska.
R. R. KENNEY (<i>Dem.</i>), Delaware.	F. E. WARREN (<i>Rep.</i>), Wyoming.
J. H. KYLE (<i>Pop.</i>), South Dakota.	G. L. WELLINGTON (<i>Rep.</i>), Md.
	E. O. WOLCOTT (<i>Rep.</i>), Colorado.

AGAINST THE TREATY.

A. O. BACON (<i>Dem.</i>), Georgia.	T. S. MARTIN (<i>Dem.</i>), Virginia.
WILLIAM B. BATE (<i>Dem.</i>), Tenn.	R. Q. MILLS (<i>Dem.</i>), Texas.
J. H. BERRY (<i>Dem.</i>), Arkansas.	J. L. MITCHELL (<i>Dem.</i>), Wisconsin.
DONELSON CAFFERY (<i>Dem.</i>), La.	H. D. MONEY (<i>Dem.</i>), Mississippi.
HORACE CHILTON (<i>Dem.</i>), Texas.	E. MURPHY, JR. (<i>Dem.</i>), New York.
F. M. COCKRELL (<i>Dem.</i>), Missouri.	SAMUEL PASCO (<i>Dem.</i>), Florida.
JOHN W. DANIEL (<i>Dem.</i>), Virginia.	R. F. PETTIGREW (<i>Rep.</i>), S. Dakota.
A. P. GORMAN (<i>Dem.</i>), Maryland.	J. L. RAWLINS (<i>Dem.</i>), Utah.
EUGENE HALE (<i>Rep.</i>), Maine.	W. N. ROACH (<i>Dem.</i>), N. Dakota.
H. HEITFELD (<i>Pop.</i>), Idaho.	JAMES SMITH, JR. (<i>Dem.</i>), New Jersey.
GEO. F. HOAR (<i>Rep.</i>), Massachusetts.	B. R. TILLMAN (<i>Dem.</i>), S. Carolina.
J. K. JONES (<i>Dem.</i>), Arkansas.	T. B. TURLEY (<i>Dem.</i>), Tennessee.
S. R. MALLORY (<i>Dem.</i>), Florida.	GEO. F. TURNER (<i>Pop.</i>), Washington.
GEORGE G. VEST (<i>Dem.</i>), Missouri.	

ABSENT AND PAIRED.

F. J. CANNON (<i>Rep.</i>), Utah.	} FOR {	S. M. WHITE (<i>Dem.</i>), California.
J. L. WILSON (<i>Rep.</i>), Washington.		AGAINST.
REDFIELD PROCTOR (<i>Rep.</i>), Vt.	} FOR {	D. TURPIE (<i>Dem.</i>), Indiana.
G. P. WETMORE (<i>Rep.</i>), R. I.		AGAINST.

The Treaty was signed by the President on February 10th, in the presence of his private secretary and members of his family, but without ceremony of any sort. The document was then returned to the Department of State, whence it was dispatched to the French Ambassador for transmission to Madrid, there to receive the last signature required to place it in full force and effect.

Analysis of the Senate's vote on February 6th reveals the fact that in this notable contest party lines were largely effaced. Old war-horses of the Republican party stood shoulder to shoulder with dyed-in-the-wool Democrats. This indicates—as every true American desires to believe—that all differences were honest differences, and that private or partisan ends were not considered. Time will prove the wisdom or unwisdom of our course, from a purely

selfish and practical standpoint. That due regard for our duty as a nation in the very forefront of civilization compelled the assumption of the obligations thrust upon us by the treaty, admits of no dispute.

Discussion of the expansion question has brought out expressions of opinion from a large number of men who are rarely heard from on national issues. This is especially true of ministers. Some of the best arguments have come from clergymen, who are usually debarred by habit and custom from taking part in the determination of political issues. The accession of this class to the debaters on expansion has added largely to the interest of the discussion and to the information of the public, and it has also aided in keeping the debate good-humored and free from suspicion of partisan bias. This is strikingly shown in the common-sense speech of the Rev. S. D. McConnell, D.D., of Brooklyn, in a discussion of the expansion question before the Hamilton Club of that city. Concerning the constitutional phase, he said :

One reason why I have no patience with the constitutional objection is that familiarity breeds contempt, and I am so familiar with it in ecclesiastical matters. It happens again and again in the Church that when the Church is concerned with a certain problem, with an entirely new situation which the fathers never dreamed of and never could have conceived or provided for, we are always confronted with the objection that the fathers did not do so. There are always those who are not willing that the custom of the fathers should be changed. I have observed, however, that after the discussion is over, and the discussion is usually long drawn out, the Church proceeds to do precisely the thing that has to be done and the fathers have to take care of themselves.

There have been a good many learned treatments of the constitutional side of expansion which have given to the public less light than these few words of Dr. McConnell. He brushes aside, with an everyday illustration, the fetish that the Constitution is an absolutely perfect instrument

and made for all time, and that its letter must be inviolably adhered to, no matter what the changed conditions and demands are. The Constitution of the United States was not framed under any such delusion, nor was it intended to stand as a bar to the progress of the nation. The people revere it, but they do not understand that it was made to hamper them.

The "purchase of sovereignty" phase of the expansion question was aptly and forcefully treated by Dr. McConnell. On this point he said :

Nor have we paid \$20,000,000 for the sovereignty of these islands. That is not the way we gained sovereignty over the Philippines. We never paid for it \$20,000,000 or any other money, in any other sense. We obtained it at the mouths of Dewey's guns. For what now do we propose to give this \$20,000,000? To buy lands? Nobody ever thought of such a thing. It is given to Spain in our spirit of magnanimity. Although we have the supreme right, the final right as recognized among men, and might exercise it immediately, we say to Spain: As you have expended \$20,000,000 for these people, we will give it back to you.

This common-sense view of the subject ought to satisfy the conscientious scruples of those who are trying to construct a bugbear out of the claim that this country has "purchased sovereignty" in the Philippine Islands. The United States is not purchasing sovereignty in the Philippines any more than it did in Louisiana and Florida when it paid France and Spain a good many millions of dollars for those territories.

In closing his speech, Dr. McConnell touched on one phase of the expansion question which has not been treated. It is the attitude in which some men are placing themselves, and the harm they are doing their own influence. Dr. McConnell said :

I wish the men who have been our leaders in the past could be persuaded to take a sane view of the situation now. Men whom we have learned to respect

as the leaders of reform seem to be standing still, gazing hopelessly at the procession as it moves by. They seem to think the whole population wrong. They have a right to. They have a right to say so, once, twice or ten times, if they wish. But I wish they could realize it would be wiser not to say it the eleventh time. We will want men to be our leaders in the problems of the future, and they are placing themselves outside of the possible. These men are opposed to what seems to be the whole present movement of things. They are doing themselves a great injustice.

Probably the best defense of the policy of expansion, with special regard to our Asiatic possessions, will be found in the address made by the President himself on February 16, 1899, at the reception in his honor at Paul Revere Hall, Boston. On this occasion Mr. McKinley said, in part :

We hear no complaint of the relations created by the war between this government and the islands of Cuba and Porto Rico. There are some, however, who regard the Philippines as in a different relation ; but, whatever variety of views there may be on this phase of the question, there is universal agreement that the Philippines shall not be turned back to Spain. No true American consents to that. Even if unwilling to accept them ourselves, it would have been a weak evasion of manly duty to require Spain to transfer them to some other Power or Powers, and thus shirk our own responsibility. Even if we had had, as we did not have, the power to compel such a transfer, it could not have been made without the most serious international complications.

Such a course could not be thought of. And yet, had we refused to accept the cession of them, we should have had no power over them, even for their own good.

We could not discharge the responsibilities upon us until these islands became ours, either by conquest or treaty. There was but one alternative, and that was, either Spain or the United States in the Philippines. The other suggestions—first, that they should be tossed into the arena of contention for the strife of nations ; or, second, be left to the anarchy and chaos of no protectorate at all—were too shameful to be considered. The treaty gave them to the United States.

Could we have required less and done our duty ? Could we, after freeing the Filipinos from the domination of Spain, have left them without government and without power to protect life or property or to perform the international obligations essential to an independent State ? Could we have left them in a state of anarchy and justified ourselves in our own consciences or before the

tribunal of mankind? Could we have done that in the sight of God and man?

Our concern was not for territory or trade or empire, but for people whose interests and destiny, without our willing it, had been put in our hands. It was with this feeling that, from the first day to the last, not one word or line went from the Executive in Washington to our military and naval commanders at Manila or to our Peace Commissioners at Paris that did not put as the sole purpose to be kept in mind, first after the success of our arms and the maintenance of our own honor, the welfare and happiness and the rights of the inhabitants of the Philippine Islands.

Did we need their consent to perform a great act for humanity? We had it in every aspiration of their minds, in every hope of their hearts. Was it necessary to ask their consent to capture Manila, the capital of their islands? Did we ask their consent to liberate them from Spanish sovereignty or to enter Manila Bay or destroy the Spanish sea-power there? We did not ask these; we were obeying a higher moral obligation which rested on us, and which did not require anybody's consent. We were doing our duty by them with the consent of our own consciences and with the approval of civilization. Every present obligation has been met and fulfilled in the expulsion of Spanish sovereignty from their islands, and while the war that destroyed it was in progress we could not ask their views.

Nor can we now ask their consent. Indeed, can anyone tell me in what form it could be marshaled and ascertained until peace and order, so necessary to the reign of reason, shall be secured and established? A reign of terror is not the kind of rule under which right action and deliberate judgment are possible. It is not a good time for us to be liberal or to submit important questions concerning liberty and government to the liberated while they are engaged in shooting down their rescuers.

We have now ended the war with Spain. The treaty has been ratified by more than two-thirds of the Senate of the United States, and by the judgment of nine-tenths of its people. No nation was ever more fortunate in war or more honorable in negotiations in peace.

Spain is now eliminated from the problem. It remains to ask what we shall do now. I do not intrude upon the duties of Congress or seek to anticipate or foretell its action. I only say that the treaty of peace, honorably secured, having been ratified by the United States, and, as we confidently expect, shortly to be ratified in Spain, Congress will have the power, and I am sure the purpose, to do what in good morals is right and just and humane for these peoples in distant seas.

It is sometimes hard to determine what is best to do, and the best thing to do is oftentimes the hardest. The prophet of evil would do nothing, because he flinches at sacrifice and effort: and to do nothing is easiest and involves

the least cost. On those who have things to do there rests a responsibility which is not on those who have no obligations as doers:

If the doubters were in a majority there would, it is true, be no labor, no sacrifice, no anxiety and no burden raised or carried; no contribution from our ease and purse and comfort to the welfare of others, or even to the extension of our resources to the welfare of ourselves. There would be ease; but alas! there would be nothing done.

But grave problems come into the life of a nation, however much men may seek to avoid them. They come without our seeking; why, we do not know, and it is not always given us to know; but the generation on which they are forced cannot avoid the responsibility of honestly striving for their solution. We may not know precisely how to solve them; but we can make an honest effort to that end, and if made in conscience, justice and honor, it will not be in vain.

The future of the Philippine Islands is now in the hands of the American people. Until the treaty was ratified or rejected, the Executive Department of this Government could only preserve the peace and protect life and property. That treaty now commits the free and enfranchised Filipinos to the guiding hand and the liberalizing influences, the generous sympathies, the uplifting education, not of their American masters, but of their American emancipators. No one can tell to-day what is best for them or for us. I know no one at this hour who is wise enough or sufficiently informed to determine what form of government will best subserve their interests and our interests, their and our well-being.

If we knew everything by intuition—and I sometimes think that there are those who believe that if we do, they do—we should not need information; but, unfortunately, most of us are not in that happy state. The whole subject is now with Congress, and Congress is the voice, the conscience and the judgment of the American people. Upon their judgment and conscience can we not rely? I believe in them, I trust them. I know of no better or safer human tribunal than the people.

Until Congress shall direct otherwise, it will be the duty of the Executive to possess and hold the Philippines, giving to the people thereof peace and order and beneficent government; affording them every opportunity to prosecute their lawful pursuits, encouraging them in thrift and industry; making them feel and know that we are their friends, not their enemies; that their good is our aim, that their welfare is our welfare, but that, neither their aspirations nor ours can be realized until our authority is acknowledged and unquestioned.

That the inhabitants of the Philippines will be benefited by this Republic is my unshaken belief. That they will have a kindlier government under our guidance, and that they will be aided in every possible way to be self-respecting and self-governing people, is as true as that the American people love

liberty and have an abiding faith in their own government and in their own institutions.

No imperial designs lurk in the American mind. They are alien to American sentiment, thought and purpose. Our priceless principles undergo no change under a tropical sun. They go with the fiat :

" Why read ye not the changeless truth,
The free can conquer but to save ?"

If we can benefit these remote people, who will object? If in the years of the future they are established in government under law and liberty, who will regret our perils and sacrifices? Who will not rejoice in our heroism and humanity? Always perils, and always after them safety; always darkness and clouds, but always shining through them the light and the sunshine; always cost and sacrifice, but always after them the fruition of liberty, education and civilization.

I have no light or knowledge not common to my countrymen. I do not prophesy. The present is all-absorbing to me; but I cannot bound my vision by the bloodstained trenches around Manila, where every red drop, whether from the veins of an American soldier or a misguided Filipino, is anguish to my heart, but by the broad range of future years, when that group of islands, under the impulse of the year just past, shall have become the gems and glories of those tropical seas, a land of plenty and of increasing possibilities, a people redeemed from savage indolence and habits, devoted to the arts of peace, in touch with the commerce and trade of all nations, enjoying the blessings of freedom, of civil and religious liberty, of education and of homes, and whose children and children's children shall for ages hence bless the American Republic because it emancipated and redeemed their fatherland and set them in the pathway of the world's best civilization.

CHAPTER XLI.

THE FILIPINO REBELLION.

Aguinaldo and His Followers Oppose American Annexation—President McKinley's Instructions to General Otis—The Battles Around Manila—The Iloilo Campaign—"Old Glory" raised on Negros Island—Attempt to Burn Manila—A Last Desperate Dash Upon Our Outposts—American Supremacy Assured.

During the progress of the Peace Conference at Paris, the relations between the Filipinos and the American authorities at Manila gradually became more and more strained. Aguinaldo persisted in the position that he, as President of the so-called Filipino Republic, should be considered first in authority. He maintained that his people, though assisted by the American forces, had themselves achieved independence and freedom from Spanish rule; and, while apparently willing to enjoy continued American protection, he demanded official recognition of his government, and the right to participate in the making and enforcing of the laws.

The exact attitude of the Filipinos is so clearly set forth in the protest submitted by Agoncillo on December 12, 1898 (see Appendix), that further details here are needless.

The position assumed by the United States may be well understood by reference to President McKinley's Boston speech, partially recorded in the preceding chapter; and the purposes of the Administration in respect to the Philippines are very lucidly explained in the instructions cabled to General Otis on December 21, 1898, the exact text of which follows:

SIR: The destruction of the Spanish fleet in the harbor of Manila by the United States naval squadron commanded by Rear Admiral Dewey, followed by the reduction of the city and the surrender of the Spanish forces, practically effected the conquest of the Philippine Islands and the suspension of Spanish sovereignty therein.

With the signature of the Treaty of Peace between the United States and Spain by their respective plenipotentiaries at Paris on the 10th instant, and as the result of the victories of American arms, the future control, disposition and government of the Philippine Islands are ceded to the United States.

In fulfillment of the rights of sovereignty thus acquired and the responsible obligations of government thus assumed, the actual occupation and administration of the entire group of the Philippine Islands become immediately necessary, and the military government heretofore maintained by the United States in the city, harbor and bay of Manila is to be extended with all possible dispatch to the whole of the ceded territory.

In performing this duty the military commander of the United States is enjoined to make known to the inhabitants of the Philippines that, in succeeding to the sovereignty of Spain, in severing the former political relations of the inhabitants, and in establishing a new political power, the authority of the United States is to be exerted for the security of the persons and property of the people of the islands and for the confirmation of all their private rights and relations.

It will be the duty of the commander of the forces of occupation to announce and proclaim in the most public manner that we come, not as invaders or conquerors, but as friends, to protect the natives in their homes, in their employments, and in their personal and religious rights. All persons who, either by active aid or by honest submission, co-operate with the government of the United States to give effect to these beneficent purposes will receive the reward of its support and protection. All others will be brought within the lawful rule we have assumed, with firmness, if need be, but without severity so far as may be possible.

Within the absolute domain of military authority, which necessarily is and must remain supreme in the ceded territory until the legislation of the United States shall otherwise provide, the municipal laws of the territory, in respect to private rights and property, and the repression of crime, are to be considered as continuing in force, and to be administered by the ordinary tribunals so far as practicable.

1 The operations of civil and municipal government are to be performed by such officers as may accept the supremacy of the United States by taking the oath of allegiance, or by officers chosen, as far as may be practicable, from the inhabitants of the islands.

While the control of all the public property and the revenues of the State passes with the cession, and while the use and management of all public means of transportation are necessarily reserved to the authority of the United States, private property, whether belonging to individuals or corporations, is to be respected, except for cause duly established.

The taxes and duties heretofore payable by the inhabitants to the late Government become payable to the authorities of the United States, unless it be seen fit to substitute for them other reasonable rates or modes of contribution to the expenses of government, whether general or local. If private property be taken for military use, it shall be paid for when possible in cash at a fair valuation, and when payment in cash is not practicable receipts are to be given.

All ports and places in the Philippine Islands in the actual possession of the land and naval forces of the United States will be opened to the commerce of the friendly nations. All goods and wares not prohibited for military reasons by due announcement of the military authorities will be admitted upon payment of such duties and other charges as shall be in force at the time of their importation.

Finally, it should be the earnest and paramount aim of the military administration to win the confidence, respect and affection of the inhabitants of the Philippines by assuring to them in every possible way that full measure of individual rights and liberties which is the heritage of free peoples, and by proving to them that the mission of the United States is one of benevolent assimilation, substituting the mild sway of justice and right for arbitrary rule.

In the fulfillment of this high mission, supporting the temperate administration of affairs for the greatest good of the governed, there must be sedulously maintained the strong arm of authority, to repress disturbance and to overcome all obstacles to the bestowal of the blessings of good and stable government upon the people of the Philippine Islands under the free flag of the United States.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

The publication of this wise and humane proclamation placed Aguinaldo and his followers in the position of being compelled to yield submissively to American authority, or else assume an attitude of open rebellion against it. Evidences of insubordination were not long wanting.

On January 7, 1899, Aguinaldo issued a proclamation in Manila, strongly protesting against American occupation of the Philippines, alleging that American promises of independence had been violated, denouncing President McKin-

ley's proclamation, and calling on his people to continue the struggle for liberty, urging them never to return "from the glorious road" on which they had "already so far advanced."

This document, which adorned the dead walls of Manila, was signed by Aguinaldo as "Military Governor of the Philippines." It was closely followed by a second manifesto, even more vehement than the first, in which the Filipino leader threatened to drive the Americans from the islands; called upon the Deity to witness that the blood of the "invaders," if shed, would be upon their own heads, and detailed at even greater length the promises which he claimed had been made and broken by the Americans. This second proclamation was largely suppressed, but was thought to be identical with that endorsed and adopted about the same date by the Filipino Congress at Malolos. On the same day, January 7th, the gunboats *Princeton* and *Yorktown* were ordered to proceed to Manila and join Admiral Dewey's fleet.

At this time the forces under General Otis were made up of the following commands, viz :

REGULAR INFANTRY : Fourth, Fourteenth, Eighteenth, Twentieth and Twenty-third Regiments; Companies B, F, I and M of Seventeenth Regiment.

VOLUNTEER INFANTRY : First California, First Colorado, First Idaho, Fifty-first Iowa, Twentieth Kansas, Thirteenth Minnesota, First Montana, First Nebraska, First North Dakota, Second Oregon, Tenth Pennsylvania, First South Dakota, First Tennessee, First Washington and First Wyoming Regiments.

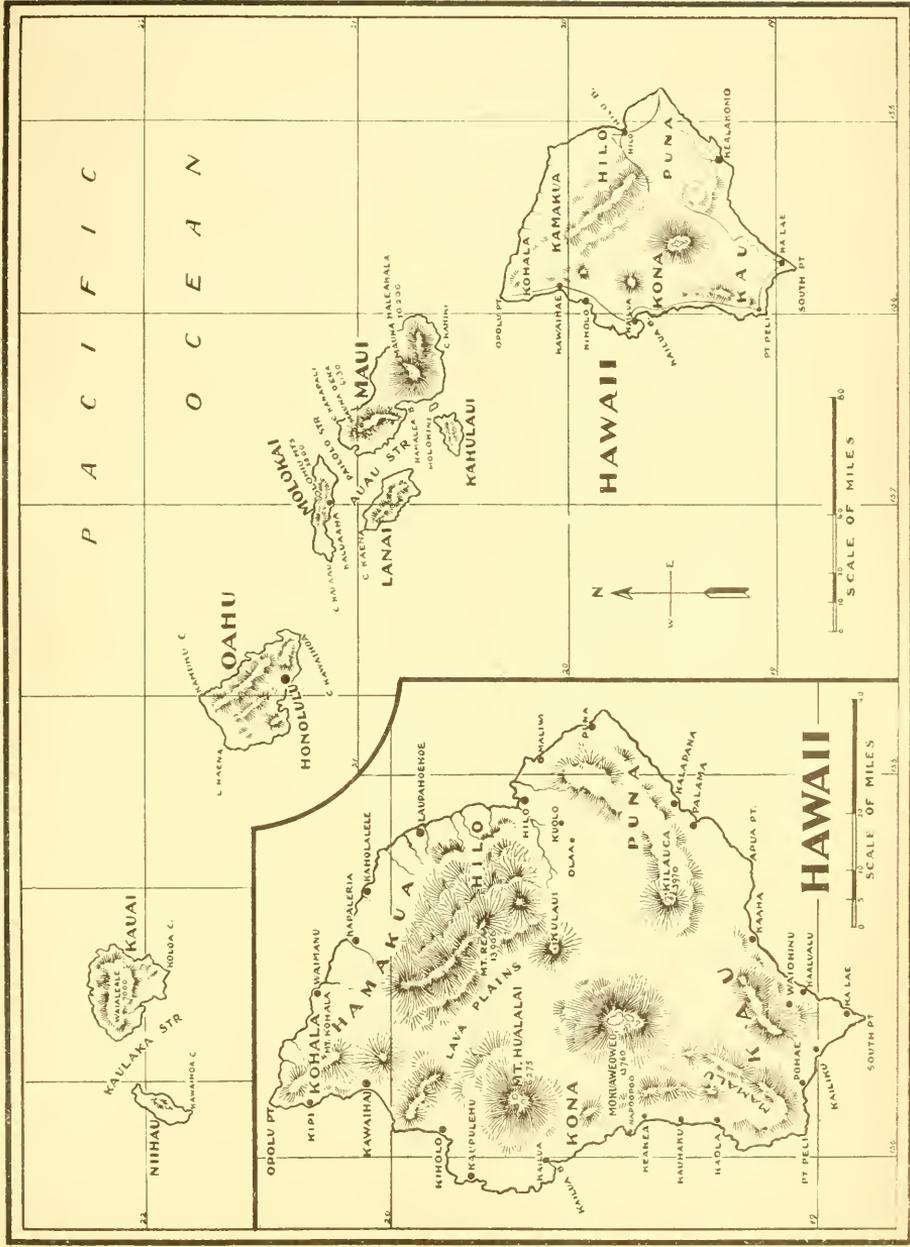
REGULAR CAVALRY : Troops C, E, G, I, K and L, Fourth Cavalry.

REGULAR ARTILLERY : Batteries G, H, K and L, Third Artillery; Batteries D and G, Sixth Artillery.

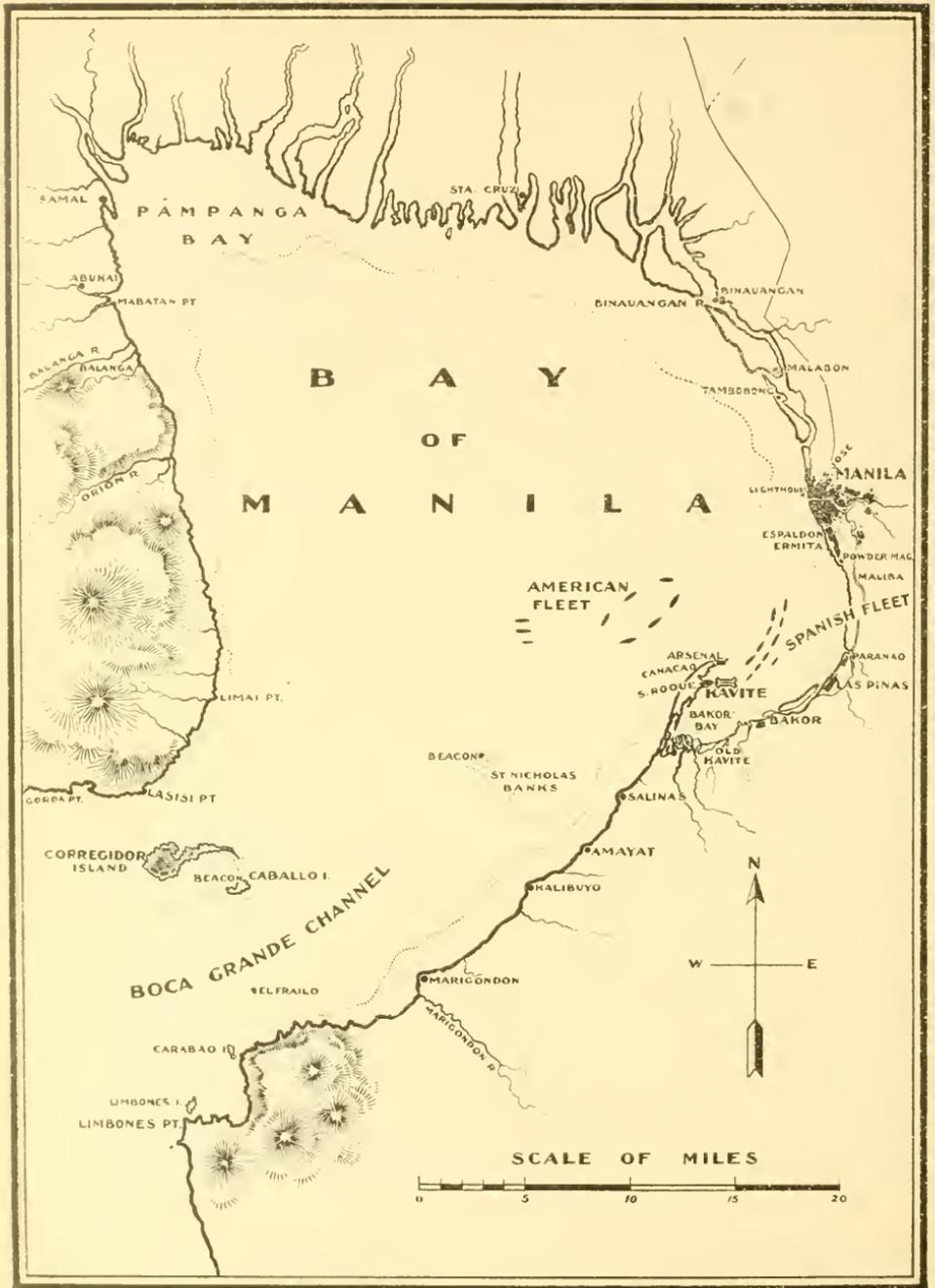
VOLUNTEER ARTILLERY : Batteries A and D, California Artillery; Batteries A and B, Utah Artillery; First Wyoming Battery.

REGULAR ENGINEERS : Company A, Engineers' Battalion.

The total number of men and officers was about 21,000,



THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS.—ANNEXED AUGUST 12th, 1898.



THE HARBOR AND BAY OF MANILA.

of whom 19,500 were reported as on duty. The Eighteenth Infantry, U. S. A., and Sixth Artillery, U. S. A., were at Iloilo, as were the Fifty-first Iowa Volunteers until relieved by the First Tennessee on February 8th.

The fleet under command of Admiral Dewey on February 4th comprised the following warships in active service, besides a number of troopships and transports, viz :

CRUISERS: *Olympia* (flagship), *Baltimore* (at Iloilo), *Boston*, *Buffalo* and *Charleston*.

GUNBOATS: *Bennington* (at Guam), *Callao*, *Concord*, *Culgoa*, *Manila* and *Petrel* (at Iloilo). The *Castine*, *Helena*, *Iris*, *Princeton* and *Yorktown* were then en route to join the Asiatic squadron.

MONITORS: *Monadnock*, *Monterey* and *Monocacy*.

The Filipino army numbered some 30,000, most of the commands being fairly well armed, equipped and drilled, besides a large contingent of available recruits. General Otis occupied the city of Manila, and had extended his outposts some distance into the country. The Filipino lines lay just outside of the American outposts. Owing to the strained relations between the forces, there was constant friction between the native and the American troops, and on numerous occasions active hostilities were prevented only by the tact and firmness of the American officers.

The Filipino soldiery, encouraged by the sullen conduct of their officers and the studied forbearance of the Americans, fell into the habit of disregarding the challenges of our sentries, and eventually became so bold as to attempt to pass the American lines at will, evidently mistaking leniency for cowardice. Such conduct became at last unbearable; and on Saturday night, February 4th, the crisis came.

The first collision occurred near Santa Mesa. All accounts agree that it was not the result of any aggression on the part of the Americans, but was precipitated by the

action of the two native soldiers who refused to obey the order of a sentry who challenged their passage of his post. These two natives advanced to the outpost of the First Nebraska regiment, which was stationed to the northeast of Manila. As they approached the sentry the latter ordered them to halt. They insolently refused to do so, and continued to advance. The sentry again called upon them to halt, and, as they paid no attention to his order, Corporal Greely levelled his rifle and fired upon them. The action of the natives led to the supposition that their refusal to obey the sentry was part of a preconcerted plan to provoke a conflict.

No sooner had the sentry fired than the Filipinos who were occupying blockhouse No. 7 fired a gun, which was evidently a signal for an attack to be made on the Americans. The Nebraska regiment was encamped in the vicinity of the outpost where the shooting occurred, and it was upon this regiment that the first attack was made.

Immediately after the firing of the signal gun, the Filipinos moved against the Nebraskans, but they were not prepared for the reception they got. They evidently thought that they would take the Americans by surprise; but in this they were grievously disappointed, finding that our troops were ready for any contingency.

The fighting spread on both sides until there was extensive firing going on at all the outposts. Our troops, who had been expecting trouble, were glad to have an opportunity to square accounts with the natives, whose insolence of late had become intolerable. They responded with alacrity and vigor to the fire of the Filipinos, which was heavy. The enemy occupied the trenches that they had been digging for some time past in plain view of the Americans, much to the disgust of the latter.

The battle of Saturday night and Sunday took place along a line starting about seven miles north of the citadel of Manila and four miles beyond the northern suburbs of the modern city, and extending southerly a distance of nine miles. Caloocan, the extreme left of the American line, is situated almost directly on Manila Bay, six miles north of the mouth of the Pasig river. It is a place of ten thousand population, and is a trifle less than half way by the railroad between Manila and the city of Bulacan, where Aguinaldo had his headquarters. Bulacan possesses over two thousand stone houses, and was formerly the residence of the provincial authority.

The country to the north and south of Manila is almost absolutely flat, giving an excellent opportunity for a naval force in the bay to co-operate with an army on the land. In this instance, Admiral Dewey displayed his usual tact and strategy by immediately moving his flagship to a position near Manila and directly between that city and two foreign warships—the German cruiser *Irene* and the British cruiser *Narcissus*, that were then lying in the harbor. This act was a quiet but effective hint that the affair was to be purely a quarrel between America and her unruly new wards, with no outside complications desired.

The *Olympia* took no part in the engagement, nor could Admiral Dewey effectively use any of his vessels until daylight Sunday morning, when the positions of the enemy could be accurately determined.

With the first streak of dawn, a signal flashed from Admiral Dewey's flagship, and the cruiser *Charleston* and the gunboat *Concord* opened a terrific fire on the insurgent's trenches near Caloocan. Shortly afterward the monitor *Monadnock*, stationed off Malate, at the other end of the

line, turned loose her ten-inch guns on the insurgent's left flank. The carnage was awful.

Shortly after midnight the firing became general along the whole line ashore, which extended in a sort of semi-circle around the city of Manila, from Caloocan on the north to Malate on the south. The Filipinos, armed with Mauser rifles of the latest pattern, fired rapidly and wildly in the darkness, while the Americans replied with more deliberation and greater precision. Then came a lull until daylight, when a general advance, aided by the fire of the fleet, was ordered all along the American line.

The natives fought bravely—even recklessly, at times; but, like the Spaniards, they were ineffective. Tons of their bullets sped harmlessly through the air. Their shells fell short, or exploded hundreds of yards ahead of the mark. A tribe of Ygorotes—half-naked savages from the wilds of Luzon—were given the “post of honor” at the front. These poor wretches, armed only with bows and arrows, died by scores under a withering fusillade from Yankee rifles and the quick-firing guns of the fleet.

By ten o'clock on Sunday morning the Americans had apparently completely routed the enemy, and had taken the villages of Palawpong, Santa Mesa, Paco, Santa Ana, San Pedro, Macorte, Pandocan and Pasai; had destroyed hundreds of native huts, and had secured possession of the water main and reservoir, a distance of over six miles. The First Tennessee joined the firing line at ten o'clock on Sunday morning, and gallantly assisted in capturing Santa Mesa.

All day long the battle raged, with intervals of comparative quiet. The American lines were steadily pushed forward until, at night, they extended fully nine miles beyond Manila in every direction.

Although the conflict was one-sided both as to results and as to casualties, there were many instances of conspicuous bravery on the part of either army. At one time, near Singalon, the Fourteenth Regulars, carried too far by the impetuosity of a headlong charge through the jungle, were nearly surrounded by the yelling natives, and all but cut off from the main army. At this critical juncture a strong detachment of the First California Volunteers, led by the gallant Colonel Duboce, dashed with ringing cheers through the ricefields and cane brakes, in the face of a withering rain of Mauser bullets, and rescued the Fourteenth from its perilous position.

These same Californians, who were in the reserve that day, again distinguished themselves by their brilliant work in driving the Filipinos out of Paco. The main road to the village was lined by native huts full of Filipino sharpshooters. After they had killed a driver on an ambulance of the Red Cross Society in the vicinity of General King and his staff, Colonel Duboce ordered the huts to be cleared and burned. The Filipinos concentrated in Paco church and convent, where they made a determined stand in the upper stories. A platoon of Californians, stationed on a neighboring bridge, maintained a hot fire on the Filipinos, but was unable to dislodge them. In the face of a terrific fusillade, Colonel Duboce and a few volunteers dashed into the church, scattered coal oil inside of it, set fire to the oil and retired.

In the meantime, Captain Dyer's battery of the Sixth Artillery bombarded the church, dropping a dozen shells into the tower and roof. Company L and part of Company G, of the Californians charged into the church, but were unable to ascend the single flight of steps leading to the story above. After the incendiaries had retired, a detach-

ment from the Idaho and the Washington regiments, stationed on either side of the building, picked off the Filipinos as they were smoked out. Many of the rebels, however, escaped into the brush in the rear of the church. The Americans captured fifty-three, and during the fighting about the church twenty of the rebels were killed.

Another intensely exciting incident was a charge of the Washington and Idaho troops, with Companies K and M of the Californians. These commands covered themselves with glory by making an irresistible dash through the rice-fields between Paco and Santa Ana, effectually dislodging a strong force of native troops, whose bravery was well attested by the heaps of dead and wounded that were left on the captured field. The dead were buried in groups of half a dozen, while the latter were taken to the American hospitals. It was at this stage of the fighting, and in front of Caloocan, that the Filipinos suffered their heaviest losses.

The service rendered by the warships was invaluable. Among the most effective of Admiral Dewey's vessels, in this engagement, was the captured Spanish gunboat *Callao*—now one of the most effective small warships in our navy—whose battery of rapid-fire guns of small caliber exceeds that of any other vessel of her tonnage afloat. This little boat is a veritable terror, and on this occasion she duplicated her gallant work of August 13th, 1898, when her powerful battery of machine guns covered General Merritt's advance on Manila.

Another captured Spanish gunboat, the *Laguna de Bay*, did good work for her new owners. She is a light-draught vessel, and on Sunday she went up the Pasig river and fairly riddled the village of Santa Ana with her Gatling guns, killing many rebels and driving many others to seek new shelter.

To the north and south of the city, where the shells of the *Charleston*, *Concord*, *Callao* and *Monadnock* reached the flanks of the Filipinos, the slaughter was sickening. Numbers of bodies were literally torn into shreds by the fire from the warships. In some places the shells made great holes in the earth, and around these were scattered ghastly heaps of dead.

The American losses during this first battle were 40 killed and 150 wounded. Among the former was Major Edward McConville, of the First Idaho Infantry. Colonel William C. Smith, commanding the First Tennessee, died of apoplexy during the heat of the engagement, while at the head of his regiment on the firing line. The heaviest losses were sustained by the Fourteenth regulars; but, for every life given up, the Krag-Jorgensens of that gallant regiment claimed a score in revenge. The Filipino losses were estimated at about 4,000 killed and wounded, besides many prisoners.

The natives in Manila were greatly affected by the disastrous result to the Filipinos. It is apparent that many of the natives in the city had full knowledge of the intended movement of the Filipino forces, who were calculating upon taking the Americans by surprise and thus winning a comparatively easy victory, which they thought would put them in a position to dictate terms to the Americans. On Sunday afternoon, when they realized the full extent of the disaster which had befallen them, they were in a condition bordering on frenzy; and it required strong and tactful handling of the situation to prevent an outbreak, which would certainly have resulted in the slaughter of hundreds of the Filipinos in Manila, upon whom would have fallen the anger of the American troops anxious to avenge the deaths of their comrades who had fallen under the fire of

the followers of the treacherous Aguinaldo. The precautions taken, however, were such that there was no serious trouble, and the city remained quiet after the first outburst of excitement.

The plot of the natives was carried out with great secrecy; but General Otis had enough information of their plans to enable him to block any move they might attempt against our forces. It was not known from what direction the blow would be dealt, and consequently measures were adopted to make secure each and every part of the American lines. These measures were carried out in such a quiet and unostentatious manner that Aguinaldo's spies, of whom he had many within the American lines, were completely deceived as to the real strength of the American positions.

A pitifully amusing feature of the situation was the assumption, by the Filipinos, that all native prisoners would be speedily executed. They seemed unable to realize that American methods are so different from those of the Spanish, and a wholesale execution on the Luneta was daily expected. Hundreds of women besieged the army headquarters, pleading for the lives of relatives and friends. Assurances that all prisoners would be treated in accordance with the rules of civilized warfare were received at first with incredulity, then with boisterous joy.

On February 6th General Hale's brigade advanced and took the water works at Singalon. Four companies of the First Nebraska and a part of the Utah Battery, with two field guns and two Hotchkiss guns, met the enemy on the hill a half mile out, and a sharp engagement took place. The Nebraskans lost one man killed and three wounded. Dr. Young, formerly quartermaster-sergeant in the Third Artillery, was wounded, captured and brutally butchered.

His body when recovered was found to have been horribly mutilated.

The Filipinos were driven back, retiring in bad order, and carrying with them the valves and heads of the steam chest and cylinder of the pumping machinery. Later the Nebraskans recovered the lost parts of the pumping machinery of the water works, which assured a speedy resumption of the water supply of the city.

General Ovenshine's brigade advanced and took Paranaque, capturing two field guns. They met with no opposition. General McArthur's division advanced beyond Gagalangin without loss, the enemy retreating upon Caloocan.

During the day the Americans gained control of the steamer line to Malabon, and landed six hundred marines, with four Maxims, at Fleet Beach, north of Manila. The Third Artillery, on the main road, and the Utah Battery, in a cemetery, covered the advance of the Kansas troops. Among the important points captured was a strong embrasured earthwork within sight of Caloocan.

There was considerable firing from the upper windows of the houses in the native quarter of Manila during the night, but no casualties were reported as the result.

Next day, February 7th, three companies of the First Kansas, under command of Colonel Funston, made a brilliant charge against a body of Filipinos who were hard pressing a reconnoitering party which was doing duty not far from Caloocan. The Americans behaved with the greatest gallantry. The reconnoitering party was fighting against heavy odds, but showed no signs of quitting, though there is scarcely a doubt that it would have been cut to pieces had it not been for the opportune arrival of the Kansans.

The party was in a jungle when it was attacked by the enemy. After a desperate conflict, in which Lieutenant Albert C. Alford, of Company I, and a private were killed and five wounded, the enemy was driven back to Calooan, which was then the strongest position of the rebels. The American troops penetrated to the heart of that town.

Meantime the light draught gunboats were shelling the town from the left, while the Utah Battery was putting in good work from the right. Their shells set the town on fire, and inflicted severe losses on the Filipinos. General Otis finally recalled the troops, but the natives, misunderstanding the retreat, failed to take advantage of it. The outskirts of the town were burned.

The American provost guard at Manila captured numerous men and women with weapons concealed in their clothing. These persons were undoubtedly in league with Aguinaldo, and their intention was to massacre the inhabitants of Manila while the native troops were attacking the city from without.

On February 8th General Otis cabled the War Department as follows :

On the 4th Aguinaldo issued flying proclamation charging Americans with initiative, and declared war; Sunday issued another, calling to resist foreign invasion; his influence throughout this section is destroyed; now applies for a cessation of hostilities and conference; have declined to answer. Insurgent expectation of rising in city on night of 4th unrealized. Provost Marshal-General, with admirable disposition of troops, defeated every attempt. City quiet; business resumed; natives respectful and cheerful; fighting qualities of American troops a revelation to all inhabitants.

(Signed)

OTIS.

The next two days were comparatively uneventful, except on the American left, save for the burning of the village of St. Roque, near Cavite. The native army, meanwhile, was concentrating between Malabon and Calooan,

north of Manila, having thrown up entrenchments to the left of the last-named village.

The important battle of Caloocan occurred on Friday, February 10th, and was another brilliant triumph for American arms. The shattered forces of the Filipinos, were gathered in that town, which is located about a mile and a half from Malabon. From here the Filipino chieftain determined to form for a second advance, and he was re-enforced by natives from the northern provinces of the Island of Luzon, who had arrived too late for the first battle.

Our left was held by a brigade under Brigadier-General H. G. Otis, whose command comprised the Twentieth Kansas, commanded by Colonel Funston, who had been wounded on Sunday; four companies of the Tenth Pennsylvania, commanded by Colonel A. L. Hawkins; nine companies of the First Montana, commanded by Colonel Kerster; four batteries of the Third Artillery, U. S. A., commanded by Major W. A. Kobbe; the Sixth Artillery, U. S. A., and the Utah Battery.

All during the day small bodies of armed Filipinos had been shifting their positions and moving into Caloocan. In order to cover their movements the rebels opened fire during the morning on the Kansas pickets. They were hidden in a jungle and kept up the crack of their Mausers for about twenty minutes, but without effect. A detachment emerged from the bamboo as if to attack the Kansas re-enforcements, but a well-directed volley sent them scurrying back under cover. General Otis' brigade was in a splendid position, stretching from Caloocan to a Chinese cemetery in which stood De La Lome Church, the tower of which was used as a signal station to wig-wag to the ships in the bay and to the regiments.

Shortly after noon the double-turreted seagoing monitor *Monadnock* and the gunboat *Concord* took a position off Malabon. By a pre-arranged plan of attack, these vessels began to hurl a shower of shells into Caloocan at half-past two o'clock. The *Monadnock* had both of her turrets in action, while the *Concord*, under Commander Walker, used her six-inch rifles and six-pounders. They did considerable execution. At three o'clock the signal was sent from De La Lome Church tower for a general advance of General Otis' brigade. In two hours our troops were in complete possession of the city, and the "Stars and Stripes" were flying over piles of Filipino dead, while the remnants of Aguinaldo's army were in flight.

The Sixth Artillery and the Utah Battery opened the fight on the land side, their missiles joining in cross fire those of the *Monadnock* and the *Concord*, and playing havoc with the Filipino entrenchments. The natives displayed great heroism, however, and stuck to their fortifications. They did not reply to the big guns, reserving their fire for the troops.

At 4 o'clock, with staff officers scurrying to and fro carrying orders, our advance was well under way, with General H. G. Otis personally directing the attack. Our line was formed in the following order from left to right: Twentieth Kansas and First Montana, supported by the First Idaho; and the Third Artillery serving as infantry, supported by the Fourth Cavalry.

The advance of the left wing was made through a heavy field of bamboo. As the Kansas and Montana boys emerged from the brush they were met by terrific successive volleys. Not once did they flinch. Their lines were as steady and straight as on parade. Sunday's battle had made veterans of them. They immediately returned the

Filipinos' fire with great enthusiasm, cheering as they fought. Off to the right came an answering cheer. It was from the Idaho Infantry and the Fourth Cavalry. They had the hardest time, being compelled to cross an open field while under a heavy fire. But they advanced steadily, not firing a shot until they reached the Filipino trenches.

The Tenth Pennsylvania was not actively engaged, being held in reserve at the church. Some of the enemy's sharpshooters made their way through a jungle from which they could fire on the Pennsylvania troops at long range. Two artillery guns were wheeled around, and after several volleys of shrapnel the sharpshooters fled. The Third Artillery all the while was keeping up its steady volleys.

Then the advance began in earnest. With lusty cheers the long American line started to Caloocan. The enemy contested every foot of the way, but was steadily driven back, leaving furrows of dead to mark their lines. Their aim was bad, while every shot of the Americans told with deadly effect.

Soon the main body of the Filipinos began to waver, and the Americans started on the run, firing as best they could. Up over the trenches they leaped, cutting down those who remained. In a twinkling the Filipinos scattered like rabbits. The Twentieth Kansas and the First Montana entered the town on the south and found in some of the bamboo houses a body of natives, who evidently hoped to get in our rear. The houses were fired, and the natives shot as they ran. Our men entered the town as the Filipinos went out at the other end.

The only flagstaff in the place was that on the small house of an Englishman named Higgins. He was not at home, but the place was borrowed for the occasion and the "Stars and Stripes" run up.

Our losses did not amount to much. Lieutenant-Colonel Bruce Wallace, of the First Montana Volunteers, was wounded in the charge. There were about 10,000 Filipinos in the battle, including a famous native regiment, which in the revolution of two years ago, killed all of its Spanish officers and deserted Manila. They were considered the best drilled of the native troops.

Malabon was captured the next day, February 11th, when "Old Glory" was run up over a town of flame. Enraged at their inability to hold Malabon in the face of our invincible troops, after being driven out of Caloocan, Aguinaldo's savage hordes set fire to the town before retreating in disorder to a more remote entrenchment.

Alive every instant to the obligations of civilized warfare, the American soldiers turned fire-fighters. Laying down their arms, they took up the task of extinguishing the flames and saving the lives and property of the defenseless natives. And their work was crowned with success.

The capture of Malabon began with the shelling of the town by the monitor *Monadnock* and the cruiser *Charleston*. Thus, as in the case of Caloocan, the enemy was demoralized by heavy artillery before the advance of our soldiers. It was a resistless advance when it came, accomplished in the teeth of a heavy musketry fire from the trenches in the jungle. Eleven of our men fell in the charge, two killed and the rest wounded. But this was a small loss in comparison to the havoc inflicted upon the Filipino forces. Dead and wounded were piled on all sides when the Yankee lads swarmed into the burning town.

An interesting discovery was made in the building that had been used as headquarters by the Filipino leaders. In the haste of their flight, they had left behind them,

among other papers, the plans for a sudden attack, in force, on Manila itself, again proving that the outbreak of February 4th had been carefully arranged.

On the same day a reconnoitering party of the Fourteenth regulars came upon a large body of the enemy in the jungle near Camp Dewey. The rebels were attacked and fell back upon the main line of the insurgents. The Fourteenth, with the North Dakota Volunteers and the Fourth Cavalry, then engaged the enemy and drove them toward the beach, where one of the gunboats received them with a fusillade from the automatic Colt guns. The enemy's loss was severe, and they scattered along the beach, seeking cover from the fire of the Americans.

Up to this time the Filipino losses had aggregated fully 2,500 killed, with wounded vastly in excess of that number, besides thousands of prisoners. All this was achieved at the cost of 65 Americans killed and 257 wounded. There were two Americans missing and unaccounted for. No fewer than twenty native villages had surrendered or been captured. Several had been destroyed, because their houses harbored men, frequently disguised in female attire, who shot from windows and roof tops at the American troops. Many rifles and much ammunition had been seized by the Americans.

On February 15th the First California Regiment, with detachments from the Idaho and Washington troops and a battery of the Sixth Artillery, had a sharp engagement with the enemy near the village of Pateros. The Californians had been annoyed for a whole day by firing from native houses over which white flags had been raised, and their commander decided to clear away the enemy from his front.

The work proceeded in a systematic manner, a gunboat

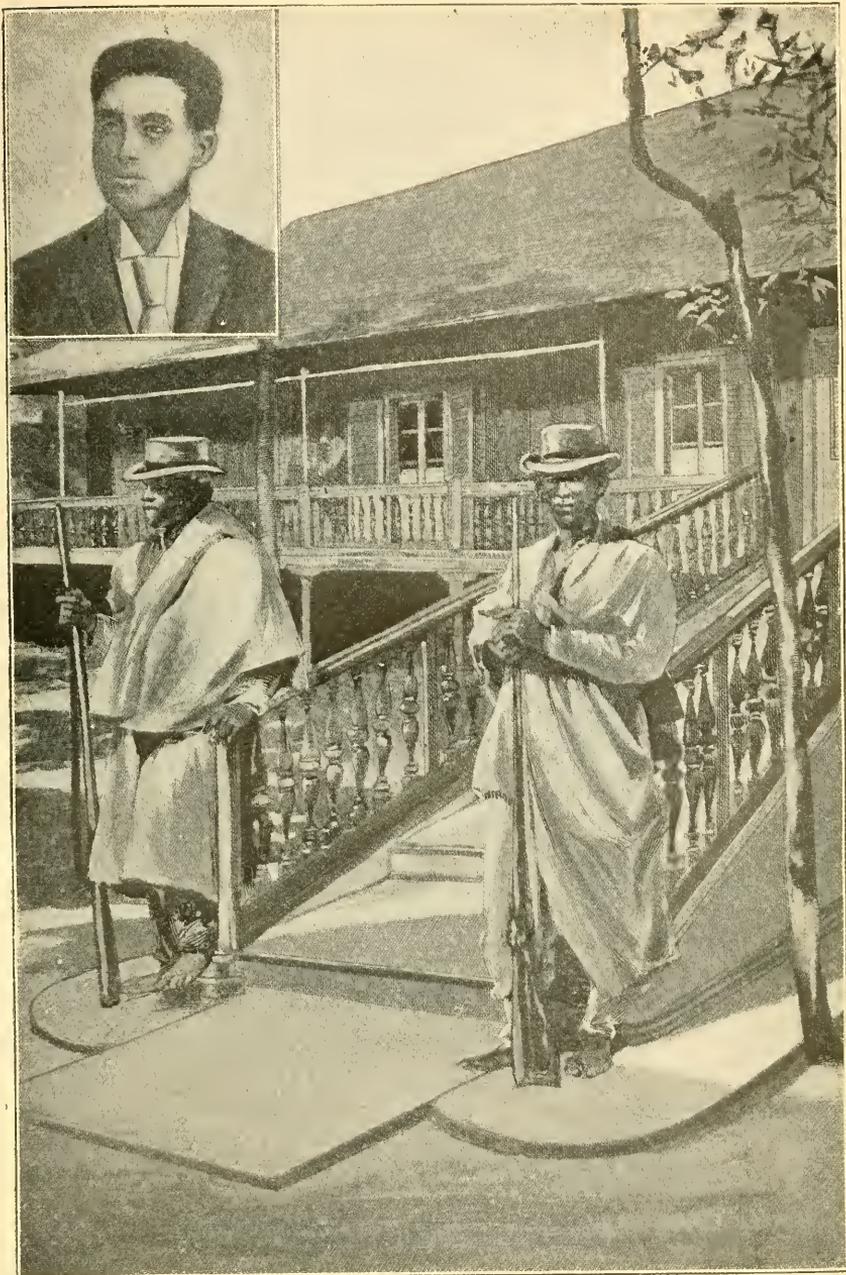
shelling the villages and working her rapid-fire guns very effectively on the jungle, and the rebels were driven toward Laguna de Rayo. The natives held their fire, apparently being short of ammunition; but they fought desperately.

The next morning (February 16th) General King's entire brigade was summoned to action to meet and drive back a large body of Filipinos that had been discovered on the Americans' right, near San Pedro Macati. The enemy was presumably reconnoitering, their large number and the threatening attitude they had assumed necessitated decisive action, and after a sharp exchange of volleys the rebels retreated, disappearing in the jungle.

Following this incident, for several days there were minor skirmishes at various points, with casualties small on either side. Most of the American losses were on the outposts, where a Filipino sharpshooter would occasionally succeed in killing or wounding such of our men as incautiously exposed themselves in the open. On February 18th the *Buffalo* bombarded the rebel trenches in front of General Ovenshine's brigade on the American right flank, and, after twenty minutes' firing, drove the natives further inland and out of range.

Iloilo, capital of the Island of Panay, and, next to Manila, the most important city and seaport in the Philippine group, was taken by the American forces under General Marcus P. Miller on Saturday, February 11th.

General Miller's expedition sailed from Manila on December 26, 1898, under explicit orders cabled to General Otis by the War Department. It consisted of a signal detachment, Battery G, of the Sixth Artillery; the Eighteenth Regulars and the Fifty-first Iowa Volunteers, on board the transports *Pennsylvania*, *Arizona* and *Newport*.



AGUINALDO AND HIS HEADQUARTERS.



OUR ARTILLERY IN THE PHILIPPINES.

The expedition was convoyed by the United States cruiser *Baltimore* and the auxiliary gunboat *Callao*. The latter was afterwards relieved by the *Petrel*, and the former by the *Boston*. The Iowa Regiment was ordered back to Manila on February 8th, its place being taken by the fighting First Tennessee Volunteers, a regiment that had distinguished itself in the bloody battles around the capital of the Philippines.

On arriving at Iloilo, General Miller discovered that the Spaniards, under General Rios, had treacherously abandoned the city on December 24th, and that it had been occupied by a native army, whose equipment was much improved by the seizure of a large quantity of arms and ammunition that had been left behind by the Spaniards—if, indeed, the latter had not voluntarily turned over this valuable property to the rebels. The Filipino authorities notified General Miller that his troops might land unarmed, but that they would resist American occupation in force. The attitude of the natives was distinctly hostile, and it is believed that they were acting under instructions from the Aguinaldo government.

On January 6th, privates Silvey and Kirkpatrick, of the Sixth Artillery, while guarding a water boat astern of the *Newport*, were attacked by the natives of the boat's crew. Silvey's skull was fractured fatally, and Kirkpatrick fell overboard, but escaped with a flesh wound. With this exception there was no blood shed until the final attack on February 11th.

General Miller's instructions were to bide his time, and under no circumstances to attempt the occupation of Iloilo unless perfectly sure of success. The crisis at Manila prevented General Otis from sending re-enforcements to Panay; so the American expedition to Iloilo simply watched

and waited. Meantime, the insurgents were not inactive. Barges laden with stone were sunk in the channels leading up to the city. Recruits, armed with Remingtons and Mausers, began to pour in from the country. The streets were barricaded, and coal oil was distributed throughout the city for the purpose of reducing it to ashes in the event of an American victory. Outside the city a horde of some ten thousand half-naked savages, armed with knives and spears, awaited the signal to join the native army in repulsing the "invaders."

On the morning of Friday, February 10th, General Miller sent an ultimatum to the commander of the rebels on shore, notifying him that it was his intention to take Iloilo, by force if necessary. Non-combatants and foreigners were warned to leave the town within twenty-four hours. The rebels were also warned that they must make no further belligerent preparations. The gunboat *Petrel* was then moved to a position close in shore, and near the rebel fort, while the cruiser *Boston* took up her station at the other end of the town.

Friday passed quietly. During the day many refugees left the town of Iloilo. The majority of them were taken on board foreign ships lying in the harbor. Searchlights from the United States warships were kept all night long illuminating the town and its defenses. The rebels, so far as the lookouts on the ships could discover, remained quiescent throughout the night.

At 8 o'clock on the morning of Saturday, February 11th, the gunboat *Petrel* signaled to the *Boston* that the rebels were working in their trenches. In return the *Petrel* was ordered to fire warning shots upon the town from her three-pounders. This was done, and the rebels replied with a harmless fusilade. The *Boston* and the *Petrel* then

bombarded the rebel trenches, completely clearing them of their occupants in a very short time. Soon after the bombardment began, flames broke out simultaneously in various parts of the town. Thereupon 48 marines, acting as infantry and artillery, were landed from the *Boston*, and a company was sent ashore from the *Petrel*. These detachments marched straight into the town of Iloilo, and, hoisting the "Stars and Stripes" over the fort, took possession of the place in the name of the United States.

The capture of the town and its defenses having been accomplished, the marines and soldiers who had been sent ashore proceeded to the task of saving the American, English and German Consulates from destruction by the fire which was raging among the frail and inflammable buildings of the town. The Swiss Consul's residence, which was in the same row as the Consulates named, was burned. The entire Chinese and native sections of the town were destroyed, but foreign mercantile property escaped with slight damages.

There was some desultory firing by the enemy in the outskirts of Iloilo, but not a single American was injured. General Miller's force had complete control of the situation, when the *Petrel* sailed from Iloilo for Manila to report the victory. The Sixth Artillery occupied a position commanding both the bridges leading into the town, and the Tennessee Volunteers and the Eighteenth Infantry took possession of the trenches that had been constructed by the rebels.

Early the following day (Sunday, February 12), General Miller ordered a reconnaissance to ascertain the enemy's position. Keller's battalion of the Eighteenth Infantry, with two Hotchkiss guns and one Gatling gun, marched toward Jaro. Midway between Iloilo and Jaro this battalion

encountered a large body of the enemy, occupying both sides of the road, who met the advance of the American troops with a severe and well-directed fire. The Americans deployed and returned the fire with a number of volleys. Our troops advanced steadily, supported by their machine guns, and drove the enemy through Jaro to the open country beyond.

The town of Jaro was found to be deserted, and all portable property had been removed. When the Americans entered the place there were only a few Chinese there. At 4.10 o'clock P. M. on Sunday, Captain Griffiths raised the American flag over *Presidencia*. During the fighting outside of the town Lieutenant Frank Bowles, of the Eighteenth Infantry, while working the light battery, was shot in the leg. In addition, one private was seriously wounded and two were slightly injured. The rebel loss was severe.

Major Cheatham's battalion of the Tennessee regiment marched in another direction beyond *Molo* without finding the enemy, and returned to *Iloilo*.

Thus the second city of importance in our Asiatic territory passed under the military government of the United States, with practically no bloodshed. The native forces, poorly disciplined and rent with dissensions within their own ranks, were driven back into the country and are not likely to appear again as an organized army.

The situation at *Manila* presents some serious problems. The city holds a large number of turbulent natives, who are held in subjection only by military force. An occasional outbreak of riot and incendiarism is to be feared, though this danger grows less every day. Such an outbreak occurred on the night of February 22d, when the natives started fires in both the *Santa Cruz* and *Tondo* districts of *Manila*. Once more the American soldiers

turned fire-fighters; but a large area was burned over before the flames were subdued. Details of British marines were landed from the *Narcissus* to aid the Americans. The belligerent natives blocked the efforts of the fire-fighters by every possible means, and several of them were shot while in the act of cutting the fire-hose. Following this outbreak more stringent orders were issued governing the conduct and privileges of the native population.

While the fire was raging in Manila, boatloads of armed insurgents stole down from the north and crept up the swampy creeks of the Vitas district. There they prepared for an attack on the rear of the American troops. They lurked at the edges of the creek and amid the salt marshes, gathering their forces together from the city and the bay, until they were ready for serious work inside the American lines.

At dawn the signal for the attack was given by the rebel cannon on the north opening fire on Caloocan. The American artillerists responded promptly, and soon silenced the insurgents' guns. In the meantime, the rebels had issued from the marshes in an effort to break the American line. General Hughes, however, attacked them strongly from the city, drawing off such men as he could spare from the police work and fire-fighting, while General McArthur pounced upon the enemy from Caloocan. Warships in the bay assisted by shelling the marshes and the fire-swept edges of Tondo, the *Monadnock* particularly taking a lively part in the battle. Thus surrounded, the insurgents resisted stubbornly, throwing up numerous barricades. After a hard fight and serious losses the desperate band was cut to pieces, many escaping into the marshes of Vitas. General Otis reports that

500 of the insurgents were killed or wounded, and 200 taken prisoners.

Events have shown that the Filipinos are desperate fighters, doubtless formidable to the Spanish, but no match for the cool and calculating courage of the Anglo-Saxon. The first trials at arms in the Philippines have resulted in an unbroken series of American victories ; and, while our ranks have been thinned every day by the persistent fire of rebel sharpshooters, those of the insurgents have been frightfully decimated in every engagement. It is probable that the rebel army will not again risk a pitched battle with General Otis's forces, but will confine its efforts to guerilla-like attacks on the outposts, or an occasional demonstration in force to divert attention from an attempted uprising in the city.

It is possible that the Tagalo leader may again attempt to force his way into the capital ; but the American land forces, backed by the invincible Dewey, are amply able to resist all attacks, and, with substantial re-enforcements of men and ships to draw from, the American position may be considered absolutely impregnable.

It is impossible for the Filipinos to regain any territory they have lost ; and within a few brief months the "Stars and Stripes" will surely float over every foot of ground the commanding general may deem best to occupy. The voluntary allegiance of the people of the island of Negros, offered on February 22d, is a hopeful promise of a peaceful solution. While the guns on the city walls and those of the fleet in Manila Bay joined in a salute in honor of Washington's natal day, four commissioners from the Negros Island waited upon Major-General Otis with a message from their people informing him that "Old Glory" had been raised above that island, and that its in-

habitants, having driven out all the insurgents, were then ready, willing and anxious to accept any proposition the Americans might have to offer.

They also advised the American commander that the people of the Negros, as of many of the southern islands, have little friendship for the northern tribes, and would gladly join the Americans in waging war against the Tagalos, of Luzon, to which tribe Aguinaldo and his chief advisers belong. To what extent this profession of loyalty to America can be trusted, remains to be seen.

The important island of Cebu also capitulated on Washington's Birthday. Its capital city, Cebu, had been occupied by a small force of insurgents, who fled to the hills upon receipt of an ultimatum from Commander Cornwell, of the United States gunboat *Petrel*, which had dropped anchor in the harbor. A force of Yankee marines and blue jackets immediately landed and raised the American flag over the government buildings, which they held until relieved by a regular garrison, consisting of a battalion of the Twenty-third Regiment, U. S. A., which was promptly dispatched from Manila.

There is reason to hope that the Filipinos, as a whole, recognizing the broad humanity that actuates their new protectors, will speedily and gracefully submit to the inevitable, and that "the white man's burden" in this instance may be light. Nevertheless, it is quite possible that the spirit of higher civilization may spread but gradually, and that generations may pass before absolute autonomy and self-government shall become possible in those charming islands of the Orient.

But of one thing we may rest assured. No despot's clutch shall ever again oppress those eight million souls, now committed to our care; for they have been ransomed

forever by the blood of American patriots—true heroes of a noble race—whose bodies are crumbling to dust in that far-off land, where a perpetual Altar of Freedom has been established by the valor of the American Soldier and Sailor.

APPENDIX A.

PROTEST OF THE FILIPINOS.

Text of the Document Filed with the Peace Commissions, at Paris.

The following is the full text of the protest lodged with the American and Spanish Peace Commissions by Agoncillo, the agent of Aguinaldo, the insurgent leader in the Philippines:

Paris, December 12, 1898.

Their Excellencies, the President and Delegates of the Spanish-American Peace Commission, Paris :

YOUR EXCELLENCIES:—The very noble and gallant General Aguinaldo, President of the Philippine Republic, and his Government have honored me with the post of official representative to the very honorable President and Government of the United States of America, devolving on me at the same time the duty of protesting against any resolutions contrary to the independence of that country which might be passed by the Peace Commission in Paris.

This has already terminated its sessions, and the resolutions passed cannot be accepted as obligatory by my government, since the Commission has neither heard nor in any wise admitted to its deliberations the Philippine nation, which held an unquestionable right to intervene in relation to what might affect their future.

I fulfill, therefore, my duty when I protest, as I do in the most solemn manner, in the name of the President and the National Government of the Philippines, against any resolution agreed upon at the Peace Conference in Paris, as long as the juridical political independent personality of the Filipino people is entirely unrecognized, and attempts are made in any form to impose on these inhabitants resolutions which have not been sanctioned by their public powers, the only ones who can legally decide as to their future in history.

Spain is absolutely devoid of a status and power to decide in any shape or form the before-mentioned matter. The union of Spain and the Philippines was founded solely on two historical facts, in which the exclusive right of the Filipinos to decide their own destiny was implicitly recognized.

FIRST. The "Blood Treaty" (Pacto de Sangre) of the 12th of March, 1565, entered into between General Don Miguel Lopez de Legazpi and the Filipino

sovereign Sikatuma, a compact which was ratified and confirmed on the one side by the King of Spain, Philip II, and on the other side by the monarchs of Mindanao, Visayas and Luzon, and by the Supreme Chief of that Confederation, the Sultan Lacandola, proclaiming, as a consequence, the autonomous nationality of the kingdom of "New Castile" formed by the Philippine Islands, under the sceptre of the King of Spain.

SECOND. The so-called "Constitution of Cadiz," in the discussion, vote, promulgation and execution of which the Deputies and Filipino people took an active part, and by which constitution the nationality of "The Spains" was made effective.

But from the very first moment in which the peninsular public powers attempted to impose their absolute sovereignty on the islands, the Filipinos protested energetically by force of arms, and from the first attempt, in 1814, the struggle in defense of their political personality was implanted.

When, in 1837, the violent deprivation of their rights was consummated, the Filipinos again protested, sustaining against them a fratricidal and inhuman struggle which has lasted from that time forward to the present day.

Falsehood, which always characterized the actions of the peninsular authorities, constantly hid from the world the fact of the real situation of force which has lasted almost a century. At length, the end of the present century, Spanish forces have been completely routed by those of the natives, and Spain cannot now even allege the possession by her of the islands, because the permanency of a handful of peninsular soldiers (approximately 400), who are existing besieged in one or two fortresses in the south of the archipelago, cannot constitute such a right.

The Spanish Government has ceased to hold any dominion by deed and by right, and the only authority which exists there and preserves order is that constituted by the Filipinos, with the solemn sanction of their votes, the only legal fount of positive modern power.

Under such conditions the Spanish Commissioners in Paris have not been able, within the principles of the law of nations, to give up or to transfer what, if they ever had, they have totally lost before the signing of the protocol of Washington and the arranging of the terms of the peace treaty in Paris. The Filipino people, who consented to the "Blood Treaty" and the "Constitution of 1812," annulled those conventions by reason of Spain not complying with her undertakings, and renewed their sovereignty by the solemn proclamation of the Philippine Republic on August 1, 1898, and by the establishment of a government and a regular and well-ordered administration, created by the decisive votes of the natives.

If any juridical effect can be attributed to the Spanish action in the peace treaty within the principles of international law it is the explicit renunciation of all future pretensions over the land, the dominion and possession of which

she had lost, and, therefore, is only of use to make the recognition of the corporate body of the Filipino nation and that of their rights to rule effectively in respect of their future.

The United States of America, on their part, cannot allege a better right to constitute themselves as arbitrators as to the future of the Philippines. On the contrary, the demands of honor and good faith impose on them the explicit recognition of the political status of the people, who, loyal to their conventions, were a devoted ally of their forces in the moments of danger and strife.

The noble general Emilio Aguinaldo and the other Filipino chiefs were solicited to place themselves at the head of the suffering and heroic sons of that country to fight against Spain and to second the action of the brave and skillful Admiral Dewey. At the time of imploring their armed co-operation both the commander of the *Petrel* and Captain Wood, in Hong Kong, before the declaration of war, the American Consul Generals, Mr. Pratt, in Singapore ; Mr. Wildman, in Hong Kong, and Mr. Williams, in Cavite, acting as international agents of the great American nation at a moment of great anxiety, offered to recognize the independence of the Filipino nation as soon as triumph was attained.

Under the faith of such promises, an American man-of-war, the *McCulloch*, was placed at the disposal of the said leaders, which took them to their native shores ; and Admiral Dewey, himself, by sending the man-of-war ; by not denying to General Aguinaldo and his companions the exacting of his promises when they were presented to him on board his flagship in the Bay of Manila ; by receiving the said General Aguinaldo before and after his victories and notable deeds of arms with the honors due to the commander-in-chief of an allied army, and chief of an independent State ; by accepting the efficacious co-operation of that army and of those generals ; by recognizing the Filipino flag and permitting it to be hoisted on sea and land, consenting that their ships should sail with the said flag within the places which were blockaded ; by receiving a solemn notification of the formal proclamation of the Philippine nation without protesting against it or opposing in any way its existence ; by entering into relations with those generals and with the national Filipino authorities, recently established, recognized without question the corporated body and autonomous sovereignty of the people, who had just succeeded in breaking their fetters and freeing themselves by the impulse of their own force.

And that recognition cannot be denied by the honorable and serious people of the United States of America, who ought not to deny nor discuss the word given by the officials and representatives in those parts in moments so solemn in gravity for the American Republic.

To pretend to put now in question the attributes of such public functionaries, after the danger, would be an act of notorious injustice, which cannot

be consented to by those who have the unavoidable duty of preserving unstained the brilliant reputation of the sons of the great nation founded by the immortal Washington, whose first glory was, and has always been the constant fulfillment of their word of honor.

It must be remembered here that the Filipinos did not fight as paid troops or mercenaries of America. On their arrival they only received a reduced number of arms, which were delivered to them by the order of Admiral Dewey. The arms, ammunition and provisions with which the Filipinos have since sustained the war against the Spanish forces were acquired some by their gallantry and others bought with their own funds, these latter being exclusively provided by the Filipino patriots.

And it would not be noble now, after having used the alliance, to deny the courage, loyalty and nobility of the Filipino forces in fighting at the side of the American troops, lending them a decided support, both enthusiastic and efficacious. Without their co-operation and without the previous siege never would the Americans have been able so easily to have gained possession of the walled city of Manila. They could—who can deny it?—have destroyed it by bombardment, but without the foregoing armed deeds, and without the rigorous circle in which the Spanish army was inclosed, the sham fight of the attack and surrender which took place could not absolutely have been realized.

Admiral Dewey gloriously destroyed the Spanish squadron, but he had no disembarking forces, and could not inconsiderately dispose of his ammunition and provisions, and under such conditions the support which, as companions in arms, was lent to him by the Filipino Generals and their forces, is a positive and undeniable advantage. Without them General Anderson's troops and those which afterward were disembarked probably would not have been able to have arrived at Manila before the suspension of hostilities and the signing of the protocol of Washington.

Truth and sincerity in their places.

Now: If the Spaniards have not been able to transfer to the Americans the rights which they did not possess; if the former have not militarily conquered positions in the Philippines; if the international officials and representatives of the Republic of the United States of America offered to recognize the independence and sovereignty of the Philippines, solicited and accepted their alliance, how can they now constitute themselves as the sole disposers of the control, administration and future government of the Philippine Islands?

If in the treaty of Paris there had been simply declared the withdrawal and abandonment by the Spaniards of their dominion, if they ever had one, over the Filipino territory; if America, on accepting peace, had signed the treaty without prejudice to the rights of the Philippines and with a view of coming to a subsequent settlement with the existing Filipino National Government, thus recognizing the sovereignty of the latter, their alliance and the carrying out of

their promises of honor to the said Filipinos, it is very evident that no protest against their action would have been made. But, in view of the terms of the third article of the protocol, the proceedings of the American Commissioners, and the imperative necessity of safeguarding the national rights of my country, I make this protest, which I have made an extensive one for the before-said reasons, and with the corresponding legal restrictions against the action taken and the resolutions passed by the Peace Commissioners at Paris and in the treaty signed by them.

And on making this protest I claim, in the name of the Filipino nation, in that of their President and Government, the fulfillment of the solemn declaration made by the illustrious William McKinley, President of the United States of North America, that, on going to war, he was not guided by any intention of aggrandizement and extension of national territory, but only in respect to the principles of humanity, the duty of liberating tyrannized peoples, and the desire to proclaim the unalienable rights, with their sovereignty, of the countries released from the yoke of Spain.

God keep your Excellencies many years,

FELIPE AGONCILLO.

APPENDIX B.

CONSTITUTION OF THE FILIPINO REPUBLIC.

Following is the text of the principal articles of the Constitution of the so-called Filipino Republic, under which Aguinaldo and his followers have proposed to set up a government in the Philippine Archipelago.

PREAMBLE.

The object of this government is, first of all, to secure for the Filipino people the extermination, with a strong hand, of all the vices, wrongs, injustices and cruelties which have resulted from Spanish administration sustained in luxury and expense upon our people, with extravagance and ostentation, and to substitute a government of the Philippine Islands, which shall be simple, modest, just, equitable and quick in the execution of public service and for the good of the people, and to attain these purposes I decree the following as the provisional constitution of the revolutionary government of the Philippine Islands :

CHAPTER I.

THE REVOLUTIONARY GOVERNMENT.

The dictatorial government shall henceforth, from the adoption of this Constitution, be known as the Revolutionary Government, and its primary object shall be to fight for the independence of the Philippine Islands until all nations, including Spain, shall recognize the independence and sovereignty of these islands, to the end that a permanent and true republic may be established.

The dictator shall from this time forth be known as the President of the revolutionary government.

Four secretaries shall be chosen to assist the President in the conduct of the affairs of the government. They shall be the Secretary of State, Marine and Commerce, Secretary of War and Public Works, Secretary of Police, Interior, Justice, Public Instruction and Health, and Secretary of Finance, Agriculture and Industry.

The President shall have the right to appoint additional secretaries at such

times as occasion for them may arise, to meet the demands and rights of public service.

It shall be the general duties of the secretaries to assist the President in the transaction of the affairs of the government. No orders issued shall be valid or binding unless signed by the President and countersigned by the Secretary of the department to which the matter relates.

The office of Secretary of State shall be divided into three departments, for diplomacy, for marine and for commerce.

The Department of Diplomacy will study and transact all business concerning the direction of diplomatic matters and negotiations with foreign powers.

The Department of Marine shall study and transact all business in reference to the formation and organization of a navy, and the organization and equipment of such expeditions as may be desired by the revolutionary government in carrying out its purposes and designs.

The Department of Commerce will transact all business pertaining to trade, both internal and external, and all preliminary work for the making of commercial treaties with foreign nations.

The office of the Secretary of War shall be divided into four sub-divisions, for the conduct of the campaign, for the administration of military justice, for general commissary and for sanitation.

The Department of Campaign will have charge of organizing the army, and the government of its operations and movements, the making of fortifications, the direction of attacks, the nomination of officers, the organization of artillery, cavalry and infantry, and the general administration of all matters pertaining to the conduct of the campaign.

The Department of Military Justice shall have the appointment of all court-marshals for the trial of offenders against law and order in or connected with the army.

The Commissary Department shall have charge of supplying all provisions and equipments for the use of the army.

The Department of Sanitation shall have charge of all rules for the preservation of health in the army, the inspection of camps, forts and stations.

The Department of Public Works shall have charge of all matters and business which concern the construction of public buildings, roads and other constructions for the general welfare.

The duties of the other secretaries will be made known, together with their sub-divisions, in an amendment to this document which shall be made later.

It shall be the further duty of each secretary to thoroughly oversee and superintend personally all matters coming under his department, and to have the appointment of clerks and employees as the business of his office shall demand. Such subordinates, officers, clerks and employees shall be chosen as far as possible among those who have heretofore served their country and

are known to be in sympathy with its causes, besides reliable and honest.

It shall be the further duty of the secretaries to assist the Congress in its work, to furnish such information and aid as it may be in their power to render, but they shall have no power to partake of the business of the Congress, except in the name of the President, and shall not be allowed to vote in the Congress. The President of the Government is the personification of the people, and during his incumbency of office he shall not be impeached.

The President shall remain in office during the continuance of the revolution, unless circumstances shall oblige him to voluntarily retire, when his successor shall be chosen by the Representatives in Congress.

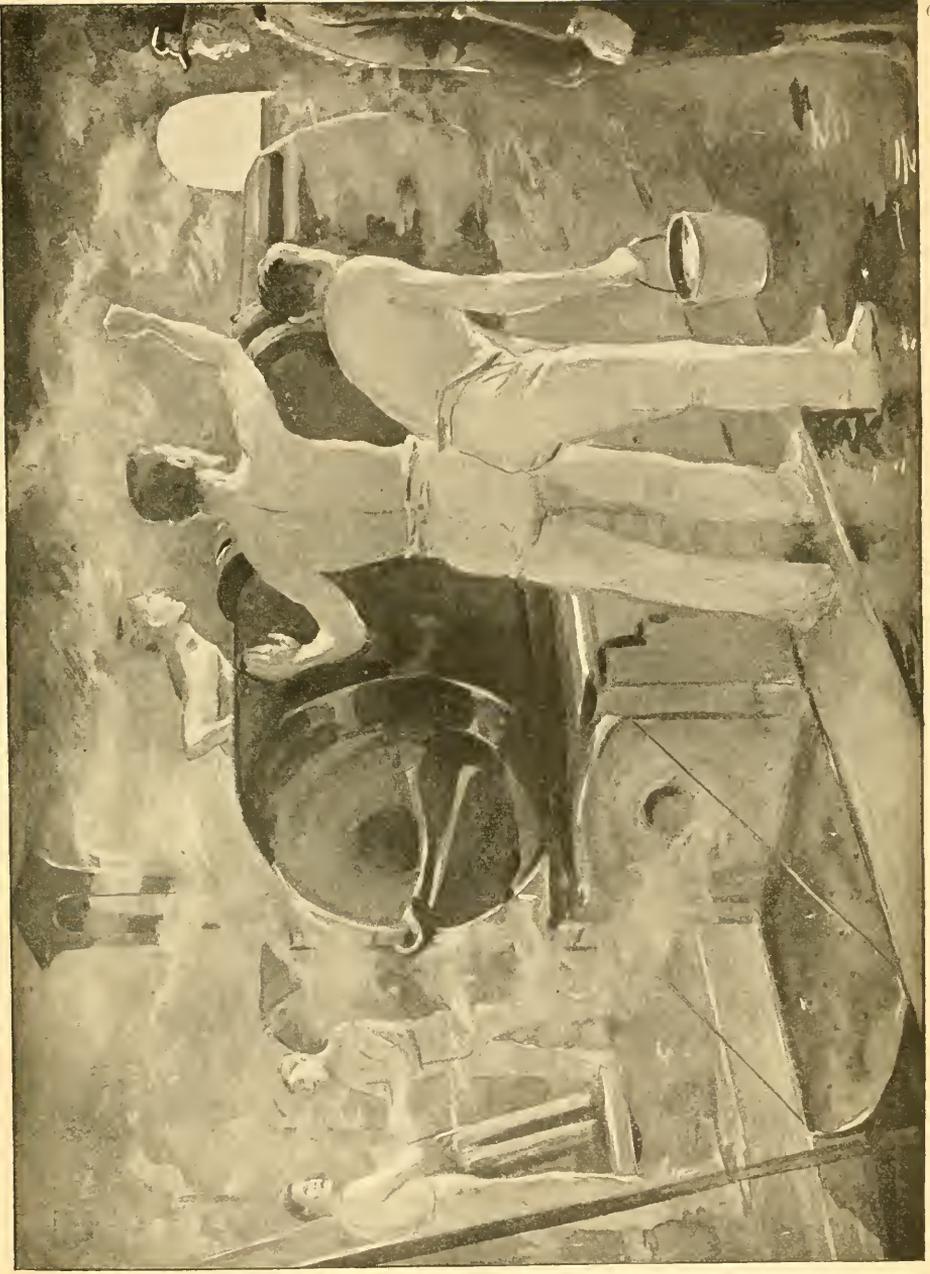
CHAPTER II.

THE REVOLUTIONARY CONGRESS.

The Revolutionary Congress shall be the assemblage of the representatives of all the provinces of the archipelago of the Philippines, duly elected under the decree of June 18th. In case any province has not had occasion to elect any representative for the reason that a majority of the population have not been free from Spanish domination for sufficient time to express their will in the choice of a representative, then the Government shall have the power to appoint for that province a provisional representative, who shall be selected from among the inhabitants of that province and be of good character and standing and in sympathy with the revolutionary cause.

Upon the assembling of the representatives of the Congress in the place and building designated for them, the majority of them shall select five of their number who shall act as a Committee on Credentials and examine the rights of the others to sit as members of the Congress. The credentials of these five shall be examined and passed upon by an additional committee similarly selected. Immediately upon the acceptance of the credentials the Congress shall proceed to the selection of a president, a vice-president and two secretaries, all selected from among themselves, and thereupon notify the government of its action.

The building in which the sessions of the Congress shall be held shall be regarded as sacred, and no force of arms shall enter it, except, if necessary, upon order of the president to suppress disorder. The functions of the Congress shall be the enactment of such just laws as shall be for the general welfare of the people, to provide for the levy and collection of taxes, the execution of the revolutionary laws, the ratification of treaties, the power to borrow money to provide for the general expenses of the government as submitted by the Secretary of Finance, and such other functions as will best conserve the interests of the people of the Philippine Islands during the revolutionary period.



"REMEMBER THE MAINE."



INDEPENDENCE HALL AND LIBERTY BELL.

The Congress shall hear all important questions which may be submitted to it in the order in which they are received, to pass upon and enact or reject them, but imperative questions will be transmitted to the Congress by the President of the Revolutionary Government by special message.

All sessions of Congress shall be public, except upon such occasions as an executive session may be demanded, when the public shall be excluded.

Each representative shall have the power and right to represent bills and subjects for the enactment into laws, and the same privileges shall be accorded to the secretaries.

The Congress shall pass rules for the government of its own deliberations, and the president shall have no vote save in case of a tie.

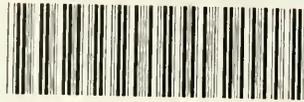
The President of the government shall have no power to prevent the assembling of Congress, although he can call that body together when in his province he deems it wise to do so.

The President shall have the power to veto the acts of Congress, but in doing so shall transmit to Congress his reasons for his action.

NOTE.—[Additional articles of the Constitution relate to the formation of courts of justice by the Congress and provide that a book shall be kept in the building occupied by the Congress wherein shall be entered the grand and heroic deeds of Filipinos in the service of their country, which shall be a book of honor. Another chapter in the Constitution relates solely to the organization, establishment and operations of the military.]



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 528 509 9

